



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





STANFORD·UNIVERSITY·LIBRARY

A
PROGRESSIVE SERIES
OF
INDUCTIVE LESSONS
IN
LATIN,

BASED ON MATERIAL DRAWN FROM CLASSICAL
SOURCES, ESPECIALLY FROM CAESAR'S
COMMENTARIES.

BY
JOHN TETLOW, A.M.,
HEAD MASTER OF THE GIRLS' HIGH AND LATIN
SCHOOLS, BOSTON.

The mind should be introduced to principles through the medium of examples, and so should be led from the particular to the general—from the concrete to the abstract. . . .

Children should be led to make their own investigations, to draw their own inferences. — HERBERT SPENCER'S ESSAY ON EDUCATION.

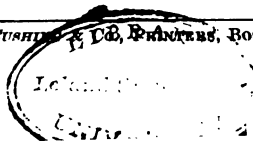
BOSTON:
PUBLISHED BY GINN & COMPANY.

1886.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1884, by
JOHN TETLOW,
in the Office of the Librarian of Congress at Washington

62983

J. R. CUSHING & CO., PRINTERS, BOSTON.



PREFACE.

THIS manual is the result of an attempt to apply the inductive method to elementary instruction in Latin. The value of this method as an instrument for developing and strengthening the mental faculties has long been recognized and will probably not be questioned. As applied to Latin, it brings the pupil into immediate contact with classical examples, teaching him to view these, rather than the rules of the grammarian, as the original sources of knowledge and the final test of correctness; and it leads him, through the observation and study of such examples, to the discovery of the syntactic laws which underlie them. In a word, it trains the pupil in the methods required for original investigation.

But, while the value of the inductive method will not be denied, there will probably be various opinions as to what constitutes a successful application of it, and equally various standards by which a given application of it will be judged. Practical teachers, who know from daily experience in the class-room that the undeveloped powers of youth are extremely feeble, are inclined to view with distrust any method of instruction which undertakes to make the pupil a discoverer rather than a learner; while, on the other hand, the mere theorist demands that the pupil be told nothing, but that he be led to discover everything. It will not be necessary for me to state in detail the principles which have guided me in determining how much or how little the pupil should be aided in the work of discovering and formulating rules from examples; these principles may be readily inferred from an examination of the method of exposition adopted in any one of the lessons, taken at random, in which the laws or usages of the language are treated. I have striven to keep constantly in view the mental immaturity of the pupils for whom these lessons are intended, and the limitations as to time by which their teachers are necessarily

restricted. Keeping these in view, I have felt that it would be safer to err on the side of affording too much rather than too little help.

From the character of the material used in the exercises and reading lessons of this manual, it will be seen that I do not agree with those who think that the pupil should be introduced to the study of Latin through the medium of entertaining stories written by modern Latinists. On the contrary, that method seems to me the best which takes the pupil by the shortest road into the domain of classical antiquity, and which, by bringing him into direct contact with the subject-matter, the modes of thought, the forms of expression, and the choice and arrangement of words peculiar to the classical writers, most thoroughly equips him for the intelligent study of the acknowledged masterpieces of Latin literature. Accordingly, I have drawn not merely the examples used for purposes of exposition, but also the short sentences supplied for practice on forms and constructions, and the longer passages selected for connected translation, from classical sources.

The short sentences supplied for practice on forms and constructions are arranged in separate sets entitled respectively "Exercises" and "Supplementary Exercises." Of these two sets, the Exercises will probably in most cases furnish ample material for the grammatical work of the first year; the Supplementary Exercises, which are somewhat more difficult, may be drawn upon for additional practice or for periodical reviews, or they may be reserved for the second year, to be studied as progressive exercises in Latin composition in connection with the first author read.

The material provided for connected translation consists of easy anecdotes from Cicero, and of those passages from Caesar in which the usages of the Druids and the manners and customs of the Gauls and Germans are described. The latter, owing to their intrinsic value and interest, and to their comparative freedom from the constructions of indirect discourse, seem especially suited to the needs of the beginner. The plan of the book also contemplates the early introduction of the study of the simpler modes of word-formation as an aid to the development of power to read at sight. Special suggestions relating to the lessons on word-formation and the anecdotes from Cicero will be found in the notes introduced at pages 74 and 224.

In the special vocabularies of t'

i, in the lessons

on word-formation, and in the general Latin-English vocabulary, English words or parts of words that are *cognate* with the Latin forms under which they appear are printed in **SMALL CAPITALS**; whereas English words or parts of words that are *borrowed* (directly or indirectly) from the Latin forms under which they appear are printed in *Gothic Italic*. This distinction, the use of which was suggested to me by a similar distinction in Professor White's excellent *Greek Lessons*, I have tried to render as serviceable as possible by confining the differences in type just mentioned to those letters of the English word which alone mark its relationship to the Latin. Thus, *cōsulātus* is translated *consulship*, and *peditātus*, *foot-soldiers*. I have not, of course, meant to imply by this method of printing that the exhaustive study of the origin and history of English words should form a part of the first year's work in Latin; but rather to supply material for occasional excursions in this direction. For example, the connection between the Latin *veniō* and the English *COME* is not so obvious that it can easily be made clear to beginners; and, unless some bright boy or girl whose curiosity has been excited by the silent suggestion of the change in type should ask for an explanation, the teacher should pass over this word without comment. On the other hand, the operation of Grimm's law in such words as *pater*, *FATHER*, *frāter*, *BROTHER*, and *māter*, *MOTHER*, is so interesting, and at the same time so easily made clear, that the teacher may profitably use these and similar examples as a means of leading the pupil to a recognition of the general law which they illustrate.

As it was a part of my plan to introduce a few simple lessons on word-formation, and, in the etymological part of the general vocabulary, to trace complete words to the stems from which they are formed, it seemed desirable that, in dealing with the several declensions in substantives and adjectives, I should devote some attention to stems. Accordingly, besides pointing out the stems of the several paradigms of declension, I have also called upon the pupil to explain the formation of the nominative, referring him to the grammar for the necessary information and guidance. The paragraphs in which these references to the grammar occur are, of course, comparatively unimportant for the beginner, and they may, at the discretion of the teacher, be postponed or omitted. They are numbered as follows: **121, 162, 188, 195, 197, 250, 266.**

It will be seen that, in giving the principal parts of verbs, I have taken the liberty to deviate slightly from established usage. In place of the *supine* in *-um*, which is generally given as the fourth of the principal parts, I have substituted the *perfect participle*. The necessity of a reform in this direction was first recognized and pointed out by Professor Lane, who introduced this substitution many years ago in his teaching, and has also incorporated it in the Latin grammar which he is preparing for publication. When word-formation was so little understood that the supine was thought to be the source from which the perfect and future participles, and primitives in *-tor*, *-tiō*, *-tus*, and *-tūra* were derived, there was an obvious propriety in recognizing the supine as one of the principal parts of the verb. Clipped of final *-um*, it yielded a base—the so-called supine stem—which was seen to be common to all these forms. As, moreover, identity of base was supposed to indicate community of origin, the forms just enumerated were naturally viewed as offshoots from this parent stem. As a matter of fact, however, the perfect and future participles, primitives in *-tor*, *-tiō*, *-tus*, and *-tūra*, and the supines in *-tum* and *-tū* are all simply parallel formations from the root or from the verb stem. Thus, the participles *cultus* and *cultūrus*, and the primitive substantives *cultor*, *cultūra*, *cultus*, and *cultiō*, are formed directly from the root *col*, *till*; in like manner, the participles *auditus* and *audītūrus*, and the substantives *auditor*, *auditus*, and *auditiō*, are formed directly from *audī*, *hear*, the stem of *audiō*. While then there is, in a restricted sense, a *real* supine stem ending in *-tu*, which lies at the foundation of two verbal forms, the former and the latter supine, the so-called supine stem ending in *-t*, euphonically *-s*, is purely a figment of the grammarians.

Again, although our dictionaries, in giving the principal parts of verbs, record more than 2500 supines in *-um*, Richter has shown, in his contributions to the study of this form of the verb, that only 236 such supines are to be found in the texts of the Latin writers from the time of Plautus to the early Christian centuries.

It is clear then that the supine, instead of being a principal part of the verb, is a very insignificant part. On the other hand, the perfect participle is found in all the passive tenses for *completed action*; it is, indeed, in these tenses the only essential part, for the auxiliary is often omitted. Moreover, if a mechanical

base must be recognized as an artificial help to the pupil while he is committing to memory those forms of the verb that have certain letters in common, the perfect participle yields this base as readily as the supine. A reference to sections 136 and 137 will show that the treatment of the perfect participle as one of the principal parts of the verb renders easy and natural the application of the inductive method to a subject which must otherwise be left unexplained.

It has been the prevailing practice in Latin dictionaries and special vocabularies to account for the form and meaning of words whose etymology is given, by referring them to other complete words from which they are not directly formed, but with which they are merely connected in formation. This loose and inaccurate way of explaining the derivation and meaning of words must soon give place to a sounder method. One special vocabulary¹ has already appeared in this country in which the subject of etymology is differently treated, and other works founded on the same principles are in preparation. In harmony with this tendency, and in the hope of developing right habits of thought in the pupil from the outset, I have been careful to refer the words whose etymology is explained in the general vocabulary, directly to the roots or stems from which they are formed.² Lest this mode of presentation should seem obscure to the learner, who in his actual reading meets not stems, but complete words, I have thought it best, in the case of formation from stems, to add in parenthesis the complete word to which the stem belongs.

The vocabulary of an introductory book does not call for much in the way of pictorial illustration; but what it does call for, it calls for imperatively. Such words, for example, as *scūtum* and *signa militāria* cannot be understood by the pupil without the aid of a picture. Expressions of this kind, therefore, for which illustrations from the antique were available — eleven in number — I have thought it best to illustrate. The cuts used for this purpose have been taken from Rich's *Dictionary of Antiquities* and Guhl and Koner's *Leben der Griechen und Römer*.

In conclusion, I desire to express my grateful sense of obligation

¹ Greenough's *Vocabulary to Virgil*.

² This statement does not, of course, apply to those instances in which a word is said to be merely "connected with" another word in formation.

LESSONS.	PAGES.
XXXI. Substantives: Fifth Declension	72-73
XXXII. Adjectives: Peculiarities of Comparison	74-76
XXXIII. Numerals: Cardinals.	76-78
XXXIV. Partitive Genitive.—Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space	79-81
XXXV. Numerals: Ordinals. — Adjectives: Genitive in -ius, Dative in -ī	82-84
XXXVI. Ablative Absolute	84-87
XXXVII. Periphrastic Conjugations: Active and Passive ...	88-90
XXXVIII.—XXXIX. Dative of Agent. — Descriptive Genitive. — Descriptive Ablative.	90-94
XL. Numerals: Distributive	94-95
XLI.—XLII. Pronouns: Personal and Reflexive.	96-99
XLIII.—XLIV. Genitive with Adjectives. — The Gerund.	100-103
XLV.—XLVI. Demonstrative Pronouns.	103-108
XLVII.—XLVIII. The Gerundive Construction. — The Two Supines	109-112
XLIX.—L. Verbs in -iō of the Third Conjugation. — The Rela- tive Pronoun	113-115
LI. Two Accusatives: Same Person or Thing. — With Compounds	116-117
LII. Two Accusatives: Person and Thing.	118-120
LIII. Interrogative Pronouns. — Interrogative Particles: -ne, Nōne, Num	120-122
LIV. Verbs: Subjunctive Mood	123-124
LV.—LVI. Subjunctive in Indirect Questions. — Sequence of Tenses.	124-128
LVII. Indefinite Pronouns	128-129
LVIII. Dative of Possession. — Dative of Service	130-131
LIX.—LX. Infinitive with Subject Accusative as Object. — Tense of the Infinitive.	132-135
LXI. Complementary Infinitive. — Infinitive as Subject, ...	135-137
LXII. Deponent Verbs. — Ablative with Ūtor, Fruor, etc., ...	137-139
LXIII.—LXIV. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive: Horta- tory, Optative, Dubitative	140-142
LXV. Adverbs: Formation and Comparison.	143-145
LXVI. Ablative: Separation and Want.	146-147
LXVII. Ablatives: Source and Cause.	148-149
LXVIII. Irregular Verb: Possum. — Impersonal Use of In- transitive Verbs in the Passive	150-151
LXIX. Irregular Verbs: Volō, Nōlō, Mālō. — Final Clauses, ...	152-154

CONTENTS.

xi

LESSONS.	PAGES.
LXX. Irregular Verbs: Ferō, Eō. — Complementary Final Clauses.....	154-156
LXXI. Irregular Verb: Fīō. — Ablative of Comparison. — Ablative of Difference	157-159
LXXII. Defective Verbs: Ōdi, Coepi, Memini. — Verbs of Memory.....	159-161
LXXIII. Consecutive Clauses	162-164
LXXIV. Quōminus and Quin	164-167
LXXV. Subjunctive in Relative Clauses of Characteristic,	167-168
LXXVI. Constructions with Verbs of Feeling.....	169-171
LXXVII. Conditional Sentences: Present and Past Suppositions	172-174
LXXVIII. Conditional Sentences: Future Suppositions	175-177
LXXIX. Concessive Clauses. — Clauses of Proviso.....	178-180
LXXX. Special Constructions	180-183
LXXXI. Temporal Clauses: Postquam, Ubi, Ut, Simul Atque; Cum (Temporal).....	183-185
LXXXII. Cum with the Indicative in Temporal Clauses ..	186-188
LXXXIII. Cum in Causal and Concessive Clauses	189-191
LXXXIV. Temporal Clauses with Præquam and Antequam	191-193
LXXXV. Temporal Clauses with Dum and Quoad. — Price,	194-196
LXXXVI.-LXXXVII. Place from Which. — Place to Which. — Place Where	197-200
LXXXVIII.-LXXXIX. Indirect Discourse: Declaratory and Imperative Sentences.....	201-205
XC. Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse	206-208
XC.-XCVI. Formation	209-223
ANECDOTES FROM CICERO	224-229
READING LESSONS	230-241
EXPLANATION OF ABBREVIATIONS	242
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	243-308
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	309



STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

A
PROGRESSIVE SERIES
OF
INDUCTIVE LESSONS
IN
LATIN,

BASED ON MATERIAL DRAWN FROM CLASSICAL
SOURCES, ESPECIALLY FROM CAESAR'S
COMMENTARIES.

BY
JOHN TETLOW, A.M.,
HEAD MASTER OF THE GIRLS' HIGH AND LATIN
SCHOOLS, BOSTON.

The mind should be introduced to principles through the medium of examples, and so should be led from the particular to the general—from the concrete to the abstract....

Children should be led to make their own investigations, to draw their own inferences. — HERBERT SPENCER'S ESSAY ON EDUCATION.

BOSTON:
PUBLISHED BY GINN & COMPANY.

1886.

LATIN DIPHTHONGS.

CHARACTER.	NAME.	PRONUNCIATION OF NAME.
<div> <div> <div>o</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>o</div> </div>		<div> <div>ō</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>(as sometimes heard in <i>whole</i>, i.e., the continental short o, not so broad as the o in <i>not</i>)</div>
<div> <div>ō</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>ō</div>		<div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>foregoing sound prolonged.¹</div> </div>
<div> <div>p</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>p</div>	<div> <div>pe</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>pe</div>	<div> <div>pay</div> <div>²</div> </div>
<div> <div>q</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>q</div>	<div> <div>qu</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>qu</div>	<div> <div>koo</div> </div>
<div> <div>r</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>r</div>	<div> <div>er</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>er</div>	<div> <div>e as in <i>met</i>; r</div> <div>trilled.</div> </div>
<div> <div>s</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>s</div>	<div> <div>es</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>es</div>	<div> <div>ess</div> </div>
<div> <div>t</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>t</div>	<div> <div>te</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>te</div>	<div> <div>tay</div> <div>²</div> </div>
<div> <div>Vowel:</div> <div> <div>u</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div> <div>ū</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> </div> <div>u</div> <div>ū</div>	<div> <div>u</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>ū</div>	<div> <div>ōo</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>ōō¹</div>
<div> <div>Consonant:</div> <div> <div>v</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div> <div>x</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> </div> <div>v</div> <div>x</div>	<div> <div>u</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>ix</div>	<div> <div>oo⁴</div> <div>eeks</div> </div>
<div> <div>[y</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>z</div>	<div> <div>ū</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> <div>.</div> </div> <div>zēta</div>	<div> <div>like French <i>u</i></div> <div>or German <i>ü</i></div> <div>as in Greek</div> </div>

2.

LATIN DIPHTHONGS.

ae	ae	ai ¹ (as in <i>aisle</i>)
au	au	ou ¹ (as in <i>house</i>)
oe	oe	oi ¹ (as in <i>toil</i>)
ui	ui	oo-ee ¹ (rapidly uttered)
eu	eu	eh-oo ¹ (rapidly uttered)

¹ The diphthongs and long vowels should occupy twice as much time in utterance as the short vowels.

² The sound here represented by *-ay* is approximate only; the true sound of Latin "e" has no *ee-vanish*.

³ *ee* here represents the pronunciation the letter "j" used by itself; e.g., in

oral spelling. In combination with other letters, "j" has the power of "y" in *yes*.

⁴ *oo* here represents the pronunciation of the letter "v" used by itself; e.g., in oral spelling. In combination with other letters, "v" has the power of "w" in *we*.

II.

SYLLABICATION.

3.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Au' - <u>di</u> -ō, ¹ <i>I hear.</i> | 3. Proe' - <u>li</u> -um, <i>battle.</i> |
| 2. Ge' - <u>ner</u> , <i>son-in-law.</i> | 4. A-mi' - <u>ci</u> '-ti-a, <i>friendship.</i> |

4. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that in each of the foregoing examples a *single consonant* stands between two vowels (see: **d**, Ex. 1; **n**, Ex. 2; **l**, Ex. 3; **m**, **c**, and **t**, Ex. 4). To which vowel is it joined in writing? Frame a rule for Syllabication in such cases.

5.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. An' -nus, <i>year.</i> | 3. Bel' -lum, <i>war.</i> |
| 2. Mit' -tō, <i>I send.</i> | 4. Ag' -ger, <i>mound.</i> |

6. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that in each of the foregoing examples a *consonant is doubled* between two vowels (see: **n-n**, Ex. 1; **t-t**, Ex. 2; **l-l**, Ex. 3; **g-g**, Ex. 4). To which vowel is each consonant joined in writing? Frame a rule for Syllabication in such cases.

7.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. A' -sper, <i>rough.</i> | 5. Bel' -gae, <i>the Belgae.</i> |
| 2. Frā' -trēs, <i>brothers.</i> | 6. Am' -plus, <i>ample.</i> |
| 3. Jā' -stus, <i>just.</i> | 7. Lin' -gua, <i>tongue.</i> |
| 4. Rō' -strum, <i>beak.</i> | 8. Ar' -ma, <i>arms.</i> |

8. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that in the foregoing examples *two or more consonants* stand between two vowels (see: **sp**, Ex. 1; **tr**, Ex. 2; **st**, Ex. 3; **str**, Ex. 4; **l-g**, Ex. 5; **m-pl**, Ex. 6; **n-gu**, Ex. 7; **r-m**, Ex. 8). Note, further, that such of these groups of consonants as can *begin a word* belong to the second vowel, and so *begin a syllable* (see Exs. 1-4); whereas, such of these groups

as cannot begin a word are divided (see Exs. 5-8). Frame a rule for Syllabication in such cases.

9.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ab'-e-ō** (*ab*, away; *eō*, I go), I go away.
2. **In-ī-quus** (*in-*, not; *aequus*, fair), unfair.
3. **Ab'-est** (*ab*, away; *est*, he is), he is away.
4. **Red'-i-mō** (*red-*, back; *emō*, I buy), I buy back.

10. OBSERVATION: Note that the foregoing examples are compounds, and that, in syllabication, the parts of each compound are treated as separate words. Frame a rule for the Syllabication of Compounds.

11.

EXERCISE.

Spell, syllabicate, and pronounce the following words:—

² **dēleō**, I destroy.

³ **impedimentum**, impediment.

⁴ **injūria**, injury.

⁴ **prōvincia**, province.

⁴ **inūtilis**,⁵ unprofitable.

⁴ **jūstitia**, justice.

² **oppidum**, town.

² **littera**, letter.

² **māgnus**,⁶ great.

² **occupō**, I seize.

⁴ **officium**, duty.

² **redeō**,⁷ I return.

² **adeō**,⁸ I go to.

² **dixit**,⁹ he said.

¹ The accented syllable of Latin words will be marked until the subject of accentuation has been treated.

² Accent the first syllable.

³ Accent the fourth syllable.

⁴ Accent the second syllable.

⁵ **inūtilis** (compound) = *in-*, not; *ūtilis*, useful.

⁶ The combination **gn** can begin a word.

⁷ **redeō** (compound) = *red-*, back; *eō*, I go.

⁸ **adeō** (compound) = *ad*, to; *eō*, I go.

⁹ **x**, though a double consonant (= **c** + **s**), is treated as a single consonant in syllabication.

III.

QUANTITY.

12.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Recū'sat, he refuses.</i> | 4. <i>Lau'dat, he commends.</i> |
| 2. <i>Ti'mēs, you fear.</i> | 5. <i>Proe'lum, battle.</i> |
| 3. <i>Jū'stus, just.</i> | 6. <i>Ævum, age.</i> |

13. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the italicized syllable in each of the foregoing examples contains a *long vowel* (see Exs. 1-3) or a *diphthong* (see Exs. 4-6). Such a syllable is *long*. Frame a rule for the Quantity of a Syllable containing a Long Vowel or Diphthong.

Note that the syllables *not italicized* in the foregoing examples contain a *short vowel*. Such syllables are *short*. Frame a rule for the Quantity of a Syllable containing a Short Vowel.

NOTE: For an exception to the rule implied in the last paragraph, see 15 below.

14.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>An'nus, year.</i> | 4. <i>Jū'stus, just.</i> |
| 2. <i>Bel'gae, the Belgae.</i> | 5. <i>Vāl'lum, wall.</i> |
| 3. <i>Lin'gua, tongue.</i> | 6. <i>Dux, leader.</i> |

15. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *vowel* of the italicized syllable in each of the foregoing examples is *followed by two consonants* (see Exs. 1-5) or by a *double consonant* (see x,¹ Ex. 6). The *vowel* so placed may be long (see Exs. 4 and 5) or short (see Exs. 1, 2, 3, and 6); but the *syllable* is *long*. Frame a rule for the Quantity of a Syllable whose Vowel is followed by Two Consonants or a Double Consonant.

NOTE: For an exception to the foregoing, see A. & G. 18, e; H. 16, III.; G. 11.

25. Latin verbs are divided into four groups called
CONJUGATIONS.

1. The First Conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive active has the characteristic vowel *-ā-* before the ending *-re*; as: *amā-re, to love*.

2. The Second Conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive active has the characteristic vowel *-ē-* before the ending *-re*; as: *monē-re, to warn*.

3. The Third Conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive active has the characteristic vowel *-e-* before the ending *-re*; as: *tege-re, to cover*.

4. The Fourth Conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive active has the characteristic vowel *-ī-* before the ending *-re*; as: *audī-re, to hear*.

26. Learn, with meanings, the Present Indicative and Infinitive of the following verbs, and tell to which Conjugation each belongs:—

VOCABULARY.

*cōn-firmō, -āre,*¹ *establish.*

*dē-leō, -ēre,*² *destroy.*

dūcō, -ere, *lead.*

emō, -ere, *buy.*

habeō, -ēre, *have.*

impediō, -ire, *hinder.*

laudō, -āre, *commend.*

maneō, -ēre, *remain.*³

mūniō, -ire, *fortify.*

probō, -āre, *approve.*³

*pūniō, -ire,*³ *punish.*

quaerō, -ere, *inquire.*³

*re-cūsō, -āre,*³ *refuse.*

regō, -ere, *rule.*

tegō, -ere, *cover.*

teneō, -ēre, *hold.*

timeō, -ēre, *fear.*

trāns-portō, -āre, *transport.*³

veniō, -ire, *come.*³

vestiō, -ire, *clothe.*

¹ In translating the indicative, supply the pronoun *I*.

² To be read: *cōnfirmāre, dē-īre, &c.*

³ English words or parts of words

that are borrowed from the Latin are printed in the vocabularies of this book in *this type*; English words or parts of words that are cognate with Latin words are printed in SMALL.

III.

QUANTITY.

12.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Recū'sat, he refuses.</i> | 4. <i>Lau'dat, he commends.</i> |
| 2. <i>Ti'mēs, you fear.</i> | 5. <i>Proe'llum, battle.</i> |
| 3. <i>Jū'stus, just.</i> | 6. <i>Ævum, age.</i> |

13. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the italicized syllable in each of the foregoing examples contains a *long vowel* (see Exs. 1-3) or a *diphthong* (see Exs. 4-6). Such a syllable is *long*. Frame a rule for the Quantity of a Syllable containing a Long Vowel or Diphthong.

Note that the syllables *not italicized* in the foregoing examples contain a *short vowel*. Such syllables are *short*. Frame a rule for the Quantity of a Syllable containing a Short Vowel.

NOTE: For an exception to the rule implied in the last paragraph, see 15 below.

14.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>An'nus, year.</i> | 4. <i>Jū'stus, just.</i> |
| 2. <i>Bel'gae, the Belgae.</i> | 5. <i>Vāl'lum, wall.</i> |
| 3. <i>Lin'gua, tongue.</i> | 6. <i>Dux, leader.</i> |

15. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *vowel* of the italicized syllable in each of the foregoing examples is *followed by two consonants* (see Exs. 1-5) or by a *double consonant* (see x,¹ Ex. 6). The *vowel* so placed may be long (see Exs. 4 and 5) or short (see Exs. 1, 2, 3, and 6); but the *syllable* is *long*. Frame a rule for the Quantity of a Syllable whose Vowel is followed by Two Consonants or a Double Consonant.

NOTE: For an exception to the foregoing, see A. & G. 18, c; H. 16, III.; G. 11.

II. 1. I approve. 2. He transports. 3. We commend. 4. They do not refuse. 5. You (pl.) establish. 6. You (sing.) do not commend. 7. They approve. 8. He refuses. 9. You (sing.) have. 10. We are not obeying. 11. I am holding. 12. He does not fear. 13. You (pl.) fear. 14. They are not remaining. 15. He has. 16. You (sing.) are remaining. 17. He does not commend. 18. I obey. 19. We transport. 20. I am remaining. 21. You (sing.) do not obey. 22. He establishes. 23. We do not approve. 24. You (pl.) have. 25. They are establishing.

33.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Probat. 2. Pārēmus. 3. Nōn laudant. 4. Recūsātis. 5. Maneō. 6. Timēs. 7. Cōfirmāmus. 8. Habētis. 9. Nōn tenet. 10. Recūsās. 11. Pāreō. 12. Probant. 13. Trānsportātis. 14. Nōn probō. 15. Manēmus.

II. 1. He holds. 2. They do not commend. 3. You (sing.) approve. 4. He does not obey. 5. We are remaining. 6. You (sing.) fear. 7. I am establishing. 8. You (pl.) approve. 9. They transport. 10. We do not have. 11. You (pl.) hold. 12. You (sing.) refuse. 13. They obey. 14. I do not fear. 15. I am commending.



LESSON III.

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE: CONJUGATIONS
III. AND IV.

34. Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Present Indicative Active of **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**): A. & G. p. 82; H. p. 94; G. p. 64.

35. Inflect (like **tegō**, **regō**, or **emō**) the Present Indicative Active of **dicō**, *I say*; **dūcō**, *I lead*; **mittō**, *I send*; **pōnō**, *I place*; **quaerō**, *I inquire*.

III.

QUANTITY.

12.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Recū'sat, he refuses.</i> | 4. <i>Lau'dat, he commends.</i> |
| 2. <i>Ti'mēs, you fear.</i> | 5. <i>Proe'llum, battle.</i> |
| 3. <i>Jū'stus, just.</i> | 6. <i>Æ'vum, age.</i> |

13. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the italicized syllable in each of the foregoing examples contains a *long vowel* (see Exs. 1-3) or a *diphthong* (see Exs. 4-6). Such a syllable is *long*. Frame a rule for the Quantity of a Syllable containing a Long Vowel or Diphthong.

Note that the syllables *not italicized* in the foregoing examples contain a *short vowel*. Such syllables are *short*. Frame a rule for the Quantity of a Syllable containing a Short Vowel.

NOTE: For an exception to the rule implied in the last paragraph, see 15 below.

14.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>An'nus, year.</i> | 4. <i>Jū'stus, just.</i> |
| 2. <i>Bel'gae, the Belgae.</i> | 5. <i>Vāl'lum, wall.</i> |
| 3. <i>Lin'gua, tongue.</i> | 6. <i>Dux, leader.</i> |

15. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *vowel* of the italicized syllable in each of the foregoing examples is *followed by two consonants* (see Exs. 1-5) or by a *double consonant* (see x,¹ Ex. 6). The *vowel* so placed may be long (see Exs. 4 and 5) or short (see Exs. 1, 2, 3, and 6); but the *syllable* is *long*. Frame a rule for the Quantity of a Syllable whose Vowel is followed by Two Consonants or a Double Consonant.

NOTE: For an exception to the foregoing, see A. & G. 18, c; H. 16, III.; G. 11.

40.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Dicis. 2. Pūnit. * 3. Absumus.¹ 4. Nōn laudātis.
5. Sunt. 6. Nōn dūcō. 7. Manent. 8. Impedimus. 9. Quae-
ritis. 10. Absum.¹ 11. Mūnis. 12. Nōn probās. 13. Estis.
14. Mittunt. 15. Tenēmus. 16. Venit.

II. 1. You (sing.) are. 2. You (pl.) do not refuse. 3. We
are away. 4. I am fortifying. 5. He sends. 6. I am not away.
7. He inquires. 8. You (pl.) are hindering. 9. They do not
have. 10. You (sing.) lead. 11. We obey. 12. They are.
13. We are sending. 14. We establish. 15. He does not come.
16. You (pl.) clothe.

↓ ¹ b before s is sounded like p; hence, pronounce *apsum*, *apsumus*, *apsunt*.

LESSON IV.

SUBSTANTIVES: FIRST DECLENSION.

NOTE: It is assumed that the teacher will here prepare the way by oral instruction for the declension of a Latin noun with the translation of its cases. For suggestions, see A. & G. § 31.

41. Learn the declension, with meanings, of **stella** (A. & G. 35) or **mēnsa** (H. 48; G. 27).

42. Define *Stem*, and give the stem¹ of **stella** (A. & G. 21, coarse type) or **mēnsa** (H. 46; G. 24).

43. Observe the *gender* of the substantives in the vocabulary of this lesson; then learn the Rule for *Gender*: A. & G. 35, to the second period; H. 48; G. 28.

44. Decline, giving stem, gender, and meanings, the substantives in the following

VOCABULARY.²

amicitia, -ae, F., *friendship*.

Aquitānia, -ae, F., *Aquitania*.³

Belgae,⁴ -arum, M., the *Belgae*⁵
(or *Belgians*).

causa, -ae, F., *cause*.

cōpia, -ae, F., *abundance*; in pl.,
forces, troops.

contrōversia, -ae, F., *dispute*.

Galba,⁵ -ae, M., *Galba*.³

injūria, -ae, F., *injury*.

patria, -ae, F., *native country*.

porta, -ae, F., *gate*.

prōvincia, -ae, F., *province*.

sententia, -ae, F., *opinion*.

¹ The stem vowel of the first declension will be treated as -ā- in this book, the long quantity being original. *Stellā* and *mēnsā* will therefore be considered the stems of *stella* and *mēnsa* respectively. The teaching of the grammars on this point is not uniform.

² The pupil should remember that the only object for which he is required to learn declensions is, that he may become so familiar with the forms as to be able to give the English equivalent of a Latin form, or the Latin equivalent of an English form, on the instant. In pre-

paring this vocabulary, therefore, he should not content himself with being able merely to name the cases of each substantive in their order, but should practise such exercises as the following: Express in Latin, of *friendship*, the *Belgians*, by *disputes*, to the *gate*, &c.; express in English, *Aquitāniae*, *causarum*, *injuriā*, *sententiās*, &c.

³ For fuller information, see the general vocabulary.

⁴ Omit the singular in declining.

⁵ Read A. & G. 75, 1; H. 130, 1, 1).

LESSON V.

ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS. — SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE. — ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT.

NOTE: It is assumed that the pupil is familiar with the structure of the simple sentence, or, failing this, that the teacher will orally explain such terms as *subject*, *predicate*, *object*, etc.

45.

EXAMPLES.¹

1. *Ab injuriā* (1, 31, 16)², *from injury*.
2. *Ā prōvinciā* (1, 33, 4), *(away) from the³ province*.
3. *Cum cōpiis* (4, 21, 3), *with the forces*.
4. *Dē injuriis* (1, 14, 6), *for injuries*.
5. *Ex* (or *ē*) *prōvinciā* (7, 65, 1), *from (out of) the province*.
6. *Prō patriā* (Cic. *Tusc.* 4, 19, 43), *in behalf of [one's] country*.
7. *Sine causā* (1, 14, 2), *without c⁴*

46. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:¹ Note (1) the *prepositions* in the foregoing examples, and (2) the *case of the substantives* with which they are used. Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives used with the foregoing Prepositions.

47. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:¹ A. & G. 152, *b*; H. 434; G. 418.

48. EXAMPLES.

1. **Aquītānia pertinet** (1, 1, 7), *Aquitania extends.*
2. **Contrōversia est** (6, 13, 5), *there is a³ dispute.*
3. **Belgae pertinent** (1, 1, 6), *the Belgians extend.*
4. **Patent portae** (Cic. Cat. 1, 5, 10), *the gates are open.*⁴
5. **Praestat amīcitia** (Cic. Lael. 5, 19), *friendship takes precedence.*⁴

49. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) the *number, person* and *cāse* of the *substantives*, (2) the *number* and *person* of the *verbs*, and (3) the *order of the words* in the foregoing examples. What is the usual order of *subject* and *predicate* (see Exs. 1-3)? What seems to be the effect when this order is *reversed* (see Exs. 4 and 5)? Frame rules (1) for the Case of the Subject of the sentence in Latin, (2) for the Number and Person of the Verb, and (3) for the Position of Subject and Predicate.

50. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 173, 204, 343, 344, *a*; H. 368, 460, 560, 561, *I*; G. 194, 202, 676, 675, 1, 1.

51. EXAMPLES.

1. **Causam probant** (6, 23, 7), *they approve the cause.*
2. **Sententiam laudant** (Sall. Cat. 53, 1), *they commend the opinion.*
3. **Amīcitiam cōfirmāre** (1, 3, 1), *to establish friendship.*
4. **Sententiās dīcere** (Caes. B.C. 1, 1, 2), *to express opinions.*
5. **Laudāmus dīvitiās** (Sall. Cat. 52, 22), *we commend riches.*⁴

52. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) the *class* (i.e., whether *transitive* or *intransitive*) to which the verbs belong, (2) the *case of the substantives* construed with them, and (3) the *order of the words* in the foregoing examples. Frame rules for the Case and Position of the Direct Object of a transitive verb in Latin.

53. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 237; H. 371; G. 327. For the order of the words, see the references in 50; also H. 561, II.

¹ The pupil should first study carefully the examples in connection with the paragraph designated "Observation and Inference," and should commit the examples to memory. Before consulting the sections in the grammar referred to under the heading "References for Verification," he should strive to discover for himself the principles which the examples illustrate, and to frame independently the rule for construction. When he has framed such a rule to the best of his ability, he may consult the grammar for the purpose of verifying or correcting his inferences or his phrase-

ology. The references, or their equivalent in grammatical English, should then be fixed in the memory for use in the exercises which follow.

² Citations given without name are from Caesar's Gallic War.

³ There is no article in Latin. In translation from Latin into English, the article must be supplied wherever the English usage requires it; in translation from English into Latin, the article must be disregarded.

⁴ *This type* in the English translation denotes emphasis.

LESSON VI.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES.

54.

VOCABULARY.¹

ab, ā,² prep. w. abl., *away from,*
from.

cum, prep. w. abl., *with.*

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, about.*

ē-dūcō, -ere, *lead out.*

ex, ē,³ prep. w. abl., *out of, from.*

Galliā, -ae, F., *Gaul.*

Genāva, -ae, F., *Geneva.*

longē, adv., *far.*

prō, prep. w. abl., *in front of, in be-*
half of, for.

pūgnō, -āre, *fight.*

red-dō, -ere, *return (trans.), restore.*

sine, prep. w. abl., *without.*

Tolōsa, -ae, F., *Toulouse.*

vīta, -ae, F., *life.*

55.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Galba dūcit. 2. Galba cōpiās dūcit. 3. Galba cōpiās ex Galliā dūcit. 4. Amīcitiam cōfirmant. 5. Cum Belgīs amīcitiam cōfirmant. 6. Belgae timent. 7. Belgae sine causā timent. 8. Genāva abest. 9. Genāva longē abest. 10. Genāva ā Tolōsā longē abest. 11. Dē injūriīs quaerit. 12. Vītam prō vītā reddunt.

II. 1. The Belgians lead-out.⁴ 2. The Belgians lead out their⁵ forces. 3. We are leading-out our⁵ forces from the province. 4. They are inquiring about the forces. 5. He establishes friendship. 6. We are establishing friendship with the Belgians. 7. You (sing.) fear without cause. 8. He leads his forces out-of Italy. 9. They are fighting for their⁵ country.

56. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Cōpiās ex prōvinciā ēdūcunt. 2. Dē pūgnā cōgnōscit. 3. Galliam ab injūriā dēfendit. 4. Messālla lacrimās nōn tenet. 5. Amicitiam recūsāmus, nōn appetimus.

II. 1. Toulouse is at a great distance (is-distant far) from Geneva. 2. They learn about the injuries. 3. Galba is transporting his⁵ forces from (out-of) Gaul. 4. We do not keep-back our⁵ tears. 5. You reject friendships, you do not seek after [them].⁶

¹ This vocabulary and subsequent special vocabularies will contain the words of the "Exercises" only; the words of the "Supplementary Exercises" will be found in the general vocabulary at the end of the book. Words once given in a special vocabulary will not be repeated in subsequent special vocabularies.

² Use **ab** before words beginning with a vowel; use **ā** before words beginning with a consonant. For fuller information, see general vocabulary.

³ Use **ex** before words beginning with a vowel; use **ex** or **ē** before words beginning with a consonant.

⁴ Words connected by a hyphen are to be treated in translation as a single expression.

⁵ Omit the possessive here. See A. & G. 197, c; H. 447; G. 299.

⁶ Words in brackets are to be omitted in translation.

LESSON VII.

SUBSTANTIVES : SECOND DECLENSION.

57. Learn the declension, with gender and meanings, of **servus** (or **hortus**), **puer**, **ager**, **vir**, **bellum** (or **templum**): A. & G. 38; H. 51; G. 29, 31.

58. Give the *stem* of each of the substantives in the foregoing paragraph, and explain the formation of the *nominative* from the stem. For this purpose read: A. & G., first paragraph of the note preceding 38, and first sentence of the second paragraph; H. 51, 1, 2, 1), 2), 4), 5); G. 29, 31, 32³.

59. Observe the *gender* of the substantives in the vocabulary of this lesson; then learn the Rule for Gender: A. & G. 39; H. 51; G. 30.

60. Decline, giving stem, gender, and meanings, the substantives in the following

VOCABULARY.¹

ager, -gri, m., <i>land, field</i> ; in pl., also <i>country districts</i> .	imperium, -ii, n., <i>command, control</i> .
castra, -ōrum, ² n., <i>camp</i> .	Lablēnus, ³ -ī, m., <i>Labienus</i> . ⁴
conloquium, -ii, n., <i>conference</i> .	lēgātus, -ī, m., <i>ambassador; lieutenant</i> .
frūmentum, -ī, n., <i>grain</i> (usually of harvested grain); in pl., <i>grain</i> (especially of standing grain).	mūrus, -ī, m., <i>wall</i> .
Galli, ² -ōrum, m., <i>the Gauls</i> .	oppidum, -ī, n., <i>town</i> (viewed as stronghold).
gener, -eri, m., <i>son-in-law</i> .	populus, -ī, m., <i>people, race</i> .
Helvētīi, ² -ōrum, m., <i>the Helvetians</i> .	proelium, -ii, n., <i>battle</i> .
hiberna, ² -ōrum, n., <i>winter-quarters</i> .	puer, -eri, m., <i>child, boy</i> .
impedimentum, -ī, n., <i>hindrance</i> ; in pl., <i>baggage</i> .	studium, -ii, n., <i>zeal; devotion; pursuit</i> .
	vīcus, -ī, m., <i>village</i> .
	vir, viri, m., <i>man</i> .

¹ See foot-note 2, Lesson IV.² Omit the singular in declining.³ See foot-note 5, Lesson IV.⁴ For fuller information, see general vocabulary.

LESSON VII

THE PROPOSITIONS IN — GENITIVES: POSSESSIVE
SUBSTANTIVE CONSTRUCTIVE

C.

EXAMPLES.

1. In Gallia septentrionalis (1, 12, 1), in *hærens* and *Gaul*.
2. In colloquium regis (1, 12, 1), in *come* to *the king*.
3. Præmenda ex agris in oppida septentrionalia & f. they collect
the grain from the country (districts) [and country in] into the
towns.
4. In rivo nemore (2, 1, 4), in *just* the *water* is the *spring*.
5. In arvis (1, 1, 1), in the *field*.
6. In Gallia in Iberia (1, 1, 1), a *consequenter* is *Gaul*.

62. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that in the first three of the foregoing examples in means *by* or *in*, and therefore answers the question *whence?* Note on the other hand, that in the last three examples in means *in* or *on*, and answers the question *where?* Note further the case of the substantives constructed with in in the two sets of examples. With what cases, then, may in be used, and with what difference of meaning? Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives used with in.

63. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 132, c. last two lines; H. 435, d. 1; G. 419.

64.

EXAMPLES.

1. In castris Helvætiôrum (1, 29, 1), in the *camp of* (i.e., belonging to) the *Helvetians*.
2. Oppidum Rêmôrum (2, 6, 1), a *town of* (i.e., belonging to) the *Remi*.
3. Divitiacô studium (1, 19, 2), the *devotion of* *Divitiacus* (*Divitiacus* manifests the devotion).
4. Fuga Gallôrum (1, 40, 6), the *flight of the Gauls* (the Gauls flee).
5. Prô injuriis populi (1, 30, 2), in *return for the injuries of* (i.e., done to) the *people*.
6. Britanniae imperium (2, 4, 7), *authority over* (i.e., exercised towards) *Britain*.

65. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) that the *genitive* in each of the foregoing examples limits a *substantive*, (2) that the *genitive* denotes a *different person or thing* from that denoted by the limited substantive, and (3) that the relation of the *genitive* to the limited substantive is (in most of the examples) expressed in English by the preposition *of*. Frame a rule for these and similar *Genitives*.

66. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 213; H. 393, 395.

67. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *order of the words* in the examples just considered. What seems to be the *usual position* of the *genitive* with reference to the substantive which it limits?

68. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: H. 565; G. 678.

69. OBSERVATION: Note further (1) that in Exs. 1 and 2 the *genitive* expresses *possession*, and may therefore be called a *Possessive Genitive*; (2) that in Exs. 3 and 4 the *genitive* expresses the *subject* of the feeling or action denoted by the limited substantive, and may therefore be called a *Subjective Genitive*; (3) that in Exs. 5 and 6 the *genitive* expresses the *object* of the action denoted by the limited substantive, and may therefore be called an *Objective Genitive*.

70. REFERENCES: A. & G. 214, 217; H. 396, I., II., III.; G. 360, 361, 1, 2.

71.

VOCABULARY.

ad-ministrō, -āre, *execute*.

Aeduī,¹ -ōrum, *m., the Aeduans*.

ap-petō, -ere, *strive to secure*.

bellum, -i, *n., war*.

beneficium, -ii, *n., benefit*.

Britannia,² -ae, *f., Britain*.

con-locō, -āre, *place*.

dē-pōnō, -ere, *put aside*.

Divitiacus,³ -i, *m., Divitiacus*.³

in, prep., *w. acc., into (opp. ex); w. abl., in, on*.

memoria, -ae, *f., remembrance*.

mittō, -ere, *send*.

neg-legō, -ere, *disregard, neglect*.

ob-tineō, -ēre, *hold*.

oc-cidō, -ere, *kill, slay*.

postulō, -āre, *demand*.

Rōmānī,¹ -ōrum, *m., the Romans*.

saxum, -i, *n., stone*.

socer, -erī, *m., father-in-law*.

vastō, -āre, *lay waste*.

72.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Labiēnus est in Galliā in hibernīs. 2. In Galliam lēgātum mittit. 3. Beneficiōrum memoriā nōn dēpōnimus. 4. Aeduōrum agrōs vastant. 5. Gener socerum occēdit. 6. Ab castrīs oppidum Aeduōrum longē abest. 7. Divitiacus Britanniae imperium obtinet. 8. Saxa in mūrō conlocant. 9. In castra cum impedimentīs veniunt. 10. Studium Galbae nōn negligit.

II. 1. They send ambassadors into the town. 2. We do not demand control of the war. 3. He strives-to-secure the friendship of the Romans. 4. The Romans are in winter-quarters. 5. The fathers-in-law kill their sons-in-law. 6. They execute the orders (imperium) of the lieutenant. 7. We do not disregard the wrongs (injūria) of the Aeduans. 8. The baggage is in the camp. 9. They come into camp without their baggage.

73.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Frūmentum in prōvinciam portant. 2. Sunt frūmenta in agrīs Aeduōrum. 3. Aeduōrum injūriās nōn negligit. 4. Fuga Gallōrum Rōmānōs commovet.

II. 1. He puts-aside the remembrance of his injuries. 2. The fields of the Aedui are at a great distance (are-distant far) from the camp. 3. They carry the baggage into the camp. 4. [There] are stones on the wall.

¹ Omit the singular in declining.

² See foot-note 5, Lesson IV.

³ For fuller information, see general vocabulary.

LESSON IX.

ADJECTIVES : FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

74.

EXAMPLES.

SINGULAR.

M. **Vir bonus** (Cic. *Off.* 3, 15, 61), *a good man.*F. **Villam bonam** (Cic. *Off.* 3, 13, 55), *a good country-house.*N. **Solō bonō** (Cat. *R. R.* 1), *by good soil.*

PLURAL.

M. **Virōs bonōs** (Cic. *Tusc.* 5, 10, 28), *good men.*F. **Bonās hōrās** (Mart. 1, 113), *good (i.e., valuable, precious) hours.*N. **Verbōrum bonōrum** (Cic. *Brut.* 66, 233), *of good (i.e., well-chosen) expressions.*

75. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) the *number, gender, and case* of the *substantives* in each of the foregoing examples, and (2) the *form* of the *adjective* associated with it. Does the Latin adjective, like the English, remain unchanged in form, or is it varied to suit the number, gender, and case of the substantive to which it belongs? Are Latin adjectives, then, declined?

76. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 186; H. 438; G. 285.

77. Learn the declension, with stems, of **bonus**: A. & G. 81; H. 147, 148; G. 33.

78. Learn the declension, with stems, of **miser** (or **liber**) and **niger** (**aeger** or **piger**): A. & G. 82; H. 149, 150; G. 34.

79. Decline, giving stems, the *adjectives* in the following.

VOCABULARY.

✓ **ad-scendō, -ere, ascend.****aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., ill, sick.****asper, -era, -erum, adj., rough, rugged.**

dividō, -ere, <i>separate.</i>	periculum, -i, n., <i>danger, peril.</i>
im-plōrō, -āre, <i>implore.</i>	✓ prae-cēdō, -ere, <i>excel.</i>
jugum, -i, n., YOKE, (mount.) <i>ridge.</i>	re-linguō, -ere, <i>leave behind.</i>
lacrima, -ae, f., <i>TEAR.</i>	reliquus, -a, -um, adj., <i>remaining.</i>
liber, -era, -erum, <i>free.</i>	Rhodanus, -i, m., <i>the Rhone.</i>
māgnus, -a, -um, adj., <i>great.</i>	Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., <i>Roman.</i>
multus, -a, -um, adj., <i>much; in</i>	Sēquanī, -ōrum, m., <i>the Sequani.</i>
pl., <i>many.</i>	servus, -i, m., <i>slave.</i>
noster, -tra, -trum, adj., <i>our.</i>	superō, -āre, <i>conquer, defeat.</i>
numerus, -i, m., <i>number.</i>	

80. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *order of the words* in the examples of 74. What seems to be the usual position of the adjective with respect to its substantive?

81. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 343, c; II. 565, with 1; G. 678.

82. Decline together, with meanings: **puer aeger**, *a sick child*; **jugum asperum**, *a rugged ridge*; **populus Rōmānus** (in sing.), *the Roman people*; **reliquae cōpiae** (in pl.), *the remaining forces.*

83.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Populī Rōmānī amicitiam recūsāt. 2. Līberōs Galliae populōs superat. 3. Multōs puerōs aegrōs relinquant. 4. Multīs dē¹ causīs² Helvētīi reliquōs Gallōs praecedunt. 5. Māgnū servōrum numerum habet. 6. Rhodanus prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētīis dividit.

II. 1. The Rhone separates the Sequani from our province. 2. Our forces are ascending the rugged ridge. 3. The sick children are in¹ great danger. 4. He implores with¹ many tears. 5. He leads-out the remaining forces of the Helvetians.

84.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrant. 2. Divitiāci māgnū in^s populū Rōmānū studium cōgnōscit. 3. Multīs

dē causis **in** jugō asperō lēgātum relinquit. 4. Lēgātum māgnō cum periculō in Galliam mittō.

II. 1. For¹ many reasons our forces excel the Helvetians.
2. The **sick** child implores aid with many tears. 3. The free
races of **Gaul** refuse the friendship of our lieutenant.

¹ A. & G. 345, a; G. 680, 2.

² Translate: *for many reasons*.

✓ ³ Translate: *to*.

⁴ See 83, I., sent. 4. ✗

LESSON X.

ADJECTIVES: ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATE. — DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

85.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Amicitia** numquam molesta est (Cic. Lael. 6, 22), *friendship is never troublesome*.
2. **Verae amicitiae sempiternae** sunt (Cic. Lael. 9, 32), *true friendships are everlasting*.
3. **Fortuna caeca** est (Cic. Lael. 15, 54), *Fortune is blind*.
4. **Imbecilla** est **natura** (Cic. Lael. 17, 63), *nature is weak*.¹
5. **Tanta** est **stultitiae incōstantia** (Cic. Cat. Maj. 2, 4), *such is the inconsistency*¹ of folly.
6. **Sumus otiosī** (Cic. Lael. 5, 17), *we are at-leisure*.¹
7. **At**² **sunt morōsī, et anxii, et iracundī senēs**³ (Cic. Cat. Maj. 18, 65), *but; you will say,*² *the old are full-of-whims, uneasy, and irritable*.¹

86. OBSERVATION: Compare the foregoing examples with those of 74. Note that in the latter the adjectives simply qualify their substantives *without the intervention of a verb*, whereas in the examples of 85 the adjectives are connected with their substantives by some form of the verb **sum**. The adjectives of 74 merely designate an *attribute* or quality, and are called *Attributive Adjectives*; the adjectives of 85 unite with the verb to form the predicate, and are called *Predicate Adjectives*. Note, further, that the predicate

adjective, like the attributive, agrees⁴ with its substantive *in gender, number, and case*.

87. REFERENCES: A. & G. 186, *a, b*; H. 438, 2; G. 284, I., 285, 202².

88. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *order of the words* in the examples of **85**. Does the predicate adjective appear regularly to *follow* or to *precede* the verb (see Exs. 1-5)? What appears to be the effect when this order is *reversed* (see Exs. 6, 7)? Why is the subject placed *last* in Ex. 5? Why does *Imbēcilla est* stand at the *beginning* of the sentence in Ex. 4?

89. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 343, with *a*, 344, *a*; H. 560, 561, I., II.; G. 676, 1, 2, 3, 675, 1, 1.

90.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Maurō cārus** (Sall. *Jug.* 108, 1), *dear to the Moor*.
2. **Populō Rōmānō periculōsum** (1, 33, 3), *dangerous to the Roman people*.
3. **Castrīs idōneum** (1, 49, 1), *suitable for a camp*.
4. **Helvētiīs amīcus** (1, 9, 3), *friendly to the Helvetians*.
5. **Cupidīs⁵ odiōsum et molestum** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 14, 47), *vexatious and annoying to [those who are] desirous*.
6. **Fīnitimī Belgīs** (2, 2, 3), *adjacent to the Belgians*.
7. **Inimīcum Pompējō** (Sall. *Cat.* 19, 1), *hostile to Pompey*.

91. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) the *meaning* of the *adjectives* in the foregoing examples, and (2) the *case* of the *substantives* construed with them. Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives construed with such Adjectives as the foregoing.

92. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 234, *a*; H. 391, I.; G. 356.

93. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *order of the words* in the examples of **90**. Does the dative appear regularly to *follow* or to *precede* the adjective (see Exs. 1-5)?

94.

VOCABULARY.

adversus, -a, -um, adj., unsuccessful, adverse.	jūstus, -a, -um, adj., just, founded in right.
aedificium, -ii, n., building.	magister, -tri, m., master; teacher.
amicus, -a, -um, adj., friendly, favorably-disposed.	miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched.
bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj., warlike.	✓ numquam, adv., never.
cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear.	periculōsus, -a, -um, adj., dangerous, perilous.
✓ crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., frequent, numerous.	✓ perniciōsus, -a, -um, adj., destructive, ruinous.
discipulus, -i, m., pupil.	pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., beautiful.
equus, -i, m., horse.	socius, -ii, m., ally.
finitimus, -a, -um, adj., bordering on, adjacent.	✓ supplicium, -ii, n., punishment.
Germani, -ōrum, m., the Germans.	templum, -i, n., temple.
grātus, -a, -um, adj., pleasant, agreeable.	victōria, -ae, f., victory.

95.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Lēgātum māgnō cum periculō mittit. 2. Victōria Germanōrum populō Rōmānō periculōsa est. 3. Multī socii agrī in castris manent. 4. Germāni asperī et bellicōsi sunt. 5. Supplicium socerī generō nōn est grātum. 6. Helvētīi sunt liberī. 7. Magister discipulis cārus est, discipulī magistrō. 8. In Britannia sunt crēbra aedificia.

II. 1. The Romans have beautiful temples. 2. Divitiacus is favorably-disposed to the Helvetians. 3. The horses of our lieutenant are beautiful. 4. The authority (imperium) of the Roman people in Gaul is founded-in-right. 5. Aquitania is adjacent to the Roman province. 6. The life of slaves is wretched. 7. An unsuccessful battle is ruinous to the Romans. 8. Free men are never wretched.

96.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Victōriae cōpiarum nostrarum viris bonis gratae sunt. 2. Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis obsepat. 3. Reliquos Belgas

in officiō continet. 4. Diligentia discipulōrum magistris grāta est.
 5. Divitiaci māgnum in populum Rōmānum studium cōgnōscit.
 6. Nostri equi nōn sunt nigri, sed rubri.

II. 1. The idleness of pupils is annoying to their teachers.
 2. The Belgians are free. 3. Ariovistus is savage, passionate,
 [and] headstrong. 4. He selects a place suitable for a camp.
 5. He carries-on war for (dē) many reasons. 6. The Helvetians
 excel the rest-of-the (*i.e.*, remaining) Gauls.

¹ See foot-note 4, Lesson V.

² At here introduces an objection which the speaker supposes will suggest itself to the minds of his hearers.

³ *senēs*, the old, belongs to the third declension, which will be treated later.

⁴ *ōtiōsī* in Ex. 6 agrees with *nōs*, *we*, the omitted subject of *sumus*.

⁵ A. & G. 188; H. 441, 1; G. 195, 1.

⁶ *sc. cārī sunt*.

LESSON XI.

VERBS: PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF BOTH VOICES.

97. Learn the inflection and synopsis, with meanings,¹ of the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative of *sum*: A. & G. p. 68; H. p. 84; G. p. 50.

98. Inflect (like *sum*) in the same tenses: *absum*; also learn the synopsis.

99. Learn the inflection and synopsis, with meanings,¹ of the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative, Active and Passive, of *amō*: A. & G. pp. 76, 78; H. pp. 86, 88; G. pp. 54, 56.

100. Inflect (like *amō*) in the same tenses of both voices: *cōfirmō*, *laudō*, *probō*; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

101. Learn (as in 99) the inflection and synopsis of *moneō* (or *dēleō*): A. & G. p. 80; H. pp. 90, 92; G. pp. 58, 60.

102. Inflect (like *moneō* or *dēleō*): *habeō*, *teneō*, *timeō*; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

103. Learn (as in 99) the inflection and synopsis of *tegō* (*regō* or *emō*): A. & G. p. 82; H. pp. 94, 96; G. pp. 64, 66.

104. Inflect (like *tegō*, *regō*, or *emō*): *dūcō*, *mittō*, *pōnō*; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

105. Learn (as in 99) the inflection and synopsis of *audiō*: A. & G. p. 86; H. pp. 98, 100; G. pp. 68, 70.

106. Inflect (like *audiō*): *impediō*, *pūniō*, *vestiō*; also learn the synopsis of these verbs. ✓

¹ The teacher will make such oral explanations on the Latin use of the tenses here considered as may be needed to lead the pupil to a correct and (for present

purposes) adequate translation of the paradigms. See A. & G. 276, 277, 278; H. 466, 467, I., II., 468, 469, I., II., 470; G. 218, 222, 234.

LESSON XII.

EXERCISES ON THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF BOTH VOICES.

107.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. *Abestis*. 2. *Laudāmur*. 3. *Cōfirmābās*. 4. *Ha-
bēbō*. 5. *Tenēbuntur*. 6. *Dūcētur*. 7. *Mittēbantur*.
8. *Mūniēbātis*. 9. *Vestiēbāmur*. 10. *Aberat*. 11. *Recūsās*.

12. Probābis. 13. Habēris. 14. Dūcēmini. 15. Erimus. 16. Nōn pūniunt. 17. Pōnitur. 18. Impediēbāris. 19. Manet. 20. Nōn timēbunt. 21. Erāmus. 22. Vestīre. 23. Tenēbātur. 24. Laudābor. 25. Nōn dīcimus. 26. Quacrēbam. 27. Pūniēbar. 28. Nōn veniētis. 29. Aberis. 30. Trānsportantur.

II. 1. I do not obey. 2. I am led. 3. We shall be commended. 4. They were saying. 5. You (pl.) were not feared. 6. He will obey. 7. We were establishing. 8. They were sent. 9. We shall inquire. 10. I was coming. 11. I shall be away. 12. We are feared. 13. The camp will be fortified. 14. They do not refuse. 15. He will be clothed. 16. You (sing.) were hindered. 17. We were. 18. They will remain. 19. I am held. 20. You will be sent. 21. He was led. 22. They were coming. 23. It is-in-process-of-fortification.¹ 24. We do not approve. 25. He will have. 26. You (sing.) punished. 27. You were not obeying. 28. We were hindered. 29. You (pl.) will transport. 30. I shall be feared.

108.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Nōn manēbant. 2. Dūcimini. 3. Vestīre. 4. Impediēbar. 5. Trānsportātur. 6. Nōn recūsābis. 7. Tenēbāmini. 8. Mittēmur. 9. Dicitis. 10. Eram. 11. Aberātis. 12. Pōnuntur. 13. Probābuntur. 14. Cōfirmābis. 15. Mūnient. 16. Pūniēmini. 17. Nōn timēbantur. 18. Recūsābās. 19. Manēbant. 20. Mittitur.

II. 1. We shall obey. 2. We were not commended. 3. You (pl.) were coming. 4. You (sing.) will be hindered. 5. We were away. 6. We are led. 7. You do not have. 8. He will be punished. 9. They were inquiring. 10. He will be. 11. He will say. 12. It was-in-process-of-fortification.² 13. You (sing.) were praised. 14. I shall be away. 15. We shall be clothed. 16. You were held. 17. They do not approve. 18. You (sing.) are not feared. 19. I am sent. 20. I shall be punished.

¹ Present passive of *mūnīō*.² Imperfect passive.

LESSON XIII.

ABLATIVES: MEANS OR INSTRUMENT AND VOLUNTARY AGENT.

109.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Frūmentō** juvāre (2, 3, 3), *to aid [him] with grain.*
2. **Ut fūmō** significābātur (2, 7, 4), *as was made evident by the smoke.*
3. **Armīs** contendere (2, 13, 2), *to contend with arms.*
4. **Copulīs** continēbantur (3, 13, 8), *they were held fast by means of grapnel-hooks.*
5. **Castra vāllō** fossāque mūnīre (2, 5, 6), *to fortify the camp with a rampart and a ditch.*

110. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing examples, that the substantives which designate the *means* or *instrument by which* the action expressed by the verb is performed, are in the *ablative*. Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives denoting Means or Instrument.

111. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 248; H. 420; G. 403¹.

112.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ab Suēbīs** premēbantur (4, 1, 2), *they were harassed by the Suebi.*
2. **Sī** postulātur ā populō (Cic. Off. 2, 17, 58), *if the people demand it (lit., if it is demanded by the people).*
3. **Ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque** . . . (1, 31, 4), *[invited] by the Arverni and Sequani.*
4. **Ab Divitiacō** . . . (1, 32, 1), *[delivered] by Divitiacus.*
5. **A Labiēnō** . . . (1, 22, 1), *[held] by Labienus.*

113. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Compare the *ablatives* in the foregoing examples with those of 109. Note that the *ablatives*

in 109 designate *things* used as *instruments*, and that they are not accompanied by a preposition; but that the ablatives in 112 designate *persons* acting as *voluntary agents*, and that they are accompanied by the preposition *ā* or *ab*. How, then, is the Agent, as distinguished from the Instrument, to be expressed in Latin?

114. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 246; H. 415, I.; G. 403².

115.

VOCABULARY.

ac-cūsō, -āre, call to account.	fossa, -ae, f., ditch, moat.
aqua, -ae, f., water.	fuga, -ae, f., flight.
Ariovistus, -ī, m., Ariovistus. ¹	fūmus, -ī, m., smoke.
com-moveō, -ēre, disturb, disquiet.	pateō, -ēre, lie open, extend.
com-pleō, -ēre, fill.	praemium, -ii, n., reward.
concilium, -ii, n., council.	-que, ² conj., and.
con-vocō, -āre, call together, con- voke.	sarmenta, -ōrum, n. (usu. pl.), light branches.
dicō, -ere, say, express.	sīgnificō, -āre, show, make evident.
et, ² conj., and.	tribūnus, -ī, m., tribune. ¹
ex-citō, -āre, stimulate, excite.	vāllum, -ī, n., wall, rampart.
ex-pellō, -ere, drive out, expel.	

116.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Fossam aquā complent. 2. Ab Aeduīs accūsātur.
3. Castra vāllō fossāque mūniēbant. 4. Concilium ā Belgīs convocābitur. 5. Sarmentīs fossās Rōmānōrum complēbimus. 6. Sententiae ā tribūnīs dicēbantur. 7. Rōmānī adversō proeliō et fugā Gallōrum commoventur. 8. Superābuntur Belgae, expellentur Germānī.

II. 1. The Germans will be defeated by the Gauls.
2. I shall fortify the camp with a rampart. 3. The forces of the Gauls are defeated by Ariovistus. 4. The Helvetians were adjacent to the Roman province. 5. He will stimulate the tribunes by great rewards. 6. The camp, as (*ut*) was made evident by the smoke, extended over-a-wide-space (*latē, adv.³*). 7. The baggage was held by our-men.⁴
8. The ditches will be filled with water.

117.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Oppidum *nātūrā* loci mūniebātur. 2. Concilium ab *légātō* convocātur. 3. Frūmenta in agris *mātūra* nōn erant. 4. Castris *idōneum* locum *dēligēs*. 5. Increpantur atque incūsantur reliqūi Belgae ā Nerviis. 6. Undique loci *nātūrā* Helvētīi continentur.

II. 1. The camp will be defended by our-men.⁴ 2. A place suitable for a camp is selected. 3. The towns were fortified, and the grain was conveyed from the country districts into the towns. 4. The lieutenant will be harassed with difficulties by the Veneti.

¹ See the general vocabulary.

² et, and, simply connects; -que, and, implies close connection and is enclitic (appended to the second member); atque (&c), and also, gives emphasis to

the second member: A. & G. 156, a; H. 554, I., 2; G. 477, 478, 479.

³ Place the adverb before the verb: A. & G. 343; H. 567; G. 676 with Rem.

⁴ See foot-note 5, Lesson X.



LESSON XIV.

SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: MUTE STEMS.

118. Learn the paradigms of declension given in the following sections of the grammar: A. & G. 46; H. 57, 58, 59; G. 54.

119. Decline:¹ *prīnceps*, -*ipis*, M., *chief*; *rēx*, -*gis*, M., *king*; *dux*, -*cis*, C.,² *leader*; *mīles*, -*itis*, M., *soldier*; *caput*, -*itis*, N., *head*; *jūdex*, -*icis*, C.,² *judge*; *rādīx*, -*icis*, F., *root*; *lapis*, -*idis*, M., *stone*; *custōs*, -*ōdis*, C.,² *guard*.

120. Note that the *stems* of the foregoing nouns are: *prīncip-*, *rēg-*, *duc-*, *mīlit-*, *capit-*, *jūdic-*, *rādīc-*, *lapīd-*, *custōd-*.

121. Explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominatives* in 119: A. & G. 44, 45, *a* (first sentence), *b* (first two sentences), *c* (entire); H. 57, 2, 58, 1, 2), 3), 5), 59, 1, 3); G. 51 (entire).

122. Decline together, with meanings:¹ *dux Rōmānus*, a Roman leader; *lēx dūra*, a harsh law; *eques noster*, our horseman; *caput māgnū*, a large head; *vōx libera*, free speech; *jūdex jūstus*, a just judge.

123.

VOCABULARY.³

cadō, -ere, *fall*.

in-fluō, -ere, *flow into, flow*.

Juba, -ae, M., *Juba*.⁴

Ōceanus, -ī, M., *ocean*.

paucī, -ae, -a, adj. (sing. rare), *few*.

pedes, -itis, M., *foot-soldier*.

per-turbō, -āre, *disturb*.

Procillus, -ī, M., *Procillus*.⁴

Rhēnus, -ī, M., *the Rhine*.

trā-dūcō, -ere, *lead across*.

trahō, -ere, *draw, drag*.

vitium, -ī, N., *fault*.

vōx, *vōcis*, F., *voice; speech; utterance, outcry*.

124.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Lēgēs reddit*. 2. *Rēx Germānōrum est in Galliā*. 3. *Equitēs ex oppidō peditēsque mittuntur ā rēge Jubā*. 4. *Ducēs cōpiās trādūcēbant*. 5. *Ducis vitium mīlitibus perniciōsum est*. 6. *Peditum vōcibus equitēs perturbābantur*. 7. *Paucī dē nostrīs equitibus cadunt*. 8. *Militēs lapidibus pūgnant*. 9. *Procillus ā custōdibus in fugā trahēbātur*. 10. *Rhēnus multis capitibus⁵ in Ōceanum influit*.

II. 1. The laws will be restored. 2. The Rhine has many sources (heads). 3. King Juba sends many horsemen from the town. 4. The guards were dragging Procillus in their flight. 5. The forces of the leaders will be led across. 6. The outcries of the soldiers disturbed the leader. 7. The flight of the horsemen was fraught-with-danger (*periculōsus*, adj.) to the foot-soldiers.

125.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Contrōversiae rēgum compōnentur. 2. In pūgnā militis officia praestabat. 3. Sēquani caput dēmittunt. 4. Militēs ab signis discēdent. 5. Dux in vallō custōdēs dispōnit. 6. Etiam militum vōcibus carpēbātur.

II. 1. The judges will settle the disputes. 2. The foot-soldiers were forsaking (withdrawing from) their standards. 3. I shall perform the duties of a leader in the fight. 4. Guards were placed at intervals on the wall by the leader. 5. Even the common-soldiers (*mīles*) were reviling the leader with outcries.

¹ See foot-note 2, Lesson IV.

² Common gender, i.e., masculine or feminine.

³ See also, for vocab., 119 and 122.

⁴ See general vocabulary.

⁵ Translate: *mouths*.



LESSON XV.

VERBS: PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF BOTH VOICES. — PRINCIPAL PARTS.

126. Learn the inflection and synopsis, with meanings,¹ of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative of *sum*: A. & G. pp. 68, 69; H. p. 84; G. pp. 50, 51.

127. Learn, as in 126, the inflection and synopsis of *absum*.²

128. Learn the inflection and synopsis, with meanings,¹ of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, Active and Passive, of *amō*: A. & G. pp. 76, 78; H. pp. 86, 88; G. pp. 55, 57.

129. Inflect (like *amō*) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: *cōfirmō*, *establish*; *laudō*, *commend*; *also learn the synopsis of these verbs*.

130. Learn, as in 128, the inflection and synopsis of **moneō** (or **dēleō**): A. & G. p. 80; H. pp. 90, 92; G. pp. 59, 61.

131. Inflect (like **moneō** or **dēleō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **habeō**,³ *have, hold*; **compleō**,⁴ *fill*; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

132. Learn, as in 128, the inflection and synopsis of **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**): A. & G. p. 82; H. pp. 94, 96; G. pp. 65, 67.

133. Inflect (like **tegō**, **regō**, or **emō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **dūcō**,⁵ *lead*; **mittō**,⁶ *send*; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

134. Learn, as in 128, the inflection and synopsis of **audiō**: A. & G. p. 86; H. pp. 98, 100; G. pp. 69, 71.

135. Inflect (like **audiō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **pūniō**, *punish*; **vestiō**, *clothe*.

136. OBSERVATION: In committing to memory the forms of the verbs thus far introduced, the learner may have observed the following facts:—

1. The Present, Imperfect, and Future tenses, Active and Passive, in the several conjugations, have a common stem. This stem may be obtained by cutting off the syllable *-re* from the *Present Infinitive Active*, and is called the *Present Stem*. Thus the present stem of **amō** is **amā-**; the present stem of **moneō** (**dēleō**) is **monē-** (**dēlē-**); of **tegō** (**regō**, **emō**) is **tege-** (**rege-**, **eme-**); of **audiō** is **audī-**. Again, the *Present Infinitive Active* shows to which conjugation the verb belongs.

2. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses of the Active Voice, in the several conjugations, have a common stem. *This stem* may be obtained by cutting off the person-ending *-t*

from the third person singular of the *Perfect Indicative Active*, and is called the *Perfect Stem*. Thus the perfect stem of **amō** is **amāvī-**; the perfect stem of **moneō** (**dēleō**) is **monuī-** (**dēlēvī-**); of **tegō** (**regō**, **emō**) is **tēxī-** (**rēxī-**, **ēmī-**); of **audiō** is **audīvī-**.

3. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses of the Passive Voice, in the several conjugations, are made up of the forms of **sum** in combination with the *Perfect Participle*.

137. INFERENCE: In view of the foregoing observed facts, what parts of the verb, besides the *Present Indicative Active*, are, from their importance, entitled to be called the *Principal Parts*?

138. VERIFICATION: The principal parts of **amō**, *love*, **moneō**, *warn*, **dēleō**, *destroy*, **tegō**, *cover*, **regō**, *rule*, **emō**, *buy*, **audiō**, *hear*, are:

PRES. IND. ACT.	PRES. INF. ACT.	PERF. INDIC. ACT.	PERF. PART. PASS.
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitus
dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētus
tegō	tegere	tēxī	tectus
regō	regere	rēxī	rēctus
emō	emere	ēmī	ēemptus
audiō	audire	audīvī	audītus

¹ The teacher will make such oral explanations on the Latin use of the tenses here considered as may be needed to lead the pupil to a correct and (for present purposes) adequate translation of the paradigms. The two meanings of the Latin perfect, and the distinction between the imperfect and the historical perfect, should receive special notice. See A. & G. 277, 279, 280, 281, also 115, b, c; H. 468, 469, I., II., 471, I., II., 6, 472, 473; G. 222, 223, 226, 227, 231, 232, 233, 236.

² The perf. indic. of **absum** is **āfui**.

³ The perf. indic. act. of **habeō** is **habuī**; the perf. participle is **habitus**.

⁴ The perf. indic. act. of **compleō** is **complēvī**; the perf. participle is **complētus**.

⁵ The perf. indic. act. of **dūcō** is **dūxī**; the perf. participle is **ductus**.

⁶ The perf. indic. act. of **mitto** is **misi**; the perf. participle is **missus**.

LESSON XVI.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES.

139. Learn from the general vocabulary (at the end of the book) the Principal Parts of the verbs in the following

VOCABULARY.

ab-dūcō, *lead away.*

con-veniō, *COME together.*

con-vocō, *call together.*

ē-nūntiō, *divulge.*

frangō, *BREAK, crush.*

per-moveō, *move deeply.*

pōnō, *place.*

postulō, *demand.*

mūniō, *fortify.*

teneō, *hold.*

trā-dō, *surrender.*

140.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Cōfirmāvī. 2. Cōfirmābam. 3. Audītus erās.
 4. Ēnūntiāverō. 5. Vestītus eris. 6. Convocātī estis.
 7. Convocābāminī. 8. Postulāverat. 9. Mūnītī erant.
 10. Habitus es. 11. Frēgeritis. 12. Vestītī erunt.
 13. Convēnimus. 14. Conveniēbāmus. 15. Posueram.
 16. Missī sunt. 17. Mittēbantur. 18. Āfuerant. 19. Nōn habuerimus.
 20. Complēvīstī. 21. Complēbās. 22. Permōtus est. 23. Fuerāmus.
 24. Trādītus eram. 25. Permōtus erit. 26. Nōn pūnīvīt.
 27. Nōn pūniēbat. 28. Convocātī erātis. 29. Āfuerit. 30. Ductī eritis.
 31. Posuerunt. 32. Pōnēbant. 33. Laudātī sumus. 34. Laudābāmur.
 35. Complēverās. 36. Nōn convēnerint. 37. Audītī erāmus.
 38. Frēgīstī. 39. Frangēbās. 40. Fuīstī. 41. Erātis. 42. Fuērunt.

- II. 1. I was clothed. 2. I was (habitually) clothed.
 3. You (sing.) had been surrendered. 4. We shall have been called together.
 5. You (pl.) will have come together. 6. He had heard. 7. He has filled. 8. They will have

been led away. 9. You (pl.) had been deeply moved.
 10. You (sing.) were sent. 11. You (sing.) were (habitually) sent. 12. I shall have held. 13. I had fortified.
 14. You (pl.) clothed. 15. You (pl.) used to clothe.
 16. You (pl.) were clothing. 17. You (sing.) have divulged.
 18. You (pl.) had been. 19. He had been led. 20. You (sing.) will have been commended. 21. They demanded.
 22. They were demanding. 23. They were wont to commend. 24. You (pl.) were away. 25. He was wont to be deeply moved. 26. You (pl.) had held. 27. We shall not have been led. 28. We shall have broken. 29. He will have been. 30. I was in the habit of punishing.
 31. You (sing.) have not been away. 32. We were not heard. 33. You (pl.) used to hear. 34. They fortified the camp. 35. They were fortifying the camp. 36. The camp was in process of fortification. 37. You (sing.) will have divulged. 38. They have not been. 39. You (sing.) have not punished. 40. They had led away. 41. We had commended. 42. He will have held.

141.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. *Permōtī erāmus.* 2. *Abductus est.* 3. *Complēverit.*
 4. *Trādiderātis.* 5. *Tenuērunt.* 6. *Missī erimus.* 7. *Nōn habuerās.* 8. *Āfuīstis.* 9. *Fuit.* 10. *Erat.* 11. *Cōfirmāverint.*
 12. *Positī erant.* 13. *Missus sum.* 14. *Mittēbar.* 15. *Pūnitus eram.* 16. *Pūniēbantur.* 17. *Frēgerant.* 18. *Abductus erat.*
 19. *Posuimus.* 20. *Pōnēbāmus.*

II. 1. We divulged. 2. They had been placed. 3. They have been crushed. 4. You (sing.) will have been led away. 5. We had demanded. 6. He will have had. 7. You (sing.) will have been. 8. I shall have fortified. 9. I shall have been clothed. 10. I led. 11. We did not lead. 12. You (pl.) were not leading. 13. You were wont to be led. 14. They had come together. 15. He had been away. 16. You (pl.) had been called together. 17. They will have been filled. 18. I shall have established. 19. You (sing.) had been. 30. They were away.

LESSON XVII.

AGREEMENT OF THE PARTICIPLE IN COMPOUND
TENSES. — DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT.

142.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Mūrus nūdātus est** (2, 6, 2), *the wall was stripped.*
2. **Gallia posita est** (1, 16, 2), *Gaul is situated.*
3. **Proelium restitūtum est** (1, 53, 1), *the battle was renewed.*
4. **Repertī sunt equitēs Rōmānī** (Cic. Cat. 1, 4, 9), *Roman knights were found.*
5. **Tabulae repertae sunt** (1, 29, 1), *lists were found.*
6. **Castra posita erant** (2, 8, 3), *the camp had been pitched.*

143. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *gender, number, and case* of the *participle* and of the *substantive* in each of the foregoing examples. Does the *participle*, like the *adjective*, agree with its *substantive*? Frame a rule for the *Gender, Number, and Case* of the *Participle*¹ in the tenses for completed action.

144. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 186; H. 438, 1.

145.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Umbrēnō negōtium dat** (Sall. Cat. 40, 1), *he assigns the work to Umbrenus.*
2. **Dumnorigī custōdēs pōnit** (1, 20, 6), *he puts guards over Dumnorix.*
3. **Neque nostrīs cēdēbant** (Caes. B. C. 1, 57, 3), *nor did they yield to our men.*
4. **Labiēnō timēbat** (7, 56, 2), *he feared for [the safety of] Labienus.*
5. **Patriae cōsulere** (Nep. Epam. 10, 1), *to take thought for [the welfare of] one's country.*
6. **Praeterita Divitiacō condōnāre** (1, 20, 6) *to overlook the past [out of regard] for Divitiacus.*

7. **Favere Helvētīs** (1, 18, 8), *to favor the Helvetians.*
8. **Lēgātīs imperat** (5, 1, 1), *he gives orders to the lieutenants.*
9. **Vercingetorigi pārent** (7, 63, 9), *they obey (i.e., yield obedience to) Vercingetorix.*
10. **Lacedaemoniis servīre** (Nep. Alc. 9, 4), *to be enslaved to the Lacedaemonians.*
- ✓ 11. **Semper cīvitatī indulserat** (7, 40, 1), *he had always been partial to the community.*
- ✓ 12. **Persuādent Rauricīs** (1, 5, 4), *they prevail upon the Raurici.*
- ✓ 13. **Famae suae pepercit** (Sall. Cat. 52, 32), *he has spared his own reputation.*
14. **Miseriis succurrere** (Verg. Aen. 1, 630), *to succor (lit., run under) the wretched.*
15. **Invidere bonis** (Sall. Cat. 51, 38), *to envy (lit., look askance at) the good.*
16. **Dux suis aderat** (7, 62, 5), *the leader stood by (i.e., supported) his men.*
17. **Negōtiō praefuerant** (5, 2, 3), *they had been in charge of (lit., had been before) the work.*
18. **Cōnsiliis obstitit** (Nep. Con. 2, 3), *he opposed (lit., stood against) the plans.*

146. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *datives* in the foregoing examples express the person *to* or *for whom*, or the thing *to* or *for which*, something is done; in other words, these datives denote the *object indirectly affected* by the action expressed by the verb. Frame a rule for the Case of the Indirect Object.

Note, further, the *order of the words* in the foregoing examples. Does the indirect object usually *follow* or *precede* the verb? What appears to be the effect when this order is reversed (see Exs. 7, 12, and 15)?

147. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 224, 343, 344; H. 382, 567, 1; G. 343, 676, 2, 3, 675, 1, 1.

148. OBSERVATION: Note that the verbs in Exs. 1, 2, and 8, are *transitive*; and that they take, besides the dative of the indirect

object, an *accusative* of the *direct object*. Note also the *order of the words* in these examples. Does the indirect object usually *follow* or *precede* the direct (see Exs. 1 and 2)? What appears to be the effect when this order is reversed (see Ex. 6)?

149. REFERENCES: A. & G. 225; H. 384, II., 567, 3; G. 344, 676, Rem., 2, 3.

150. OBSERVATION: Note that the verbs in the remaining examples are *intransitive*, and that they take the dative of indirect object only.

151. REFERENCES: A. & G. 226; H. 384, I.

152. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that in Exs. 7-13, the dative is used with verbs of *favoring* (*favēre*, 7), *commanding* (*imperat*, 8), *obeying* (*pārent*, 9), *serving* (*servīre*, 10), *indulging* (*indulserat*, 11), *persuading* (*persuādent*, 12), *sparing* (*pepercit*, 13). Frame a rule for the Case of the Substantive construed with these and similar verbs.

153. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 227; H. 385, I., II.; G. 345.

154. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the verbs in Exs. 14-18 are *compounded* with the *prepositions* *sub* (*suc-currere*, 14), *in* (*in-vidēre*, 15), *ad* (*ad-erat*, 16), *prae* (*prae-fuerant*, 17), and *ob* (*ob-stītit*, 18) respectively. Note further that, in the compounds given above, the force of the *preposition* is felt *independently* of the *verb*.² Frame a rule for the Case of the Substantive construed with such Compounds.

155. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 228; H. 386; G. 346.

¹ Participles in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*, are declined like adjectives in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*.

² The learner must not infer that *all* verbs compounded with these prepositions take the dative.

LESSON XVIII.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES.

156.

VOCABULARY.

- ✓ **Commodum**, -i, n., *advantage*. **obses**, -idis, c., *hostage*.
 ✓ **Con-dōnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *overlook*. **ob-stō**, -āre, -stīti, *stand against, oppose*.
 ✓ **Cōnsillium**, -ii, n., *plan*. **Orgetorix**, -igis, m., *Orgetorix*.
 ✓ **Cōnsulō**, -ere, -lui, -ltus, *take thought, have regard, consult*. **pāreō**, -ēre, -ui, *obey*.
Dumnorix, -igis, m., *Dumnorix*. **pāx**, **pācis**, f., *peace*.
fāma, -ae, f., *reputation*. **per-suādeō**, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *persuade*.
faveō, -ēre, **fāvī**, **fautum**,¹ *favor*. **precēs**,³ -um, f., *entreaties*.
fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune*. **prō-vidēō**, -ēre, -vidī, -visus, *provide*.
 ✓ **Im-pellō**, -ere, -puli, -pulsus, *urge on, impel*. **servitūs**, -ūtis, f., *slavery, servitude*.
 ✓ **Im-perō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *command; demand*. **sub-venīō**, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum,¹ *come to the support of*.
 ✓ **Indulgeō**, -ēre, -sī, -tus, *indulge*. ✓ **sūmō**, -ere, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptus**, *take, (of punishment) inflict*.
 ✓ **Inter-sum**, -esse, -fui, *take part in*. **vester**, -tra, -trum, *poss. pron., your (pl.)*.
in-vidēō, -ēre, -vidī, -visus, *envy*. **virtūs**, -ūtis, f., *manliness, valor, virtue*.
ira, -ae, f., *anger, passion*.
liberī,² -ōrum, m., *children*.
meus, -a, -um, *poss. pron., my*.

157.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Virtūtī nostrae fortūna invidet. 2. Magis (*rather*) fāmae vestrae quam (*than*) irae cōsultitis. 3. Prōvinciae māgnū mīlitum numerū imperat. 4. Cūr (*why?*) meis commodis obstās? 5. Celeriter (*quickly*) sociīs subvērunt. 6. Pāx cōfirmāta est. 7. Oppidum mūnitum erat. 8. Liberī Aeduōrum in servitūtem abductī erant. 9. Aeduīs obsidēs reddit. 10. Haec (nom. pl. neut., *these things*) sī (*if*) ēnūtiāta erunt, dē obsidibus supplicium sūmet. 11. Ariovistus mīlītēs in servitūtem Rōmānis nōn trādiderat.

12. Dumnorix favēbat Helvētiis. 13. Cōsulēmus miserī.
14. Ā reliquīs obsidēs trādītī sunt.

II. 1. Orgetorix persuaded the Helvetians. 2. The Gauls have been defeated by the Romans. 3. He overlooked the injury [out of regard] for the entreaties of Divitiacus. 4. He has placed guards over⁴ Orgetorix. 5. The plan was approved by the leaders. 6. Expressions⁵ were heard. 7. The leader had demanded of the Gauls⁶ a great number of hostages. 8. Labienus had provided grain for the soldiers. 9. The leader indulges the soldiers, but (*sed*) the soldiers do not obey the leader. 10. The horsemen had not taken part in the battle. 11. The leader will quickly (*celeriter*) come to the support of the soldiers. 12. The Gauls have been urged on by their chiefs.

158.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Juventūs Catilināe inceptis favēbat. 2. Divitiacus cōsiliis Dumnorigis obstābat. 3. Ariovistus Rōmānis salūtem nōn committit. 4. Ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcēsi erant. 5. Arma Gallōrum ex oppidō trādita erant. 6. In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae erunt. 7. Dux Gallōrum suis aderat. 8. Equitibus celeriter subveniunt peditēs.

II. 1. I shall not restore the hostages to the Aeduians. 2. He had given the boy a beautiful book. 3. Many hostages had been given by the rest. 4. They will prefer friendship to many advantages. 5. We shall take thought for the safety of the unfortunate soldiers. 6. Dumnorix envied Divitiacus and did not⁷ yield obedience to the Roman people. 7. The ditches have been filled with light branches. 8. The beautiful temples had been destroyed by the Roman soldiers.

¹ Verbs that are *invariably* intransitive have the perfect participle in the neuter gender only; accordingly, in the principal parts of such verbs, the neuter form of the participle will be given.

² *liberī*, children, with reference to

their parents; *puerī*, children, as a class.

³ Usually plural.

⁴ Sign of dative.

⁵ *vōx*, *vōcis*; see 123.

⁶ Use the dative.

⁷ And not, *neque*.

LESSON XIX.

SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: LIQUID
AND -S-STEMS.

159. Learn the paradigms of declension given in the following sections of the grammar: A. & G. 49; H. 60, 61; G. 40, 43, 46, 49.

160. Decline: *cōnsul*, -is, M., *consul*; *contentiō*, -ōnis, F., *contention*; *homo*, -inis, C., *man*; *flūmen*, -inis, N., *river*; *latus*, -eris, N., *side*; *pater*, -tris, M., *father*; *tempus*, -oris, N., *time*; *timor*, -ōris, M., *fear*.

161. Note that the *stems* of the foregoing nouns are: *cōnsul*-, *contentiōn*-, *homin*-, *flūmin*-, *lates*-,¹ *patr*-, *tempos*-,¹ *timōr*-.

162. Explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominatives* in 160: A. & G. 48, *a, b, c, d*; H. 60, 1, 1), 2), 3), 61, 1, 1), 2), 3), 4); G. 42, 48.

163. Decline together, with meanings: *cōnsul dēsīgnātus*, *consul elect*; *contentiō nostra*, *our contention*; *homo miser*, *wretched man*; *flūmen lātum*, *broad river*; *latus sinistrum*, *left side*; *pater vester*, *your father*; *tempus aliēnum*, *an unfavorable time*; *timor māgnus*, *great fear*.

164.

VOCABULARY.²

altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, tall*.

arbor, -oris, F., *tree*.

Caesar, -aris, M., *Caesar*.

com-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, *engage in*.

com-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, *set at rest, settle*.

con-tineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus, *hem in*.

corpus, -oris, s., *body*.

ex-erceō, -ēre, -cui, -citus, exer-
cise, train.

honōs or **honor, -ōris, M., honor.**

legiō, -ōnis, F., legion.³

nōmen, -inis, N., NAME.

occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, seize;
employ.

opus, -eris, N., work.

parcō, -ere, peperci (pars

SPARE.

per-veniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum

arrive, COME.

tribuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, award.

165.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cōnsulem dēsīgnātum accūsant. 2. Contentiōnēs nostrae compositae sunt. 3. Homīnī miserō parcēs. 4. Flūmine lātō continentur. 5. Tempore⁴ aliēnō proelium comīsīt. 6. Māgnum in timōrem hominēs pervēnerant. 7. Arborēs sunt altae. 8. Caesarī honōrem tribuit. 9. Mīlitēs in opere occupātī erant. 10. Nōmen Caesaris legiōnibus est cārum.

II. 1. The consuls elect have been called to account. 2. Honors will be awarded to Caesar. 3. Caesar's honors are acceptable⁵ to the legions. 4. The wretched men obeyed the consuls. 5. The legions engage in battle at an unfavorable time.⁶ 6. A broad river hems in the Helvetians. 7. The contentions of the wretched men will be set at rest. 8. The horsemen trained their bodies.

166.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Latus sinistrum castrōrum flūmīne mūniēbātur. 2. Virgini pulchrae parcēmus. 3. Legiōnēs ab opere dēductae erant. 4. Galli nōmen Caesaris timēbant. Patrēs vestri magis (rather) virtūte quam (than) dolō contendēbant.

II. 1. Rivers protected the sides of the camp. 2. The fear of the legions is disquieting to Caesar. 3. The commander will recall his men from the work. 4. The beautiful maidens will obey their fathers.

¹ s in the oblique cases between two vowels becomes r: A. & G. 11, a; H. 31, 1; G. 48².

² See also, for vocab., 160 and 163.

³ See also general vocabulary.

⁴ Ablative of time when; use preposition at in translating: A. & G. 256; H. 420; G. 392.

⁵ grātus, -a, -um, adj.

⁶ See 166, I., sent. 5.

LESSON XX

VERBS: IMPERATIVES OF BOTH VOICES. — THE VOCATIVE.

167. Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Imperatives, Present and Future, of **sum**: A. & G. p. 69; H. p. 85; G. p. 51.

168. Learn, as in 167, the inflection of **absum**.

169. Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Imperatives, Present and Future, Active and Passive, of **amō**: A. & G. pp. 77, 79; H. pp. 87, 89; G. pp. 54, 56.

170. Inflect (like **amō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **cōfirmō**, *establish*; **laudō**, *commend*.

171. Learn, as in 169, the inflection of **moneō** (or **dēleō**): A. & G. p. 81; H. pp. 91, 93; G. pp. 58, 60.

172. Inflect (like **moneō** or **dēleō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **habeō**, *have, hold*; **compleō**, *fill*.

173. Learn, as in 169, the inflection of **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**): A. & G. p. 83; H. pp. 95, 97; G. pp. 64, 66.

174. Inflect (like **tego**, **regō**, or **emō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **dūcō**, *lead*; **mittō**, *send*.

175. Learn, as in 169, the inflection of **audiō**: A. & G. p. 87; H. pp. 99, 101; G. pp. 68, 70.

176. Inflect (like **audiō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **pūniō**, *punish*; **vestiō**, *clothe*.

177.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Cōfirmā. 2. Tenēminī. 3. Vestīre. 4. Pōnit
 5. Tenētor. 6. Mittitōte. 7. Convocator. 8. Vest
 tor. 9. Habētō. 10. Mūnitō. 11. Mittuntō. 12. Es
 13. Abeste. 14. Laudāminī. 15. Nē¹dūcuntor. 16. Com
 plēte. 17. Conveniuntō. 18. Este. 19. Cōfirmātō. -
 20. Abestōte. 21. Mittere. 22. Estō. 23. Pōne.
 24. Nē¹habentō. 25. Dūcitor.

- II. 1. Be (thou) established. 2. Be (ye) sent. 3. You
 (ye) shall hold. 4. Fortify (ye). 5. Thou shalt establish.
 6. They shall be clothed. 7. It shall be placed. 8. Fortify
 (thou). 9. He shall send. 10. It shall be had. 11. They
 shall not¹ be called together. 12. Be it [so] (fut.).
 13. They shall not¹ be. 14. Come (ye) together. 15. Thou
 shalt be praised. 16. Thou shalt fill. 17. He shall not¹
 be clothed. 18. Be (ye) away. 19. Commend (thou).
 20. Be (thou) clothed. 21. Thou shalt not¹ be established.
 22. Be ye led. 23. Thou shalt hold. 24. They shall lead.
 25. Ye shall be.

178.

Supplementary Exercises.

- I. 1. Vestiminī. 2. Habēre. 3. Nē cōfirmātōte. 4. Mitte.
 5. Convocāte. 6. Nē pōnuntor. 7. Laudāre. 8. Dūcimini.
 9. Abestō. 10. Suntō. 11. Mūnitōte.

- II. 1. Hold (ye). 2. Be (ye) called together. 3. Be (thou)
 placed. 4. You (ye) shall clothe. 5. Have (thou). 6. They
 shall not be called together. 7. He shall not be. 8. Be (thou)
 away. 9. Call (ye) together. 10. Have (ye).

179.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Dēsillīte, mīlitēs* (4, 25, 3), *jump overboard, my men* (lit., soldiers) !
 2. *Sic existimō, patrēs cōscriptī* (Sall. *Cat.* 51, 15), *this is my*
opinion (I think thus), *conscript fathers*.
 3. *Est ut dīcis, Catō* (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 3, 8), *it is as you say, Cato*.
 4. *Tū² vēdō perge, Laelī³!* (Cic. *Lael.* 9, 32) *pray go on, Laelius!*
 5. *Tē⁴ hortor,⁵ mī⁶ Cicerō* (Cic. *Off.* 1, 3), *I exhort you, my [dear]*
Cicero.

180. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) that the *substantive* in each of the foregoing examples represents the *person addressed*, (2) that this substantive is in the *vocative*, and (3) that it stands, not at the beginning of the sentence, but after one or more words. Frame a rule for the Case and Position of the substantive used in Direct Address.

181. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 241; H. 369, 569, VI.; G. 194, Rem. 3 with fine-print note.

¹ Use *nō* (not *nōn*) when the *future imperative* is negated; the *present imperative* does not take a negative in prose.

² *Tū*, pron. 2d pers. nom. sing, *thou, you.*

³ See A. & G. 40, c; H. 51, 5; G. 29, Rem. 2.

⁴ *Tē*, pron. 2d pers. acc. sing., *thee, you.*

⁵ *hortor* has a passive form, but an active meaning; such verbs are called *deponent*, and will be treated later.

⁶ See A. & G. 40, c; II. 185, note 1; G. 29, Rem. 2.



LESSON XXI.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES.

182.

VOCABULARY.

agō, -ere, ēgi, āctus, do.

animōsus, -a, -um, adj., full of courage.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., good.

Catīlina, -ae, m., Catiline.

C.¹ Fannius,² -li, m., Gajus Fannius.

C.¹ Laelius,² -li, m., Gajus Laelius.

cōscriptus,³ -a, -um, enrolled, conscript.

custōdia, -ae, f., guardianship; in pl., guards.

dē-fendō, -ere, -fendi, -fēnsus, defend.

facultās, -ātis, f., opportunity.

filius,² -li, m., son.

M. Tullius,² -li, m., Marcus Tullius.

prae-stō, -āre, -iti, -ātus or -itus, exhibit.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūs, cleanse, purge.

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome.

sē-cernō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētus, separate.

tectum, -i, n., dwelling.

vigīla, -ae, f., wakefulness; in pl., watchmen.

183.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Habētis, militēs, facultātem⁴; praestāte virtutem.^{n.4}
 2. Purgā⁴ Rōmam, Catilīna. 3. Jam diū (for a long time) (C),
 patrēs cōscripti,³ in periculū sumus.⁵ 4. Audī, mī⁶ fili (M).
 5. Multis proeliis, militēs, exercēmini. 6. M. Tullī,⁷ quid (S) id
 (neut. sing. acc. interrog. pron., *what*) agis?

II. 1. In battle (battles), soldiers, you are to be (fut. ~~3~~ t.
 imper.) full of courage. 2. Many do,⁸ indeed (*quidem*⁹), ~~Q~~,
 inquire, Gajus Laelius, as (*ut*) has been said¹⁰ by Fannius. ~~S~~.
 3. Separate yourself (*tē*), Catiline, from the good. 4. De-~~S~~-
 fend your dwellings by guards and watchmen. 5. Thou ~~u~~ a
 shalt be defended, consul, by [means of] guards and ~~b~~ d
 watchmen. 6. Very well (*vērō*¹¹), you shall hear, my son. ~~4~~.

184.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Quoniam (*Seeing that*) supplicatio decreta est, celebratōte
 illōs diēs (acc. pl., *those days*) cum conjugibus ac liberis vestris.
 2. Vōs,¹² Quiritēs,¹³ in vestra tecta discēdite. 3. Tū,¹⁴ Fannī, nōn
 rectē (*rightly*) iudicās dē Catōne. 4. Memoria vestra, discipulī,
 vocābulis Latinis exercētor. 5. Virtūs, virtūs, inquam,¹⁵ C. Fannī,
 et conciliat amicitias et cōservat.

II. 1. Therefore,¹⁶ conscript fathers, take thought for your-
 selves;¹⁷ preserve¹⁸ yourselves,¹⁹ [your] wives, [your] children,
 and your²⁰ fortunes; defend²¹ the name and safety of the Roman
 people. 2. You were, then,²² at Laeca's,²³ Catiline. 3. Lay
 aside your favorable disposition towards me,²⁴ conscript fathers,
 and think of (*dē*) your children. 4. Ye shall stand by the unfor-
 tunate, praetors!

¹ C had originally the sound of g-hard. This sound it retained (even after the introduction of the character G) when used as an abbreviation for the name *Gājus*.

² See foot-note 3 at the end of the preceding lesson.

³ See *cōscriptus* in the general vocabulary.

⁴ Note the emphatic position.

⁵ Translate: *have been*, and see A. & G. 276, a; H. 467, 2; G. 221.

⁶ See foot-note 6, Lesson XX.

⁷ Note the exceptional position of the vocative, due to the excitement of the speaker.

⁸ Express the emphasis denoted in English by "do," by placing the verb first.

⁹ Place *quidem* after the verb, and at the vocative follow before the subject.

¹⁰ The participle must be neuter.

¹¹ Place *vērō* after the verb.

¹² *Vōs*, pron. 2d pers. nom. pl. *you*.

¹³ From *Quiris*, -*itis*; in the plural, applied to the Romans when acting in a civil capacity. Translate: *fellow citizens*.

¹⁴ See foot-note 2, Lesson XX.

¹⁵ *I say*; *inquam* is a defective verb, i.e., it lacks most of its parts.

¹⁶ *Quā rē*.

¹⁷ *vōbis*.

¹⁸ Place the verb before its objects.

¹⁹ *vōs*.

²⁰ For gender, see A. & G. 187; H. 439, 1; G. 286.

²¹ Place the verb after its objects; see A. & G. 344, f; H. 562; G. 684.

²² *igitur*.

²³ *apud* (prep.) *Laecam*.

²⁴ Arrange thus: *your towards me (ergā mē) favorable disposition*.



LESSON XXII.

SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: VOWEL STEMS.

185. Learn the paradigms of declension given in the following sections of the grammar: A. & G. 52; H. 62, 63; G. 59.

186. Decline: *collis*,¹ -is, M., *hill*; *hostis*,¹ -is, C., *enemy*; *ignis*,² -is, M., *fire*; *nāvis*,³ -is, F., *ship*; *puppis*,³ -is, F., *stern*; *rūpēs*, -is, F., *rock*; *insigne*, -is, N., *badge*; *vectigal*, -ālis, N., *revenue*.

187. Note that the *stems* of the foregoing nouns are: *colli-*, *hosti-*, *igni-*, *nāvi-*, *puppi-*, *rūpi-*, *insigni-*, *vectigāl-*.

188. Explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominatives* in 186: A. & G. 51, a, c; H. 63, 1, 1); G. 58 (first three paragraphs).

189. Decline together, with meanings: *collis asper*, a *rugged hill*; *hostis noster*, *our enemy*; *ignis clārus*, a *bright fire*; *nāvis longa*, a *ship of war* (lit., *long ship*); *puppis alta*, a *high stern*; *rūpēs sinistra*, a *rock on the left*; *insigne pulchrum*, a *beautiful badge*; *māgnum vectigal*, a *large revenue*.

apud, prep. w. acc., among.

Athēniēnsis, -is, c., an *Athenian*.

atque,¹ conj., and also, and.

avus, -ī, m., grandfather.

cōsanguinei, -ōrum, m., blood-relations, kinsmen.

eques, -itis, m., knight.²

extrā, prep. w. acc., beyond.

frāter, -tris, m., BROTHER.

frigus, -oris, n., cold, frost.

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic*.

honestus, -a, -um, adj., honorable.

iter, itineris, n., way; journey, march.

lingua, -ae, f., TONGUE, language.

L. Pisō, -ōnis, m., *Lucius Piso*.

mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe.

nam,⁴ conj., for.

propter, prep. w. acc., on account of, owing to.

scientia, -ae, f., knowledge, skill.

Sēquanus, -ī, m., a *Sequanian*.

trāns, prep. w. acc., across.

vergō, -ere, incline.

vergobretus, -ī, m., *vergobret* (see also general vocabulary).

212.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Orgetorix in itinere persuādet Casticō,⁵ Catamantaloedis⁶ filiō, Sēquanō. 2. Ariovistus rēx atque amicus ā senātū (*senate*) appellātus est. 3. Procillum⁵ propter linguae Gallicae scientiam ad Ariovistum mīsit. 4. Collis aequāliter (*uniformly*) dēclivis ad flūmen Sabim⁷ vergēbat. 5. Divicō⁸ dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. 6. Thrasybūlus,⁵ Lyci⁵ filius, Athēniēnsis.⁹ 7. Apud Aeduōs summus magistrātus (*the chief magistrate*) vergobretus appellātus.

II. 1. The Roman knights, honorable and good men, approve. 2. They send ambassadors to Dumnorix the Aeduan. 3. For, owing to the frosts, the grain was not ripe in the fields. 4. Lucius Piso the lieutenant was the grandfather of Lucius Piso, Caesar's father-in-law. 5. Geneva is a town of the Allobroges. 6. The Segūsiāvi⁵ are beyond the province, across the Rhone. 7. The Aeduans have oftentimes¹⁰ been called brothers and kinsmen by the senate.¹¹

213.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Trāns Sabim flūmen omnēs Nervii cōsēderant. 2. Iter Caesaris per fugitivōs hostibus nūntiatur. 3. Omnēs Belgae cōpopulum Rōmānum conjūrāvērunt obsidēsque inter sē (acc. pl.

ADJECTIVES : THIRD DECLENSION.

creatures are sacrificed by the Gauls. 3. The enemy erect a high tower on the hill. 4. A lieutenant was in command of the enemy's fleet.

¹ Decline *collis* and *hostis* with only -em in the accusative, and only -e in the ablative; otherwise like *turris*. (The rare instances in which *collis* has -i in the ablative may be disregarded.)

² Decline *Ignis* with only -em in the usative; otherwise like *turris*.

³ Decline *nāvis* and *puppis* through-out like *turris*.

⁴ See also, for vocab., 186 and 188

⁵ Ablative of place where; use preposition *by* in translating.

⁶ Use the plural.

⁷ *superō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

⁸ Translate: *will be burned by fire*.

⁹ "Ships of war" = *long ships*.

¹⁰ *per-moveō*, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.

LESSON XXIII.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: VOWEL STEMS.

193. Learn the declension of the adjectives *levis* (*tristis* or *facilis*) and *ācer*: A. & G. 84; H. 153, 154; G. 82

194. Decline (like *levis*, *tristis*, or *facilis*): *omnis* *all, every*; *fortis*, *brave*; *militāris*, *military*; *dēclivis* *sloping*; *humilis*, *low*.

195. Note that the *stems* of the foregoing adjective are: *omni-*, *forti-*, *militāri-*, *dēclivi-*, *humili-*; explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominative forms* cf. A. & G. 51, c; G. 81.

196. Decline (like *ācer*): *alacer*, *eager*; *equester* *pertaining to cavalry*; *pedester*, *pertaining to infantry*. also: *celer*,¹ *celeris*, *celere*, *swift*.

197. Note that the *stems* of the foregoing adjective are: *alacri-*, *equestri-*, *pedestri-*, *celeri-*; explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominative forms*: cf. A. & G. 51, b, c; H. p. 59, foot-note 6; G. 81, 82.

198. Decline together, with meanings: *proelium equestre*, a cavalry engagement; *insigne militāre*, a military badge; *omne animal*, every animal; *animus alacer*, an eager spirit; *turris humilis*, a low tower; *nāvis celeris*,¹ a swift ship; *collis dēclivis*, a sloping hill; *cōpiaē pedestrēs*, infantry; *hostis fortis*, a brave enemy.

199.

VOCABULARY.²

ad, prep. w. acc., to, for.

com-būrō, -ere, -ūssī, -ūstus, burn up.

con-tendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, contend.

dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, withdraw, recall.

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, look for.

ex-citō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, erect.

in-cendō, -ere, -cendī, -census, set fire to, burn.

in-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, draw up.

pūgna, -ae, F., fight.

sus-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, sustain.

200.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Insignia militāria relinquunt.* 2. *Hostēs equestribus proeliis contendunt.* 3. *Caesar pedestris cōpiās dēdūxit.* 4. *Oppida omnia incendunt, frūmentum omne combūrunt.* 5. *Militēs ad pūgnam alacrēs erunt.* 6. *Militēs nostri omnia³ fortī sustinēbant animō.⁴* 7. *Gallī celerem⁵ victōriam exspectābant.*

II. 1. They erect a low tower. 2. He drew up his forces on⁶ a sloping hill. 3. A speedy⁷ victory had been looked for by the Gauls. 4. Caesar's infantry has been recalled. 5. All the legions were eager for the fight. 6. Caesar favored the infantry.

201.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. *Ariovistus equestribus proeliis cottidiē (daily) contendit.* 2. *Omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt.* 3. *Nervii pedestribus valent cōpiis.⁸* 4. *Dumnorix reliqua omnia Aeduōrum vectigālia parvō pretiō⁹ redēmit.* 5. *Nam (for) ut¹⁰ Gallōrum alacer est animus, sic¹⁰ mollis mēns est.*

223. Learn the declension of *vetus*; A. & G. 85, *b*; H. 158; G. 83.

224. Decline together, with meanings: *vetus injūria*, *a former injury*.

225.

VOCABULARY.

<i>animus</i> , -i, m., <i>mind</i> ; <i>heart</i> .	<i>lātus</i> , -a, -um, adj., <i>broad</i> , <i>extensive</i> .
<i>con-locō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>place</i> ; <i>give in marriage</i> .	<i>māter</i> , -tris, f., <i>MOTHER</i> .
<i>con-sistō</i> , -ere, -stitī, <i>take position</i> ; <i>stand</i> .	<i>petō</i> , -ere, -ivī or -li, -itus, <i>ask for</i> .
<i>Crassus</i> , -ī, m., <i>Crassus</i> .	<i>poena</i> , -ae, f., <i>satisfaction</i> ; <i>punishment</i> .
<i>decimus</i> , -a, -um, adj., <i>TENTH</i> .	<i>re-petō</i> , -ere, -ivī, or -li, -itus, <i>demand back</i> , <i>demand</i> .
<i>lē-ligō</i> , -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, <i>select</i> .	<i>Suessiōnēs</i> , -um, m., <i>the Suessiones</i> .
<i>homo</i> , -inis, c. (always m. when it refers to a male), <i>man</i> .	<i>timor</i> , -ōris, m., <i>fear</i> .

226.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Legiōnis decimae milītēs in sinistrā parte cōstitērāt. 2. Crassum adulescentem fortem praemittet. 3. Timor omnium mentis animōsque perturbābat. 4. Petītēs velōcēs ac² fortēs dēliguntur. 5. In flūmine Rhēnō sunt multae ingentēsque insulae. 6. Equitēs laborantibus nostris subveniunt. 7. Caesar prō veteribus Helvētiōrum³ injūriis populī³ Rōmānī poenās repetit.

II. 1. They establish friendship with the neighboring communities. 2. The lands of the Suessiones are extensive and fertile. 3. He gives his mother in marriage to a powerful man. 4. The women weeping ask for peace. 5. Crassus, a brave youth, came to the support of the horsemen [who were] struggling against odds.

227.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Ā⁴ fronte et ab⁴ sinistrā parte nūdāta erant castra. 2. Equitēs recentī proeliō⁵ perterriti erant. 3. Lēgātis pacem atque amī-

203. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing examples, that **Aeduus, frātris, frātri, praetōrēs, flūmen, and oppidō** denote the *same person or thing* as **Divitiacus, Divitiaci, Divitiacō, Flaccum et Pomptinum, Rhodanum, and Bibracte**, respectively; and that the former are added to the latter for *further description* merely. A substantive thus added for further description is called an *Appositive*, and the usage is called *Apposition*. Does the Appositive differ from the principal substantive in *case*, or agree with it? Does it usually agree in *gender* and *number* (see Exs. 1-4)? Does it *invariably* agree in *gender* (see Ex. 5)? Does the Appositive appear regularly to *precede* or to *follow* the principal substantive? Frame a rule for the Case of the Appositive.

204. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 183, 184, H. 363, 1; G. 319.

205.**EXAMPLES.**

1. **Lēgātiōnis Divicō prīnceps fuit** (1, 13, 2), *Divico was the leader of the embassy.*
2. **Testis est Ītalia** (Cic. Manil. 11, 30), *Italy is a witness.*
3. **Pausaniās Lacedaemonius māgnus homo fuit** (Nep. Paus. 1, 1), *Pausanias, the Lacedaemonian, was a great man.*
4. [**Castici**] **pater populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat** (1, 3, 4), *the father of Casticus had been called the friend of the Roman people.*
5. **Audācia fortitūdō vocātur** (Sall. Cat. 52, 11), *audacity is called fortitude.*

206. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing examples, that **prīnceps, testis, homo, amīcus, and fortitūdō**, denote the *same person or thing* as **Divicō, Ītalia, Pausaniās, pater, and audācia**, respectively; and that the former are added to the latter for *further description*. Note, however, that the descriptive substantives here illustrated are *not*, like those of 202, *merely appended* to the principal substantive, but that they are connected with it by the *verb*; also that they unite with the verb to form the *predicate* of the sentence. As they thus form a part of the predicate, they are called *Predicate Substantives*. Does the

Predicate Substantive differ from the *subject* in *case*, or agree with it? Does the Predicate Substantive appear regularly *to follow* or *to precede the verb*? Frame a rule for the Case of the Predicate Substantive.

207. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 183, 185; H. 362, 1; G. 324.

208.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ad Caesarem revertērunt** (1, 31, 1), *they returned to Caesar.*
2. **Ante oppidum** (2, 32, 4), *before the town.*
3. **Apud Sēquanōs** (1, 9, 3), *among the Sequani.*
4. **Contrā populum Rōmānum** (2, 13, 2), *against the Roman people.*
5. **Inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum** (1, 6, 2), *between the boundaries of the Helvetians and Allobroges.*
6. **Per finēs Aeduōrum** (1, 12, 1), *through the territory of the Aeduans.*
7. **Post tergum** (4, 15, 1), *behind [one's] back.*
8. **Propter timōrem** (Caes. B. C. 2, 35, 5), *because of fear.*
9. **Trāns Rhodanum** (1, 10, 5), *across the Rhone.*

209. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) the *prepositions* in the foregoing examples, and (2) the *case* of the substantives with which they are used. Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives construed with the foregoing Prepositions.

210. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 152, a; H. 433; G. 417.



LESSON XXV.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES.

211.

VOCABULARY.

Aeduus, -i, m., an Aeduan.

amicus, -i, m., friend.

Allobrogēs, -um, m., the Allobroges.

appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call, entitle.

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, opportune*.

orātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, *speech, address*.

prae-stō, -āre, -itī, -ātus or -itus, *excel*.

regiō, -ōnis, *f.*, *territory*.

suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its, their* —
tempestās, -ātis, *f.*, *time*.

tertius, -a, -um, *THIRD*.

ūnus, -a, -um, *ONE*.

videō, -ēre, *vidī, vīsus, see*.

235.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Helvētīū virtūte omnibus Gallīs praestābant. 2. Caesar initiō orātiōnis sua in Ariovistum beneficia commemorāv. 3. Aquitānia et regiōnum lātītūdine et multītūdine hominū tertia pars Galliae exīstimātur. 4. Ā castrīs oppidum Remōrum¹ nōmine Bibrax² longē aberat. 5. Paene³ ūnō tempore et ad⁴ silvās et in flūmine hostēs vīsī sunt. 6. Multa nocte⁵ sē⁶ in castra recēpit.⁶

II. 1. The Belgians, Aquitanians, [and] Celts differ⁷ from one another⁸ in language, institutions, [and] laws. 2. Among the Suessiones, even within our-own remembrance, Divitiac⁹ has been king. 3. The Suessiones have towns to the number of twelve⁹ (twelve in number). 4. Caesar arrived at an opportune moment (time). 5. [There] was at this¹⁰ time at Rome¹¹ a Numidian¹² named Massiva.¹³

236.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Populi Rōmānī socii atque amīci grātiā, dignitatē, honōre auctiōrēs (*increased, made richer*) sunt. 2. Ūnā nocte omnēs hermae¹⁴ dējectī sunt.¹⁵ 3. Intempestā nocte¹⁶ conjūratiōnis principēs convocat per M. Porcium Lāecam. 4. Duae¹⁷ fuērunt Ariovisti uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, altera Nōrica. 5. Catō cum modestō pudōre, cum innocente abstinentiā certābat. 6. Tertiā vigiliā omnibus cōpiis¹⁸ ex oppidō erūpērunt.

II. 1. Our fleet excelled the ships of the Veneti in speed. 2. Accordingly in the beginning kings trained, some¹⁹ the mind, others the body. 3. There was, not far from the road, a town of the Numidians named Vaga. 4. You were, then, at Laeca's on that (*illā*) night, Catiline. 5. The Bellovacī were foremost²⁰

among the Belgians in valor, in influence, and in population (number of inhabitants). 6. Nor in the last²¹ war with (obj. gen.) the Allobroges did the Aeduans render²² assistance to the Romans.

¹ The English form is the same as the Latin nominative.

² *Bibrax*, -actis, F., *Bibrax* (mod. *Bivre*).

³ *paene*, adv., *almost*.

⁴ *ad*, prep., *close by, at*.

⁵ *multa nocte*, *late at night*.

⁶ *sē recipit* (perf. of *recipio*, *take back*), *returned*.

⁷ *differunt*.

⁸ *from one another, inter sē* (lit., *among themselves*).

⁹ *duodecim*, indecl. adj.

¹⁰ *eā* (fem. sing. to agree with the proper case of *tempestas*).

¹¹ Use the locative form: A. & G. 36, c; H. 48, 4; G. 27, 2.

¹² *Numida*, -ae, M.

¹³ *Massiva*, -ae, M.; see 228, Ex. 4.

¹⁴ *Hermēs* (or *Herma*), -ae, M., *Hermes-pillar* (see general vocabulary); for declension, see A. & G. 37; H. 50; G. 72.

¹⁵ Perf. pass. of *dēiciō*, *throw down*.

¹⁶ *intempestā nocte*, *at an unreasonable hour of the night*.

¹⁷ Nom. pl. fem., *two*.

¹⁸ A. & G. 248, a; H. 419, I., 1, 1), (1); G. 391, Rem. 1.

¹⁹ *pars* (in apposition w. "kings").
²⁰ *were foremost, plurimum valē-*

bant.

²¹ *proximus*, -a, -um., adj.

²² *did render, tulērunt*, perfect of *ferō*.

LESSON XXVIII.

THIRD DECLENSION: GENDER.¹

237.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Caesar*, M., *Caesar*.

6. *rēgīna*, F., *queen*.

2. *vir*, M., *man*.

7. *cīvis*, C., *citizen*.

3. *rēx*, M., *king*.

8. *hostis*, C., *enemy*.

4. *Semprōnia*, F., *Sempronia*.

9. *custōs*, C., *guard*.

5. *mulier*, F., *woman*.

238. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) that Exs. 1-3 designate *males*, and that they are of the *masculine gender*; (2) that Exs. 4-6 designate *females*, and that they are of the *feminine gender*; (3) that Exs. 7-9 designate *either males or females*, and that they are of the *common* (masc. or fem.) *gender*. Frame a general rule for the Gender of Substantives, of whatever declension, whose Gender is determined by their Signification.

239.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. mucrō, M., <i>sharp point.</i> | 6. timor, M., <i>fear.</i> |
| 2. pulmō, M., <i>lung.</i> | 7. caespes, -itis, M., <i>turf.</i> |
| 3. sermō, M., <i>conversation.</i> | 8. gurgēs, -itis, M., <i>whirlpool-</i> |
| 4. dolor, M., <i>pain.</i> | 9. trāmes, -itis, M., <i>path.</i> |
| 5. honor, M., <i>honor.</i> | |

240. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *gender* of the foregoing substantives, observing at the same time the *nominative endings* printed in **bold-face type**. Frame a rule for the Gender of Substantives of the Third Declension whose Nominative ends in: -ō, -or, -es (gen. -itis).

241.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. aetās, F., <i>age.</i> | 15. pāx, F., <i>peace.</i> |
| 2. civitās, F., <i>community.</i> | 16. fortitūdō, -inis, F., <i>fortitude.</i> |
| 3. voluntās, F., <i>pleasure.</i> | 17. māgnitūdō, -inis, F., <i>size.</i> |
| 4. nūbēs, -is, F., <i>cloud.</i> | 18. multitūdō, -inis, F., <i>multitude.</i> |
| 5. rūpēs, -is, F., <i>rock.</i> | |
| 6. vallēs, -is, F., <i>valley.</i> | 19. ferrūgō, -inis, F., <i>iron-rust.</i> |
| 7. clāssis, F., <i>fleet.</i> | 20. imāgō, -inis, F., <i>image.</i> |
| 8. nāvis, F., <i>ship.</i> | 21. orīgō, -inis, F., <i>source.</i> |
| 9. turris, F., <i>tower.</i> | 22. salūs, -ūtis, F., <i>safety.</i> |
| 10. mēns, F., <i>mind.</i> | 23. senectūs, -ūtis, F., <i>old age.</i> |
| 11. pars, F., <i>part.</i> | 24. virtūs, -ūtis, F., <i>virtue.</i> |
| 12. urbs, F., <i>city.</i> | 25. contemptiō, F., <i>contempt.</i> |
| 13. nox, F., <i>night.</i> | 26. legiō, F., <i>legion.</i> |
| 14. vōx, F., <i>voice.</i> | 27. orātiō, F., <i>speech.</i> |

242. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *gender* of the foregoing substantives, observing at the same time the *nominative endings* printed in **bold-face type**. Frame a rule for the Gender of Substantives of the Third Declension whose Nominative ends in: -ās, -ēs (gen. -is), -is, -s preceded by a consonant, -x, -dō (gen. -dinis), -gō (gen. -ginis), -ūs (gen. -ūtis), -iō (abstract and collective).

243.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>insigne</i> , N., <i>badge</i> . | 7. <i>corpus</i> , -oris, N., <i>body</i> . |
| 2. <i>mare</i> , N., <i>sea</i> . | 8. <i>frigus</i> , -oris, N., <i>cold</i> . |
| 3. <i>rēte</i> , N., <i>net</i> . | 9. <i>tempus</i> , -oris, N., <i>time</i> . |
| 4. <i>agmen</i> , N., <i>train, army</i> . | 10. <i>genus</i> , -eris, N., <i>class</i> . |
| 5. <i>flūmen</i> , N., <i>river</i> . | 11. <i>latus</i> , -eris, N., <i>side</i> . |
| 6. <i>nōmen</i> , N., <i>name</i> . | 12. <i>opus</i> , -eris, N., <i>work</i> . |

244. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the gender of the foregoing nouns, observing at the same time the *nominative endings* printed in **bold-face type**. Frame a rule for the Gender of Substantives of the Third Declension whose Nominative ends in: **-e, -men, -us** (gen. -oris, -eris).

245.

VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|--|
| a udāx, -ācis, adj., <i>bold</i> . | noster, -tra, -trum, adj., <i>our</i> . |
| a ltus, -a, -um, adj., <i>high, deep</i> . | pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., <i>beautiful</i> . |
| i ngēns, -entis, adj., <i>huge</i> . | turpis, -e, adj., <i>base</i> . |
| l ongus, -a, -um, adj., <i>long</i> . | |
| m agnus, -a, -um, adj., <i>great</i> . | |

246.

EXERCISE.

Determine the gender of the following substantives by the rules framed in connection with this lesson; indicate the gender thus determined by attaching to each substantive an appropriate adjective selected from the vocabulary in 245.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| aestās, -ātis, <i>summer</i> . | cohors, -rtis, <i>cohort</i> . |
| altitūdō, -inis, <i>height</i> . | cōsul, -is, <i>consul</i> . |
| amor, -ōris, <i>love</i> . | contentiō, -ōnis, <i>contention</i> . |
| ✓arx, arcis, <i>citadel</i> . | ✓crimen, -inis, <i>charge</i> . |
| auris, -is, <i>ear</i> . | cubile, -is, <i>couch</i> . |
| avis, -is, <i>bird</i> . | ✓cunctātiō, -ōnis, <i>delay</i> . |
| ✓cāligō, -inis, <i>mist</i> . | custōs, -ōdis, <i>guard</i> . |
| carmen, -inis, <i>song</i> . | Dumnorix, -igis, <i>Dumnorix</i> . |
| clādēs, -is, <i>disaster</i> . | dux, ducis, <i>leader</i> . |
| clāmor, -ōris, <i>shout</i> . | eques, -itis, <i>horseman</i> . |

facultās, -ātis , opportunity.	✓ ovile, -is , sheep-fold.
famillāritās, -ātis , intimacy.	✓ palmes, -itis , vine-shoot.
flūmen, -inis , river.	pater, -tris , father.
✓ foedus, -eris , treaty.	pāvō, -ōnis , peacock.
furor, -ōris , rage.	pectus, -oris , breast.
gēns, gentis , race.	pedes, -itis , foot-soldier.
homo, -inis , man (including woman).	prōlēs, -is , offspring.
insigne, -is , badge.	puppis, -is , stern.
juventūs, -ūtis , youth.	rādix, -icis , root.
lātitudō, -inis , breadth.	regiō, -ōnis , direction.
latrō, -ōnis , robber.	scelus, -eris , crime.
levitās, -ātis , lightness.	sēdēs, -is , seat.
leō, -ōnis , lion.	sedile, -is , seat (poetic).
litus, -oris , shore.	sēmen, -inis , seed.
longitūdō, -inis , length.	servitūs, -ūtis , servitude.
lūx, lūcis , light.	sīdus, -eris , constellation.
miles, -itis , soldier.	stīpes, -itis , stock (of a tree).
mors, mortis , death.	suspiciō, -ōnis , suspicion.
✓ nemus, -oris , grove.	✓ tēmō, -ōnis , carriage-pole.
obses, -idis , hostage.	✓ umbō, -ōnis , boss (of a shield).
opiniō, -ōnis , opinion, notion.	virgō, -inis , virgin.

247. Note the gender of each of the following substantives,² and fix its gender in the memory by associating it with an appropriate adjective selected from 245.

animal, -ālis , N., animal.	ignis, -is , M., fire.
arbor, -oris , F., tree.	iter, itineris , N., journey.
caput, -itis , N., head.	lapis, -idis , M., stone.
collis, -is , M., hill.	vectigal, -ālis , N., revenue.

¹ The rules for gender suggested in lesson are deemed sufficient as practical aids to the memory. The gender of substantives of the third declension here provided for, should be learned by observation and practice in reading writing Latin.

² These substantives have already appeared in special vocabularies; they are introduced here because their gender is not provided for in the rules of this lesson.

LESSON XXIX.

SUBSTANTIVES: FOURTH DECLENSION.

248. Learn the paradigms of declension given in the following sections of the grammar: A. & G. 68; H. 116; G. 67.

249. Decline: *fructus*, -ūs, M., *fruit*; *exercitus*, -ūs, M., *army*; *manus*, -ūs, F., *hand*; *cornū*, -ūs, N., *horn*.

250. Explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominative singular* and *dative plural* of the foregoing substantives: A. & G. note preceding 68; H. 116, 1, 2; G. 67.

251. Note the *gender* of the substantives in 249, and frame a Rule for the Gender of substantives of the fourth declension. For verification, see A. & G. 69, a (first sentence), b; H. 116; G. 68.

252. Decline together, with meanings: *vetus exercitus*, *veteran army*; *omnis fructus*, *all the fruit*; *manus sinistra*, *left hand*; *dextrum cornū*, *right wing* (lit., *horn*).

253.

VOCABULARY.¹

<i>ā-mittō</i> , -ere, -misi, -missus, <i>lose</i> .	<i>equitātus</i> , -ūs, M., <i>cavalry</i> .
<i>cōgō</i> , -ere, <i>cōgē</i> , <i>cōactus</i> , <i>collect</i> .	<i>impetus</i> , -ūs, M., <i>attack, onset</i> .
<i>cōspectus</i> , -ūs, M., <i>sight</i> .	<i>locus</i> , -i, M., <i>place</i> ; pl. (usually)
<i>cōsulātus</i> , -ūs, M., <i>consulship</i> .	<i>loci</i> , -ōrum, N., <i>places</i> .
<i>dē-dūcō</i> , -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, <i>carry off</i> . ²	<i>manus</i> , -ūs, F., <i>hand</i> ; art; <i>band</i> .
<i>dē-sistō</i> , -ere, -stiti, <i>desist, cease</i> .	<i>nātūra</i> , -ae, F., <i>nature</i> .
	<i>occāsus</i> , -ūs, M., <i>setting</i> .

editatus, -ūs, M., FOOT-soldiers,
infantry.

illō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, beat.

-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus,
remove.

senātus, -ūs, M., senate.

sōl, -is, M., sun.

sub,³ prep. w. acc. and abl., *under*;

sub occāsum, towards the *setting*.

254.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hostēs ā⁴ sinistrō cornū pulsī erant. 2. Sub oc^{cā}
m sōlis dēstitērunt. 3. Nam equitātūi Dumnorix praecer^{at}
Manūs ā Belgīs cōgēbantur. | 5. Oppidum et nātūrā locⁱ
manū mūnītum erat. 6. Gallī māgnās peditātūs equitā^a
isque cōpiās cōgunt. 7. Ariovistus in cōsulātū meō rē^x
que amīcus ā senātū appellātus est.

II. 1. The horses of all have been removed from sight.
Caesar began the battle on⁵ the right wing. 3. All the
units had been lost. 4. The cavalry sustains the attack
of the enemy. 5. Almost (paene) in sight of our army
the children of the Aeduians were carried off into slavery.
Crassus is in command of all the cavalry. 7. The
Aeduians had lost all their senate [and] all their cavalry.

255.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Tertiā ex⁴ parte lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō Hel-
vetiī continentur. 2. Dumnorix māgnū numerum equitātūs suō
imptū semper alit. 3. Manūs cōguntur, exercitus in ūnum locum
indūcitur. 4. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dex-
um cornū vēnit. 5. Helvētiī tamen nōn parēs sunt nostrō
exercitūi. 6. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās in castra redūxit. 7. Paene
nō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et jam in manibus nostris
hostēs vīsī sunt.

II. 1. The enemy could⁶ not withstand the onsets of our men.
The twelfth legion had taken position on⁷ the right wing.
Caesar opened the engagement on⁸ the right wing. 4. Thence
he leads his army into the country⁸ of the Allobroges. 5. Towards
onset⁹ they ceased. 6. The forces (bands) of the enemy were
split apart. 7. Gradually those (ei, nom. pl.) who (quī, nom. pl.)
were in command of the cavalry were disquieted.

¹ See also, for vocabulary, 252.

² See also 199.

³ A. & G. 152, c; H. 435, note 1.

⁴ Translate on, and see foot-note 4,
Lesson XXVI.

⁵ See 254, I., sent. 1.

⁶ *were not able* (nōn poterant) *to withstand.*

⁷ *in*; why not *in* as in the next sentence?

⁸ *finēs*, plural.

⁹ *setting of the sun.*

LESSON XXX.

ADJECTIVES: REGULAR COMPARISON.

256.

EXAMPLES.

1. POSITIVE: altus (st. alto-), *high, deep*.
COMPARATIVE: altior, M. & F., -ius, N., *higher, deeper*.
SUPERLATIVE: altissimus, -a, -um, *highest, deepest*.
2. POSITIVE: fortis (st. forti-), *brave*.
COMPARATIVE: fortior, M. & F., -ius, N., *braver*.
SUPERLATIVE: fortissimus, -a, -um, *bravest*.
3. POSITIVE: prūdēns (st. prūdēt-), *sagacious*.
COMPARATIVE: prūdentior, M. & F., -ius, N., *more sagacious*.
SUPERLATIVE: prūdentissimus, -a, -um, *most sagacious*.
4. POSITIVE: fēlix (st. fēlici-), *happy*.
COMPARATIVE: fēlicior, M. & F., -ius, N., *happier*.
SUPERLATIVE: fēlicissimus, -a, -um, *happiest*.

257. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing examples, (1) that the *nominative* of the *comparative* and *superlative* is formed by the addition of -ior (N. -ius) and -issimus (-a, -um),¹ respectively, to the stem of the *positive*; and (2) that in *vowel-stems* the final vowel of the stem disappears before these endings. Frame a rule for the Comparison of Adjectives.

258. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 89; H. 162; G. 86.

259. Learn the declension of the comparative *melior* (*tristior* or *altior*): A. & G. 86; H. 154; G. 87.

260. Compare: (like *altus*) *lātus*, *broad*, *longus*, *long* (like *fortis*) *levis*, *light*, *gravis*, *heavy*; (like *prūdēs*) *potēns*, *powerful*, *sapiēns*, *wise*; (like *fēlix*) *vēlōx*, *swift*, *ferāx*, *fertile*; also decline their Comparatives.

± 261. Decline together, with meanings: *mōns altior*, *higher mountain*; *gravior fortūna*, *harder lot*; *longius iter*, *longer road*.

262.

VOCABULARY.²

aetās, -ātis, F., *age*.

circum-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, *lead around*.

civitās, -ātis, F., *community, state*.

com-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, *commit, intrust*.

filia,³ -ae, F., *daughter*.

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy; severe, hard*.

nōbillis, -e, adj., *high-born, noble*.

rēgnum, -i, N., *kingdom; sovereignty*.

re-sistō, -ere, -stiti, *resist*.

salūs, -ūtis, F., *safety*.

semper, adv., *always*.

Sēquani, -ōrum, M., *the Sequani, or Sequanians*.

vulgō, adv., *commonly*.

263.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dē obsidibus gravius⁴ supplicium sūmet. 2. Op-idum ex⁵ omnibus partibus altissimās⁴ rūpēs habēbat. 3. Omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae. 4. Fīliam hominī nōbilissimō conlocat. 5. Resiste, mīles fortissime. 6. Omnēs graviōris aetātis⁶ convēnerant. 7. Peditum fortissimōrum salūtem equitātuī nōn committam. 8. In Galliā ā potentiōribus vulgō rēgna⁷ occupābantur. 9. Cohortēs longiōre itinere⁸ circumductae erant.

II. 1. The swiftest foot-soldiers are not always the bravest. 2. The Helvetians were hemmed in by a broader and deeper river. 3. They send the noblest men in⁹ the state. 4. The punishment of the Sequani is too severe.⁴ 5. The lands of the Suessiones were very extensive⁴ and (very) fertile. 6. On⁵ one side the Helvetians are hemmed in by the river Rhine [which is] exceedingly broad and (exceedingly) deep.

264.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Carinae plāniōrēs sunt quam¹⁰ nostrārū nāvium.
 2. Ubi dē Caesaris adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs¹¹ facti sunt,¹²
 lēgātōs mittunt nōbilissimōs civitatīs.¹³ 3. Est gravior fortūna
 Sēquanōrum quam¹⁴ reliquōrum. 4. Suessionēs lātissimōs ferā-
 cissimōsque agrōs possident. 5. Locus ex omni Galliā opportū-
 nissimū ac fructuōsissimū iudicātus est.

II. 1. Ariovistus will inflict the severest punishment on¹⁵ all
 the hostages. 2. The Romans will be more faint-hearted (of
 feebler courage¹⁶). 3. Nor according to Swabian notions (accord-
 ing to the customs¹⁷ of the Suebi) is anything¹⁸ esteemed baser
 or more spiritless. 4. Among the Helvetians Orgetorix was by-
 far the most-exalted-in-rank.¹⁹ 5. The Morini were-making-for
 the denser woods. 6. Dumnorix, for-the-sake²⁰ of [extending
 his] political power, gave his mother [in marriage] to a man of-
 very-high-rank¹⁹ and of-very-great-influence.²¹

¹ Superlatives, therefore, are adjectives of the first and second declensions, and are declined like **bonus**.

² For vocabulary, see also 256, 260, 261.

³ For irregularity in the declension of the plural, see A. & G. 36, e; H: 49, 4; G. 27, 3.

⁴ The Latin comparative and superlative admit of other translations than those given in 256. Thus, **gravior** may mean *severer, rather severe* (i.e., severer than usual), *too severe* (i.e., severer than is fitting); **gravissimus** may mean *severest or very (exceedingly) severe*.

⁵ See foot-note 4, Lesson XXVI.

⁶ *All* [who were] *of advanced age, i.e., all the elders*. For the genitive **etātis**, see A. & G. 215; H. 396, V. n. 1; G. 364.

⁷ Translate by the singular, *sovereignty or royal power*; the plural is used in the Latin because repeated instances are referred to.

⁸ A. & G. 258, g; H. 420, 1, 3; G. 387.

⁹ "in the state" = *of the state*.

¹⁰ *sc. carinae*.

¹¹ Predicate adjective with the passive verb **facti sunt** and limiting **Helvētīi**.

¹² **facti sunt**, perf. pass. of **faciō**, *make*; **certiōrēs facti sunt**, (were made more certain, and so) *were informed*.

¹³ See 263, II., sent. 3.

¹⁴ *sc. fortūna*.

¹⁵ See 263, I., sent. 1.

¹⁶ *of feebler courage*, **infirmiōre animō**: A. & G. 251; H. 419, II.; G. 402.

¹⁷ Express "according to" by putting the word for "customs" in the ablative: A. & G. 253; H. 416; G. 398.

¹⁸ **quicquam**, nominative neuters singular.

¹⁹ Superlative of **nōbills**.

²⁰ **causā**; **causā** follows the genitive that limits it.

²¹ Superlative of **potēs**.

LESSON XXXI.

SUBSTANTIVES: FIFTH DECLENSION.

265. Learn the declension of *rēs*, F., *thing*; *diēs*, M., *day*; *fidēs*, F., *faith*; *spēs*, F., *hope*; *aciēs*, F., *edge*, *line of battle*, *line*: A. & G. 72, 74, *d*; H. 120, 122, 124, 2; G. 69, Rem. 1.

266. Explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominatives* in 265: A. & G. note preceding 72; H. 120, 1; G. 69.

267. Note the *gender* of the substantives in 265, and frame a general Rule for the Gender of substantives of the fifth declension. For verification, see A. & G. 73; H. 123; G. 70.

268. Decline together, with meanings: in sing., *rēs militāris*, *the military art*; in pl., *multae rēs*, *many things*; in sing., *diēs septimus*, *the seventh day*; in pl., *pauci diēs*, *a few days*; in sing., *magna fidēs*, *great confidence*; in sing. and in nom. and acc. pl. *spēs asperior*, *a more discouraging prospect*; in sing., *aciēs triplex*, *triple line of battle*.

269.

VOCABULARY.²

<i>ac-cidō</i> , -ere, -cidī, <i>happen, occur</i> .	<i>juventūs</i> , -ūtis, F., <i>YOUTH</i> .
<i>cōn-stituō</i> , -ere, -uī, -ūtus, <i>station, post</i> .	<i>medius</i> , -a, -um, adj., <i>MIDDLE</i> , <i>middle part of</i> . ³
<i>dī-mittō</i> , -ere, -misi, -missus, <i>dismiss; lose</i> .	<i>occāsiō</i> , -ōnis, F., <i>occasion, chance</i> .
<i>dolus</i> , -ī, M., <i>treachery</i> .	<i>*posterus</i> , ⁴ -a, -um, adj., <i>following</i> .
<i>frūmentārius</i> , -a, -um, <i>pertaining to grain</i> ; <i>rēs frūmentāria</i> , <i>provisions</i> .	<i>premō</i> , -ere, <i>pressī</i> , <i>pressus</i> , <i>press hard, distress</i> .
	<i>quaerō</i> , -ere, -sīvi or -li, -itus, <i>seek; inquire</i> .

undus, -a, -um, adj., second. **trā-dō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, surren-**
rvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, keep; fi- **der; impart.**
dem servāre, to keep one's **trigintā, indecl. num. adj., THIRTY.**
word. **ūsus, -ūs, M., experience.**

270.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Diē septimō pervēnit. 2. Hostēs sine fidē tempus
 atque occāsiōnem dolī quaerunt. 3. Diērum trigintā habē-
 bant frūmentum. 4. In ūnā⁵ virtūte omnem spem salūtis
 pōnunt. 5. Multa dē rērum nātūrā juventūtī trādunt. 6. In
 colle mediō³ triplicem aciem instrūxit. 7. Omnem rēi frū-
 mentāriae spem dimiserant. 8. Reliquās legiōnēs prō cas-
 tris in aciē cōstituit.

II. 1. The army⁶ of the enemy had been beaten on the
 left wing. 2. A very opportune incident⁷ occurred. 3. On
 the following day he inquired about the remaining matters.⁷
 4. Caesar will keep his word as-to⁸ the number of days.
 5. The remaining legions take position in line of battle on
 the middle of the hill. 6. The soldiers of the second line
 were distressed for provisions.⁹ 7. The tribunes had no
 great experience in military affairs.¹⁰

¹ **diēs** is sometimes feminine in the sin-
 gular.

² See also 265, 268.

³ **medius** in agreement with a sub-
 stantive usually denotes *the middle of*;
 thus, in **colle mediō**, *on the middle of*
the hill: see A. & G. 193; H. 440, notes
 1 and 2; G. 287, Rem.

⁴ The asterisk (*) indicates that the
 form to which it is attached is not in use.

⁵ *alone.*

⁶ **exercitus** = *army* (generic term);
agmen = *army* (on the march); **aciēs**
 = *army* (drawn up in battle array).
 Which is to be preferred here?

⁷ **rēs**.

⁸ **dē**.

⁹ Use the ablative.

¹⁰ **rēs** in the singular.

LESSON XXXII.

ADJECTIVES: PECULIARITIES OF COMPARISON.

NOTE: As the four conjugations in verbs, and the several declensions in substantives and adjectives, have now been treated, the special vocabularies hitherto printed in connection with the exercises will be discontinued. The pupil will henceforth be obliged to depend wholly, therefore, on the general vocabularies at the end of the book. In consulting the Latin-English vocabulary for the meaning of a word whose formation or composition is given, he should study carefully what is printed in brackets, so as to be able to trace the meaning of the complete word from the meaning of the parts which enter into its formation. Right habits formed at this stage will greatly facilitate the acquisition of power to translate at sight.

At this point also, or a little later at the discretion of the teacher, the pupil may with profit begin to take occasional short lessons on the formation of words (see lessons beginning p. 209), and to translate and commit to memory passages from the anecdotes introduced at p. 224. The lessons on formation and the anecdotes should be completed before the continuous extracts from Caesar (p. 234) are begun.

271. Compare, with meanings: *ācer*, *sharp*; *celer*, *swift*; *miser*, *wretched*; *pulcher*, *beautiful*: A. & G. 89, a; H. 163, 1; G. 88, 1.

272. Compare, with meanings: *facilis*, *easy*; *difficilis*, *difficult*; *similis*, *like*; *humilis*, *low*: A. & G. 89, b; H. 163, 2; G. 88, 2.

273. Compare, with meanings: *bonus*, *good*; *malus*, *bad*; *māgnus*, *great*; *parvus*, *small*; *multus*, *much*: A. & G. 90; H. 165; G. 89.

274. Compare, with meanings: *citerior*, *hither*, *on this side*; *interior*, *inner*; *prior*, *former*; *propior*, *nearer*; *ūterior*, *farther*: A. & G. 91; H. 166; G. 89, Rem. 2.

275. Compare, with meanings: *exterus*, *on the outside*; *īferus*, *below*; **posterus*, *coming after*; *superus*, *above*: A. & G. 91, a; H. 163, 3; G. 89, Rem. 1.

276.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Pulcherrimam tōtius¹ Galliae urbem suis manibus succendunt. 2. Inter novissimum² hostium agmen et nostrum primum, longum spatium intererat. 3. Cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmant. 4. Tamen humilimus homo de plebe ope³ dignus est. 5. Majori tamen parti placuit castra defendere. 6. In Galliam ulteriorem contendit. 7. Majores natu⁴ legatos ad Caesarem miserunt. 8. Quam⁵ maximis potest⁶ itineribus contendit. 9. Sed Sequanis pejus accidit. 10. Traducti sunt plures.⁷ 11. Summae virtutis difficillima est via.

II. 1. Geneva⁸ is the last⁸ town of the Allobroges and nearest to the territories of the Helvetians. 2. [There] was but⁹ one legion in farther Gaul. 3. At night-fall¹⁰ they will hasten to the Rhine. 4. They had the greatest abundance of ships. 5. He had stationed the legions on the summit-of¹¹ the ridge. 6. The bravest soldiers had been posted¹² in the upper line. 7. They collect as many ships as they possibly can.¹³ 8. The lot of the Sequani was most pitiable.

277.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Caesar Procillo¹⁴ summam omnium rerum fidem habebat. 2. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur,¹⁵ pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni. 3. Proximo die Caesar e castris copias suas eduxit. 4. Multo¹⁶ major alacritas studiumque majus exercitui injectum est.¹⁷ 5. Dei Mercurii sunt plurima simulacra. 6. Plura⁷ Gallorum scuta uno ictu pilorum transfixa et conligata sunt. 7. Nostri majores¹⁸ exemplum posteris¹⁹ prae-diderunt pulcherrimum.²⁰ 8. Collis infimus²¹ apertus erat, ab superiore parte silvestris.

II. 1. The Sequanian land is the best in²² all¹ Gaul. 2. He hastens by forced marches²³ into farther Gaul and arrives at (ad) Geneva. 3. Caesar treats with Ariovistus on matters of-the-high-est-importance.²⁴ 4. At night-fall¹⁰ they hastened to the Rhine

and the marches²⁵ of the Germans. 5. He stationed all aries in front of the smaller camp in sight of the enem that-place was the shortest route into farther Gaul. 7. Axona is in the remotest [part of the]²⁶ territories of S. The lot of the Sequani is more pitiable and grievous t of the rest.

¹ Genitive feminine of *tōtus*, -a, -um, all, whole; see A. & G. 83; H. 151, 1; G. 83.

² *novissimum agmen, the rear*; for comparison, see A. & G. 91, c, 2; H. 167, 2; G. 89, 3.

³ Ablative with *dignus*: A. & G. 244, a (first line); H. 421, III.; G. 373, Rem. 3.

⁴ *māiores nātū*, [those who are] greater by birth, i.e., the elders.

⁵ *quāma* strengthens the superlative *māximū*; read A. & G. 93, b; H. 170, 2, (2); G. 317.

⁶ Pres. Indic. 3d sing. of *possum*, *possum*, *possum*: translate: *by the greatest possible marches, by forced marches*. *potest* might have been omitted.

⁷ *More* (than one, i.e.) *several*. For declension, see A. & G. 86; H. 163, note 1; G. 80.

⁸ Put the word for "last" at the beginning, and the word for "Geneva" at the end. What is the effect of this arrangement?

⁹ *Prima nocturne*.

¹⁰ "At night-fall" = *at the first part of the night* — *prima nocturne*; see A. & G. 168; H. 440, notes 1 and 2; G. 287, Rem.

¹¹ Superlative of *super*ment with substantive; a references.

¹² "had been posted" position; use *cōsistō*.

¹³ *possunt*, 3d pl. pr *possum*; imitate 276, I.,

¹⁴ *Procillō* (dat.) *habet in Procillō*.

¹⁵ *begin*; *oriuntur* b form, but an active meanin

¹⁶ *greater by much*, i.e., for the ablative, see A. & G. 400.

¹⁷ *injectum est*, perf *icō*: *was infused*.

¹⁸ Comparative of *māgi*stantively: *ancestors*.

¹⁹ Plural of **posterus*tively: *posterity*.

²⁰ Note the emphatic *po*cherrimum.

²¹ *at the bottom*.

²² cf. foot-note 9, *Leason*

²³ Imitate 276, I., sent.

²⁴ Superlative of *super*

²⁵ "marches" = *border*: use the plural of *finis*.

²⁶ Superlative of *exte*ment with substantive; cf.

LESSON XXXIII.

NUMERALS: CARDINALS.

276. *Prima*, with meanings, the cardinal num
de G. 84; H. 174; G. 84.

279. Learn the declension of: *ūnus* (A. & G. 83, *a*; H. 175; G. 35), *duo* (A. & G. 94, *b*; H. 175; G. 92), *trēs* (A. & G. 94, *c*; H. 175; G. 92), *ducentī* (A. & G. 94, *d*; H. 177).

280. Decline together: *duae legiōnēs*, *two legions*; *itīnera duo*, *two roads*; *trēs senātōrēs*, *three senators*; *passūs ducentī*, *two hundred paces*.

281. Decline together, with meanings: in the sing., *ūnum iter*, *one route*; in the sing., *ūna spēs*, *the only hope*; in the pl., *ūnī Suēbī*, *the Suebi alone*; in the pl., *ūna castra*, *one camp*. See A. & G. 94, *a*; H. 175, *a*. 1; G. 95, Rem. 2 (second line).

282.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Equitēs mille* (Cic. *Fam.* 10, 9, 3), *a thousand horsemen*.
2. *Equitum mille* (Caes. *B. C.* 3, 84, 4), *a thousand horsemen* (lit., *a thousand of horsemen*).
3. *Milia passuum tria* (1, 22, 5), *three miles* (lit., *three thousands of paces*).

283. OBSERVATION: Note (1) that *mille* (Ex. 1) is an *indeclinable adjective*; (2) that *mille* (Ex. 2) is a *substantive* in the *singular number* limited by the *genitive equitum*;¹ (3) that *milia* (Ex. 3) is a *substantive* in the *plural number* limited by the *genitive passuum*.¹

284. REFERENCES: Read carefully: A. & G. 94, *c* with note (to the semicolon); H. 178 with note (to the semicolon); G. 308.

285. Decline together: *diēs quīndecim*, *fifteen days*; *milia sexāgintā tria*, *sixty-three thousand*. See A. & G. 94, *c* (second sentence); H. 176; G. 92.

286.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. *Factiōnēs sunt duae*. 2. *Milia hominum vīgintī quattuor² ad Ariovistum vēnērunt*. 3. *Vicōs quadringentōs*

incendunt. 4. Cum duābus legiōnibus jugum adscendit. 5. Gallia est dīvisa in partēs trēs. 6. Caesar scūtum ab novissimīs ūnī militī³ dētraxit. 7. Oppida sua omnia, numerō ad⁴ duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, incendunt. 8. Quīndecim mīlia Atrebatēs pollicentur,⁵ Ambiānī decem mīlia, Morinī vīgintī quīque² mīlia, Menapiī septem mīlia, Aduātucī decem et novem² mīlia.

II. 1. The place was six hundred paces⁶ distant. 2. There were only two routes. 3. The Belgians inhabit one part. 4. The Nervii were reduced from six hundred senators to three.⁷ 5. Six thousand men hastened to the Rhine. 6. The Nervii were reduced from sixty thousand men to barely⁸ five hundred. 7. He stationed two legions on the topmost ridge. 8. The sum total⁹ was¹⁰ about⁴ three hundred sixty-eight thousand.

287.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlia ducenta et sexāgintā tria, Tulingōrum mīlia trīgintā sex, Latovicōrum quattuordecim, Rauricōrum vīgintī tria, Bōjōrum trīgintā duo. 2. Ex litteris Caesaris dīerum¹¹ vīgintī supplicatiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

II. 1. In twenty-five days they raised an embankment three hundred and thirty feet⁶ broad [and] eighty feet⁶ high. 2. He pitches his camp three miles⁶ from the camp of the enemy. 3. The Helvetians with five hundred horse had routed a great force of cavalry.

¹ It will be enough for the pupil at present to note that the *substantives mille* and *mīlia* are followed by the genitive; the *kind* of genitive used after these substantives will be discussed in the next lesson.

² What other form of expression is possible?

³ *ūnī militī*, from a soldier, dat. of ind. obj. after *dētraxit*; in the Latin expression, the soldier is viewed as the person to whom the action is done. See *A. & G. 220; H. 385, 2; G. 344, Rem. 2.*

⁴ *ad* with numerals = *about*.

⁵ *pollicentur*, *promise*, has a passive form with active meaning.

⁶ Use the accusative; this use of the accusative will be discussed in the next lesson.

⁷ Express: *from six hundred to three senators.*

⁸ Express: *barely to.*

⁹ "sum total" = *sum of all.*

¹⁰ *was, fuērunt*. See *A. & G. 204, b; H. 462; G. 202, Rem. 1, 3).*

¹¹ cf. Lesson XXX., foot-note 6.

LESSON XXXIV.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE. — ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION
OF TIME AND EXTENT OF SPACE.

288.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Magna est corporis pars aperta** (4, 1, 10), *a great part of the body is exposed.*
2. **Impedimentōrum māgnū numerū** (2, 17, 2), *a great quantity of baggage.*
3. **Nihil vīnī** (2, 15, 4), *no wine* (lit., nothing of wine).
4. **Mīlia hominū vīgintī quattuor** (1, 31, 10), *twenty-four thousand men.*
5. **Omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae** (1, 1, 3), *the Belgians are the bravest of all.*
6. **Nōbilissimōs cīvitātis** (1, 7, 3), *the men of highest rank in the community.*
7. **Multum aestātis** (5, 22, 4), *a considerable part of the summer.*
8. **Satis ēloquentiae, sapientiae parū** (Sall. Cat. 5, 4), *enough eloquence, [but] not enough discretion.*

289. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in each of the foregoing examples, that the *genitive* designates the *whole*, and that the word which the genitive limits designates a *part*. The genitive thus used is called the *Partitive Genitive*. Frame a rule for the Partitive Genitive.

290. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 216; H. 397; G. 366.

291. OBSERVATION: What part of speech is the *partitive word* in Exs. 1-4? in Exs. 5-7? in Ex. 8? Read A. & G. 216, *a*, 1, 2, 3, 4; H. 397, 1, 2, 3, 4; G. 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, Rem. 4.

292.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit** (1, 48, 3), *for five days in succession Caesar led out his forces [and arrayed them] in front of the camp.*

[Castici] pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtin-
erat (1, 3, 4), *the father of Casticus had held regal power among*
the Sequani for many years.

Repūgnantēs diem noctemque obsident (7, 42, 6), *they besiege*
day and night those that resist.

Oppidum aberat mīlia passuum octō (2, 6, 1), *the town was*
eight miles distant.

Duās fossās quīndecim pedēs lātās perdūxit (7, 72, 3), *he*
made (carried) two trenches fifteen feet wide.

Hercyniae silvae lātitudō novem diērum iter patet (6, 25, 1)
the breadth of the Hercynian forest extends over nine days'
journey.

293. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Exs. 1-3, that *ēs*, *annōs*, *diem*, and *noctem* answer the question *how long?* In what *case* are they? Note, in Exs. 4-6, that *mīlia*, *pedēs*, and *iter* answer the question *how far?* In what *case* are they? Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives denoting Duration of Time or Extent of Space.

294. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 256 (last part), 257; H. 379; G. 335, 2, 336, 337.

295.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Magistrātūs Aeduōrum antīquitus¹ rēgiā potestatem annum obtinere cōsuērant.² 2. Ā castrīs oppidum ēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germanōrum omnium. 4. Militēs aggerem lātum pedēs trecenis trīgintā, altum pedēs octōgintā exstrūxērunt. 5. Paucōs diēs ad Vesontionem rei frūmentariae causā³ morātur.⁴

II. 1. Night lasts (is) thirty days together⁵ at the winter season.⁶ 2. Nor was there left much time before (to) sunset. 3. The territories of the Helvetians extended two hundred and forty miles in⁷ length, [and] a hundred and eighty in⁷ breadth. 4. He selected a place suitable

for a camp about six hundred paces from the Germans.

5. After the destruction of the Cimbri, they had been for many years harassed by their neighbors.

296.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Prima legiō in castra vēnerat, reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnū spatium aberant. 2. Explōrātōrēs hostium omnī flūminis parte⁸ erant dispositi. 3. Aedui et Arverni dē potentātū inter sē⁹ multōs annōs contendunt.¹⁰ 4. Frūmenta tantā multitudine jumentōrum atque hominum cōsūmēbantur. 5. Ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Jūram milia passuum decem novem mūrūm perducit. 6. Ariovistus multōs mēnsēs castris¹¹ sē¹² ac palūdi-bus¹¹ tenuerat.

II. 1. He was distant a few days'¹³ march from the Germans. 2. The enemy not only¹⁴ blockades the roads, but also¹⁴ leaves behind a strong enough garrison¹⁵ for the camp. 3. Storms ensued¹⁶ several days in succession.¹⁷ 4. The place was distant about six hundred paces from the enemy. 5. There was the greatest abundance of everything in the town. 6. For several years he has farmed¹⁸ the revenues of the Aedui.

¹ antiquitus, in former times.

² cōsūerant, contracted from cōnsuēverant: A. & G. 128, a; H. 235; G. 151, 1.

³ See Lesson XXX., foot-note 20.

⁴ morātur, he delays, has a passive form with reflexive meaning.

⁵ "thirty days together" = thirty successive days.

⁶ at the winter season, sub brūmā.

⁷ in with accusative.

⁸ Ablative of place where with preposition omitted; read A. & G. 258, f; H. 425, 2; G. 386.

⁹ inter sē, among themselves, with each other.

¹⁰ contendunt, have been contending: A. & G. 276, a; H. 467, 2; G. 221.

¹¹ As the ablative of place where in this instance expresses also means by which, the preposition in is omitted: H. 425, 1, 1); G. 387.

¹² himself, accusative singular.

¹³ "a few days' march" = a march of a few days; cf. 287, I., sent. 2 and foot-note.

¹⁴ not only . . . but also, et . . . et.

¹⁵ "a strong enough garrison" = enough of garrison.

¹⁶ secūtae sunt (passive form with active meaning).

¹⁷ "in succession" = successive.

¹⁸ "has farmed the revenues" = has the revenues farmed. Farmed, redēptus, -a, -um.

LESSON XXXV.

NUMERALS: ORDINALS. — ADJECTIVES: GENITIVE **-ius**, DATIVE IN **-ī**.

297. Learn, with meanings, the first twenty-five ordinal numerals: A. & G. 94; H. 174; G. 93.

298. Study the following table of alternative expressions:

thirteenth, **tertius decimus** or **decimus et tertius** (similarly 14–17).

eighteenth, **duodēvīcēsīmus** or **octāvus decimus** (similarly 19).

twenty-first, **vīcēsīmus prīmus** or **ūnus et vīcēsīmus**.

twenty-second, **vīcēsīmus secundus** or **alter et vīcēsīmus**.

twenty-third, **vīcēsīmus tertius** or **tertius et vīcēsīmus** (similarly 24 and 25).

299. Decline¹ together: in the sing., **legiō decima**, *the tenth legion*; **cēnsōrēs vīcēsīmī sextī**, *the twenty-sixth censors*.

300. Learn the declension of: **alius**, *other*; **nūllus**, *not any, no*; **sōlus**, *alone*; **tōtus**, *whole*; **ūllus**, *any*; **ūnus**, *one*; **alter**, *other* (of two); **uter**, *which* (of two); **neuter**, *neither*: A. & G. 83 with *a* and *b*; H. 151, 1; G. 35 with Rem. (end).

301. Decline together: **aliud iter**, *another road*; **nūlla vōx**, *not a word*; **ūllum perīculum**, *any danger at all*.

302. Decline together, in the sing.: **prōvincia tōta**, *the whole province*; **altera pars**, *the other side*; **utra pars**, *which part* (of two)?

303.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Diē sextō decimō pervēnit. 2. Aliud iter habent nullum.² 3. Annō ūndēvīcēsīmō³ post cōsulis mortem, urbs expūgnāta est. 4. Prīma et secunda aciēs⁴ hostibus⁵ resistit. 5. Diērum⁶ vīgintī supplicātiō acciderat nullī.² 6. Sēquanī sōlī auxilium nōn implōrant. 7. Cēnsōrēs vicēsīmī sextī³ ā primīs cēnsōribus fuērunt. 8. Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs sunt duae. 9. Alter alterī⁷ ūtilis est. 10. Dē quartā vigiliā summum jugum montis adscendit. 11. Cum legiōne duodecimā contendit, 12. Uter utrī antefendus⁸ est? 13. Potestās erat neutrī.⁹

- II. 1. The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions¹⁰ arrived. 2. Some resisted the enemy⁵ in one quarter, others in another.¹¹ 3. He left behind the fourteenth legion. 4. There he places the baggage of the entire army. 5. In the twenty-sixth year the town was taken by assault. 6. Some¹² hastened to the mountain, the others¹² to the baggage. 7. He waited until¹³ the ninth hour.¹⁴ 8. Neither-party¹⁵ makes¹⁶ a beginning. 9. He will arrive at about the fourth hour¹⁴ of the day. 10. They do not govern according-to¹⁷ the dictates¹⁸ of another. 11. [It] was the eighteenth purificatory sacrifice. 12. He makes a requisition on¹⁹ the whole province.

304.

Supplementary Exercises.

- I. 1. Aliud aliī²⁰ nātūra iter ostendit. 2. Alterius factiōnis principātum tenent Aeduī, alterius Arvernī. 3. Annum jam tertijm et vicēsimum⁸ rēgnat.²¹ 4. Prīma et secunda aciēs⁴ victis ac summōtis resistēbat, tertia venientēs sustinēbat. 5. Post sex legiōnēs tōtīus exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat;²² inde duae legiōnēs tōtum agmen claudēbant. 6. Legiōnis¹⁰ nōnae et decimae militēs Atrebatēs celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt. 7. Alter alterī²³ inimicus erat.

- II. 1. He makes a requisition on¹⁹ the entire province [for] the greatest possible number of soldiers. 2. He sent Galba with 6

twelfth legion and a part of the cavalry against²⁴ the Ver-
3. They ask of one another²⁵ the cause of the tumult. 4. The
first and second lines⁴ are under²⁶ arms, the third is fortifying the
camp. 5. The Helvetians go in quest of another dwelling place
other habitations. 6. Lysander conquered the Athenians whom
they had been carrying on war twenty-six years.²⁷

¹ Ordinals are of the first and second declensions, and are declined like **bonus**.

² Note the emphatic position.

³ What is the alternative expression?

⁴ Note the difference between the Latin idiom and the English; **aciēs** is here singular, but must be translated plural.

⁵ A. & G. 227; H. 385, I.; G. 345.

⁶ cf. 287, I., sent. 2 and foot-note.

⁷ Translate: *They are useful to each other* (the one is useful to the other): A. & G. 203.

⁸ *is* to be preferred.

⁹ Trans.: *Neither had power* (power was to neither). For the dative, see A. & G. 231; H. 387; G. 349.

¹⁰ cf. foot-note 4.

¹¹ Translate as if the entire sentence were. *Others resisted the enemy in another part.* See A. & G. 203, c; H. 459, 1; G. 306 (illustrations).

¹² Some ... the others, **alterī** ... **alterī**.

¹³ **ad**.

¹⁴ See **hōra** in the general vocabulary.

¹⁵ Use the plural of **neuter**.

¹⁶ **faciunt**, 3d pl. of **faciō**.

¹⁷ **ad**.

¹⁸ **dictates** (pl.), **praescriptum**, -i N. (sing.).

¹⁹ "on" is here a sign of the dative of indirect object.

²⁰ See references under foot-note 11.

²¹ *He has been reigning these twenty-three years*; cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 10.

²² **conlocārat** = **conlocāverat**; cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 2.

²³ cf. foot-note 7.

²⁴ **in** with accusative.

²⁵ *Another asks from another*; cf. foot-note 7.

²⁶ **in** with ablative.

²⁷ Translate: *Lysander conquered the Athenians carrying on war in the twenty-sixth year.*

LESSON XXXVI.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

305.

EXAMPLES.

I. TIME.

Caesar **necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs**, ad legiōnem dēvēnit
(2, 21, 1), *Caesar, WHEN HE HAD ISSUED THE NECESSARY
ORDERS (the necessary things having been ordered), came to
the legion.*

2. **M**agnā multitudīne peditātūs coāctā, ad castra vēnerunt (4, 34, 5), HAVING COLLECTED A LARGE FORCE OF INFANTRY (a large force having been collected), *they came to the camp.*
3. [**O**rgetorix], **M. Messallā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus**, civitāti persuāsīt (1, 2, 1), *Orgetorix*, IN THE CONSULSHIP OF MARCUS MESSALLA AND MARCUS PISO (Marcus Messalla and Marcus Piso being consuls), *persuaded his countrymen.*
4. **C**ōgnitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs mittit (1, 42, 1), ON LEARNING THE ARRIVAL OF CAESAR (the arrival having been learned), *Ariovistus sent ambassadors.*
5. **S**cūtō dētractō, prōcēssit (2, 25, 2), *he* SNATCHED A SHIELD AND (a shield having been snatched, he) *went forward.*

II. CAUSE.

6. **G**ermāni reliquā fugā dēspērātā, sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt (4, 15, 2), *the Germans*, DESPAIRING OF FURTHER FLIGHT (further flight having been despaired of), *cast themselves into the river.*
7. **P**etentibus Rēmīs, impetrant (2, 12, 5), AT THE INTERCESSION OF THE REMI (the Remi asking), *they obtain* [their request].

III. CONCESSION.

8. **P**aucis dēfendentibus, expūgnāre nōn potuit (2, 12, 2), THOUGH BUT FEW DEFENDED (few defending) [*it*], *he could not take* [*it*].

IV. MEANS.

9. **M**ilitēs, pīlis missis, hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt (1, 25, 2), *the soldiers*, BY THROWING THEIR HEAVY JAVELINS (javelins having been thrown), *broke through the enemy's phalanx.*

V. CONDITION.

10. **N**ihil decet repūgnante nātūrā (Cic. *Off.* 1, 31, 110), *nothing is becoming* IF NATURE OPPOSES (nature opposing).
11. **S**equanis invitīs, ire nōn poterant (1, 9, 1), IF THE SEQUANI WITHHELD CONSENT (the Sequani [being] unwilling) *they could not proceed.*

306. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *ablative expressions* printed in **boldface type** in the foregoing examples might be omitted without injury to the construction. In other words, they are *grammatically independent*. Ablatives which are thus grammatically independent of the remaining parts of the sentence are called *Ablatives Absolute* (i.e., independent ablatives).

Note, further, that all the examples, except 3 and 11, contain a substantive in the ablative absolute with a *participle*, whereas, in Ex. 3, both ablatives are *substantives*, and, in Ex. 11, the second ablative is an *adjective* (*invitis*).

Note, again, that the ablatives absolute express: in 1-5, *time*; in 6 and 7, *cause*; in 8, *concession*; in 9, *means*; in 10 and 11, *condition*.

Note, finally, that the literal construction of the words is frequently disregarded in the English translation. Thus, in Exs. 8, 10, and 11, the ablative absolute is translated by a *subordinate clause*; in Exs. 2, 4, 6, and 9, a *passive participle* is translated as an *active*; in Exs. 3, 4, 7, and 9, a *preposition with a substantive* is used in translation; and in Ex. 5, the participle is translated by a *verb* connected with the main verb by a *coördinate conjunction*.

Frame rules embodying the foregoing observations.

307. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 255, a; H-431, 1, 2, 4; G. 408, 409.

308.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nūllō hoste prohibente, legiōnem in Allobrogēs perduxit. 2. Conloquium, interpositā causā, tollit. 3. Nōn-nūllī ab novissimis, dēsertō proeliō,¹ excēdēbant. 4. Propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem, paucīs dēfendentibus, expūgnāre nōn potuit.² 5. Mulierēs, pāssīs manibus, flentēs auxilium implōrābant. 6. Repūgnante nātūrā, frūstrā contendimus. 7. L. Tullō M'. Lepidō cōsulibus, P. Autrōnius et P. Sūlla, dēsīgnātī cōsulēs, poenās dederant.

II. 1. They had not given battle the-day-before, *although they had seized the higher places*.³ 2. *Having made this*⁴ address, he dismissed the council. 3. *At the intercession of*

Dumnorix, they obtain their request of⁵ the Sequani. 4. The women and children on⁶ the wall, *with hands outstretched* according to⁷ their wont, besought peace of⁵ the Romans. 5. The Caturiges *seize the higher places and*¹ impede the army's march.⁸ 6. *In Caesar's consulship*, Ariovistus had sought the friendship of the Roman people. 7. The Helvetians, *if Caesar withhold consent*,⁹ will endeavor to force a passage¹⁰ through the province.

309.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. *Secundiore equitum proelio hostibus, Caesar suos in castra redūxit.* 2. *Nocte intermissa, circiter hominum milia sex ad Rhēnum contendērunt.* 3. *Male rē gestā, fortuna defuit imperatori.* 4. *Aequatō omnium periculō, spem fugae tollit.* 5. *Comitātō consiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine lacesunt.*

II. 1. Labienus having seized the mountain, awaited our men. 2. Although two cohorts were sent by Caesar as-a-reinforcement,¹¹ the enemy, inasmuch as our men were overcome with terror, broke boldly through the midst [of them]. 3. In the consulship of Cotta and Torquatus, a great many objects on the Capitol were struck¹² by lightning.¹³ 4. On hearing the shouting, they all broke ranks¹ and hastened to seek safety in flight.¹⁴

¹ Imitate 305, Ex. 5.

² *nōn potuit, he was not able.*

³ Passages in this exercise printed in Italics are to be translated by the ablative absolute.

⁴ *hāc*, abl. sing. fem.

⁵ *ā*, ab.

⁶ *ex*.

⁷ cf. foot-note 17, Lesson XXX.

⁸ Translate: *restrain the army from the march*: A. & G. 243; H. 413; G. 388.

⁹ See 305, Ex. 11.

¹⁰ Translate: *will attempt a passage through force (per vim)*. For declension of *vis*, *force*, see A. & G. 61; H. 66.

¹¹ *subsidiō* (dat.).

¹² *percussae sunt* (perf. pass. of *percutiō*).

¹³ *by lightning*, *dē caelō* (from heaven).

¹⁴ Ablative of means.

LESSON XXXVII.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS: ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

310. Review the present active and perfect passive participles of **amō**, **moneō** (or **dēleō**), **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**), **audio**; and learn, with meanings, the future active participle and the gerundive: A. & G. pp. 77, 79, 81, 83, 87; H. pp. 87, 89, 91, 93, 95, 97, 99, 101; G. pp. 54, 57, 58, 61, 64, 67, 68, 71. Learn also the future participle of **sum**: A. & G. p. 69; H. p. 85; G. p. 51.

311. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing forms, the following facts:—

1. The *present active participle* is formed by the addition of **-nt-**,¹ nom. **-ns**,¹ to the *present stem*,² and the *gerundive* by the addition of **-ndo-**,³ nom. **-ndus**, to the *same stem*.

2. The *future active participle* is formed by the addition of **-tūro-**, nom. **-tūrus**, to the *verb stem* as it appears in the *perfect passive participle*.⁴

Frame rules for the formation of the Present Active Participle, the Gerundive, and the Future Active Participle in the several conjugations.

312. Form and translate the Present and Future Active Participles, and the Gerundive, of:—

ā-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus,¹ *lose*.

cōgō, -ere, cōēgi, cōāctus, *compel*.

com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *alarm*.

dō, dare, dedi, datus, *give*.

ex-istimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *reckon*, *think*.

habeō, -ēre, -nī, -itus, *have*.

mūniō, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itus, *fortify*.

reperiō, -ire, repperī, repertus, *find*.

313. Learn, with meanings, the Indicative forms of the **First** (Active) Periphrastic Conjugation⁵ of **amō**: A. & G. 129; H. 233; G. 149.

314. Learn, with meanings, the Indicative forms of the **Second** (Passive) Periphrastic Conjugation⁵ of **amō**: A. & G. 129; H. 234; G. 150.

315.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrus est. 2. Aquitania tertia pars Galliae est existimanda. 3. Obsidēs datūrī erant. 4. Aeduōrum auctoritatem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrus erit. 5. Bellum gerendum erit. 6. Neque obsidēs repetitūrī neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implorātūrī fuērunt. 7. Omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda. 8. Militēs ab opere sunt revocandī. 9. Iter per provinciam per vim tentātūrī sunt.

II. 1. They had been on-the-point-of-restoring the hostages. 2. They were about-to-compel the Allobroges. 3. The opportunity must not be lost. 4. The [soil] of the Gauls⁶ was not to-be-compared with that⁷ of the Germans. 5. The signal will have-to-be-given with the trumpet. 6. Neither will men of hostile disposition⁸ be likely-to-refrain from injury and mischief. 7. He had been on-the-point-of-obtaining control of his own state. 8. The force of the enemy will have-to-be-kept-asunder.

316.**Supplementary Exercises.**

I. 1. Allobrogibus vel persuāsūrī sumus vel vi⁹ coāctūrī. 2. Omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōponendum,¹⁰ signum tubā dandum,¹⁰ ab opere revocandi¹¹ militēs, aciēs instruenda.¹⁰ 3. Aeduōrum injuriās nōn neglētūrus erit. 4. Occasiō negotiī bene gerendi¹² amittenda nōn est. 5. Nōs¹³ neque lēgātōs missūrī neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrī¹⁴ sumus. 6. Uter utri antefendus est?

II. 1. The Germans' mode of life is not to be compared [that] of the Gauls.⁶ 2. Ariovistus is not¹⁶ likely to reject either my good will or¹⁶ the Roman people's. 3. The authority of the Aeduans ought to have been increased among all the Belgians. 4. They were on the point of sacrificing an opportunity of bringing the matter to a successful issue.¹⁶ 5. The wrongs of the Aeduans ought not to be neglected. 6. The enemy will not be likely to find an opportunity is afforded [them],¹⁷ to refrain from mischief.

¹ Note that the vowel of the present participle is short before *-nt-* and long before *-ns*.

² The present stem may be obtained by dropping *-re* of the present infinitive active; see 136, 1. Note, however, that the present stem of verbs of the fourth conjugation (as, *audīō*) ends in *-ie-* (as, *audie-*) in the present participle and gerundive.

³ Note that the vowel preceding *-nd-* is short.

⁴ If the perfect participle ends in *-sus*, the future participle ends in *-sūrus*.

⁵ Note, in studying the forms of this conjugation, that the *tense* is determined by the form of *sum* used.

⁶ *Gallicus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.

⁷ Use *ager* here, and omit it at the beginning.

⁸ Use the ablative; cf. foot-note 16, Lesson XXX.

⁹ For declension, see references under foot-note 10, Lesson XXXVI.

¹⁰ *sc. erat*.

¹¹ *sc. erant*.

¹² Opportunity of the matter to be well conducted = *opportunity of bringing the matter to a successful issue*.

¹³ *ffe*.

¹⁴ Fut. act. part. of *accipiō*.

¹⁵ not . . . either . . . or = *neither . . . nor* = *neque . . . neque*.

¹⁶ See sentence 4 of the preceding exercise with accompanying foot-note.

¹⁷ Ablative absolute.

LESSON XXXVIII.

DATIVE OF AGENT. — DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE.

— DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE.

317.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda* (2, 20, 1), *Caesar had to do everything at once* (lit., all things were to Caesar to be done).

2. *Nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus* (3, 13, 9), *the risk was greatly to be dreaded by our ships*.

3. **Militibus cum hostibus erat pugnandum** (4, 24, 2), *the soldiers had to fight with the enemy* (lit., the necessity of fighting was to the soldiers).
4. **Cum luxuriā nōbīs¹ certandum est** (Cic. Cat. 2, 5, 11), *we have to contend with dissipation* (lit., the necessity of contending is to us).

318. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that with the *gerundive*, in the foregoing examples, the *person upon whom the necessity rests*, or *by whom the work is to be done*, is expressed by the *dative* (see **Caesarī, nāvibus, militibus, nōbīs**). Frame a rule for such Datives.

319. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 232; H. 388; G. 353.

320. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note further, that (1) the verbs in Exs. 1 and 2 are *transitive*, and the periphrastic forms have a *subject* expressed, with which they agree in *person, number, and gender*; whereas (2) in Exs. 3 and 4 the verbs are *intransitive*, the periphrastic forms have *no subject*, but are of the *third person singular*, and the *gerundive* is *neuter*. In the latter case the verb is said to be used *impersonally*. State the second of the foregoing observed facts in the form of a General Rule.

321. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 146, c; H. 301, 1, 2; G. 199, Rem. 1.

322.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Volusēnus, vir cōsiliī māgnī** (3, 5, 2), *Volusenus, a man of great sagacity.*
2. **Paucōrum diērum iter** (4, 7, 2), *a few days' march.*
3. **Castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vāllō mūnīre** (2, 5, 6), *to fortify the camp with a wall (of) twelve feet high (in height).*
4. **Omnes Britannī capillō sunt prōmissō** (5, 14, 2), *all the Britons have (are of) flowing hair.*
5. **[Thūys] barbā erat prōmissā** (Nep. Dat. 3, 1), *Thūys wore (was of) a flowing beard.*

6. [Catō] singulārī fuit industriā (Nep. Cat. 3, 1), *Cato was [a man] of unexampled industry.*

323. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Exs. 1-3, that the substantives added for description (see *cōsiliū, diē, pedum*) are in the *genitive*, and that this genitive is limited by an *adjective* (see *māgnī, paucōrum, duodecim*). A genitive thus added to a substantive for further description is called *Descriptive Genitive* or a *Genitive of Quality*. Frame a rule for the Descriptive Genitive.

324. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 215; H. 390, V., Note 1; G. 364.

325. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Exs. 4-6, that the substantives added for description (see *capillō, barbā, industriā*), are in the *ablative*, and that this ablative is limited by an *adjective* (see *prōmissō, prōmissā, singulārī*). An ablative thus added to a substantive for further description is called a *Descriptive Ablative* or an *Ablative of Quality*. Frame a rule for the Ablative of Quality.

326. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 251; H. 419, II.; G. 402.

327. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the descriptive expressions in Exs. 2 and 3 denote *measure*; does the ablative, or the genitive, appear to be preferred for this kind of description?

Note, further, that the descriptive expressions in Exs. 4 and 5 denote *physical characteristics*; which of the two cases appears to be preferred for this kind of description?

Compare Ex. 1 with Ex. 6; does there appear to be any difference between the genitive and ablative in these examples?

328. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 215, b, 251, a; H. 419, II., 2, 1), 2), 3); G. 402, Rem. 1.

¹ Dative plural of *nōs*, *we*.

LESSON XXXIX.

329. ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE FORE-GOING CONSTRUCTIONS.

I. 1. Aduātucī Caesarī sunt cōservandī. 2. Tum māgnī ponderis saxa in mūrō conlocābant. 3. Ingentī māgnitudine corporum Germānī, incredibīlī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs sunt. 4. Nōn omittendum est Nervīis cōsiliū. 5. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum triūm. 6. Procillum, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulescentem, ad Ariovistum mittit. 7. Num hominēs tantulae statūrae tantī oneris turrīm movēre possunt?¹ 8. Cum tantā multitudīne hostiū lēgātō nōn est dīmicandum.

II. 1. Sabinus will have to keep² the forces of the enemy asunder. 2. Our horsemen and light armed³ foot-soldiers again sought flight in⁴ another direction. 3. A mountain of great height bounds the remaining space. 4. The commander must exercise² no slight diligence. 5. Protected [as they were] by a rampart (of) fifteen miles in circuit, they kept themselves⁵ within the town.⁶ 6. Iccius the Reman, [a man] of the highest rank and influence among his [countrymen], sent a messenger to Caesar. 7. Neither ought the Romans to have feared⁷ without cause. 8. The Romans move forward with remarkable speed⁸ engines of great height.

330. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsiliī māgnī et virtūtis, ad Galbām accurrit. 2. Militibus autem, impeditis manibus, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum. 3. Civitās erat māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte. 4. Ab utrōque⁹ latere collis transversam fossam

obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum. 5. Sēquanīs ^{vērō} omnēs cruciātūs erant perferendī. 6. Ūri sunt speciē et ^{colōre} et figurā tauri.¹⁰

II. 1. Agesilaus was of small stature and spare figure. 2. [It is] not in vain [that] men of such valor venture to cross a ^{very} broad river. 3. Caesar will have to inflict punishment on ^{the} Veneti. 4. The general should distribute his army more-widely.¹¹ 5. The Britons have all parts of the body shaved¹² except ^{the} head and the upper lip.

¹ are able, can.

² cf. 317, Ex. 1.

³ Translate: *foot-soldiers of light armor.*

⁴ in with accusative.

⁵ sēsē (acc. pl.).

⁶ Ablative without preposition: cf. 296, I., sent. 6, with foot-note.

⁷ cf. Ex. 3 in 317; see also 320 (2).

⁸ cf. foot-note 4, Lesson XXIII.

⁹ uterque, -traque, -trumque, each (of two).

¹⁰ The descriptive ablative here takes a genitive instead of an adjective.

¹¹ lātius.

¹² Translate: *are of every part of the body shaved.*

LESSON XL.

NUMERALS: DISTRIBUTIVE.

331. Learn, with meanings, the distributive numerals from *one to twelve*: A. & G. 95; H. 174; G. 95.

332. Decline together: *bīnae nāvēs*, *ships* [taken] *two and two*; *duodēna mīlia*, *twelve thousand apiece*: A. & G. 95; H. 179.

333.

EXAMPLES.

1. Prīncipēs singulōs (5, 6, 4), *the chiefs one at a time.*
2. Singulī singulōs dēlēgerant (1, 48, 5), *they had each selected one.*
3. Bīnae ac ternae nāvēs (3, 15, 1), *ships in groups of two and three.*
4. Quaternae cohortēs ex quīnque legiōnibus (Caes. B. C. 1, 83, 2), *four cohorts from each of the five legions.*

5. *Ūna*¹ castra (Caes. B. C. 1, 74, 4), *one camp*.
 6. *Bīna*¹ castra (Caes. B. C. 3, 19, 1), *two camps*.
 7. *Trīnīs*¹ castrīs (7, 66, 2), *in three camps*.

334.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Singulās bīnae āc ternac nāvēs circumsteterant.
 2. Imperant Sēquanīs duodēna mīlia. 3. Ternās² cohortēs
 ex quattuor legiōnibus reliquit. 4. Inter bīna¹ castra
 Pompē³ atque Caesaris ūnum flūmen intererat Apsus. 5. Ibī
 turrēs cum ternīs tabulātīs ērigēbat. 6. Circiter mīlia pas-
 suum decem ab Rōmānīs, trīnīs⁴ castrīs Vercingetorix cōsēdit.

- II. 1. Caesar and Ariovistus brought ten [soldiers] each
 to the conference. 2. Soldiers in groups of five⁵ and six
 surrounded single [soldiers]. 3. The floats he made fast
 by means of four² anchors at⁶ each of the four corners.
 4. He resolved to spend the winter with three legions in
 three¹ camps. 5. He erected towers of two stories each.

335.

Supplementary Exercises.

- I. 1. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs praefēcīt.⁷
 2. Imperant Morinis quina milia. 3. Binīs⁸ cohortibus relictis,
 reliquum exercitum in cōpiōsissimōs agrōs Biturigum inducit.
 4. Primam aciem quaternae cohortēs ex quinque legiōnibus
 tenēbant.

- II. 1. And-so with equal courage they matched⁹ [their ships]
 one by one against the ships of the enemy [taken] two and two.
 2. One camp seemed now to-have-been-formed¹⁰ out of two.

¹ A. & G. 95, b; H. 174, 2, 3); G.
 95, Rem. 2.

² cf. 333, Ex. 4.

³ Genitive of Pompējus.

⁴ Would ternīs be admissible here?
 See foot-note 1.

⁵ cf. 333, Ex. 3.

⁶ "at" = *from*; cf. foot-note 4, Les-
 son XXVI.

⁷ Perfect indicative of *praeficiō*.

⁸ The distributive shows that *two*
from each legion is meant.

⁹ *obiclēbant* (pronounced: *obji-
 clēbant*), imperf. indic. of *obiclō* (pro-
 nounced: *objiclō*).

¹⁰ *facta*.

347.

EXAMPLES.

[Patria] tēcum, Catilīna, sic agit (Cic. Cat. 1, 7, 18), *your country, Catiline, thus remonstrates with you.*

Haec⁵ vōbiscum ūnā cōsul agam (Sall. Cat. 20, 17), *these [measures] I shall as consul carry out in conjunction with you.*

... sēcum habēbat (3, 18, 1), *he kept about his person (had with himself).*

348. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing examples, that tēcum, vōbiscum, sēcum are used in place of cum, cum vōbīs, cum sē. Frame a rule for the Position of cum sed with the Ablative of the Personal Pronouns.

349. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 99, e; H. 184, ; G. 414, Rem. 1.

¹ ne is here an interrogative particle introducing the first part of the double question; the second part is introduced by an: A. & G. 211; H. 353, ; G. 460.

² Acc. masc. sing. of quisque, each.

³ This pronoun is made up of uter

(whichever of the two) and vis (I wish or you please); the first is declined, the second remains unchanged.

⁴ Contracted from mandāvērunt; cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 2.

⁵ Acc. neut. pl. of hic, this.

LESSON XLII.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

350.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Ego vigilō ad salūtem, tū ad perniciem rēi publicae. 2. Ab exercitū meō tē removeō. 3. Orgetorix sibi mortem onscivit. 4. Habētis duceem memorem vestri,¹ oblītum nī.¹ 5. Tū, C.² Aviēne, mihi rēique publicae inūtilis fuistī. 6. Catilīna sēcum suōs ēdūcet. 7. Obsidēs inter sēsē dant. 8. Nullum ego ā vōbīs praemium virtūtis postulō. 9. Utrīque³ nostrū grātum est. 10. Nimium mihi sūmam. 11. Equitēs vōbiscum dē amōre rēi publicae certant.

11. 1. Which-one⁴ of us does not know? 2. Your fellow citizens all fear you. 3. We seek the safety, you (pl.) the destruction of our common country. 4. The citizens will vie with us in⁵ patriotism (love of the commonwealth). 5. The Aedui and Arverni had been contending⁶ with each other many years. 6. To you our common country commits herself. 7. No one has [ever] contended with me without [effecting] his own destruction. 8. I do not myself⁷ commend myself. 9. It will be gratifying to you both.⁸ 10. It is with difficulty⁹ that I keep from¹⁰ you the hands of your countrymen. 11. Review with me [the events of] the night before.¹¹

351.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Vobis supplex manūs tendit patria commūnis, vobis sē, vobis vitam omnium civium commendat. 2. Equitum Rōmānōrum ego vix abs¹⁰ tē jam diū manūs ac tēla contineō.¹² 3. Ego meis cōpiis meōque exercitū vobis rēgna conciliābō. 4. Belgae, Aquitāni, Galli lēgibus inter sē differunt. 5. Gallōs auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. 6. Cicerō amantissimus utriusque nostrū est.

II. 1. I, I the consul, am remiss. 2. Lead out¹³ with you, too, all your [associates]. 3. Dismiss your kind solicitude for¹⁴ me, and think of yourselves and your children. 4. The Belgians unite in a sworn league against the Roman people and exchange¹⁵ hostages. 5. Your house and mine¹⁶ are building¹⁷ rapidly. 6. And so they surrendered themselves and all their [effects] to Caesar.

¹ *vestri* is in the objective genitive after *memorem*; *sui* is in the same construction after *oblitum*.

² *C.* is here an abbreviation for *GAI*, vocative of *GAIUS*; see Lesson XXI., foot-note 1.

³ each (of two), both; decline like *uter*, appending *-que* throughout.

⁴ Quis?

⁵ *ad*.

⁶ *A. & G. 277, b; H. 469, 2; G. 225.*

⁷ *ipse*, nom. singular masculine.

⁸ cf. sent. 9 of the preceding exercise.

⁹ Translate: *I with difficulty keep.*

¹⁰ *abs* may be used for *ā* before *tē*.

¹¹ Translate: *the preceding night.*

¹² cf. Lesson XXI., foot-note 5.

¹³ *ēdūc'* (accent the final syllable):

A. & G. 128, c; H. 238, n. 2; G. 151, 4.

¹⁴ Arrange: *your for me* (*ergā mē*)

kind solicitude.

¹⁵ Translate: *give among themselves.*

¹⁶ Translate: *the house of each of us.*

¹⁷ Present passive.

LESSON XLIII.

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. — THE GERUND-

352.

EXAMPLES.

1. [Plēbēs] cupida rērum novārum bellō favēbat (Sall. Cat. 4, 4) *the commons, desirous of a change (of new things), favored war.*
2. [Cōnsidius] rēi militāris perītissimus habēbātur (1, 21, 1) *Considius was accounted very well versed in the military art.*
3. Belli haud ignārus (Sall. Jug. 28, 5), *not unacquainted with war.*
4. Habētis ducem memorem vestrī, oblītum suī (Cic. Cat. 9, 19), *you have a leader [who is] thoughtful of you, forgetful himself.*
5. Plēna erant omnia timōris (Caes. B. C. 2, 41, 8), *all (lit., all things) were filled with fear.*
6. Erant complūrēs cōnsilī¹ participēs nōbilēs (Sall. Cat. 17, 5) *there were a great many nobles concerned in the plot.*
7. Flaccum et Pomptinum, amantissimōs rēi publicae virōs ad mē vocāvī (Cic. Cat. 3, 2, 5), *I summoned Flaccus and Pomptinus, men warmly attached to the commonwealth.*
8. Corpus [Catilinae] patiēns inediae [fuit] (Sall. Cat. 5, 3), *Catiline's constitution was capable of enduring abstinence from food.*

353. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing examples, (1) that the *adjectives* cupida, perītissimus, ignārus, memorem, oblītum, plēna, participēs, amantissimōs, patiēns, from the nature of their signification, require an *object of reference* to complete their meaning; and (2) that the *substantive* added in each instance to complete the meaning of the adjective is in the *genitive case* (see rērum, rēi, bellī, vestrī, suī, timōris, cōnsilī, rēi publicae, inediae). Also, after noting carefully the *meaning* of the adjectives that govern the genitive in the foregoing examples, frame a rule stating what *Classes of Adjectives* take a *Genitive* to complete their meaning.

354. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 218, *a, b*; II. 399, I., 1, 2, 3, II.; G. 373, 374.

355. Learn, with meanings, the gerunds of **amō**, **moneō** (or **dēleō**), **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**), **audiō**: A. & G. pp. 77, 81, 83, 87; H. pp. 87, 91, 95, 99; G. pp. 55, 59, 65, 69.

356.**EXAMPLES.**

1. **Jūs vocandī senātum** (Liv. 3, 38, 10), *authority to convene (of convening) the senate.*
2. **Hominēs bellandī cupidī** (1, 2, 4), *men fond of fighting.*
3. **Dē rēbus pertinentibus ad beātē vivendum** (Cic. Off. 1, 6, 19), *concerning matters which contribute to a happy life (to living happily).*
4. **Orātorem aptum ad dicendum** (Cic. Tusc. 1, 3, 5), *an orator with aptitude for speaking.*
5. **Mōrēs [puerōrum] sē inter lūdendum dētegunt** (Quint. 1, 3, 11), *the moral traits of children reveal themselves in play (amid playing).*
6. **Hominis mēns discendō alitur** (Cic. Off. 1, 30, 105), *the mind of man is strengthened by study (by studying).*
7. **Reperiēbat in quaerendō Caesar** (1, 18, 10), *Caesar learned on making inquiry.*

357. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Ex. 1, that the gerund **vocandī** governs the accusative of direct object (see **senātum**); and, in Ex. 3, that the gerund **vivendum** is modified by the adverb **beātē**. In view of these facts, what part of speech does the Gerund appear to be?

What is the case, and what the construction, in the foregoing examples, of the gerunds **vocandī**, **bellandī**, **vivendum**, **dicendum**, **lūdendum**, **discendō**, **quaerendō**. In view of the several constructions here illustrated, what part of speech does the Gerund appear to be?

*The Gerund, then, shares the nature of what two parts of speech? In what constructions may it be used?*²

358. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 295, 29⁷, 298 (to the semicolon), 300, 301; H. 541, 542, I., III., IV.; G. 427, 429³, 433³, 432³, 434³.

¹ A. & G. 40, *b*; H. 51, 5; G. 29, Rem. 1.

² The Gerund may be in the *genitive* after a substantive, as in Ex. 1; in the

genitive after an adjective, as 2, etc.

³ Omit, for the present, in reading, the reference to the Gerundive.

in Ex.

LESSON XLIV.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING CONSTRUCTIONS.

359.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cōsulī¹ jū^s est vocandī senātum. 2. Diēs prō² tā-
tandō māgnās opportunitātēs corrumpunt. 3. Nōn sōlū³
ad discendum prōpēnsī sumus, vērum etiam ad docendu⁴
4. Dumnorix est cupidus rērum novārum. 5. Diem a-
dēliberandum sūmam. 6. Mīlitēs praedae sunt participēs⁵
7. Nōn ego tam barbarus neque tam imperītus rērum⁶
8. Summa erat difficultās nāvīgandī. 9. Prohibenda est ir-
in pūniendō. 10. Titus equitandī perītissimus fuit.

II. 1. They strengthen the conspiracy by not believing
[in its existence]. 2. In the free towns there are less
[adequate] resources for defence.² 3. Private citizens have³
no authority to convene⁴ the senate. 4. Catiline was covet-
ous of others' [property],⁵ lavish of his own. 5. Epami-
nondas was skilled in war, brave in action,⁶ of very great
courage, devoted to the truth. 6. Epaminondas was a good
listener.⁷ 7. In deliberating, the mind⁸ is often drawn into
contradictory opinions. 8. The soldiers of Sulla, recalling⁹
former victory, ardently-desired civil war.

360.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Ea¹⁰ facta commemorandō, militum animōs accendēbat. 3. Carthāgō
2. Hostium parātus erat ad dimicandum animus. 4. Spatium pila in hostēs conici-
endī¹² nōn dabatur. 5. Sagittariōrum adventū Rēmis studium pro-
pugnandī accessit. 6. Dumnorix fuit cupidus rerum novarum,
cupidus imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallōs auctoritātis.

II. 1. No one was able to maintain his position¹⁸ on the wall.
2. Our consul was inured to toil,⁸ of penetrating intellect, not
unacquainted with war, and utterly¹⁴ unmoved in the face of dan-
gers. 3. Caesar acquired¹⁵ glory by giving, by relieving, [and]
by pardoning. 4. The barbarians are very fond of cattle.

¹ cf. Lesson XXXV., foot-note 9.

² "for defence" = *for defending*.

³ Translate: *no authority is to pri-
vate citizens*; see foot-note 1.

⁴ "to convene" = *of convening*.

⁵ *allēnus*, -a, -um, in neuter sin-
gular, used substantively.

⁶ *manus*; cf. 229 and 230.

⁷ Translate: *fond of listening*.

⁸ Use the plural.

⁹ *memor* with genitive.

¹⁰ *ea*, accusative neuter plural, *these*.

¹¹ See foot-note 1, preceding lesson.

¹² Pronounce: *coniciendī*.

¹³ Translate: *power was to no one of
maintaining, etc.*; see foot-note 1.

¹⁴ Sign of superlative

¹⁵ *adeptus est*.

LESSON XLV.

DEMONSTRATIVES: *Hic, Iste, Ille*.

361. Learn the declension of the demonstratives: *hic*
this; *iste*, *that* (of yours); *ille*, *that*. A. & G. p. 5
(including the first sentence of *a*); H. 186, I., II., III
G. 102, I., II., III.

362. Decline together: *haec legiō*, *this legion*; *1
respōnsum*, *this answer*; *ista mēns*, *that purpose
yours*; *gladiātor iste*, *that* [worthless] *gladiā
illud tempus*, *that time*; *Sōcraticus*¹ *ille*, *the fan-
disciple of Socrates*.

363.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Senātus haec intellegit: hīc tamen vīvit** (Cic. Cat. 1, 1, 2), *the senate knows these things (just referred to by the speaker); yet this man (in sight of the speaker, and perhaps designated by a gesture) lives.*
2. **Huic legiōnī Caesar indulserat praecipuē** (1, 40, 15), *Caesar had especially favored this (just referred to) legion.*
3. **Mūtā istam mentem** (Cic. Cat. 1, 3, 6), *change that purpose of yours.*
4. **Nēmō est istōrum tam misericors** (Cic. Cat. 2, 7, 10), *there is no one of those men (with a touch of contempt) so compassionate . . .*
5. **At ille diem noctemque nāvem tenuit in ancorīs** (Nep. Th. 8, 7), *yet he kept his vessel at anchor a day and a night.*
6. **Illō tempore** (Caes. B. C. 1, 7, 5), *at that time.*
7. **Ille mānsuētūdine clārus factus²; huic sevērītās dīgnitātē addiderat** (Sall. Cat. 54, 2), *the former became illustrious through his clemency; to the latter austerity gave³ dignity.*
8. **Mēdēa illa** (Cic. Manil. 9, 22), *the famous Medea.*

364. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Are the demonstrative in Exs. 1, 4, 5, 7 used *substantively* or *adjectively*? Answer the same question for Exs. 2, 3, 6, 8. Does the demonstrative, when used *adjectively*, appear regularly to *follow* or to *precede* its substantive? Which of these demonstratives may appropriately be called the *demonstrative of the first person*? Which the *demonstrative of the second person*? Which of the *third*? What other distinctions or peculiarities in the use of these pronouns do the translations of the foregoing examples reveal?

365. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 101, 102, a, b, c, 343, d; H. 450, 2, 4, 569, I, 1; G. 290, 291, 292, 2, Rem. 1, 678, Rem. 2.

366.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. **Sī deerit hōc remedium, ad illud⁴ dēclīnandum est.**
2. **Xenophōn, Sōcraticus¹ ille, scripsit historiam.**
3. **Nōs**

autem,⁵ virī fortēs, istīus⁶ furōrem ac tēla vītāmus. 4. Vītā **istam** fugae sōlitūdīnīque mandā. 5. Ille per mē crēvit. 6. Illīus facilitās, hūjus cōstantia laudābātur. 7. Illō tempore rēgnū obtinēbat. 8. Ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēdunt. 9. Māgna huic Jovī⁷ habenda est grātia. 10. Gladiātōrī istī nihil dabō.

II. 1. Of all these, the Belgians are the bravest. 2. The beauty of the former,⁸ the virtue of the latter,⁸ was commended. 3. Two Roman knights relieved you of that⁹ anxiety (abl.). 4. Indeed,¹⁰ I suppose, that¹¹ centurion Manlius declared war in his own name.¹² 5. Having given this answer,¹³ he withdrew. 6. How long will that insane folly of yours mock us? 7. Swords are drawn both by those and by our party. 8. He, yonder¹⁴ Jupiter, resisted [them]. He [preserved] the Capitol, he [preserved] these temples, he preserved the whole¹⁵ city.

¹ Sōcraticus, -a, -um, belonging to Socrates; hence, used substantively, disciple of Socrates.

² sc. est; perfect passive of faciō.

³ Lit., had added.

⁴ Ille (especially the neuter illud) often, as here, means the following.

⁵ Conjunction, however, but; for position, see: A. & G. 345, b; H. 569, III.; G. 486, Rem.

⁶ Contemptuous; translate: that mad-man or that wretch.

⁷ See Jūpiter in general vocabulary.

⁸ See 363, Ex. 7.

⁹ See 363, Ex. 3.

¹⁰ Etenim (at the beginning).

¹¹ Contemptuous.

¹² Ablative of manner.

¹³ What construction? cf. 305, Ex. 2.

¹⁴ "yonder" = that.

¹⁵ cūctus, -a, -um; see cūctus in general vocabulary.

LESSON XLVI.

DEMONSTRATIVES (DETERMINATIVES): **Is, Ipse, Īdem.**

367. Learn the declension of the demonstratives (determinatives): *is, he, this, that; ipse, self; ĭdem, the same*: A. & G. 101; H. 186, IV., V., VI.; G. 101.

368. Decline together: *ea mūnitiō, that fortification; id iter, that journey; hōc ipsum tempus, this very time; eadem fortūna, the same fortune; ĭdem prīnceps, the same chief.*

369.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit** (1, 2, 3), *he persuaded them to it (persuaded it to them) more easily because-of-the-following-fact (hōc).*
2. **In eō itinere persuādet Casticō** (1, 3, 4), *on this journey he prevails upon Casticus.*
3. **Dixi ego ĭdem in senātū** (Cic. Cat. 1, 3, 7), *I also (I the same) said in the senate.*
4. **Haec eadem centuriōnibus mandābant** (7, 17, 8), *they delivered these same [assurances] to the centurions.*
5. **Eōdem tempore equitēs fugam petēbant** (2, 24, 1), *at the same time the cavalry took to flight.*
6. **Ipse eōdem itinere ad eōs contendit** (1, 21, 3), *he hastened in person to them (he himself hastened, etc.) by the same route.*
7. **Ipse sibi inimīcus est** (Cic. Fin. 5, 10, 28), *he is an enemy to himself (i.e., he is his own enemy).*
8. **Ipsō terrōre equōrum ordinēs perturbant** (4, 33, 1), *by the mere fright (fright itself) of the horses, they throw the ranks into confusion.*
9. **Hōc ipsō tempore** (6, 37, 1), *at this very time.*

370. OBSERVATION: Compare *id* (Ex. 1) with *eō* (Ex. 2); which is used *substantively*? which *adjectively*? Note that *eī* (Ex. 1) and *eōs* (Ex. 6) are used as *personal* pronouns. Compare *idem* (Ex. 3) and *eadem* (Ex. 4) with *eōdem* (Ex. 5) and *eōdem* (Ex. 6); which *arē* used *substantively*? which *adjectively*? Note that *idem* (Ex. 3) is translated *also*. Note that *ipse* is translated, in Ex. 6, *in person*; in Ex. 8, *mere*; and in Ex. 9, *very*. Note that *ipse* (Ex. 7) does not, as the English translation might lead us to expect, agree with *sibi*, but with the *subject* of the sentence.

371. REFERENCES: A. & G. 195, *e, f, l*; H. 451, 3, 452, 1, 2; G. 100, 296, 297, 298.

372.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. *Māgna*¹ *huic ipsī Jovī habenda est grātia*.¹ 2. *Eōdem tempore lēgātī ab Aeduīs veniēbant*. 3. *Initium ējus*² *fugae factum est*³ *ā Dumnorige atque ējus*⁴ *equitibus*. 4. *Id ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs comperī*. 5. *Ipsē sibi mortem cōscīvit*. 6. *Atrebatēs eandem bellī fortūnam experiuntur*.⁵ 7. *Hōc idem in reliquīs fit*⁶ *cīvitātibus*. 8. *Pompējus eadem illa agit*. 9. *Ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur*. 10. *Ob eās causās ēī mūnitiōnī T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit*;⁷ *ipse in Italiam contendit*. 11. *Ipsē ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē*⁸ *mittit*.

II. 1. From Pontus also⁹ the famous Medea once fled.¹⁰ 2. For¹¹ this reason Caesar hastened into Gaul. 3. With equal¹² speed they hastened to our camp. 4. Learn these [facts] from the very [persons] who¹³ have escaped¹⁴ from the massacre itself. 5. All [men] love themselves. 6. The Germans came in-great-numbers to him in¹⁵ camp. 7. Having called¹⁶ together their chiefs, he takes them severely to task. 8. Divitiacus the Aeduan again¹⁷ re-^{*}sponded. 9. He, in the consulship¹⁶ of Marcus Messalla and Marcus Piso, persuaded his countrymen. 10. This district was called the Tigurine. 11. On the following day

they move their camp from that place. Caesar does same.

¹ Note the emphasis produced by the separation of the adjective from its substantive.

² Used adjectively, *this*.

³ Perfect passive of *faciō*, *make*.

⁴ Used as a personal pronoun, *his*.

⁵ From *experior*, which has a passive form with active meaning.

⁶ 3d sing. pres. of *fiō*, *be done*.

⁷ 3d sing. perf. indic. of *prae-ficiō*.

⁸ Could *eum* be substituted for *sē*? See A. & G. 196; H. 449, 1; G. 295.

⁹ cf. 369, Ex. 3.

¹⁰ *profūgit*, perf. of *profug*.

¹¹ cf. 372, sent. 10.

¹² Translate: *the same*.

¹³ *qui*, nominative plural masculine.

¹⁴ *fūgerunt*, perf. of *fugio*.

¹⁵ Note the difference of idiom: him in camp" = *to him into camp*.

¹⁶ What construction must be used?

¹⁷ Translate: *the same Divitiacis*.

¹⁸ *facit*, 3d sing. pres. indic. of *faciō*.

373. Supplementary Exercises on Lessons XLV. and XLVI.

I. 1. Hic testamētō, ille proximitate nititur.¹ 2. Ipsa terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērunque perturba-
3. Magna² dis³ immortalibus habenda est atque huic ipsi Jov-
Statōri, antiquissimō custōdi hūjus urbis, grātia.² 4. Exclūsi e-
quos (*whom*) tū ad mē miserās. 5. Idem⁴ principēs civitātum
Caesarem revertērunt. 6. Ego ūnius ūsūram hōrae gladiatōri is
ad vivendum nōn dabō. 7. Id hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quo-
undique loci nātūrā Helvētīi continentur. 8. Helvētīi ferē cotti-
diānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum (*when*) aut suis
finibus eōs⁶ prohibent aut ipsi in eōrum⁷ finibus bellum gerunt.

II. 1. That which⁸ they⁹ had accomplished¹⁰ in twenty days,
he had done in one day. 2. He was the only one to be feared¹¹
out of all that-crew.¹² 3. You gave yourself into custody. 4. On
your arrival those benches [near you] were cleared.¹³ 5. The
Suessiones enjoy¹⁴ the same constitution and the same laws.
6. This [part of] Gaul is my province just as¹⁵ that is yours.

¹ *relies, depends*; this verb is passive in form, but active in meaning, and is construed with the ablative.

² cf. 372, foot-note 1.

³ From *deus*; for declension, see A. & G. 40, f; H. 51, 6; G. 29, 5.

⁴ Nom. pl. masc. of *idem*.

⁵ See references under foot-note 8, Lesson XLVI.; also G. 294. What change of meaning would result if *eōrum* were substituted for *suis*?

⁶ What would be the meaning if *sē* were substituted for *eōs*?

⁷ What would *suis* mean here?

⁸ *quod*, neuter singular accusative.

⁹ Use the proper form of *ipse*.

¹⁰ *cōnfecerant*, from *cōnficiō*.

¹¹ Translate: *he alone (ūnus) was to be feared* (pass. periphrastic).

¹² Use the plural of *iste*.

¹³ *vacuēfacta sunt*, perfect passive of *vacuēfaciō*.

¹⁴ *ūtuntur*; this verb has a passive form with active meaning, and is construed with the ablative.

¹⁵ *sicut*.

LESSON XLVII

THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION. — THE TWO SUPINES.

374.

EXAMPLES.

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 1. | <p>a. <i>Jūs vocandī senātum</i> (Liv. 3, 38, 10), <i>right of convening the senate.</i></p> <p>b. <i>Jūs vocandī senātūs</i>, <i>right of the senate to be convened.</i></p> | <p>authority to convene the senate.</p> |
| 2. | <p>a. <i>Cupiditās bellum gerendī</i>, <i>desire of carrying on war.</i></p> <p>b. <i>Cupiditās bellī gerendī</i> (1, 41, 1), <i>desire of war to be carried on.</i></p> | <p>eagerness to fight.</p> |
| 3. | <p>a. <i>Diēs prōlātandō</i> (Sall. Cat. 43, 3), <i>by putting off the days.</i></p> <p>b. <i>Diēbus prōlātandīs</i>, <i>by the days to be put off.</i></p> | <p>by postponing the day [of execution].</p> |
| 4. | <p>a. <i>Male gerendō negōtium</i>, <i>by managing business badly.</i></p> <p>b. <i>Male gerendō negōtiō</i> (Cic. Cat. 2, 10, 21), <i>by business to be managed badly.</i></p> | <p>through bad management of business.</p> |

375. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that, in the examples marked *a*, the *gerund* is used with a *direct object*; whereas, in the examples marked *b*, the *gerundive* is used in *agreement with the substantive which was formerly the direct object*, and the latter has the same construction which the *gerund* formerly had. Note, further, that the two forms of expression have the same meaning. The examples marked *a* illustrate the *Gerund Construction*; those marked *b* illustrate the *Gerundive Construction*. Frame a rule for changing the *Gerund Construction* to the *Gerundive*.¹

376. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 298; W. 544, 1; G. 428.

377. Restore the gerund construction to the gerundive in the following examples:

1. **Exercitum Ariovistum opprimendī causā habet**, *he has an army for the purpose of crushing Ariovistus.*
2. **Ea facta commemorandō, militum animōs accendēbat**, *by recalling these exploits, he fired the hearts of the soldiers.*

378. Learn the following supines:²

1ST CONJUGATION.

1. **rogātum**, to ask.
2. **memorātū**, in relating.

2D CONJUGATION.

1. **vīsum**, to see.
2. **monitū**, in reminding.

3D CONJUGATION.

1. **perditum**, to ruin.
2. **dictū**, in saying.

4TH CONJUGATION.

1. **audītum**, to hear.
2. **audītū**, in hearing.

379. OBSERVATION: It has been seen (Lesson XLIII.) that the gerund is a verbal substantive of the second declension, used in four cases. The supine is also a verbal substantive; of what declension is it, and in what cases is it used?

380.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium** (1, 11, 2), *they send ambassadors to ask assistance.*
2. **Ad senātum vēnisse³ auxilium postulātum** (1, 31, 9), *to have come to the senate to petition for assistance.*
3. **Incrēdibile memorātū est** (Sall. Cat. 6, 2), *it is incredible to relate (in the relating).*
4. **Difficile dictū est** (Cic. Lael. 3, 12), *it is difficult to speak (in the speaking).*

381. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the first two of the foregoing examples (1) that the supines **rogātum** and **postulātum** are construed with verbs of motion (**mittunt** and **vēnisse**); and (2) that they express purpose. Frame a rule for the use of the Supine in -um.

382. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 302; H. 546; G. 436.

383. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Exs. 3 and (1) that the *supines memorātū* and *dictū*, are used with *adjective* and (2) that they answer the question *in what respect?* or *from what point of view?* Frame a rule for the use of Supines in -ū.

384. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 303; II. 5 G. 437.

¹ The gerundive construction is generally preferred to the gerund construction; and, in connection with a preposition, the gerundive construction is always to be taken.

² *amō, dīleō, tegō, regō, emō*, which have heretofore served as paradigms, have no supine.

³ Perf. act. infin. of *venīō*.

LESSON XLVIII.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE GERUND, GERUNDIVE, AND SUPINES.

385.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Gallī legiōnis opprimendae cōsiliū cēpēr
2. Diēs prōlātandō magnās opportunitātēs corrump
3. Vix iīs rēbus administrandīs tempus dabātur. 4
Civitatē profūgi et ad senātum venī auxilium postul
5. Perfacile factū² est cōnāta perficere.³ 6. Ariovistu
suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem con
7. Propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitatēs Du
conlocārat.⁴ 8. Nec hōc est dictū mirābile. 9.
pūgnandō oppidō spēs hostēs fecellit. 10. Sum cu
audiendī. 11. Nōn modo ad insīgnia accommoda
etiam ad galeās induendās tempus dēfuit. 12. F
movendārum lacrimārum peritissimus fuit.

II. 1. You had sent two knights to me to
respects. 2. The best [thing] to do² is to de
3. *He was more earnest to restore⁵ me than [he*

to retain me. 4. Caesar gave the signal for the battle to begin.⁶ 5. He gives his daughter in marriage⁷ to Manilius. 6. *You* have been able not merely to set at defiance the laws, but even to destroy⁸ them. 7. Of this kind of death it is difficult to speak. 8. In recounting the disaster of the community, they said . . . 9. They are seeking⁹ to destroy themselves and the commonwealth. 10. Orgetorix is selected to accomplish¹⁰ these things.

386.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Caesar exercitum in Galliā Ariovisti opprimendī causā habēbat. 2. Militēs in quaerendis suis¹¹ pūgnandi tempus dimittebant. 3. Eā dē rē difficile dictū est. 4. Exclūsī eōs quōs¹² tū ad mē salutātum miserās. 5. Ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventū agendōs profectus est.¹³ 6. Tōtius ferē Galliae lēgati, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum¹⁴ convēnērunt.

II. 1. They squander their wealth in levelling mountains. 2. One legion had been sent to forage.¹⁵ 3. The best thing to do² is to cut off¹⁶ the Romans from grain and supplies. 4. All the morally bad, then, [are] slaves: nor is this so wonderful in point-of-fact¹⁷ as in the form of statement.¹⁸ 5. Suddenly the Gauls formed¹ the design of renewing the war and crushing the legion. 6. You live, and you live not to forsake,¹⁹ but to persevere in¹⁹ your shameless course.

¹ cēpērunt, *formed*, perf. indic. of capiō.

² factū, supine in -ū of faciō, *do*.

³ Pres. infin. of perficiō, *accomplish*.

⁴ See Lesson XXXV., foot-note 22.

⁵ Translate: *desirous of restoring*.

⁶ Translate: *of the battle to be begun*.

⁷ cf. 385, I., sent. 7.

⁸ "have been able to destroy" = *have availed for destroying*. cf. 385, I., sent. 11.

⁹ eunt, 3d person plural of eō, *go*.

¹⁰ The gerundive of cōficiō, *accomplish*, is cōficiendus, -a, -um.

¹¹ sc. signis.

¹² whom.

¹³ Perf. indic. of proficiscor, *set out*.

¹⁴ Sup. of grātulor, *congratulate*; this verb has a pass. form with act. meaning.

¹⁵ frūmentātum, sup. of frūmentor, which has a pass. form with act. meaning.

¹⁶ prohibeō with abl.

¹⁷ rē.

¹⁸ Translate: *in saying*.

¹⁹ cf. 386, I., sent. 5.

LESSON XLIX

VERBS IN -iō OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION. — THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

387. Learn, with meanings, the inflection and synopsis of *capiō*, *take*, in the Indicative and Imperative moods, Active and Passive; also the Participles, Gerunds, and Supines: A. & G. p. 83; H. pp. 106–108; G. pp. 72, 73.

388. Using *capiō* as a model, form the same parts of:
rapiō, *snatch*; *jaciō*, *throw*; *ēiciō*,¹ *expel*.

389. Learn the declension of the relative pronoun *quī*,
who, which, that, what: A. & G. 103; H. 187; G. 103.

390.

EXAMPLES.

1. *In finēs Ambianōrum pervēnit, quī sē sine morā dēdidērunt* (2, 15, 2), *he came into the territories of the Ambiani, who surrendered without delay.*
2. *Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs, quārum unam incolunt Belgae* (1, 1, 1), *all Gaul is divided into three parts, one of which the Belgians inhabit.*
3. *III, cum iis quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, ēruptionem fēcērunt* (2, 33, 2), *they, with those arms which they had withheld and concealed, made a sortie.*
4. *Longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantium incolunt* (5, 14, 1),
 [those] *who inhabit Kent are by far the most highly civilized.*

391. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Exs. 1–3, that the relatives *quī*, *quārum*, and *quae* refer to *Ambianōrum*, *partēs*, and *armīs* respectively; and that they agree with these substantives in number and gender. The substantive to which a relative thus refers is called the *Antecedent*.

In what construction is *quī* (Ex. 1)? *quārum* (Ex. 2)? *quā* (Ex. 3)? Is the case of the Relative, then, determined by that of the Antecedent?

Frame a rule for the Gender, Number, and Case of the Relative.

392. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 198; H. 445; G. 615, 616.

393. OBSERVATION: Note that, in Ex. 4, the antecedent of *quī* (*ei, those*) is omitted.

394. REFERENCES: A. & G. 200, c; H. 445, 6; G. 620, 621.

¹ *ēiciō* (= *ex + jaciō*) is to be pronounced as if it were written *ējiciō*; so also all compounds of *jaciō* with monosyllabic prepositions: as, *abiciō* (pro-

nounced: *abjiciō*), *coniciō* (pronounced: *conjiciō*), etc. For the principal parts of *ēiciō*, see the general vocabulary.



LESSON L.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

395. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Id quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī cōnfēcerant, ille ūnō diē fēcit. 2. Belgae proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum¹ continenter bellum gerunt. 3. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt, quibus in tabulīs ratiō cōnfecta erat. 4. Quī² omnibus hominibus crēdit, saepe dēcipitur. 5. Legiōnem cui Galba praeerat, mīsīt. 6. Sūlla cum māgnō equitātū in castra vēnīt, quōs³ ex Latiō et ā sociīs coēgerat. 7. Helvētīi lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūjus lēgatiōnis Diviciō princeps fuit. 8. Ego⁴ quī tē cōfirmō,⁴ ipse mē nōn possum.⁵

II. 1. Those will be visited with punishment⁶ by whom arms shall be taken.⁷ 2. Catiline, whom the consul has

expelled, is fleeing. 3. These are [the things] which I demand. 4. He sends⁸ reinforcements to the support of⁹ our men who are in retreat.⁹ 5. He hastened to convey his army across. . . . This¹⁰ movement made one side of his camp secure. 6. The nature of the site which our men had selected for a camp was as follows.¹¹ 7. We often despise those with whom and among whom we live. 8. Here am [I] who did⁴ [the deed].

396.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Convocatīs Aeduōrum principibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in his Liscō, quī summō magistratū praeerat, graviter eōs accūsāt. 2. Ūtrā eum locum quō in locō Germani cōsēderant, castra posuit. 3. Ūnus ex eō numerō quī³ ad caedem parātī erant, Massivam obtruncat. 4. Tum dēnum Liscus, orātione Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat prōponit. 5. Nāvium quod¹² fuerat ūnum in locum cōegerant; quibus¹³ amissis, sē Caesari dēdiderunt.

II. 1. He persuades Casticus, whose father had held sovereign power among the Sequani for many years. 2. The Helvetians send ambassadors to Caesar . . . Of this¹⁴ embassy, Divico, who had been the leader of the Helvetians, was the head. 3. Meanwhile, by means of that legion which he had with him and the soldiers who had assembled from the province, he extends a wall from Lake Geneva, which flows into the river Rhone, to mount Jura, which separates the territory of the Sequani from [that of] the Helvetii.

¹ A. & G. 104, e; H. 187, 2; G. 414, Rem. 1.; cf. 348 and 349.

² Account for the omission of the antecedent.

³ Read: A. & G. 199, b; H. 445, 5; G. 616, 3, I.

⁴ Note that the verb of the relative clause agrees in person with the antecedent (expressed or understood).

⁵ *am able, can*; sc. cōfirmāre.

⁶ Use the plural.

⁷ Translate: *shall have been taken*.

⁸ *submitto* with dative.

⁹ "who are in retreat" = *fleeing*.

¹⁰ "This movement" = *which thing*.

In Latin the relative is often used where the English idiom requires a demonstrative.

¹¹ "as follows" = *this*.

¹² *nāvium quod fuerat*, all their ships (lit., what of ships there had been).

¹³ Translate: *these*; cf. foot-note 10.

¹⁴ See 395, I., sent. 7; cf. foot-note 10.

LESSON LI.

TWO ACCUSATIVES: SAME PERSON OR THING.

— WITH COMPOUNDS.

397.

EXAMPLES.

1. [Castici] patrem senātus amīcum appellāverat, *the senate had called the father of Casticus friend.*
2. [Castici] pater ā senātū amīcus appellātus erat (1, 3, 4), *the father of Casticus had been called friend by the senate.*
3. Hunc [montem] mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit (1, 33, 6), *a wall built round it makes this mountain a citadel.*
4. Ancum Mārcium rēgem populus creāvit (Liv. 1, 32, 1), *the people chose Ancus Marcius king.*
5. Tē sapientem et appellant et existimant (Cic. Lael. 2, 6), *you they both call and think wise.*

398. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Exs. 1 and 3-5, that the verbs are followed by *two accusatives* denoting the *same person or thing*. What *classes* of verbs (*i.e.*, verbs of what meaning) admit this double construction? Frame a rule for the Two Accusatives here illustrated.

399. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 239, a; H. 373; G. 334.

400. OBSERVATION: Note, in Ex. 1, that the senate did not *call* the father of Casticus, but *called him friend*; and that, therefore, the complete predicate is not **appellāverat**, but **amīcum appellāverat**. As **amīcum** forms an essential part of the *predicate*, it may be called the *Predicate Accusative* in distinction from **patrem**, which is the *Direct Object*. What are the Predicate Accusatives in Exs. 3-5? What are the Direct Objects?

401. OBSERVATION: Note that, in Ex. 2, the *passive construction* is illustrated. What has the Predicate Accusative of the

Active Construction become in the Passive? What has the Direct Object become? Change Exs. 3-5 into the Passive Construction.

402. REFERENCES: H. 373, 1, 2; G. 197 (second paragraph).

403.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Hibērum cōpiās trājēcit** (Liv. 21, 23, 1), *he threw his forces across the Ebro.*

2. **Duodecim mīlia equitum Hibērum trādūxit** (Liv. 21, 23, 1), *he led twelve thousand horse across the Ebro.*

3. **Id animum advertit** (1, 24, 1), *he directed his attention to this.*

404. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the verbs in the foregoing examples are *compounds*, being made up of a *simple verb* and a *preposition*. Is the *simple verb* in each instance *transitive* or *intransitive*? What *case*, then, would it take if it stood alone? What *case* would the *preposition* take if it stood alone? How, then, are the *two accusatives* to be accounted for? Frame a rule for the Two Accusatives here illustrated.

405. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 239, b; H. 376; G. 330, Rem. 1.

406.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ariovistus in cōsulātū meō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus est. 2. Suā cunctātiōne hostēs nostrōs mīlītēs alacriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcerant. 3. Omnēs cōpiās Rhēnum trādūxerant. 4. Hostis apud mājōrēs nostrōs is dicēbātur quem nunc peregrīnum dīcimus. 5. Hāc igitur mente Hellēspontum cōpiās trājēcit. 6. Caesarem certiōrem faciunt.

II. 1. Spurius Cassius was made master of the horse. 2. In this council he proclaimed Cingetorix a public enemy. 3. On !¹ veterans, conduct a new army and a new leader across the Ebro! 4. The full moon rendered the tides very high. 5. Caesar, having been informed by Titurius, led all his cavalry and light armed² Numidians across the bridge.

¹ *Agite*, 2d pl. imper. of *agō*, *lead*.

² cf. Lesson XXXIX., foot-note 3.

LESSON LII.

TWO ACCUSATIVES: PERSON AND THING.

407.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Racilius mē sententiam rogāvit** (Cic. Q. Fr. 2, 1, 3), *Racilius asked me my opinion.*
2. **Is enim est prīmus rogātus sententiam** (Liv. 37, 14), *for he was asked his opinion first.*
3. **Juventūtem mala facinora ēdocēbat** (Sall. Cat. 10, 1), *the youth he trained to (taught thoroughly) acts of lawlessness (evil deeds).*
4. **Cicerō per lēgātōs cūncta ēdoctus [est]** (Sall. Cat. 45, 1), *Cicero received detailed information of (was thoroughly taught) everything through the envoys.*

408. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Exs. 1 and 3, that the verbs are in the *active* and are followed by *two accusatives*, one of the *person*, the other of the *thing*. Note that, in Exs. 2 and 4, the same verbs are used in the *passive*. What does the Accusative of the Person become in the passive construction? the Accusative of the Thing? What *classes* of verbs (*i.e.*, verbs of what meaning) admit this double construction? ¹ Frame a rule for the constructions here illustrated.

409. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 239, c, Rem. (first two lines); H. 374, 1; G. 333, Rem. 1.

410.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quaerit ex perfugīs causam** (7, 44, 2), *he asks the deserters for an explanation (an explanation from the deserters).*
2. **Mulierēs pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt** (2, 13, 3), *the women besought the Romans for peace (asked peace from the Romans).*
3. **Ab Lentulō postulant jūsjūrāndum** (Sall. Cat. 44, 1), *they demand of Lentulus an oath.*

411. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Do the foregoing verbs of asking and demanding conform to the rule already established (407 and 408)? How is the *person* expressed with **quaerō**, **petō**, and **postulō**? Frame a rule for the construction to be used with these verbs.

412. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 239, Rem. (second paragraph); H. 374, n. 4; G. 333, 2.

413.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Caesar sententiam ā cōsule rogātus est. 2. Celestiter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet; quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in cōventū dixerat. 3. Cicerōnem lēgāti cūncta ēdocērunt. 4. Quod ab alterō postulāt, in sē recūsant. 5. Hōs ego dē rē publicā sententiam rogō. 6. Ad haec quae interrogātus es, respondē.

II. 1. Cato, on being appealed to for² his opinion, delivered the following address. 2. We must ask Caesar for peace.³ 3. Cicero, thoroughly-informed-of everything through the envoys, directed the praetors . . . 4. The Ubi earnestly pressed Caesar for aid. 5. You taught us this art. 6. Cicero asked Silanus his opinion first, because he was consul elect.

¹ The learner should be careful to distinguish the two accusatives here considered from those illustrated in 397. In the examples under 397 the two accusatives denote the *same* person or

thing; whereas, of the two accusatives illustrated in 407, one denotes the person, the other the thing.

² Translate: *having been asked*.

³ cf. Exs. in 317.

414. Supplementary Exercises on Lessons LI. and LII.

I. 1. Liscus summō magistrātui praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aeduī, qui creatur annuus. 2. Licet vōbis in Ubiōrum finibus cōsidere, quōrum sunt lēgāti apud mē et ā mē auxilium petunt. 3. Caesar rogātus sententiam ā cōsule, haec verba locūtus est.¹ 4. Trēs jam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiī id flūmen trādūxerant. 5. Sed iuventūtem, quam, ut suprā diximus, *inlēxerat*, multis modis² mala facinora ēdocēbat.

II. 1. Having armed the soldiers whom he thought suitable for this enterprise, he came to the town. 2. There is a panic⁴ throughout the camp,⁴ and they ask of one another⁵ the cause of the confusion. 3. When⁶ the Helvetians had been informed⁶ of his arrival, they sent ambassadors to him. 4. In this struggle,⁷ the Germans whom Caesar had led across the Rhine gnominiouly fled. 5. Dionysius taught Epaminondas music. 6. Under the tuition of Hannibal⁸ he had been thoroughly-trained in all the arts of war.

¹ spoke; perf. indic. of *loquor*, which has a pass. form with act. meaning.

² cf. Lesson XXIII., foot-note 4.

³ *trepidatur*: A. & G. 146, c; H. 101, 1; G. 199, Rem. 1.

⁴ Translate: *in the entire camp*; cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 8.

⁵ cf. Lesson XXXV., foot-note 25.

⁶ Use *ubi* with the perfect indicative.

⁷ cf. Lesson XXVI., foot-note 5.

⁸ Translate: *under Hannibal [as] master*.

LESSON LIII.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS. — INTERROGATIVE

PARTICLES: -ne, Nōne, Num.

415. Learn the declension of the interrogatives: *quis* (subst.), *who?* *quid* (subst.), *what?* and *quī* (adj.), *which, what?*: A. & G. 104; H. 188, I., II.; G. 104 and Rem.

416. Decline together: *quī miles, what soldier?* *quae urbs, what city?* *quod genus, what class?*

417.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Quis tē ex hāc tantā frequentiā salūtāvit?* (Cic. Cat. 1, 7, 16), *who in (lit., out of) this (so) great concourse greeted you?*
2. *Quid tandem tē impedit? Mōsne mājōrum?* (Cic. Cat. 1, 11, 28), *what, pray, hinders you? Is it the practice of the fathers?*

3. **Nōnne** [vōs] **prōjēcit** ille? (Caes. B. C. 2, 32, 8), *did not he cast you off?*

4. **Num** **negāre** audēs? **Quid** tacēs? **Convincam**, **sī** negā-
(Cic. Cat. 1, 4, 8), *do you dare to deny it? Why are you silent?*
I will prove it, if you deny it.

418. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing interrogative sentences, that the question in each case is indicated not by a change in the order of the words, but by the introduction of some interrogative word. Note, further, that the interrogative word is a *pronoun* in Ex. 1 (see **Quis**), and in the first question of Ex. 2 (see **Quid**); whereas, in the second question of Ex. 2 (see **-ne** in **Mōsne**), in Ex. 3 (see **Nōnne**), and in the first question of Ex. 4 (see **Num**), it is an *interrogative particle*. Does the question containing the appended interrogative particle **-ne** (Ex. 2) suggest the answer *yes*, the answer *no*, or does it simply ask for information? What answer does **Nōnne** (Ex. 3) suggest? **Num** (Ex. 4)?

419. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 210, a, c; H. 351, 1, Notes 1, 2, and 3, also 2; G. 456, 457, 458.

420.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Quid** proximā, **quid** superiōre nocte egistī? 2. **Ubi** proximā nocte fuistī, **quōs** convocavistī? 3. **Quam** rem pūblicam habēmus? 4. **In** quā urbe vīvimus? 5. **Nōnne** sibi salūtem fugā petivit? 6. **Num** dubitās id imperante mē facere quod jam tuā sponte faciēbās?¹ 7. **Num-**quamne familia nostra quiēta erit? 8. **Quibus**² gaudiū³ exsultābis! 9. **Cui** est Āpūlia attribūta? 10. **Quō** tandem⁴ animō⁵ hōc tibi ferendum est? 11. **Potestne**⁵ tibi haec lūx, Catilīna, aut hūjus caelī spīritus esse⁵ jūcundus? 12. **Nōnne** etiam aliō incredibilī scelere hōc scelus cumulāstī?⁶

II. 1. **What** plan⁷ will they adopt? 2. **What** and how-great states are in arms? 3. **In**⁸ what direction is the enemy marching? 4. **Whom** did you leave at Rome,⁹ *whom did you take*¹⁰ with you? 5. **To whom** has the Picene

LESSON LVIII.

DATIVE OF POSSESSION.—DATIVE OF SERVICE.

449.

EXAMPLES.

1. **His erat inter sē dē principātū contentiō** (7, 39, 2), *these had a struggle with each other for precedence* (lit., there was to these a struggle, etc.).
2. **At Catōnī studium modestiae, decoris erat** (Sall. Cat. 54, 5), *Cato, on the other hand, had a preference for sobriety and dignity of behavior* (lit., there was to Cato a preference, etc.).
3. **Est igitur hominī cum deō similitūdō** (Cic. Leg. 1, 8, 25), *man has, then, a likeness to God* (lit., there is to man a likeness, etc.).

450. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: With what case is the verb **sum** construed in the foregoing examples? By what English verb is it translated? How, then, may Possession be expressed in Latin? Frame a rule for the construction here illustrated.

451. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 231; H. 387; G. 349.

452.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsīt** (4, 37, 2), *Caesar sent the cavalry to the assistance of his men* (to his for assistance).
2. **Tulingī, quī novissimīs praesidiō erant** (1, 25, 6), *the Tulingi, who served as a guard to the rear* (were to the rear for protection).
3. **Quibus corpus voluptātī, anima onerī fuit** (Sall. Cat. 2, 8), *to these the body [served] for pleasure, [and] thought was a bore* (the soul was for a burden).
4. **Eāsdem cōpiās praesidiō nāvibus reliquit** (5, 11, 7), *he left the same forces to guard the ships* (to the ships for protection).

453. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: With how many *datives* are the verbs in the foregoing examples construed? What do these datives respectively denote? Note that the *transitive verbs* (see *misit*, Ex. 1, and *reliquit*, Ex. 4) take, besides the dative, an *accusative* also. Frame a rule embodying your observations.

454. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 233; H. 390, I, II.; G. 350.

455.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quid in meā Galliā Caesarī negōtīi est? 2. Multis corpus voluptātī, anima onerī est. 3. Lēgātum minōribus castris praesidiō reliquerat. 4. Familiāritās mihi cum eō est. 5. Q. Caepiōnī fortūna bellī crīmīnī, invidia populī calamitātī fuit. 6. In hāc insulā est fōns aquae duleis cui nōmen Arethūsa est. 7. Tertiam legiōnem nostris subsidiō misit.

II. 1. Traders have no access to (ad) them. 2. The friendship of the Roman people is a protection to me. 3. Two legions served as a guard to the baggage. 4. Our diminutive stature excites the contempt¹ of the Gauls. 5. No one could maintain his position² on the wall. 6. He sent the third line to the relief of our men [who were] struggling against odds.³

456.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. At nobis est domi⁴ inopia, foris aes aliēnum. 2. Mihi autem mirum videtur quid in meā Galliā aut Caesarī aut omninō populō Rōmānō negōtīi sit.⁵ 3. Militēs sibi ipsi ad pūnam erant impedimentō. 4. Ea res magnō ūui nostris fuit.

II. 1. These [matters] are my business.⁶ 2. He reminded many, to whom this had been a source of booty, of the victory⁷ of Sulla. 3. The associates of Catiline had all sorts of⁸ miseries in abundance, but no⁹ favorable condition or⁹ prospect.

¹ Trans. : *is to the Gauls for contempt*.

² cf. Lesson XLIV., foot-note 13.

³ Present participle of *labōrō*.

⁴ Locative form, *at home*; for declension, see: A. & G. 70, f; H. 119, 1; G. 17, Rem. 2.

⁵ Account for mood and tense.

⁶ Trans. : *are to me for a care*.

⁷ Use the genitive.

⁸ "all sorts of" = *all*.

⁹ "no . . . or" = *neither any . . . nor*.

LESSON LVIII.

DATIVE OF POSSESSION. — DATIVE OF SERVICE.

449.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Hīs erat inter sē dē prīncipātū contentiō** (7, 39, 2), *these had a struggle with each other for precedence* (lit., there was to these a struggle, etc.).
2. **At Catōnī studium modestiae, decoris erat** (Sall. Cat. 54, 5), *Cato, on the other hand, had a preference for sobriety and dignity of behavior* (lit., there was to Cato a preference, etc.).
3. **Est igitur hominī cum deō similitūdō** (Cic. Leg. 1, 8, 25), *man has, then, a likeness to God* (lit., there is to man a likeness, etc.).

450. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: With what case is the verb **sum** construed in the foregoing examples? By what English verb is it translated? How, then, may Possession be expressed in Latin? Frame a rule for the construction here illustrated.

451. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 231; H. 387; G. 349.

452.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit** (4, 37, 2), *Caesar sent the cavalry to the assistance of his men* (to his for assistance).
2. **Tulingī, quī novissimīs praesidiō erant** (1, 25, 6), *the Tulingi, who served as a guard to the rear* (were to the rear for protection).
3. **Quibus corpus voluptātī, anima onerī fuit** (Sall. Cat. 2, 8), *to these the body [served] for pleasure, [and] thought was a bore* (the soul was for a burden).
4. **Eāsdem cōpiās praesidiō nāvibus reliquit** (5, 11, 7), *he left the same forces to guard the ships* (to the ships for protection).

136. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 334; H. 529, G. 469.

137. What are the Primary or Principal Tenses of the verb? Secondary or Historical Tenses? See A. & G. 285, 1, 2; H. I., 1, 2, 3, 4, II., 1, 2, 3; G. 216.

38.

EXAMPLES.

Videō quis habeat Etrūriam (Cic. *Cat.* 2, 3, 6), *I see who has Etruria in charge.*

Videbō quis habeat Etrūriam, *I shall see who has Etruria in charge.*

Viderō quis habeat Etrūriam, *I shall have seen who has Etruria in charge.*

Videō quis habuerit Etrūriam, *I see who had (has had) Etruria in charge.*

Videbō quis habuerit Etrūriam, *I shall see who had (has had) Etruria in charge.*

Viderō quis habuerit Etrūriam, *I shall have seen who had (has had) Etruria in charge.*

Videbam quis habēret Etrūriam, *I saw who had Etruria in charge.*

Vidi quis habēret Etrūriam, *I saw who had Etruria in charge.*

Videram quis habēret Etrūriam, *I had seen who had Etruria in charge.*

Videbam quis habuisset Etrūriam, *I saw who had had Etruria in charge.*

Vidi quis habuisset Etrūriam, *I saw who had had Etruria in charge.*

Videram quis habuisset Etrūriam, *I had seen who had had Etruria in charge.*

139. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Is the verb of the *lead-clause*, in Exs. 1-6, in a *primary* or a *secondary tense*? Answer *same question* for the *subjunctive* of the dependent clause in the *examples*. Is the verb of the *leading clause*, in Exs. 7-12,

LESSON LVIII.

DATIVE OF POSSESSION.—DATIVE OF SERVICE.

449.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Hīs erat inter sē dē principātū contentiō** (7, 39, 2), *these* had a struggle with each other for precedence (lit., there was to these a struggle, etc.).
2. **At Catōnī studium modestiae, decoris erat** (Sall. Cat. 54, 5), *Cato, on the other hand, had a preference for sobriety and dignity of behavior* (lit., there was to Cato a preference, etc.).
3. **Est igitur hominī cum deō similitūdō** (Cic. Leg. 1, 8, 25), *man has, then, a likeness to God* (lit., there is to man a likeness, etc.).

450. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: With what case is the verb **sum** construed in the foregoing examples? By what English verb is it translated? How, then, may Possession be expressed in Latin? Frame a rule for the construction here illustrated.

451. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 231; H. 387; G. 349.

452.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit** (4, 37, 2), *Caesar sent the cavalry to the assistance of his men* (to his for assistance).
 2. **Tulingī, quī novissimīs praesidiō erant** (1, 25, 6), *the Tulingi, who served as a guard to the rear* (were to the rear for protection).
- Quibus corpus voluptātī, anima onerī fuit** (Sall. Cat. 2, 8), *to these the body [served] for pleasure, [and] thought was a bore* (the soul was for a burden).
- Eāsdem cōpiās praesidiō nāvibus reliquit** (5, 11, 7), *he left the same forces to guard the ships* (to the ships for protection).

453. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: With how many *datives* are the verbs in the foregoing examples construed? What do these *datives* respectively denote? Note that the *transitive verbs* (see *mīsit*, Ex. 1, and *reliquit*, Ex. 4) take, besides the dative, an *accusative* also. Frame a rule embodying your observations.

454. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 233; II. 390, I. II.; G. 350.

455.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quid in meā Galliā Caesarī negōtīi est? 2. Multīs corpus voluptātī, anima onerī est. 3. Lēgātum minōribus castrīs praesidiō reliquerat. 4. Familiāritās mihi cum eō est. 5. Q. Caepiōnī fortūna bellī crīminī, invidia populī calamitātī fuit. 6. In hāc īnsulā est fōns aquae dulcis cui nōmen Arethūsa est. 7. Tertiam legiōnem nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

II. 1. Traders have no access to (ad) them. 2. The friendship of the Roman people is a protection to me. 3. Two legions served as a guard to the baggage. 4. Our diminutive stature excites the contempt¹ of the Gauls. 5. No one could maintain his position² on the wall. 6. He sent the third line to the relief of our men [who were] struggling against odds.³

456.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. At nōbis est domī⁴ inopia, foris aes aliēnum. 2. Mihi autem mirum vidētur quid in meā Galliā aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtīi sit.⁵ 3. Militēs sibī ipsī ad pūgnam erant īmpedimentō. 4. Ea rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit.

II. 1. These [matters] are my business.⁶ 2. He reminded many, to whom this had been a source of booty, of the victory⁷ of Sulla. 3. The associates of Catiline had all sorts of⁸ miseries in abundance, but no⁹ favorable condition or⁹ prospect.

¹ Trans.: *is to the Gauls for contempt*.

² cf. Lesson XLIV., foot-note 13.

³ Present participle of *labōrō*.

⁴ Locative form, *at home*; for declension, see: A. & G. 70, f; H. 119, 1; G. 67, Rem. 2.

⁵ Account for mood and tense.

⁶ Trans.: *are to me for a care*.

⁷ Use the genitive.

⁸ "all sorts of" = *all*.

⁹ "no . . . or" = *neither any . . . nor*.

been collected. 5. Ascertain what⁹ is the nature of the mountain and what⁹ the ascent by a circuitous path.¹⁰

¹ Why not *nostrī*?

² Contemptuous.

³ "who among us" = *who of us*.

⁴ Trans.: *with how-great risk*.

⁵ *dē*.

⁶ "in war" = *by fighting*.

⁷ "to come to an engagement" = *to contend in battle* = *proeliō dēcertāre*.

⁸ Trans.: *himself present* (abl. abs.).

⁹ *quālis*, -e, adjective.

¹⁰ Trans.: *in circuit*.

LESSON LVII.

INDEFINITES.

445. Learn the declension of the indefinites: *quis*, any one; *quī*, any; *quīdam*,¹ a, a certain, some one; *quīvis*, any you please, any one you please; *aliquis*, some, some one; *quisque*, every, each, every one, each one: A. & G. 104, 105, c, d (first four lines and paradigm), e (first three lines); H. 190, 1, 2, 1), 2), Notes 1 and 2; G. 105, 1, 2, 5, 6.

446. Decline together: *sī quis*, if any one; *sī quārēs*, if anything; *spēs aliqua*, some hope; *quīdam*¹ *homo*, a man; *quodcumque*² *bellum*, whatever war; *nōbilissimus quisque*, all the nobility;³ *quaevis vīs*,⁴ any force whatever.

447.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Nāvēs tōtae (throughout) factae erant ex rōbore ad quamvis vim*⁴ *et contumēliam perferendam.* 2. *Nam omnēs in quibus aliquid dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant.* 3. *Ubī cuique locus silvestris spem salutis aliquam offerēbat, cōsēderat.* 4. *Haec castra silvam quandam*¹ *contingēbant.* 5. *Errant sī quicquam*² *ab hīs praesidiū spērant.* 6. *Quaecumque*² *bella gerentur sine ullō periculō tuō cōficiēntur.* 7. *Obsidēs nōbilissimī cūjusque*³ *liberōs poscit et in eōs*

omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdit, sī qua rēs nōn ad voluntātem ejus facta est.

- II. 1. They are conscious⁶ of [having done] some wrong.
 2. It-is-better for us to-submit-to⁷ any fortune whatever.
 3. He hears these [tidings] from some (*quidam*) deserters belonging-to-the-town. 4. Nor do they have any⁸ clothing except skins. √ 5. Unless some help⁹ comes from¹⁰ Caesar, the same thing will have to be done by¹¹ all the Gauls.
 6. Caesar summons¹² the foremost men of each community.
 7. Whoever shall be in authority over¹³ the province, shall defend the Aedui. 8. And so they dare to attack¹⁴ any number whatever.

448.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. *Alicujus injūriæ sibi cōsciū est.* 2. *Idōneū quendam hominē dēlēgit, Gallū, ex iis quōs auxiliī causā sēcū habēbat.* 3. *Neque eōrū mōribus turpius quicquā⁵ habētur.*
 4. *At Caesar, principibz cūjusque civitātis ad sē ēvocātis, māgnā partē Galliæ in officiō tenuit.*

II. 1. By [holding out] great rewards, he prevailed upon one (*quidam*) of¹⁵ the Gallic horsemen. 2. I shall send to you some one of¹⁵ my [followers]. 3. And so they dare, however few [they may be], to attack¹⁴ any number whatever of horsemen. 4. There is timber of every description except beech and fir. 5. If any crime has been committed, these-same-persons¹⁶ determine the rewards and the penalties.

¹ n is used for m before d, e.g., *quendam* (acc. sing.) and *quorundam* (gen. pl.).

² A. & G. 105, a.

³ Lit., *every noblest* [man]; decline in singular only; note that *quisque* follows the superlative.

⁴ For declension of *vis*, see A. & G. 61; H. 66; G. 76, d.

⁵ *quisquam*, *anyone*, has *quicquam* or *quidquam*, *anything*, in the nominative and accusative neuter singular; it lacks the feminine singular and the entire plural. For use of *quisquam*, see A. & G. 202, c; H. 457; G. 304.

⁶ Translate: *they are conscious to themselves.*

⁷ *pati*, pres. infin. pass. with act. meaning.

⁸ Translate: *anything of clothing*; see foot-note 5.

⁹ "some help" = *something of help*.

¹⁰ Translate: *shall be in Caesar*.

¹¹ What construction must be used?

¹² *to summon* = *ad sē ēvocāre*.

¹³ Use *obtinere* with accusative.

¹⁴ *to attack*, *adire ad*.

¹⁵ "of" = *from*.

¹⁶ *Idem*, nom. pl. masc.

LESSON LVIII.

DATIVE OF POSSESSION.—DATIVE OF SERVICE.

449.

EXAMPLES.

His erat inter sē dē principātū contentiō (7, 39, 2), *these had a struggle with each other for precedence* (lit., there was to these a struggle, etc.).

At Catōnī studium modestiae, decoris erat (Sall. Cat. 54, 5), *Cato, on the other hand, had a preference for sobriety and dignity of behavior* (lit., there was to Cato a preference, etc.).

Est igitur hominī cum deō similitūdō (Cic. Leg. 1, 8, 25), *man has, then, a likeness to God* (lit., there is to man a likeness, etc.).

450. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: With what case is the *erb sum* construed in the foregoing examples? By what English *erb* is it translated? How, then, may Possession be expressed in Latin? Frame a rule for the construction here illustrated.

451. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 231; H. 387; L. 349.

452.

EXAMPLES.

Caesar equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsīt (4, 37, 2), *Caesar sent the cavalry to the assistance of his men* (to his for assistance).

Tulingī, quī novissimīs praesidiō erant (1, 25, 6), *the Tulingi, who served as a guard to the rear* (were to the rear for protection).

Quibus corpus voluptātī, anima onerī fuit (Sall. Cat. 2, 8), *to these the body [served] for pleasure, [and] thought was a bore* (the soul was for a burden).

Eāsdem cōpiās praesidiō nāvibus reliquit (5, 11, 7), *he left the same forces to guard the ships* (to the ships for protection).

453. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: With how many *datives* are the verbs in the foregoing examples construed? What do these *datives* respectively denote? Note that the *transitive verbs* (see *mīsit*, Ex. 1, and *reliquit*, Ex. 4) take, besides the *dative*, an *accusative* also. Frame a rule embodying your observations.

454. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 233; II. 390, I, II.; G. 350.

455.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quid in meā Galliā Caesarī negōtīi est? 2. Multis corpus voluptātī, anima onerī est. 3. Lēgātum minōribus castris praesidiō reliquerat. 4. Familiāritās mihi cum eō est. 5. Q. Caepiōnī fortūna bellī crīmīnī, invidia populī calamitātī fuit. 6. In hāc insulā est fōns aquae dulcis cui nōmen Arethūsa est. 7. Tertiam legiōnem nostris subsidiō mīsit.

II. 1. Traders have no access to (ad) them. 2. The friendship of the Roman people is a protection to me. 3. Two legions served as a guard to the baggage. 4. Our diminutive stature excites the contempt¹ of the Gauls. 5. No one could maintain his position² on the wall. 6. He sent the third line to the relief of our men [who were] struggling against odds.³

456.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. At nōbis est domi⁴ inopia, foris aes aliēnum. 2. Mihi autem mīrum vidētur quid in meā Galliā aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtīi sit.⁵ 3. Militēs sibi ipsi ad pūgnam erant impedimentō. 4. Ea rēs māgnō ūsui nostris fuit.

II. 1. These [matters] are my business.⁶ 2. He reminded many, to whom this had been a source of booty, of the victory⁷ of Sulla. 3. The associates of Catiline had all sorts of⁸ miseries in abundance, but no⁹ favorable condition or⁹ prospect.

¹ Trans.: *is to the Gauls for contempt*.

² cf. Lesson XLIV., foot-note 13.

³ Present participle of *labōrō*.

⁴ Locative form, *at home*; for declension, see: A. & G. 70, f; H. 119, 1; G. 67, Rem. 2.

⁵ Account for mood and tense.

⁶ Trans.: *are to me for a care*.

⁷ Use the genitive.

⁸ "all sorts of" = *all*.

⁹ "no . . . or" = *neither any . . . nor*

LESSON LX.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING
CONSTRUCTIONS.

468.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dīxit pėjus vīctōribus Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs vīctīs accidisse. 2. Lēgātum sēsē māgnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum¹ exīstimābat. 3. Reperiēbat initium fugae factum² ā Dumnorige. 4. Ex perfugīs quibusdam oppidānīs audīt Saburram Uticae appropinquāre. 5. Divitiacus respondit scīre sē illa esse vērā. 6. Summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs¹ vidēbant.

II. 1. Caesar remembered³ that the army had been beaten by the Helvetians and sent under the yoke. 2. They said that the Aedui had lost all their nobility, all their senate, [and] all their cavalry. 3. He said that our plans were reported to the enemy. 4. Caesar learned that by these means (things) Dumnorix was increasing his private resources. 5. Caesar answered that he would make peace with them. 6. He knew that it would be [attended] with great danger to the province.⁴

469.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō initium fugae factum a Dumnorige atque ejus equitibus; eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitatum perterritum. 2. Sē suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna⁵ conciliātūrum cōfirmat. 3. Negāvit aut cōferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, aut hanc cōsuētūdinem vīctīs cum illā comparandam.

II. 1. They knew that he had done in one day what *they*⁶ had accomplished with-the-utmost-difficulty in twenty days. 2. They supposed that they should either persuade the Allobroges or con-

strain them by force. 3. He said that he had fled from the state and come to the senate to solicit⁷ aid.

¹ cf. Lesson LIX., foot-note 1.

² sc. *esse*.

³ "remembered" = *held by memory*.

⁴ Use the genitive.

⁵ The plural is used here because *sov-*

oreign power in two states is thought of; use the singular in translation.

⁶ Use the proper form of *ipse*.

⁷ cf. 380, Ex. 2.

LESSON LXI.

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE. — INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.

470.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Neque fugere dēstitērunt** (1, 53, 1), *nor did they cease to flee.*
2. **Helvētīī nostrōs lacessere coepērunt** (1, 15, 3), *the Helvetians began to attack our men.*
3. . . . **quod accidere solēbat** (6, 15, 1), *which was wont to happen.*

471. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the infinitives **fugere** (Ex. 1), **lacessere** (Ex. 2), and **accidere** (Ex. 3), are *without subject accusative*. Note, further, that the verbs on which these infinitives depend (**dēstitērunt**, **coepērunt**, **solēbat**), are verbs of *incomplete meaning*. As the infinitive in these cases is added to *complete* the meaning of the verb on which it depends, it is called the *Complementary Infinitive*. After what *class* of verbs, then, is the *Complementary Infinitive* used? Frame a rule for this construction.

472. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 271 with note; H. 533, I., 1, 2; G. 424.

473.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Mea facta mihi dīcere licet** (Sall. *Jug.* 85, 24), *I have the right to speak of my own deeds (to speak is lawful for me).*
2. [**Mihi**] **nōn placuit reticēre** (Sall. *Jug.* 85, 26), *I am resolved not to remain silent (to remain silent has not seemed good to me).*

3. **Tē prōvidēre decet** (Sall. Jug. 10, 7), *it is proper for you to see to it* (for you to see to it is becoming).
 4. **Pulchrum est bene facere rēi publicae** (Sall. Cat. 3, 1), *to serve the commonwealth by deeds* (to do well for the commonwealth) *is honorable*.

474. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the verbs *licet* (Ex. 1), *placuit* (Ex. 2), and *decet* (Ex. 3), are *impersonal*; and that they have as *subject* an *infinitive*, either *without* subject accusative (see *dīcere*, Ex. 1. and *reticēre*, Ex. 2), or *with* subject accusative (see *tē prōvidēre*, Ex. 3). Note also that the verb *est* (Ex. 4) has an *infinitive* (*facere*) as *subject*. With what *classes* of verbs, then, is the Infinitive used as Subject? Frame a rule for this construction.

475. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 270, a; H. 338, 1; G. 423.

476.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī nōn dēbent.*
 2. *Hīs rēbus coercērī militēs solent.* 3. *Nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in mēo jūre impedīrī.* 4. *Nōbīs est in animō sine ūllō maleficiō per prōvinciam iter facere.*
 5. *Nōbīs praestat quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī² quam ā Gallīs per cruciātum interficī.* 6. *Cōstituērunt jūmentōrum quam³ māximum numerum coēmere.* 7. *Inīquum est dē stipendiō recūsāre.*

II. 1. *It-was-generally-understood that Caesar would first carry on war in Venetia.* 2. *Still, the majority were in favor of defending⁴ the camp.* 3. *They decided to establish friendship with the neighboring states.* 4. *The Helvetians began⁵ to maintain their ground more boldly.⁶* 5. *Priority of time ought not in every instance to be regarded.⁷* 6. *We are at liberty⁸ to do this.* 7. *Their lands ought⁹ not to be laid waste.*

477.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Ariovistus respondit amicitiam populi Rōmāni sibi prae-sidiō, nōn detrīmentō esse oportēre. 2. Helvētīi audācius⁶ sub-sistere et proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. 3. Si antiq̄uissimum quodque tempus¹⁰ spectārī oportet; populi Rōmāni iūstissimum est in Galliā imperium.

II. 1. It is the intention of¹¹ the Helvetians to march through the country of the Sequani and Aedui. 2. It is reported to Caesar that the Helvetians intend to march through the country of the Sequani and Aedui. 3. If the decision of the senate has a claim to be respected,¹² Gaul ought⁹ to be free.

¹ *dēbeō* is personal; *oportet* is im-personal. Both express moral obligation, or a necessity founded on duty.

² See foot-note 7, Lesson LVII.

³ cf. foot-note 5, Lesson XXXII.

⁴ Trans.: *it seemed good (placuit) to the greater part to defend.*

⁵ *coepērunt.*

⁶ *audācius, more boldly.*

⁷ Translate: *it is not right (opor-tet) [for] each earliest time to be re-garded.* For order, cf. Lesson LVII, foot-note 3.

⁸ Trans.: *it is permitted to us.*

⁹ Use *dēbeō*.

¹⁰ See sent. 5 in the preceding exercise.

¹¹ Imitate 476, I., sent. 4.

¹² Translate: *if it is proper [for] the decision of the senate to be respected.*

LESSON LXII.

DEPONENT VERBS. — ABLATIVE WITH *Ūtor*,
Fruor, ETC.

478.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Tabulās pīctās mīrārī* (Sall. *Cat.* 11, 6), *to admire paintings.*
2. *Hostem verērī* (1, 39, 6), *to fear the enemy.*
3. *Hostēs sequitur* (1, 22, 5), *he pursues the enemy.*
4. *Oppidō potitur* (7, 11, 8), *he gets possession of the town.*
5. *Ad Vesontionem morātur* (1, 39, 1), *he tarries (i.e., detains himself) at Vesontio.*

479. OBSERVATION: Note, in the foregoing examples, that the verbs have a passive form, but an active (Exs. 1-4) or reflexive

(Ex. 5) meaning. Such verbs are called *Deponent* (from *dē-pōnō*, *lay aside*) because they have laid aside their passive meaning.

480. REFERENCES: A. & G. 135; H. 231; G. 211.

481. Learn the inflection and synopsis of one deponent verb under each conjugation: A. & G. 135, *a, c*; H. 231, 1, 3, 232 (see note); G. pp. 74-81.

482.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Māteriā ūtēbātur* (4, 31, 2), *he used the timber.*
2. *Vita quā fruimur brevis est* (Sall. *Cat.* 1, 3), *the life which we enjoy is short.*
3. . . . *quōrum māgna multītūdō servōrum mūnere fungitur* (Nep. *Paus.* 3, 6), *large numbers of whom discharge the duty of slaves.*
4. *Numidae lacte et carne vescēbantur* (Sall. *Jug.* 89, 7), *the Numidians subsisted on milk and meat.*
5. *Caesar oppidō potitur* (7, 11, 8), *Caesar obtains possession of the town.*

483. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: With what case, in the foregoing examples, are the following verbs construed: *ūtēbātur* (Ex. 1), *fruimur* (Ex. 2), *fungitur* (Ex. 3), *vescēbantur* (Ex. 4), *potitur* (Ex. 5)? Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives used with these verbs.

484. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 249; H. 421, I.; G. 405.

485.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Lingūā Gallicā multā jam Ariovistūs longinquā cōsuētūdine¹ ūtēbātur.* 2. *Equitēs officiō fūctī renūntiant paucōs in aedificiis esse inventōs.* 3. *Lacte, cāsēō, carne² vescor.* 4. *Tūtius esse arbitrābantur, commēatū interelūsō, sine ūllō vulnere victōriā potiri.* 5. *Quae agat,³ quibuscum loquātur,³ sciō.* 6. *Is mihi vivere atque frui animā videtur,*

ñ praeclārī facinoris aut artis bonae fāmam quaerit.
 . Partiendum⁴ sibi exercitum putāvit. 8. Vercingetorix
 x arce suōs cōspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur.

II. 1. Our men obtained possession of the baggage and camp. 2. Wondering⁵ what was³ the cause of this behavior, he inquired of them personally. 3. They share⁶ with their leaders all advantages in life. 4. The [territories of the] Belgians begin at the extreme confines of Gaul [and] extend towards the north-east.⁷ 5. It is very easy to obtain⁸ control of all Gaul. 6. Adopting⁵ the same policy, they burn their towns and villages, and set out together with the Helvetians. 7. And I do not know whether⁹ this is³ to be wondered at.

486.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Est genus quoddam hominum, quod Iilōtāe vocātur, quōrum magna multitudō agrōs Lacedaemoniōrum colit servōrumque mūnere fungitur. 2. Rōmānōs pulsōs¹⁰ superātōsque,¹⁰ castris impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potitōs¹⁰ renūtiāvērunt. 3. In suis finibus decertābunt et domesticis cōpiis rēi frumentāriae ūtentur.

I. 1. One of those who stood next¹¹ stepped over¹² this [man] as he lay prostrate¹³ and discharged¹² the same office. 2. The soldiers will subsist chiefly on milk, cheese, and game. 3. How long, pray, Catiline, will you abuse our patience?

¹ cf. Lesson XXIII., foot-note 8.

² carō, carnis, f., *flesh, meat*.

³ Account for mood and tense.

⁴ A. & G. 136, d; H. 231, 2; sc. esse.

⁵ Use perf. part.

⁶ Trans.: *enjoy together with their leaders*.

⁷ Trans.: *north and rising sun*.

⁸ Use *potior*.

⁹ Express *whether* by appending -n to the gerundive.

¹⁰ sc. esse.

¹¹ Trans.: *one from the nearest*.

¹² "stepped over and discharged" having stepped over, discharged.

¹³ Trans.: *this [man] lying*.

LESSON LXIII.

INDEPENDENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE: HORTATORY, OPTATIVE, DUBITATIVE.

HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

487.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Persequāmur eōrum mortem* (7, 38, 8), *let us avenge their death*.
2. *Discēdant in Ītaliā omnēs ab armīs* (Caes. B. C. 1, 9, 5), *let as throughout Italy lay down their arms* (withdraw from arms).
3. *Quaesierit sãnē* (Cic. Mil. 17, 46), *suppose, if you will (sãnē), that he did make inquiry*.

488. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the subjunctive *persequāmur* (Ex. 1) expresses *exhortation*, that *discēdant* (Ex. 2) expresses *command*, and that *quaesiērit* (Ex. 3) expresses *concession*. Are the clauses containing these subjunctives *dependent* or *independent*? Frame a rule for these and similar Subjunctives.

489. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 266; H. 483, 484, II., III., IV.; G. 256, 1, 3, 257.

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

490.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Stet haec urbs praeclāra* (Cic. Mil. 34, 93), *may this illustrious city abide!*
2. *Utinam P. Clōdīus vīveret* (Cic. Mil. 33, 103), *would that Publius Clodius were alive!*
3. *Utinam ille omnēs sēcum cōpiās suās ēdūxisset* (Cic. Cat. 2, 2, 4), *would that he had taken with him all his forces!*

491. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the subjunctives in the foregoing examples express *wish*. Are the clauses containing them *dependent* or *independent*? In what tense is the subjunctive in Ex. 1? Does the wish in this example relate to *present*, *past*, or *future* time? Is the wish conceived of as *possible*

or impossible of fulfillment? In what tense is the subjunctive in Ex. 2? To what time does it relate? Does it represent the wish as fulfilled or unfulfilled? Answer the last three questions for the subjunctive in Ex. 3. What particle accompanies the subjunctive in Exs. 2 and 3? Frame rules for Mood and Tense in Expressions of Wishing.

492. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 267, b; II. 484, I., 483, 1, 2; G. 253, 254.

DUBITATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

493.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Ēloquar an sileam* (Verg. *Aen.* 3, 30), *shall I speak out, or hold my peace?*
2. *Hunc ego nōn admīrer* (Cic. *Arch.* 8, 18), *can I help admiring (should I not admire) this man?*
3. *Nam quid dē Cŷrō nūntiāret* (Cic. *Mil.* 18, 48), *pray, what need had he to bring news of Cyrus?*

494. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) that the subjunctives in Ex. 1 are in a question expressing doubt, (2) that the subjunctive in Ex. 2 is in a question expressing indignation, (3) that the subjunctive in Ex. 3 is in a question expressing impossibility. Are the questions containing these subjunctives dependent or independent? Frame a rule for these and similar Subjunctives.

495. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 268; H. 484, V., 486, II.; G. 258, 251.

LESSON LXIV.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE HORTATORY, OPTATIVE, AND DUBITATIVE SUBJUNCTIVES.

496.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. *Discēdat uterque ab armīs exercitūsque dīmittat.*
2. *Valeant, valeant, cīvēs meī; sint incolumēs, sint flōrentēs, sint beātī; stet haec urbs praeclāra mihiq̄ue patrī*

cārissima! 3. Nam quid ea memorem, quae, nisi eis vidēre, nēminī crēdibilia sunt? 4. Tranquillā rē pūblī meī cīvēs perfruantur! 5. Proficiscantur, nē¹ patiant dēsideriō² suī Catilinam miserum tābēscere. 6. Hunc eg nōn dilīgam, nōn admīrē? nōn omnī ratiōne dēfendendū putem? 7. Utinam exstārent illa carmina! 8. Mihi salvā rē pūblicā vōbīscum perfrui liceat! 9. Hōc utinam pīncipiō tibi placuisset!

II. 1. Let Marius have eternal glory;³ let Pompey be preferred to all. 2. Would that my fellow citizens had been uninjured, had been prosperous, had been happy. 3. But who could suppose that the Teucri would come⁴ to the shores of Hesperia? 4. May I but (*modo*) accomplish my endeavors! 5. Why should I speak of Gabinus? 6. If they remain in the city, let them look for what⁵ they deserve. 7. If they cannot⁶ stand, let them fall. 8. Who could hesitate to release himself from fear,⁷ and the commonwealth from peril?⁷

497.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Utinam P. Clōdīus nōn modo viveret, sed etiam praetor, cōsul, dictātor esset potius⁸ quam hōc spectāculum vidērem. 2. Sit Scīpiō clārus ille, cūjus virtūte Hannibal ex Itāliā dēcēdere cōactus est; habeātur vir ēgregius Paullus ille, cūjus currum rēx potentissimus et nōbilissimus Persēs honestāvit. 3. Cūr dē vestrā virtūte aut dē meā diligentiā dēspērētis?

II. 1. Therefore let the reprobates go; let them separate themselves from the good. 2. Would that this which I am saying were not¹ true!⁹ 3. Why should I allow soldiers to be wounded who have done their best to serve me?¹¹

¹ *nē* is the regular negative with the hortatory and optative subjunctives.

² cf. Lesson XXIII., foot-note 8.

³ Translate: *be of eternal glory*.

⁴ In what mood? See 463, Ex. 2.

⁵ "what" = *those [things] which*.

⁶ *nōn possunt*.

⁷ Ablative without preposition.

⁸ *rather*.

⁹ Translate: *would that I were not saying this truly*.

¹⁰ "who have . . . me" = *having deserved best (optimē) from (dē) me*.

LESSON LXV.

ADVERBS: FORMATION AND COMPARISON.

498.

EXAMPLES.

POSITIVE.

ADJECTIVES.	ADVERBS.
1. <i>jūstus</i> (st. <i>jūsto</i> -);	<i>jūstē, justly.</i>
2. <i>liber</i> (st. <i>libero</i> -);	<i>liberē, freely.</i>
3. <i>pulcher</i> (st. <i>pulchro</i> -);	<i>pulchrē, beautifully.</i>
4. <i>acer</i> (st. <i>acri</i> -);	<i>acriter, sharply.</i>
5. <i>fortis</i> (st. <i>forti</i> -);	<i>fortiter, bravely.</i>
6. <i>audāx</i> (st. <i>audāci</i> -);	<i>audācter (audāciter), boldly.</i>
7. <i>sapiēns</i> (st. <i>sapient</i> -);	<i>sapienter, wisely.</i>

COMPARATIVE.

8. <i>jūstior, juster</i> ;	<i>jūstius, more justly.</i>
9. <i>liberior, freer</i> ;	<i>liberius, more freely.</i>
10. <i>pulchrior, more beautiful</i> ;	<i>pulchrius, more beautifully.</i>
11. <i>acrior, sharper</i> ;	<i>acrius, more sharply.</i>
12. <i>fortior, braver</i> ;	<i>fortius, more bravely.</i>
13. <i>audācior, bolder</i> ,	<i>audācius, more boldly.</i>
14. <i>sapientior, wiser</i> ;	<i>sapientius, more wisely.</i>

SUPERLATIVE.

15. <i>jūstissimus</i> (st. <i>jūstissimo</i> -);	<i>jūstissimē, most justly.</i>
16. <i>liberrimus</i> (st. <i>liberrimo</i> -);	<i>liberrimē, most freely.</i>
17. <i>pulcherrimus</i> (st. <i>pulcher-rimo</i> -);	<i>pulcherrimē, most beautif</i>
18. <i>acerrimus</i> (st. <i>acerrimo</i> -);	<i>acerrimē, most sharply.</i>
19. <i>fortissimus</i> (st. <i>fortissimo</i> -);	<i>fortissimē, most bravely.</i>
20. <i>audācissimus</i> (st. <i>audācis-simo</i> -);	<i>audācissimē, most bold</i>
21. <i>sapientissimus</i> (st. <i>sapient-issimo</i> -);	<i>sapientissimē, most</i>

LESSON LXVI.

ABLATIVE: SEPARATION AND WANT.

506.

EXAMPLES.

1. [Marius] **bis** **Ītaliā** **obsidiōne** **liberāvit** (Cic. Cat. 4, 10, 21),
Marius twice relieved Italy from siege.
2. **Vōs** **Sulpiciū** **vītā** **privāstis** (Cic. Phil. 9, 4, 8), [it is] you
[who] have deprived Sulpicius of life.
3. **Eō** **errōre** **careō** (Cic. Lael. 3, 10), I am free from that error.
4. **Sed** **nōn** **egeō** **medicinā** (Cic. Lael. 3, 10), but I need no medicine.
5. **Iter** **ab** **Arare** **Helvētī** **āverterant** (1, 16, 3), the Helvetians
had turned their line of march away from the Arar.
6. **Proeliō** **abstinēbat** (1, 22, 3), he held off from battle.
7. **Hannibal** **ex** **Ītaliā** **dēcēdere** **coāctus** **est** (Cic. Cat. 4, 10, 21),
Hannibal was forced to withdraw from Italy.
8. **Helvētī** **hōc** **cōnātū** **dēstitērunt** (1, 8, 4), the Helvetians
sisted from this attempt.
9. **Ēgredere** **ex** **urbe** (Cic. Cat. 1, 8, 20), depart from the city.
10. **Hostēs** **proeliō** **excēdēbant** (3, 4, 3), the enemy withdrew from
the fight.

507. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that each of the foregoing illustrations contains a verb expressing *separation*, and that this verb is construed with the *ablative*.

Is the ablative in Exs. 1-4, used *with* or *without* a *preposition*? With what classes of verbs, then, does the Ablative of Separation omit the preposition?

With what prepositions are the verbs of separation in Exs. 5-10 compounded? Note that the *ablatives* construed with these compound verbs in Exs. 5, 7, and 9 *have* a *preposition*; whereas the *ablatives* in Exs. 6, 8, and 10 *have* no *preposition*. What explanation of this difference can you suggest?

Frame rules for the use or the omission of the Preposition with the Ablative of Separation.

508. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 243, a, b; H. 414, I., 413, n. 3; G. 388 (both paragraphs).

509.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Gubernātore opus est* (Liv. 24, 8), *there is need of a pilot.*
2. *Auctoritatē tuā nobis opus est* (Cic. Fam. 9, 23, 3), *we have need (there is to us need) of your authority.*
3. *Factō opus est* (Sall. Cat. 1, 6), *there is need of action.*
4. *Mātūrātō opus est* (Liv. 8, 13, 17), *there is need of hastening.*

510. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: By what case is the person or thing needed expressed with *opus* in the foregoing examples (see *gubernātore*, *auctoritatē*, *factō*, and *mātūrātō*)? By what case is the person needing expressed (see *nobis* in Ex. 2)? Note that the thing needed is expressed in Exs. 3 and 4 by the perfect passive participle (see *factō* and *mātūrātō*). What constructions, then, are used with *opus*?

511. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 243, *e*; II. 414, IV., n. 2, n. 3; G. 390.

512.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Flūmen Rhodanus prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. 2. Ēgredere ex urbe, Catilīna, liberā rem pūblicam metū. 3. Huic trādita urbs est, nūda praesidiō.¹ 4. Magistrātibus igitur opus est, sine quōrum prūdentiā esse cīvītās nōn potest. 5. Factō, nōn cōsultō, in tālī periculō opus est. 6. Helvētiī, eā spē dējectī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt. 7. Complūrēs diēs frūmentō mīlitēs carent.² 8. Ūna centuria facta est immūnis mīlitiā.¹ 9. Hunc ā tuīs ārīs arcēbis.

II. 1. The charioteers, meanwhile, gradually withdrew from the battle. 2. We shall live without anxiety and fear, and shall free mind and body from trouble. 3. The orator has need of a mind [that is] free¹ from envy and all vices. 4. They threatened Caesar with the sword [as he was] coming out from the senate. 5. It is a great undertaking and requires no (nōn) slight practice. 6. There is no need of deliberation.³

¹ A. & G. 243, *d*; H. 414, III.; G. 398 (end).

² cf. Lesson XXI., foot-note 5.

³ cf. sent. 5, preceding exercdae.

LESSON LXVII.

ABLATIVES: SOURCE AND CAUSE.

ABLATIVE OF SOURCE.

513.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Pisō amplissimō genere nātus* (4, 12, 4), *Piso, born of a very illustrious family.*
2. *Eā familiā ortum* (Sall. Cat. 31, 7), *descended from such a family.*
3. *Is Ascanius, quācumque mātrem genitus* (Liv. 1, 3, 3), *this Ascanius, of whatever mother born . . .*

514. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the perfect participles in the foregoing illustrations express birth or origin. How is source denoted in connection with these participles? Frame a rule for this construction.

515. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 244, a; H. 415, II.; G. 395.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

516.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Caesar beneficiis magnus habēbatur* (Sall. Cat. 54, 2), *Caesar was considered great because of his benefactions.*
2. *Ipsā vacuitate omnis molestiae gaudemus* (Cic. Fin. 1, 11, 37), *we take pleasure in the mere absence of all annoyance.*

517. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: What do the ablatives in the foregoing examples express? Frame a rule for these and similar Ablatives.

518. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 245; H. 416; G. 407.

519.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. *Mithridatē¹ regiō genere ortum, regem cōstituit.*
2. *Helvetiī suā victoriā insolenter glōriabantur.* 3. *Alter*

est Catus, antiquissimā familiā nātus atque ipse homo summae potentiae. 4. Eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctoritatem in rē militārī sūmēbant. 5. Reperiēbat plērūque Belgās esse ortōs ab² Germānīs. 6. Gubernātōris ars ūtilitāte landātur.

II. 1. Catiline made a boast of his vices. 2. Lycomedes, descended from a royal race, laid claim to this priestly dignity. 3. He had said this at the bidding of his master. 4. Lucius Catiline, [who was] born of a noble family, was of great vigor both of mind and of body. 5. Cato was commended for his steadfastness. 6. This happened because of the inexperience of the enemy, and the valor of the soldiers.

¹ Greek accusative of *Mithridātēs*,
-is, n., *Mithridates*.

² A. & G. 244, a, Rem.; H. 415, II.,
note; G. 395 (end).

520. Supplementary Exercises on Lessons LXVI. and LXVII.

I. 1. Pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premi vidēbatur. 2. Ex essedis dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. 3. Quid¹ mihi aut vitā aut civitāte opus est,¹ quam beneficiō Caesaris habēre vidēbor? 4. Omnium rērum nātūrā cōgnitā levāmur superstitione, liberāmur mortis metū. 5. Tantummodo inceptō opus est.

II. 1. Among these was Piso, an Aquitanian, born of a very illustrious family. 2. Why should anybody suppose² that this [man] will withdraw from his allegiance? 3. When a violent tempest arises,³ then there is need of a man and a pilot. 4. Catiline withdrew from the city because of his fear of the consul. 5. Labienus, having seized the mountain, was waiting for our men and holding off from battle.

¹ Quid (adv. acc.) mihi opus est,
what need have I?

² What mood? See 493, Ex. 3.

³ Use the perfect tense.

LESSON LXVIII.

IRREGULAR VERB: **Possum.** — IMPERSONAL USE OF
INTRANSITIVE VERBS IN THE PASSIVE.

521. Learn the composition, inflection, and synopsis of **possum**, *be able, can*: A. & G. 120, *b*; H. 290, notes 1, 2, 1), 2), 3); G. 115.

522.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ācriter pūgnātum est** (1, 50, 2), *the fight was vigorously maintained*.
2. **Dictō pārētur** (Liv. 9, 32, 4), *the order is obeyed* (obedience rendered to the order).
3. **Huic rēi subventum est ā nōbīs** (Cic. Att. 1, 17, 9), *I support this proposition* (to this thing support was given by us).
4. **Hūc concurritur** (7, 84, 2), *they make for this point in a body* (a general rush is made).

523. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the verbs in the foregoing illustrations are *intransitive*, i.e., they do not take direct object in the active voice. How are they used in the *passive*? What, then, is the *gender* of the *participle* in the compound tenses of the passive (see Exs. 1 and 3; cf. also 317, Exs. 3 and 4)? In the case of intransitive verbs that govern the *dative* (e.g., **pāreō**, *obey*, **subveniō**, *support*), is this dative *changed* in the passive, or is it *retained* (see Exs. 2 and 3)? Frame a rule for the use of Intransitive Verbs in the Passive.

524. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 146, *c*; H. 301, 1; G. 199, Rem. 1, 208.

525.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Tōtius Galliae¹ plūrimum Helvētīi possunt. 2. Sed Caesar, ubi ad eum ventum est, haec verba locūtus est.
3. Quam māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ūltiōrem

contendit. 4. Labiēnus, ut erat **ēi** praeceptum ā Caesare, proeliō abstinēbat. 5. His persuādēre nōn poterant. 6. **His** persuādērī nōn poterat. 7. Neque hostibus nocētur. 8. **Mihī** profectō poterit ignōscī. 9. Nōbīs parum crēdēbatur. 10. Intellegēs quid invictī Germānī virtūte possint.² 11. Quid hostis virtūte posset,² periclitābatur.

II. 1. He demands of the whole province the largest possible³ number of soldiers. 2. He says that he cannot⁴ grant any one a passage through the province. 3. *He* had very little influence⁵ owing to his youth. 4. I am believed. 5. Why am I envied? 6. I am convinced that he will not reject my friendship. 7. The ships of the enemy could not be injured.⁶ 8. He shows what the discipline and resources of the Roman people have been able [to effect]. 9. Those with whom they had come up⁷ made a stand.

526.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Pūgnatur unō tempore omnibus locis; quae minimē visa pars firma est, hūc concurritur. 2. Caesar intellēxit neque hostium fugam reprimi neque iis nocērī posse. 3. Sēsē nē vultum⁸ quidem Germānōrum dicēbant ferre⁹ potuisse. 4. Id oppidum ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, propter mūri altitudinem expugnāre nōn potuit.

II. 1. He inquired of them what communities were in arms, and what was their strength¹⁰ in war. 2. For they had learned that the enemy's ships could not be damaged¹¹ by the beak. 3. A rush was made to-that-point¹² from the nearest redoubts, and the fight was maintained desperately by the enemy.

¹ A. & G. 216, a, 2; H. 307, 3; G. 371.

² Account for mood and tense.

³ cf. sent. 3 of the preceding exercise.

⁴ "He says that he cannot" = *he denies that he can*.

⁵ Translate: *was able very little*.

⁶ cf. sent. 6, preceding exercise.

⁷ Translate: *Those to whom it had been come*.

⁸ Note that with **nū . . . quidem** the emphatic word is placed between **nū** and **quidem**.

⁹ Present infinitive of *ferō*.

¹⁰ "what was their strength" = *what they could*.

¹¹ cf. preceding exercise, sent. 2.

¹² **eō**.

may have him as a witness of their valor. 5. He explained ^{hy} why Cato had chosen rather to submit than to fight. 6. They sent ^{ts} envoys to him to say ⁶ that it was their intention ¹³ to march with-
out [committing any] depredation. 7. He barricaded ³ the gates that the soldiers might not break ⁵ into the town.

¹ cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 2.

² "What do you mean?" = *what do you wish for yourself?*

³ Use the historical present; see: A. & G. 276, d; H. 467, III.; G. 220.

⁴ Translate: *he [being] intercessor.*

⁵ For tense, see: A. & G. 287, e; H. 495, II.; G. 511, Rem. 1.

⁶ "to effect a junction" = *who should unite himself.*

⁷ Use **cōnfligō** impersonally in the passive periphrastic conjugation.

⁸ cf. Lesson L., foot-note 3.

⁹ Translate: *Be unwilling* (cf. 531, I., sent. 3) *to rob these of your aid.*

¹⁰ **agere dē.**

¹¹ "matters of the highest interest to you both" = *the greatest things of each.*

¹² "the individual soldiers" = *each one.*

¹³ "that it was their intention" = *that it was to themselves in mind.*

LESSON LXX.

IRREGULAR VERBS: **Ferō, Eō.** — COMPLEMENTARY FINAL CLAUSES.

533. Learn the inflection and synopsis of **ferō**, *bear*, and **eō**, *go*: A. & G. 189, 141; H. 292, 2, 295; G. 186, 185.

534.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Persuādēt Rauriciīs utī ūnā cum iīs proficiscantur** (1, 5, 4), *they persuade the Raurici to go with them.*
2. **Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem addūceret** (1, 42, 4), *Ariovistus demanded that he should not bring a single foot-soldier.*
3. **Veritus ut impetum sustinēre posset, litterās Caesarī remittit** (5, 47, 4), *fearing that he might not be able to sustain the attack, he sent back a dispatch to Caesar.*
4. **Nē Divitiaciī animum offenderet, verēbātur** (1, 19, 2), *he feared that he might wound the feelings of Divitiacus.*

535. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the final clauses in the foregoing examples are the *direct objects* of the verbs on which they depend, and that they therefore express purpose somewhat less obviously than those of the preceding lesson. As they complete the meaning of the verbs whose objects they are, they are called *Complementary Final Clauses*. Note, further, that the verbs on which they depend (see *persuādēt*, 1, *postulāvit*, 2, *veritus*, 3, *verēbātur*, 4) denote an *action directed towards the future*. What *class of verbs*, then, do Complementary Final Clauses follow? What *Mood* do they require? Frame a rule for Complementary Final Clauses.

536. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 331; H. 498, I., II., III.; G. 546.

537. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that, in Exs. 3 and 4, the complementary final clause follows a verb of *fearing* (*veritus*, Ex. 3, *verēbātur*, Ex. 4). How is *ut* (Ex. 3) translated? Is this its *usual* meaning? How is *nē* (Ex. 4) translated? Is this its *usual* meaning? Frame a rule for the use of the Particle after Expressions of Fearing.

538. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 331, *f*; H. 498, III., note 1; G. 552⁵.

539.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Fer mihi auxilium. 2. Servitūtem perferre mālunt. 3. In tabulis nōminatim ratiō cōfecta erat quī numerus domō¹ exisset² eōrum, quī arma ferre possent. 4. Neutrī transeundī initium faciunt. 5. His mandāvit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. 6. Mulierēs milītēs implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent. 7. Timēbant nē ab hoste circumvenīrentur. 8. Rem³ frumentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēbant. 9. Nōnnūllī Caesarī nūntiārant² nōn propter timōrem signa lātūrōs milītēs. 10. Ego enim ab ineunte aetate incēnsus sum studiō utriusque vestrūm.

II. 1. At one time⁴ they waged war against [others], at

another⁴ they repelled [it when] waged against. [the
selves]. 2. One must often incur enmity⁵ for the pub-
welfare. 3. He went away at the beginning of summe-
4. He warns him to avoid⁷ all grounds of suspicion. 5. Th^e
feared that our army might be led against⁸ them. 6. Ta^ke
care to attach to yourself the aid⁹ of all [classes]. 7. H^e
persuades this [man] to go over to the enemy. 8. Caesar
thought that he ought to take special precautions¹⁰ lest this
should happen. 9. "Lay the matter before the senate,"
you say (inquis): I shall not.¹¹ 10. I must return. 11. Go
hence!

540.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Rōmānī conversa signa bipartitō intulērunt. 2. Is
Amūlium rēgem interēmisse fertur. 3. Respondit in eam partē
itūrōs atque ibī futūrōs Helvētiōs. 4. Sic eat quaecumque
māna lūgēbit hostem!¹² 5. Allobrogibus imperāvīt ut Helvēt-
frūmentī cōpiam facerent. 6. Eō cōsiliō domōs¹ suās Helvētīi re-
quērunt, uti tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentur.
7. Caesar postulāvit nē Helvētiōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvarent.

II. 1. Would that the soldiers had passed through without
[committing any] depredation! 2. I do not know through whose
territory they have gone. 3. They betook themselves to the town.
4. They suffer no wine¹⁴ to be imported. 5. It is your [duty] to
see that they do not injure me. 6. They demanded of Ariovistus
that he should select some place for a conference. 7. There was
reason-to-fear¹⁵ that they might seem to have been cruel.

¹ For declension, see: A. & G. 70, f; II. 119, 1; G. 87, Rem. 2.

² A. & G. 128, a; II. 235; G. 151, 1.

³ Rem frūmentāriam, ut ... posset = Ut rēs frūmentāria ... posset. The construction used in the text gives special emphasis to rem frūmentāriam.

⁴ aliās ... aliās, at one time ... at another.

⁵ "One must often incur enmity" = enmities must often be incurred.

⁶ Trans.: summer beginning.

⁷ In this and similar cases occurring later, the English infinitive is to be translated by ut with the subjunctive.

⁸ addūcō ad.

⁹ Use the plural.

¹⁰ Use the passive impersonally.

¹¹ Trans.: I shall not lay the matter.

¹² The exclamation of Horatius as he slew his sister: Liv. 1, 26, 4.

¹³ Note that this final clause is in apposition with eō cōsiliō.

¹⁴ "no wine" = nothing of wine.

¹⁵ Passive periphrastic.

*Conversa signa i
about & ad*

to f

LESSON LXXI.

IRREGULAR VERB: FĪŌ. — ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON.
— ABLATIVE OF DIFFERENCE.

^{541.} Learn the inflection and synopsis of **fĭō**, *be made, become*: A. & G. 142; H. 294; G. 188.

542.

EXAMPLES.

{	a. Quis est enim quam ego mītiŏr?	} for who is milder than I?
{	b. Quis est enim mē mītiŏr? (Cic. Cat. 4, 6, 11),	

{	a. Docet sē nihil amplius scīre quam lēgātōs (Sall. Cat. 47, 1),	} he declares that he knows no more than the envoys.
{	b. Docet sē nihil amplius scīre lēgātīs,	

Lūce sunt clārīŏra nŏbīs tua cōnsilia (Cic. Cat. 1, 3, 6), *your schemes are clearer to us than the light.*

- Celerius omnī opīniŏne (2, 3, 1), *more quickly than any one had thought possible (than all opinion).*

543. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Ex. 1, *a*, that **quam** is expressed with the comparative **mītiŏr**, and that **ego** is in the nominative; whereas, in Ex. 1, *b*, **quam** is omitted, and the nominative **ego** has been changed to the ablative **mē**. Compare Ex. 2, *a* with Ex. 2, *b*; how has the omission of **quam** affected the accusative **lēgātōs**? Note, further, that **quam** is omitted after the comparative in Exs. 3 and 4; in what case are **lūce** (Ex. 3) and **opīniŏne** (Ex. 4)? By what Case, then, is the Comparative followed when **quam** is omitted? Frame a rule for this construction.

544. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 247; H. 417; G. 399.

545.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Hibernia** dīmīdiŏ minor [est] quam **Britannia** (6, 13, 2), *Ireland is smaller by half than Britain.*

2. [Patria] mihi vitā meā multō est cārīor (Cic. Cat. 1, 11, 27), *my country is far (by much) dearer to me than my life.*
3. Paucīs ante diēbus (1, 18, 10), *a few days before (before by a few days).*
4. Quō minus petēbat glōriam, eō magis illa sequēbatur (Sall. Cat. 54, 5), *the less he paid court to glory, the more she followed [him] (lit., by what less, by that more).*

546. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Ex. 1, that the ablative *dīmidiō* tells by how much Ireland is smaller than Britain; in other words, it expresses the *degree of difference* denoted by the comparative *minor*. Point out the words in the remaining examples which express degree of difference. In what case are they? By what case, then, is Degree of Difference denoted after Comparative expressions? Frame a rule for this construction.

547. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 250; H. 423; G. 400.

548.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dē Caesaris adventū Helvētīi certiorēs fiunt.
 2. Quid fieri velit, edocet. 3. Proelium adversum paucos ante diēbus erat factum. 4. Semprōniae cārīora omnis quam¹ pudicitia fuit.² 5. Celerius opīniōne exercitum addūcit. 6. Nēmō Rōmānōrum fuit eloquentior³ Cicerōne. 7. Multō ego vigilō ācrius ad salūtem quam tū ad perniciem rēi publicae. 8. Quārē in hostēs impetus nōn fieret, nōndum perspexerat. 9. Quantō vōs attentius ea agētis, tantō illis animus infirmior erit. 10. Festinandō plūs timōris quam periculī effecerant.

II. 1. This was at that time easily done. 2. Would that an attack on⁴ the enemy were in progress! 3. He holds all his [friends] dear; me indeed⁵ [he holds] dearer than himself.⁶ 4. These are under (in) arms the year after, those remain at home.⁷ 5. The greater the fault, the severer is the mortification. 6. There-was-in this

man no less vanity than recklessness.⁸ 7. He showed what he wished to have done.⁹ 8. He accomplished less than he had anticipated.¹⁰ 9. That is much more to be feared.

549. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Crēbri ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēni certior fiēbat. 2. In cōspectum hostium celerius opīniōne eōrum exercitum addūcit. 3. Eārum rērum ā nostris fiet nihil. 4. Belli spolia māgnifica magis quam¹ ōrātiō mea vōs hortantur. 5. Carinae aliquantō plāniōrēs sunt quam nostrārum nāvium. 6. Quō delictum mājus est, eō poena est tardior.

II. 1. These [reports] which are talked of are less [important] than is generally supposed.¹¹ 2. [Those] who had advanced a little too far for the purpose of seeking [materials for] an embankment,¹² had¹³ to be sent for. 3. The immortal gods seemed to foreshadow these things which are now taking place. 4. The safety of my fellow citizens has always been dearer to me than my own life.⁸ 5. He has not yet learned what is in progress.

¹ Rewrite this sent. omitting *quam*.

² *fuī* here follows the number of the nearer substantive *pudicitia* rather than that of the more remote *omnia*.

³ Rewrite this sent. introducing *quam*.

⁴ *in* with accusative.

⁵ *quidem*; it follows the word which it emphasizes.

⁶ Use the reflexive *sē* with *ipse*.

⁷ *at home, domi*.

⁸ Express in two ways.

⁹ cf. 548, I., sent. 2.

¹⁰ *less than his own expectation*.

¹¹ Translate: *less than opinion*.

¹² cf. 386, I., sent. 1.

¹³ cf. examples in 317.

LESSON LXXII.

DEFECTIVE VERBS: *Ōdī, Coepī, Meminī.* — VERBS OF MEMORY.

550. Learn the inflection and synopsis, with meanings, of *coepī*, *I began*; *ōdī*, *I hate*; *meminī*, *I remember*: A. & G. 143, a, b, c, note; H. 297, I., 2; G. 190, 5.

551.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Vivōrum meminī** (Cic. *Fin.* 5, 1, 3), *I keep the living in mind.*
2. **Meminī, neque unquam obliviscar noctis illius** (Cic. *Planc.* 42, 101), *I remember, nor shall I ever forget that night.*
3. **Aliī, remiscētēs veteris fāmae** (Nep. *Phoc.* 4, 1), *others, recalling his early fame.*
4. **Recordor nōn L. Brūtum sed legiōnēs nostrās** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 20, 74), *I call to mind not Lucius Brutus, but our legions.*
5. **Omnia meminērunt** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 7, 21), *they remember everything.*
6. **Num illa oblītus est** (Cic. *Ac.* 2, 33, 106), *did he forget those things?*
7. **Ea reminiscere** (Cic. *Fam.* 4, 5, 5), *recall these things.*
8. **Id saepe sum recordātus** (Cic. *Att.* 8, 12, 5), *I have often recalled it.*

552. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: By what cases may verbs of remembering and forgetting be followed (see foregoing examples)? What seems to be the regular construction with **recordor** (see Exs. 4 and 8)? What case regularly follows verbs of remembering and forgetting when the thing remembered or forgotten is expressed by a neuter adjective or pronoun (see Exs. 5–8)? What seems to be the construction after **meminī**, **oblīviscor**, and **reminiscor** when the object remembered is not expressed by a neuter adjective or pronoun (see Exs. 1–3)? Frame rules embodying these observations.

553. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 219 and Rem. (last sentence); H. 406, II., 407, note 1; G. 375, Rem. 2.

554.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Semper in civitate quibus¹ opēs nullae sunt vetera odere, nova exoptant. 2. Helvētīi proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. 3. Mementō meī. 4. Reminiscere veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī. 5. Plērīque mortālēs, sceleris oblītī, dē poenā disserunt. 6. Eās rēs reminiscī et recordārī videntur. 7. In mūrū lapidēs jacī coeptī sunt.² 8. Intellegēbat omnēs hominēs condiōnem servitūtis odisse. 9. Quam multa meminērunt augurēs! 10. Probātūrus sum vobīs dēfēnsiōnem meam sī id meminēritis, quod oblīviscī

nōn potestis. 11. Mēns mea pueritiae memoriam recordātur ultimam. 12. Cōstantiae tuae meminī.

II. 1. I entreat you to remember these things. 2. It is not becoming either³ to exercise partiality or³ to cherish hatred. 3. They began to follow and attack our men in (a) the rear. 4. A great quantity of dust began² to be seen. 5. Remember (pl.) us. 6. I cannot forget the old indignity. 7. Recall to mind the ancient valor of the Helvetians. 8. When I reflect on all the stages of your life. I do not see at what period you learned those things. 9. He favors the Helvetians, [but] hates Caesar. ✓ 10. Turn your thoughts from⁴ slaughter and conflagrations. 11. He forgets nothing but⁵ injuries. 12. He recalled the bitter experience of an earlier time. 13. I call to mind⁶ not the two Decii, not the two Scipios, — but our own legions.

555.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Eundem Achillam,⁷ cūjus suprà meminimus, omnibus opīs praefecit. 2. Atque ego, quī omnia officiō mētor, recordor amen tua cōsilia. 3. Cum aliquō dolōre flagitiōrum⁸ suōrum recordābitur. 4. Plērique mortālēs postrēma meminēre, et in hominibus impiis sceleris eōrum obliti dē poenā disserunt, sī ea paulō sevērior fuit. 5. Parum odisse malōs civēs vidētur.

II. 1. I forget for-the-moment⁹ your injuries, Clodia. 2. The mind remembers the past, sees the present, foresees the future. 3. He exhorted the Aeduans to forget disputes and disagreement. 4. They began by putting to death¹⁰ all the worst¹¹ without trial.

¹ cf. 393 and 394.

² A. & G. 143, a (second line); H. 297, 1; G. 190, 5 (end).

³ Trans.: *it is becoming neither . . . nor.*

⁴ "turn your thoughts from" = *forget.*

⁵ "nothing but" = *nothing unless.*

⁶ *recordor.*

⁷ For declension, see *Aenēās* (or *Leōnidās*): A. & G. 37; H. 50; G. 72.

⁸ Is this the *usual* construction with *recordor*?

⁹ *jam.*

¹⁰ Trans.: *They at first began to put to death.*

¹¹ "all the worst" = *each worst*; cf. Lesson LVII., foot-note 3.

LESSON LXXIII.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES (CLAUSES OF RESULT).

556.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Ita mē gessī ut omnēs cōservārēminī* (Cic. Cat. 3, 10, 25),
so conducted my administration that you were all saved.
2. *Ita repente prōcurrērunt ut spatium nōn darētur* (1, 52, 3),
they ran forward so suddenly that no time was allowed.
3. *Quis est tam lyncēus quī in tantīs tenebrīs nihil offēdat*
(Cic. Fam. 9, 2, 2), *who is so sharp-sighted as not to stumble amid
such darkness (that he would not stumble, etc.).*
4. *Quae rēs, commēātūs ut ad eum portārī possent, efficiē-
bat* (2, 5, 5), *this movement rendered it possible for supplies to be
brought to him (brought it about that supplies could, etc.).*
5. *Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna* (4, 29, 1), *on the
same night it chanced that it was full moon.*

557. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the dependent clauses in Exs. 1-3 express *consequence* or *result*. Such clauses are called *Consecutive Clauses*, or *Clauses of Result*. What mood is used in consecutive clauses? Is the consecutive clause in Ex. 1 *affirmative* or *negative*? What *particle* introduces it? Answer the same questions for the consecutive clause in Ex. 2. Is the negative particle of the consecutive clause the same as that of the *final clause* (see 528, Ex. 2)? Note that the consecutive clause in Ex. 3 is introduced by the *relative pronoun* (*quī*), and that *quī* is here equivalent in meaning to *ut is*. Frame a rule for the Mood and the Introductory Word to be used in Consecutive Clauses.

558. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 319 and a (first sentence); H. 500, I, II.; G. 554.

559. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the consecutive clause of Ex. 4 is the *direct object* of the verb (*efficiēbat*) on *which it depends*, and that the latter is a verb denoting the accom-

plishment of an effort. What class of verbs, then, do Object Clauses of Result follow? What Mood do they require? Frame a rule for Object Clauses of Result.

560. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 332; H. 501, II., 1; G. 557.

561. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the consecutive clause of Ex. 5 is the *subject* of the *impersonal verb accidit*. With what class of verbs, then, are Subject Clauses of Result found? What Mood do they require? Frame a rule for Subject Clauses of Result.

562. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 332, *a*; H. 501, I., 1; G. 558.

563.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quis potest esse tam āversus ā vērō quī neget haec omnia quae vidēmus? 2. Tantus timor exercitum occupāvit ut omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. 3. Fīēbat ut minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent. 4. Nōn tam imperītus sum rērū ut nōn sciam Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium nōn tulisse. 5. Verbōrum obscuritās facit ut nōn intellegatur rēs. 6. Fortūna vestra facit ut irae meae temperem. 7. Illae tamen omnēs dissēsiōnēs erant ējusmodī¹ quae nōn ad dēlendā, sed commūtandā rem pūblicā pertinērent. 8. Aliquot dē causīs acciderat ut Gallī bellī renovandī cōnsilium caperent. 9. Tanta rērū commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī proelium redintegrārent.

II. 1. Sabinus gave ground for so-strong-a² suspicion of his cowardice that the enemy dared to come up even³ to the rampart of the camp. 2. Nor am I so iron-hearted as not to be affected.⁴ 3. Ariovistus had assumed such arrogance that he seemed insufferable.⁵ 4. The-result-will-be⁶ that the enemy will escape danger by their swiftmess. 5. The obscurity of the subject⁷ causes the language not to be understood.⁸ 6. So stealthily did they glance at one another⁹

that they seemed to betray themselves by-their-own-
7. The Aeduians have deserved so [well] of (*ad*) the people that their towns ought not to be assaulted.

564.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. *Ējusmodi*¹ sunt tempestatēs cōsecutae uti su militēs continēri nōn possent. 2. *Nēmō* enim est tam sē annum nōn putet posse vivere. 3. *Hostēs* tantan praestitērunt ut ex jacentium corporibus pūgnārent.

II. 1. And it so happened that out of so large² a n a single ship¹¹ was missing.¹² 2. We are not persons credulity that¹³ nothing seems to us¹³ true. 3. And sc twelve ships had been lost,¹⁴ he rendered it possible for to be made¹⁵ well enough with the rest.

¹ of such a kind, such: A. & G. 215, a; H. 396, V., n. 1; G. 364.

² tantus.

³ jam.

⁴ Translate: that I am not affected.

⁵ Translate: did not seem sufferable.

⁶ cf. 503, I., sent. 3.

⁷ Use *rēs* in plural.

⁸ Translate: causes that the language is not understood.

⁹ Translate: among the

¹⁰ Use *ipse* in app. wit

¹¹ "not a single ship" =

¹² "was missing" = *wa*

¹³ "persons of such inc to us" = those to whom.

¹⁴ Ablative absolute.

¹⁵ Translate: caused the sailed; use *nāvigō* imper passive.

LESSON LXXIV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CLAUSES INTRODUCED
Quōminus AND *Quīn*.

565.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Tū infirmitās valētūdinis* tuae tenuit quō minū
(Cic. Fam. 7, 1, 1), the feebleness of your health kept
coming (so that thereby [quō = ut eō] you came
2. *Neque illis superbia obstābat* quō minus aliēna
imitārentur (Sall. Cat. 51, 37), neither did pride p
from imitating foreign institutions.

566. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the dependent clauses in the foregoing examples are introduced by **quō minus**. What mood do they take (see **venīrēs**, Ex. 1, and **imitārentur**, Ex. 2)? Note also that the verbs on which these clauses depend (**venit**, Ex. 1, and **obstābat**, Ex. 2) are verbs of *hindering*. Frame a rule for the Mood to be used in clauses like the foregoing.

567. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 319, c; H. II., 1; G. 549.

568. EXAMPLES.

Nēmō est tam fortis quin rēi novitāte perturbētur (6, 39, 3),
no one is so brave as not to be disconcerted by the unexpectedness of the situation.

Quis est quin contendat (Sall. Jug. 4, 7), *who is there who does not contend?*

Retinērī nōn potuerant quin tēla conicerent (1, 47, 2), *it had not been possible to restrain them from throwing darts* (lit., they had not been able to be restrained, etc.).

Nōn dubitābat quin summissiōrēs essent futūrae (8, 31, 2),
he had no doubt that they would be more submissive.

Nūllum tempus intermiserunt quin lēgātōs mitterent (5, 55, 1), *they let no occasion pass without sending ambassadors.*

Facere nōn possum quin cottidīe ad tē mittam (Cic. Att. 12, 27, 2), *I cannot help writing to you every day.*

569. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the consecutive clauses in the foregoing examples are introduced by **quin**, and that the leading clause in each example contains a *negative expression*. Note, further, that the *negative expression* of the leading clause is: a *general negative* (**nēmō**) in Ex. 1; an *interrogative implying a negative* in Ex. 2 (**quis est = nēmō est**); a *negative expression of hindering* (**retinērī nōn potuerant**) in Ex. 3; a *negative expression of doubting* (**nōn dubitābat**) in Ex. 4; and a *negative expression of omitting or refraining* (**nūllum . . . intermiserunt** and **facere nōn possum**) in Exs. 5 and 6. Frame a rule, or rules, for the use of **quin** with the Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses.

570. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 319, d; II. 504; G. 550, 551.

571.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nēmō est quīn ubivīs quam ibī ubī est esse mālī.
 2. Sed custōdiūs quō¹ id sine periculō minus¹ facerē^{us} impediēbāmur. 3. Nōn est dubium quīn tōtīus Gallia^e plūrimū Helvētī possint. 4. Nōn possunt milītēs cōtinērī quīn in urbem irrumpant urbemque dēleant. 5. Neque abest suspiciō quīn ipse sibi mortē cōsciveri.
 6. Quis est quīn cernat quanta vīs sit in sēnsibus. 7. Prohibērī nōn possumus quō minus cottīdiē aquam petāmus. 8. Nōn dubitō quīn probātūrus sim vōbīs dēfēnsiōnem meam. 9. Ego nihil praetermisī quīn Pompējum ā Caesaris conjūctiōne āvocārem. 10. Nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent.

II. 1. The enemy endeavored to hinder our men from fleeing for refuge to their camp. 2. We have not³ been able to deter even³ the Suessiones from conspiring with the Belgians. 3. We do not doubt that he will inflict the severest punishment on all the hostages. 4. Nothing is so difficult that it cannot be found out by searching. 5. There is no doubt⁴ that the Romans will deprive the Aeduans of freedom.³ 6. Nor did he refuse to submit to the penalty of the law. 7. I cannot help⁶ declaring to you my opinion. 8. Who then can doubt⁷ that [true] wealth consists in virtue?

572.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Quis est omnium quīn divitiis et sūmptibus, nōn probitāte neque industriā cum mājōribus suis contendat? 2. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit quīn ad eōs proficiscerētur. 3. Itaque dēterritus nōn est quō minus, primā acīē prō vāllō instructā, reliqua pars exercitūs opus faceret.

II. 1. Rest assured⁸ that the Romans will wrest liberty from the Aeduans. 2. Parmenio wished to deter him from drinking

the drug. 3. Nor do we refuse to remain⁹ forever under your sway. 4. No one might¹⁰ withdraw from the line of march without being cut off by Caesar's cavalry.

¹ *quō* may be separated from *minus* by the intervention of other words.

² See foot-note 1, Lesson LXVIII.

³ See Lesson LXVIII., foot-note 8.

⁴ cf. 571, I., sent. 3.

⁵ Translate: *wrest freedom from* (lit., to) *the Aeduians* (dat.).

⁶ See 568, Ex. 6.

⁷ What mood? See 493, Ex. 3.

⁸ Translate: *be unwilling to doubt*.

⁹ "remain" = *be*.

¹⁰ *Nūlli* *licēbat*.



LESSON LXXV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.

573.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent** (4, 34, 4), *there ensued storms which (of) such severity that they kept our men in camp*.
2. **Hōc quī postulāret reperiēbātur nēmō** (Caes. B. C. 3, 20, 4), *no one was found who (so unreasonable that he) demanded this*.
3. **Fuēre quī crēderent** (Sal. Cat. 17, 7), *there were some who believed*.
4. **Rem idōneam dē quā quaerātur, et hominēs dīgnōs quibuscum disserātur putant** (Cic. Ac. 2, 6, 18), *they consider the subject suitable to be inquired into, and the men worthy of being argued with*.

574. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the relative clauses of result in the foregoing examples express some *characteristic* of the antecedent. Thus the relative clause **quae ... continērent** (Ex. 1) describes the severity of the storms by saying that they kept the men in camp. Note, further, that the relative clause of characteristic follows a *general negative* (**nēmō**) in Ex. 2, an *indefinite* (omitted) *antecedent* in Ex. 3, an antecedent limited by **idōneam** in Ex. 4, and an antecedent limited by **dīgnōs** in Ex. 4. *In what mood is the verb of a Relative Clause of Characteristic?*

583. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 221, b; H. 409, III.; G. 376.

584.

EXAMPLES.

1. Quid illius interest ubi sis (Cic. Att. 10, 4, 10), *what matters it to him where you are?*
2. Docet quantō opere communis salutis intersit manūs hostium distineri (2, 5, 2), *he shows how important it is for the general safety that the forces of the enemy be kept apart.*
3. Meā magni interest tē ut videam (Cic. Att. 11, 22, 2), *it is of great importance to me to see you.*
4. Tuā maximē interest tē valēre (Cic. Fam. 16, 4, 4), *it is of the greatest importance to you that you keep your health.*

585. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that with the *personal interest* the person or thing affected is expressed by the *genitive* in Exs. 1 and 2 (see *illius*, Ex. 1, and *salutis*, Ex. 2). Note, however, that in Exs. 3 and 4 the person interested is expressed *not* by the genitive of the personal pronoun, as might have been expected, but by the *ablative feminine* of the *possessive* (see *meā*, Ex. 3, and *tuā*, Ex. 4). Frame a rule for the construction to be used with the Impersonal *interest*, to express the Person or Thing Affected.

586. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 222, a; H. 408, I., 1, 2; G. 381 (both paragraphs).

587.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mē meōrum cōsiliōrum nunquam paenitēbit.
 2. Misereor vestri. 3. Miseret tē aliōrum, tuī tē nec miseret nec pudet.¹ 4. Sunt hominēs quōs infāmiae suae neque pudeat neque tadeat. 5. Magni² interest Cicerōnis, vel meā potius, vel meherecule utriusque. 6. Quis est hodiē cūjus intersit istam lēgem manēre? 7. Magni² interest tuā et meā. 8. Allobrogēs Umbrēnum ōrābant ut suī miserēretur. 9. Miserantur commūnem Galliae fortunam. 10. De summīs saepe rēbus cōsilia incunt, quōrum eōs in vestigiō

LESSON LXXVI.

CONSTRUCTIONS USED WITH VERBS OF FEELING.

578.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Miserēmini sociōrum** (Cic. Verr. 2, 1, 28, 72), *pity [our] allies.*
2. **Miserescite régis** (Verg. Aen. 8, 573), *take pity on the king.*
3. **Commune periculum miserābantur** (1, 39, 4), *they bewailed the common danger.*

579. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **miserēmini** (Ex. 1) and **miserescite** (Ex. 2) are *intransitive*, and mean 'feel pity'; what *case* follows them? Note, on the other hand, that **miserābantur** is *transitive* and means 'express pity for,' 'lament,' 'bewail'; what *case* follows it? Frame a rule for the construction to be used with these verbs?

580. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 221, a; H. 406, I.; G. 376 (first line).

581.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Tuī mē miseret, meī piget** (Enn. ap. Cic. Div. 1, 31, 66), *I pity thee, I loathe myself* (it pities me of thee, it loathes me of myself).
2. **Taedet omnīnō eōs vītae** (Cic. Att. 5, 16, 2), *they are utterly weary of life* (it wearies them of life).
3. **Mē meōrum factōrum nunquam paenitēbit** (Cic. Cat. 4, 10, 20), *I shall never regret my acts* (it will never repent me of my acts).
4. **Pudet mē nōn tuī quidem, sed Chrysippī** (Cic. Div. 2, 15, 35), *I am not ashamed of you indeed, but of Chrysippus.*

582. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **miseret** (Ex. 1), **piget** (Ex. 1), **taedet** (Ex. 2), **paenitēbit** (Ex. 3), and **puDET** (Ex. 4) are *impersonal verbs of feeling or emotion*. By what *case* is the *person experiencing the feeling* expressed? (See **mē**, Ex. 1, **eōs**, Ex. 2, **mē**, Ex. 3, **mē**, Ex. 4.) By what *case* is the *object exciting the feeling* expressed? (See **tuī** and **meī**, Ex. 1, **vītae**, Ex. 2, **factōrum**, Ex. 3, **tuī** and **Chrysippī**, Ex. 4.) Frame a rule for the constructions to be used with the foregoing *Impersonals*.

LESSON LXXVII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: PRESENT AND PAST
SUPPOSITIONS.

PRESENT AND PAST SUPPOSITIONS, PROTASIS INDETERMINATE.

589.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sī** **mē cōnsulis, suādeō** (Cic. Cat. 1, 5, 13), *if you ask my advice, I recommend [it].*
2. **Sī** **quisquam fuit unquam remōtus ab inānī laude, ego profectō is sum** (Cic. Fam. 15, 4, 13), *if there ever was any one indifferent to empty applause, I assuredly am the man.*
3. **Sīn** **autem servīre meae glōriae māvīs, ēgredere** (Cic. Cat. 1, 9, 23), *if, however, you prefer to minister to my glory, depart -*
4. **Sī** **stāre nōn possunt, corruant** (Cic. Cat. 2, 10, 21), *if they cannot stand, let them fall.*

590. EXPLANATION OF TERMS: Sentences like the foregoing containing a clause introduced by **sī**, *if*, or one of its compounds (see **sīn**, Ex. 3), are called *Conditional Sentences*. The clause expressing the *condition* (**sī** . . . **cōnsulis**, Ex. 1, **sī** . . . **laude**, Ex. 2, **sīn** . . . **māvīs**, Ex. 3, **sī** . . . **possunt**, Ex. 4) is called the *Protasis*; the clause expressing the *conclusion* (**suādeō**, Ex. 1, **ego** . . . **sum**, Ex. 2, **ēgredere**, Ex. 3, **corruant**, Ex. 4) is called the *Apodosis*.

591. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *Protasis* in the foregoing examples *simply states* a supposed case, without implying either that it is *true* or that it is *false*. Thus, **sī mē cōnsulis**, *if you ask my advice* (Ex. 1), does not imply that the person addressed either *does* or *does not* ask the advice of the speaker. Note, further, that the *Protasis* expresses a *present* supposition in Exs. 1, 3, and 4; and a *past* supposition in Ex. 2. In what *mood* is the verb of the *Protasis* in each of these examples (see **cōnsulis**, Ex. 1; **fuit**, Ex. 2; **māvīs**, Ex. 3; **possunt**, Ex. 4)? Is there a like uniformity as to mood in the verbs of the *Apodosis* (see **suādeō**, Ex. 1; **sum**, Ex. 2; **ēgredere**, Ex. 3; **corruant**, Ex. 4)? *Frame a rule for the use of Moods in Conditional Sentences like the foregoing.*

592. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 306; H. 508 and 4; G. 597.

PRESENT AND PAST SUPPOSITIONS, PROTASIS FALSE.

593.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Servī meī sī mē metuerent, domum meam relinquendam putārem** (Cic. Cat. 1, 7, 17), *if my slaves feared me, I should think that I ought to leave house and home.*
2. **[Vitam] sī ēripuisset, multās animī atque corporis poenās adēmisset** (Cic. Cat. 4, 4, 8), *if he had taken away life, he would have relieved [them] of many torments of mind and body.*
3. **Magis id dīcerēs, sī adfuissēs** (Cic. Lael. 7, 25), *you would say so all the more, if you had been there.*
4. **Si interfectus esset, quid dīcerent** (Cic. Cat. 2, 7, 15), *what would they say, if he had been put to death?*

594. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the Protasis in each of the foregoing examples states the supposed case in such a way as to imply its *falsity*. Thus, **servī meī sī mē metuerent**, *if my slaves feared me* (Ex. 1), implies that the speaker's slaves do not fear him; and **sī . . . adfuissēs**, *if you had been there* (Ex. 3), implies that the person addressed *was not* there.

Note, further, that the Protasis expresses a *present* supposition in Ex. 1, and a *past* supposition in Exs. 2, 3, and 4; also, that the verb of the Apodosis refers to *present* time in Exs. 1, 3, and 4, and to *past* time in Ex. 2.

What *mood* is used in both Protasis and Apodosis in these examples? What *tense* is used for *present* time? for *past* time? Frame a rule for the use of Mood and Tense in Conditional Sentences like the foregoing.

595. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 308; H. 510 and n. 1; G. 599.

596.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. **Sī iterum experīri volunt, ego iterum parātus sum dēcertāre.** 2. **Sī Catilīna in urbe remānsisset, nunquam nōs rem pūblicam līberāssēmus.** 3. **Parcite dīgnitātī Lentulī sī**

ipse firmæ suse unquam pepercit. 4. Sī quid mihi ā Cæsare quod esset, ego ad eum vēnissem.) 5. Id ego sī verbō adsequi possem, istōs ipsōs ēicerem. 6. Sī et in urbe et in cālelem mente permanent, ea quæ merentur expectent. 7. Mihi si hæc conditiō cōsulātus data est, feram nōn solum fortiter vērum etiam libenter. 8. Sī in hunc animadvērissem, crudeliter fecissem.

II. 1. If they wish to enjoy peace, it is unfair [for them] to refuse [to pay]¹ the tribute. 2. Bring back the men you wish to be free from suspicion in-my-eyes.² 3. If there were room for error, I should readily permit [it]. 4. If he had been conscious³ of [having done] any wrong, it would not have been difficult [for him] to be on his guard.) 5. Pardon the young⁴ Cethegus⁴ if he has not a second time made war on his country. 6. Still, if it is your pleasure, let it be voted. 7. Nor would you, if you were an Athenian, ever have been illustrious. 8. Would⁵ he,⁶ then, if he had lived to be a hundred years⁷ old, regret⁸ his old age?

597.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Huic facinori si paucos putatis adfinēs esse, vehementer erratis. 2. Si quid ille mē vult, illum ad mē venire oportet. 3. Si hoc idem huic adulēscēnti optimō P. Sēstiō dixissem, jam mihi senātus vim et manūs intulisset. 4. Si id culpā senectūtis accideret, eadem mihi ūsū venirent.

II. 1. If you cannot die contentedly, do you hesitate to consign your life to flight and solitude? 2. If your parents hated you, you would, as I think, withdraw to some place out of their sight.⁸ 3. If Catiline had come off conqueror, doubtless great bloodshed and disaster would have overwhelmed the country.

¹ recūsare dē.² mihi.³ Translate: conscious to himself.
Translate: the youth of Cethegus.⁴ What inter. particle? cf. 417, Ex. 4.⁵ cf. 581, Ex. 3.⁶ had lived to the hundredth year.⁷ ab eōrum oculis.

LESSON LXXVIII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: FUTURE SUPPOSITIONS.

598.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Nunquam lābēre sī tē audiēs** (Cic. Fam. 2, 7, 1), *you will never err if you (shall) follow your own convictions (hear yourself).*
2. **Sī iste ūnus tollētur, periculum residēbit** (Cic. Cat. 1, 13, 31), *if he alone (shall) be removed, the danger will remain.*
3. **Vix feram sermōnēs hominum sī id fēceris** (Cic. Cat. 1, 9, 23), *it will be hard for me to endure men's criticisms if you do (shall have done) this.*

599. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the Protasis in each of the foregoing examples states a supposed *future* case with *vividness*, though without implying either that 'it will or that it will not be fulfilled. What *mood* and what *tenses* are used in both Protasis and Apodosis in this form of conditional sentence? Note that, in Ex. 3, the action expressed by the verb of the Protasis (*fēceris*) is represented as *completed* at the time denoted by the verb of the Apodosis (*feram*); what *tense* is used to express this completeness? Note, further, that the verbs of the Protasis in the foregoing examples are rendered by the *present* tense in the English translation; in such cases, which language is the more exact, the Latin or the English? Frame a rule for the use of Mood and Tenses in Conditional Sentences like the foregoing.

600. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 307 (to the semicolon), *a, c* (omit what follows the comma in the third line); H. 508 and 2; G. 597.

601.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sī quis deus mihi largiātur ut repuerāscam, valdē recūsem** (Cic. Cat. Maj. 23, 83), *if some god should freely grant me the privilege of becoming a child again, I should stoutly refuse it.*

2. **Ego sī Scīpiōnis dēsīderiō mē movērī negem, mentiar** (Cic. Lael. 3, 10), *if I should say that I am not affected with grief at the loss of Scipio, I should speak falsely.*
3. **Sī gladium quis apud tē sānā mente dēposuerit, repetat insāniēns, reddere peccātum sit** (Cic. Off. 3, 25, 94), *if a man should deposit (should have deposited) with you a sword [when] in his right mind, and should ask it back again [when] insane, it would be wrong to restore it.*

602. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the Protasis in the foregoing examples states the supposed future case with *less vividness* than in the examples of **598**, and thereby represents the fulfillment of the supposed case as somewhat less probable. What *mood* and what *tenses* are used in both Protasis and Apodosis in this form of conditional sentence? Note that, in Ex. 3, the action expressed by the verb of the first Protasis (**dēposuerit**) is represented as *completed* at the time denoted by the verb of the Apodosis (**sit**); what *tense* is used to express this completeness? Frame a rule for the use of Mood and Tenses in Conditional Sentences like the foregoing.

603. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 307, *b, c*; H. 509 and n. 1; G. 598.

604.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Nisi dēcēdēs, ego tē prō hoste habēbō. 2. Sī discēsseris, māgnō ego tē praemiō remūnērābor. 3. Haec sī tēcum patria loquātur, nōnne impetrāre dēbeat? 4. Sī quis deus tē interroget, quid respondeās? 5. Sī poterimus, castellum expūgnābimus; sī minus potuerimus, agrōs Rēmōrum populābimur. 6. Sī vim facere cōnābiminī, prohibēbō. 7. Sī tē interfēcērō, multīs ego nōbilibus grātum faciam.

II. 1. If we can,¹ we shall destroy the bridge; if we cannot,¹ we shall cut off the Romans from supplies. 2. I could not go away if I should wish [to]. 3. If you give satisfaction to the Aeduans for (dē) the injuries [you have done

them], I shall make peace with you. 4. Ought not² the country to obtain her request, even if she should not be able to apply force? ✓ 5. If this (pl.) is reported³ to Ariovistus, he will inflict punishment on (dē) the hostages. 6. If you do³ this, there will be lasting friendship between you and the Roman people.⁴

605.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Etiam si hominum studia deficiant, di⁵ ipsi immortales cogant tanta vitia superari. 2. Si se ejecerit, secumque suos eduxerit, exstinguetur atque delebitur stirps ac semen malorum omnium. 3. Si quis pater familias,⁶ liberis suis a servo interfectis, supplicium de servo non sumpserit, utrum⁷ is clemens an crudelissimus esse videatur? 4. Nisi decedes atque exercitum deduces ex his regionibus, ego te non pro amico sed hoste habebō. 5. Pietate adversus deos sublata,⁸ fides etiam et justitia tollatur.

II. 1. If they should remain in Rome,⁹ they would be rescued by a hired mob. 2. If this takes place it will be [attended] with great danger to the province.¹⁰ 3. If any [punishment] of undue severity is inflicted upon him¹¹ by Caesar, no one will suppose that it was not done at¹² my desire.

¹ cf. sent. 5, preceding exercise.

² cf. 604, sent. 3.

³ cf. sent. 2, preceding exercise.

⁴ Translate: *to the Roman people with you.*

⁵ See 373, foot-note 3.

⁶ A. & G. 36, b; H. 49, 1; G. 27, Rem. 1.

⁷ Omit in translation.

⁸ Trans. by a conditional clause. Expand the abl. abs. into the ordinary form of protasis.

⁹ cf. Lesson XXVII., foot-note 11.

¹⁰ Use the genitive.

¹¹ Translate: *if anything too-severe shall have happened to him from Caesar.*

¹² Use ablative of cause.

LESSON LXXIX.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES. — CLAUSES OF PROVISIO.

606.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quamquam** premēbantur, tamen omnia fortissimō sustinēbant animō (8, 42, 3), *although they were hard pressed, still they endured everything with the bravest spirit.*
2. **Senectūs**, quamvis nōn sit gravis, tamen aufert viriditatem (Cic. Lael. 3, 11), *old age, though it be not burdensome, yet takes away one's vigor.*
3. **Etsi** mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen contendit (4, 20, 1), *although the winters set in early, he hastened notwithstanding.*
4. **Nōne** impetrāre dēbeat, etiamsi vim adhibere nōn possit (Cic. Cat. 1, 8, 19), *ought she not to obtain her request, even though she should not be able to employ force?*

607. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the clauses in the foregoing examples introduced by **quamquam** (Ex. 1), **quamvis** (Ex. 2), **etsi** (Ex. 3), and **etiamsi** (Ex. 4) express something granted or *conceded*. For this reason they are called *Concessive Clauses*. Note that the Concessive Clause introduced by **quamquam** (Ex. 1), unlike that introduced by **quamvis** (Ex. 2), concedes an *admitted fact*, and therefore takes the *indicative mood* (see **premēbantur**). What mood does the Concessive Clause introduced by **quamvis** take (see **sit**, Ex. 2)? Note that **etsi** (Ex. 3) and **etiamsi** (Ex. 4) are compounds of **si**, and that, like **si**, they take the *indicative or subjunctive* as already explained (Lessons LXXVII.–VIII.). Frame rules for the Mood of the verb in Concessive Clauses.

608. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 313, *a, c, e*; H. 515, I., II., III.; G. 605, 1–3, 606, 607, 608.

609.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Dum** locus pūgnandī darētur, singulās binīs nāvibus obiciēbant (Caes. B. C. 1, 58, 4), *provided an opportunity of fighting presented itself, they matched one ship against two.*

2. **Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat industria** (Cic. Cat. Maj. 7, 22), *the old retain their mental powers (powers remain to the old), if only industry hold out.*
3. **Magnō mē metū liberābis, dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus intersit** (Cic. Cat. 1, 5, 10), *you will free me from great fear, if only there be a wall between you and me.*

610. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the clauses in the foregoing examples introduced by **dum** (Ex. 1), **modo** (Ex. 2), and **dum modo** (Ex. 3) express a *proviso* or *condition*; what *mood* do they take (see **darētur**, Ex. 1, **permaneat**, Ex. 2, and **intersit**, Ex. 3)? Frame a rule for the Mood to be used in clauses like the foregoing.

611. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 314; H. 513, I.; G. 575.

612.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Sed est tantū¹ dum modo ista rēi pūblicae periculīs sējungātūr calamitās. 2. Quamquam crēbrō audiēbat Labiēnum ab inimicīs suis sollicitārī, tamen nōn crēdidit. 3. Etiamsī Catilīna perierit, in rē pūblicā sēminārium Catilīnārū erit. 4. Nōn igitur potestās est cōservandae rēi pūblicae, quamvīs ea premātūr periculīs. 5. Neque, dum sibī rēgnum parāret, quicquam pēnsī habēbat.² 6. Illa, quamquam ferenda nōn fuērunt, tamen tulī. 7. Hominēs, quamvīs in turbidīs rēbus sint, tamen interdum animīs relaxantur.³

II. 1. Even though he receives the injury, he yet seems to commit [it]. 2. You at any rate assented to⁴ my departure, provided I should be at Rome⁵ on the first⁶ of January. 3. The Romans, although they were weary of marching⁷ and fighting,⁷ yet eagerly⁸ advanced to meet [him]. 4. And yet⁹ that flattery, pernicious though¹⁰ it be, can nevertheless injure no one but¹¹ him who is pleased by it. 5. He spared neither expense nor his own honor, if only he might make *them faithful to himself*.

613.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Sed quamquam haec talia sunt, tamen obviam ire inimicis meis animus mē subigit. 2. Ista vērītās etiāmsī jūcunda¹² nōn est, mihī tamen grāta¹² est. 3. Nihil tam difficile est quod nōn cupidissimē factūrī sīmus, dum ea rēs civitātem aere aliēnō liberet. 4. Quāmvīs nōn fueris suāsor et impulsor profectiōnis meae, approbātor certē fuisti.

II. 1. Life is short, though it extend beyond a thousand years. 2. But Sulla, although he held the same opinion,¹³ nevertheless protected the Moor from injury. 3. They will shrink from no peril, provided the province be restored to Caesar through their efforts.¹⁴

¹ est tantī, it is worth such a price:
A. & G. 252, a; H. 404, n. 1; G. 379.

² Neque quicquam pēnsī habēbat, nor did he have any scruple.

³ animīs relaxantur, unbend.

⁴ you were approver of.

⁵ cf. foot-note 11, Lesson XXVII.

⁶ "first" = Kalends.

⁷ Ablative.

⁸ intentus (adj.) in agreement with subject.

⁹ A. & G. 313, f; H. 515, n. 2; G. 607, Rem. 2.

¹⁰ cf. 606, Ex. 2.

¹¹ "no one but" = no one unless.

¹² jūcundus, agreeable, because to one's taste; grātus, welcome, because valuable in itself.

¹³ to hold the same opinion, eadem exīstimāre.

¹⁴ Translate: through themselves.

LESSON LXXX.

SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS: GENITIVE WITH VERBS
OF CONDEMNING, ETC. — Egeō AND Indigeō.
DATIVE WITH Ēripiō, ETC.

614.

EXAMPLES.

1. Prīncipēs cīvītātis īnsimulātī [sunt] prōditiōnis (7, 38, 2),
the foremost men in the state have been charged with treachery.
2. Prōditiōnis damnātus est (Nep. Th. 8, 2), he was condemned
for treason.

615. **Videō tē absolūtum esse improbitātis** (Cic. *Ferr.* 2, 1, 28, 72),
I see that you were acquitted of wrong doing.

615. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **insimulātī sunt** (Ex. 1), **damnātus est** (Ex. 2), and **absolūtum esse** (Ex. 3) are verbs of *accusing, condemning, and acquitting* respectively. By what case is the charge expressed with these verbs (see **prōditiōnis**, Ex. 1, **prōditiōnis**, Ex. 2, **improbitātis**, Ex. 3)? Frame a rule for the construction to be used with these and similar verbs.

- 616. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 220; H. 409, I. and n. 2; G. 377.

617.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Nīl attigit nisi arma, quōrum indigēbat** (Nep. *Thr.* 2, 6), *he touched nothing but arms, and of these he stood in need.*
2. **[Eōs], quibus rēbus indiguērunt, adjūvit** (Nep. *Att.* 9, 3), *he aided them with those things of which they stood in need.*
3. **Neque cōsiliī neque audāciae eguēre** (Sall. *Cat.* 51, 37), *they lacked neither caution nor boldness.*
4. **Alterum alterius auxiliō eget** (Sall. *Cat.* 1, 7), *each (of these two things) needs the aid of the other.*

618. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: It has already been shown that verbs denoting *want* regularly take the *ablative* (Lesson LXVI). With what cases is **indigēō** construed in the foregoing examples (see **quōrum**, Ex. 1, and **rēbus**, Ex. 2)? What cases may be used with **eguēō** (see **cōsiliī** and **audāciae**, Ex. 3, and **auxiliō**, Ex. 4)? Frame a special rule for these two verbs.

- 619. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 223; H. 410, V., 1; G. 389, Rem. 2.

620.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Id mihi tū abstulisti** (Cic. *Div. in Caecil.* 5, 19), *you have robbed me of that (have taken that away to my hurt).*
2. **Haec illi dētrahenda auxilia existimābat** (6, 5, 5), *he thought that these allies ought to be detached from him (withdrawn to his injury).*

3. *Mihī timōrem ēripe* (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 7, 18), *free me from fear* (take away fear as a favor to me).

621. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: It has already been shown that verbs of *separation* usually take the *ablative* (Lesson LXVI.). Note, however, that, in the foregoing examples, *abstulistī* (Ex. 1), *dētrahenda* (Ex. 2), and *ēripe* (Ex. 3) are construed with the *dative* (see: *mihī*, Ex. 1, *illī*, Ex. 2, and *mihī*, Ex. 3). Note, further, that the dative in these examples designates the *person*, and that the action expressed by the verb of separation is viewed as something done *to* or *for* the person affected. Frame a rule for this use of the Dative.

622. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 229; H. 386, 2; G. 346 (end).

623.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nōnnūllōs ambitūs Pompējā lēge damnātōs in integrum restituit. 2. Tuāsne injūriās persequar ipse auxili egēns? 3. Populī Rōmānī beneficium mihī per contumēliam ab inimicīs extorquētur. 4. Sī ille nōn fuisset,¹ Agēsilāus Asiā rēgī ēripuisset. 5. Accūsātus capitis absolvitur, multātur tamen pecūniā. 6. Sī quis opis ējus indigēbat, habēbat quod statim daret.

II. 1. Unless you return,² we shall condemn you to death. 2. No one of (ex) the common people lacked aid against [an enemy] more powerful [than himself]. 3. You have been deprived of life before your time.³ 4. He seized a shield from a⁴ soldier in the rear.⁵ 5. And, by Hercules, Sulla, before I knew you,⁶ I needed no one.⁷ 6. What [punishment] is too severe for⁸ men convicted of so heinous a crime?

624.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Sīn autem vitā mihī fors adēmerit, hī omnia tibi prō mē persolvent. 2. Summae iniquitātis condemnārī dēbeō nisi vestram vitā meā salūte habeō cārīōrem. 3. Ptolomaeum aliēnārū opum indigentem recēperat. 4. Multī praetereā capitis damnātī *exsulēsque convēnerant*.

- II. 1. All are at liberty⁹ to lay down their arms¹⁰ without risk of injury except [those] condemned⁹ for capital offences.
2. This man's army should have been taken from him.¹¹ 3. This town lacked nothing [that was] serviceable.¹²

¹ *If it had not been for him.*

² cf. 598, Exs. 1 and 2.

³ Translate: *Life has been taken away from you before your time* (*immātūrus*).

⁴ Use the proper form of *ūnus*.

⁵ *ab novissimis*.

⁶ Translate: *before you known.*

⁷ In the genitive and ablative, *nūllus* (not *nēmō*) must be used for *no one*.

⁸ Use *in* with accusative.

⁹ Translate: *it is permitted to all except to [those] condemned.*

¹⁰ Translate: *to withdraw from arms.*

¹¹ Translate: *From this man [his] army was to be taken* (pass. periph.).

¹² Translate: *no serviceable thing.*



LESSON LXXXI.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES: *Postquam*, *Ubi*, *Ut*, *Simul Atque*; *Cum* (Temporal).

625.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Postquam cōpiās venīre vīdit, flūmen exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit* (2, 5, 4), *when he saw that the forces were advancing, he hastened to convey his army across the river.*
2. *Ubi sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida incendunt* (1, 5, 2), *when they thought that they were ready, they burnt the towns.*
3. *Sed Pompējus, ut equitātum suū pulsum vīdit, sē in castra equō contulit* (Caes. B. C. 3, 94, 5), *but Pompey, when he had seen his cavalry routed, spurred into camp.*
4. *Simul atque signa nostra vīderunt, portās aperuerunt* (Caes. B. C. 1, 18, 2), *as soon as they beheld our standards, they opened their gates.*

626. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *temporal clauses* in the foregoing examples refer to a *definite point of past time*, and that they are introduced by *postquam* (Ex. 1), *ubi* (Ex. 2), *ut* (Ex. 3), and *simul atque* (Ex. 4), respectively. In what mood and tense are the verbs of these temporal clauses (see: *vīdit*, Ex. 1, *arbitrātī sunt*, Ex. 2, *vīdit*, Ex. 3, and *vīderunt*, Ex. 4)? Note, further, that the verb of the temporal clause may be trans-

lated by the *pluperfect* (see *had seen*, Ex. 3). Frame a rule for the Mood and Tense of the Verb in Temporal Clauses like the foregoing.

627.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Cum civitās armīs jūis suum exsequi cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est** (1, 4, 3), *when the state undertook to maintain its authority by force of arms, Orgetorix died.*
2. **Haec cum flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prēndit** (1, 20, 5), *as he in tears was urging these requests on Caesar, Caesar grasped his hand.*
3. **Diū cum esset pūgnātum, castrīs nostrī potītī sunt** (1, 26, 4), *after a long struggle (when the battle had been fought a long time), our men got possession of the camp.*
4. **Cum trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivīs . . .** (2, 16, 1), *after marching three days, he learned from prisoners . . .*

628. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *temporal clauses* in the foregoing examples, like those of **625**, refer to *past time*, but that they are introduced by **cum**. Note, further, that in the present examples the attention of the writer is fixed on the *main action*, and that the temporal clause merely marks in an *incidental* way the time of its occurrence. What *mood* and what *tenses* are used in the foregoing temporal clauses (see **cōnārētur**, Ex. 1, **peteret**, Ex. 2, **esset pūgnātum**, Ex. 3, and **fēcisset**, Ex. 4)? Which of these tenses denotes the *same time* as the leading verb? which *time prior*? Frame a rule for the Mood and Tense to be used with **cum** in Temporal Clauses of Narration.

629. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION of Rules framed under **626** and **628**: A. & G. 323, 324, 325; H. 518, n. 1, 521, II., 2; G. 563, 586.

630.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat. 2. Ubī lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat¹ sē posse iter ullī per prōvinciam dare. 3. Quō cum Catilīna venisset, quis eum senātor appellāvit? 4. Caesar, postquam in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsire cō-

stituit. 5. Cum haesitāret, cum tenērētur, quaesivī quid² dubitāret proficisci. 6. Quō ut ventum est, Alexandrinī trepidantēs in omnēs partēs castrōrum discurrere coepērunt. 7. Quō cum vēnisset,³ cōgnōscit¹ missum in Hispāniam ā Pompējō Vibullium Rūfum. 8. Simul atque oppidānī in spem auxiliī vērunt, clāmōre sublātō, arma capere, portās claudere, mūrū complēre coepērunt.

II. 1. When (ubī) the Helvetians had been informed⁴ of his arrival, they sent ambassadors to him. 2. Having noted⁵ these [facts], he called an assembly⁶ [and] severely upbraided them. 3. Caesar on perceiving⁷ this withdrew his forces to the nearest hill. 4. When (cum) these [ships] were drawing near to Britain, and were in sight⁸ from the camp, a storm suddenly arose. 5. As soon as they had recovered⁴ from flight, they sent envoys for (dē) peace. 6. Having said⁵ these things, he swore that he would not return to camp except (nisi) [as] victor. 7. On returning⁹ thence, he followed the camp of Gajus Claudius Nero.

631.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Ubī sē diūtius dūci intellēxit, convocātis eōrum principibus, graviter eōs accūsāt.¹ 2. Cum advesperāsceret, occultē ad pontem Mulvium pervēnērunt. 3. Quod postquam barbari fieri animadvertērunt, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. 4. Caesarī cum id nūtiātum esset,³ mātūrāt¹ ab urbe proficisci.

II. 1. When he inquired what communities were in arms, he learned as follows. 2. When Caesar arrived there (eō), he demanded hostages, arms, [and] slaves. 3. On his departure for Italy, Caesar dispatched Servius Galba with the twelfth legion to (in) the Nantuates. 4. In this community two were contending with each other¹⁰ for (dē) supremacy; of whom one,¹¹ as soon as intelligence-was-received¹² of Caesar's arrival, came to him.

¹ See refs. Lesson LXIX., foot-note 3.

² why (adv. acc.).

³ See refs. Lesson LXIX., foot-note 5.

⁴ For tense, cf. 625, Ex. 3.

⁵ Use cum with temporal clause.

⁶ Ablative absolute.

⁷ Use postquam.

⁸ "were in sight" = were seen.

⁹ Use ut with temporal clause.

¹⁰ Translate: between themselves.

¹¹ alter.

¹² "

ad imper

LESSON LXXXII.

Cum WITH THE INDICATIVE IN TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

632.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Aedui** (6, 12, 1), *at the time when Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were at the head of one party.*
2. **Tum cum ex urbe Catilinam ēiciēbam . . . putābam . . .** (Cic. Cat. 3, 2, 3), *at the time when I was striving to drive Catiline out of the city . . . I supposed . . .*
3. **Tum cum rēs māgnās permultī āmiserant, scīmus fidem concidisse** (Cic. Manil. 7, 19), *at the time when a great many had lost large fortunes, we know that there was a financial panic (credit fell prostrate).*
4. **Cum tū haec legēs, illum Rōmae esse oportēbit** (Cic. Fam. 12, 30, 5), *by the time this letter reaches you, he will be due in Rome.*

633. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the temporal clauses introduced by **cum** in the foregoing examples, unlike those of **627**, mark the time of the main action *with definiteness and precision*. What mood does **cum** take under these circumstances (see **vēnit**, Ex. 1, **ēiciēbam**, Ex. 2, **āmiserant**, Ex. 3, **legēs**, Ex. 4)? Frame a rule for the Mood to be used in Temporal Clauses like the foregoing.

634.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Factum periculum patrum nostrorum memoriā, cum laudem exercitus meritis vidēbātur** (1, 40, 5), *a trial was made within the memory of our fathers, on which occasion (= and on that occasion) the army appeared to have merited praise.*
2. **Hōc facere apparābant, cum mātresfamiliae repente prōcurrerunt** (7, 26, 3), *they were getting ready to do this, when suddenly the matrons rushed forth.*
3. **Vix agmen novissimum prōcēsserat, cum Gallī flūmen trānsire nōn dubitant** (6, 8, 1), *scarcely had the rear advanced, when the Gauls without hesitation crossed the river.*

635. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the temporal clauses introduced by **cum** in the foregoing examples express the *main statement*; in other words, that the temporal clause, although subordinate in *form* (grammatically), is *principal in thought* (logically). What *mood* does **cum** take under these circumstances (see: **vidēbātur**, Ex. 1, **prōcurrerunt**, Ex. 2, **dubitant**, Ex. 3)? Frame a rule for the Mood to be used with **cum** in Temporal Clauses like the foregoing.

636.**EXAMPLES.**

1. **Cum singulās bīnae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī contendēbant** (3, 15, 1), *whenever (i.e., if in any case) two ships had been brought to bear on one, the soldiers would struggle with all their might.*
2. **Cum sē inter turmās insinuāvērunt, dēsiliunt** (4, 33, 1), *whenever (i.e., if in any case) they have worked their way in to the squadrons, they leap down.*

637. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **cum** in the foregoing examples means *whenever*, and that the temporal clause is equivalent to the *protasis of a general supposition*. What *mood* does **cum** take under these circumstances (see: **circumsteterant**, Ex. 1, **insinuāvērunt**, Ex. 2)? Frame a rule for the Mood to be used with **cum** in Temporal Clauses like the foregoing.

638. CAUTION: It has been shown in the preceding lesson (**627, 628, 629**) that in *temporal clauses of narration*, **cum** with the *imperfect* or *pluperfect tense* commonly takes the *subjunctive*; is this true of the temporal clauses illustrated in the present lesson (see: **ēiciēbam**, **632**, Ex. 2; **āmiserant**, **632**, Ex. 3; **vidēbātur**, **634**, Ex. 1; **circumsteterant**, **636**, Ex. 1)?

639. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION of Rules framed under **633, 635, 637**: A. & G. 325, *a, b, c*, 309, *c*; H. 521, I., II., 1; G. 582, 585.

640.**EXERCISES.**

- I. 1. Sed tum cum illum exterminārī volēbam, eōs infirmōs sine illō fore¹ putābam. 2. Neque vērō, cum aliquid

mandārat, cōfectum putābat. 3. Dumnaçus īnstruit aciēm, quae suīs esset² equitibus praesidiō, cum repente legiōnēs in cōspectum veniunt. 4. Haec cum facta sunt in conciliō, māgnā spē et laetitiā omnium discēssum est.³ 5. Ad equōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt. 6. Repentinā ruīnā pars ējus turris concidit, cum hostēs inermēs sē ūniversi prōripiunt.

II. 1. The legions were a mile distant, when Scipio, fearing that⁴ he should lose the town, led out all his forces. 2. Whenever our cavalry made-a-raid⁵ on the fields, he would let-loose⁶ his chariot men. 3. When I was-striving-to-ex-pel⁷ him from the city, I had this in view. 4. O glorious day,⁸ when I shall depart to join⁹ that divine company of spirits! 5. But whenever the supply of this class fails,¹⁰ they have recourse to the sacrifice of the innocent. 6. And now Sulla was marking out the camp, when the horsemen announced that Jugurtha had encamped.

641.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Cum quaequam cohors impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. 2. Jamque ā Labiēnō nōn longē aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs cōgnōscunt. 3. Ō praeclārum diem, cum ex hāc turbā et conliviōne discēdam!

II. 1. [He] who does not ward off injury from his [friends] whenever he can, acts unjustly. 2. He had shaken the enemy at the first attack, when suddenly a new army bursts into view. 3. In other matters, loss is experienced at-the-moment (**tum**) when disaster comes.

¹ fore = futūrōs esse.

² Account for mood and tense.

³ the assembly dispersed; cf. Exs., 522.

⁴ cf. 534, Ex. 4.

⁵ Use the pluperfect.

⁶ For tense, cf. 636, Ex. 1.

⁷ For tense, cf. 632, Ex. 2.

⁸ Use the accusative.

⁹ Express "to join" by in with accusative.

¹⁰ Use the perfect tense.

LESSON LXXXIII.

CUM IN CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.
ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.

642.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Aeduī, cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt** (1, 11, 2), *the Aedui, since they could not defend themselves, sent envoys to Caesar.*
2. **Quae cum ita sint, vestra tecta dēfendite** (Cic. Cat. 2, 12, 26), *this being the case (since these things are thus), defend your dwellings.*
3. **Cum primō impudenter respondēre coepisset, ad extrēmum nihil negāvit** (Cic. Cat. 3, 5, 12), *although at first he had begun to reply defiantly, at the end he denied nothing.*

643. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the clauses introduced by **cum** in Exs. 1 and 2 express *cause*; what *mood* do they take (see **possent**, Ex. 1, and **sint**, Ex. 2)? Note that the clause introduced by **cum** in Ex. 3 expresses *concession*; what *mood* does it take (see **coepisset**)? Frame a rule for the Mood to be used with **cum** in clauses denoting Cause or Concession.

644. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 326; H. 515, III., 517; G. 581, III., 1, 2.

645.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ō terram illam beātam quae hunc virum excēperit** (Cic. *Mil.* 38, 105), *O happy the land which shall receive (shall have received) this man!*
2. **Ō praeclārum diem cum in illud dīvinum animōrum concilium proficiscar** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 23, 84), *O glorious day, when I shall depart to join that divine company of spirits!*

646. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **terram** (Ex. 1) and **diem** (Ex. 2) are used in *exclamations*; in what *case* are they? Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives used in Exclamations.

647. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 240, d; H. 381; G. 340.

648.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quae cum ita sint, patrēs cōscriptī, vōbīs populi Rōmānī praesidia nōn dēsunt. 2. Ō tempora! Ō mōrēs! senātus haec intellegit, cōsul videt: hīc tamen vivit. 3. Militēs, cum frīgore et adsiduīs imbribus tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt. 4. Ō mē miserum, ō mē infēlicem! revocāre tū mē in patriam potuistī, ego tē in patriā retinēre nōn poterō? 5. Hī cum per sē minus valērent, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adjūxerant. 6. Cum primī ōrdinēs hostiū concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant.

II. 1. Notwithstanding this,¹ I shall nevertheless make peace with you if you make reparation² to the Aedui for (dē) injuries. 2. Verily, if this man's comrades follow him,³ [how] happy [shall] we [be], [how] fortunate the commonwealth! 3. It is a very easy matter,⁴ as (cum) we excel all in valor, to obtain control of all Gaul. 4. Not being able⁵ to sustain the assaults of our men, they betook themselves to their baggage and wagons. 5. O wretched lot! 6. Although the Suebi had not been able to drive out the Ubii, they nevertheless compelled them to pay tribute.⁶

649.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Illī, cum neque vī contendere neque clam trānsire possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs simulāvērunt. 2. At hostēs, cum ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs⁷ habērent, celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt. 3. O praeclārum mūnus aetātis, sī quidem id aufert ā nobīs quod est in adulēscientiā vitiōsissimum!

II. 1. The Helvetians, because (cum) they knew that he had crossed the river in a single day, sent ambassadors to him. 2. Caesar, although there was no doubt whatever⁸ about the purpose of his adversaries, sent back the legion to Pompey. 3. O

wretched old man, in-that-he⁹ did not see that death ought to be disregarded!

¹ *although these [things] are so.*

² cf. 598, Ex. 1.

³ Trans.: *if his comrades shall have followed this [man].*

⁴ Translate: *it's very easy.*

⁵ Translate: *since they were not able.*

⁶ "Compelled them to pay tribute"
= *made them tributary to themselves.*

⁷ A. & G. 247, c; H. 417, n. 2.

⁸ Translate: *it was by no means (minimē) doubtful.*

⁹ *quī* (= *cum* *is*) with subjunctive.

LESSON LXXXIV.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH PRIUSQUAM AND ANTEQUAM.

650.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Priusquam** quicquam cōnārētur, Divitiacum ad sē vocārī jubet (1, 19, 3), *before taking any action, he gave orders for Divitiacus to be summoned before him.*
2. **Nec prius**¹ sunt vīsi quam¹ castris appropinquārent (6, 37, 2), *and they were not seen until they were close upon the camp.*
3. **Antequam** dē meō adventū audīre potuissent, in Macedoniam perrexi (Cic. Planc. 41, 98), *before they could hear of my coming, I proceeded to Macedonia.*
4. **Neque prius**¹ fugere dēstitērunt quam¹ ad flūmen pervēnērunt (1, 53, 1), *nor did they cease to flee until they had reached the river.*
5. **Omnia ante**¹ facta sunt quam¹ iste Italiam attigit (Cic. Verr. 2, 2, 66, 161), *every thing was done before he reached Italy.*

651. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the temporal clauses in the foregoing examples are in *narration* and that they are introduced by **priusquam** (Exs. 1, 2, 4) or **antequam** (Exs. 3, 5). Note that the verb of the temporal clause in Exs. 1-3 is in the *imperfect* or *pluperfect tense*; in what *mood* is it (see: cōnārētur, Ex. 1, appropinquārent, Ex. 2, potuissent, Ex. 3)? What other *temporal particle* takes the same mood with these tenses in narra-

tion (see Exs. in 627)? Note that the temporal clauses in Exs. 4 and 5 mark the time of the main action with *definiteness* and *precision*; what *mood* do they take (see *pervēnērunt*, Ex. 4, and *attigit*, Ex. 5)? What other temporal particle takes the same mood under the same circumstances (see 632, Ex. 1)? Frame a rule for the Moods to be used with *priusquam* and *antequam* in Narration.

652.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Ante quam prō L. Mūrēnā dīcere instituō, prō mē ipsō pauca dīcam* (Cic. *Mur.* 1, 2), *before I undertake to speak in behalf of Lucius Murena, I shall say a few words in my own behalf.*
2. *Nunquam conquiēscam ante quam illōrum ratiōnēs percēperō* (Cic. *de Orat.* 3, 36, 145), *I shall never rest until I have learned their methods.*
3. *Is vidēlicet ante quam veniat in Pontum, lītterās ad Pompējum mittet* (Cic. *Agr.* 2, 20, 53), *doubtless before going to Pontus (i.e., that he may the more effectually accomplish his purpose in going to Pontus) he will send a letter to Pompey.*

653. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the temporal clauses in the foregoing examples refer to the *future*; what *moods* and *tenses* may *priusquam* and *antequam* take under these circumstances (see: *instituō*, Ex. 1, *percēperō*, Ex. 2, *veniat*, Ex. 3)? Frame a rule for the Moods and Tenses to be used with *priusquam* and *antequam* in Temporal Clauses referring to the Future.

654. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION of Rules framed under 651 and 653: A. & G. 327, a; H. 520, I, 1, 2, II.; G. 576, 579.

655.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. *Nec prius ille est vacuus relictus locus quam finis est pugnandī factus.* 2. *Prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur Germānī sentire possent.* 3. *Prius quam dē cēteris rēbus respondeō, dē amicitīā pauca dīcam.*
- ✓ 4. *Caesar priusquam eōdem est profectus, lūna vīsa est.*
5. *Ducentīs annīs antequam Rōmam caperent, in Italiam*

Gallī dēscendērunt. 6. Nōn dēfatīgābor ante quam illōrum ancipitēs viās percēperō.

II. 1. Nor did they cease to pursue² until they drew near to the gates. 2. He arrived before Pompey could be aware of [it]. 3. For the purpose of getting information on these points³ before making⁴ the trial, he sent forward Volusenus with a ship of war. 4. Before I come back to the main question, I will say a few [words] about myself. 5. A few [words] must be said by way of explanation⁵ before I begin.⁶ 6. Nor was there an end of butchering until Sulla had sated all his [followers] with riches.

656.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Nāvibus eorum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt. 2. Nōn prius vidit turmās Jūliānās quam suōs caedi sēnsit. 3. Ante quam dē rē publicā dicam ea quae dicenda⁷ hōc tempore arbitror, expōnam vōbis breviter cōnsilium et profectiōnis et reversiōnis meae.

II. 1. They begged Caesar to send them aid before the king should collect a force. 2. I shall make a point of coming⁸ to you before I pass quite out of your recollection. 3. The ambassadors did not depart until they had seen⁹ the soldiers embarked on [board] the ships.

¹ The parts of *priusquam* and *antequam* may be separated by the intervention of other words.

² Trans.: *make an end of pursuing*.

³ Translate: *for these [things] to be ascertained*.

⁴ cf. 650, Ex. 1.

⁵ Translate: *a few [things] must be made clear*.

⁶ i.e., in order that I may begin satisfactorily; cf. 652, Ex. 3.

⁷ sc. *esse*.

⁸ Translate: *I shall bestow pains that I may come*.

⁹ cf. 650, Ex. 4.

LESSON LXXXV.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH **Dum** AND **Quoad**.—PRICE.

657.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Dum** Caesar morātur, ad eum lēgātī vōnērunt (4, 22, 1), *while Caesar was delaying, envoys came to him.*
2. **Quoad** vivēs, nunquam tibi redditam grātiā putāveris (Sall. Jug. 110, 4), *as long as you (shall) live, never consider yourself fully requited (that requital has been rendered to you).*
3. [Ferrum] retinuit quoad renūtiātum est vīcisse Boeōtōs (Nep. Epam. 9, 3), *he kept the sword in place until it was reported that the Boeotians were victorious (had conquered).*
4. **Dum** nāvēs eō convenīrent, exspectāvit (4, 23, 4), *he waited for (until) the ships to come (should come) up (i.e., that the ships might come up before he attempted a landing).*
5. **Exercēbātur** ad eum finem quoad complectī posset atque contendere (Nep. Epam. 2, 4), *he trained himself to the end that he might be able (until he should be able) to grapple and fight.*

658. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that, in Exs. 1–3, the temporal clauses introduced by **dum** (Ex. 1) and **quoad** (Exs. 2 and 3) express *time merely*; what *mood* do they take (see: **morātur**, Ex. 1, **vivēs**, Ex. 2, **renūtiātum est**, Ex. 3)? Note that, in Exs. 4 and 5, the temporal clauses introduced by these particles express *purpose* as well as time; what *mood* do they take (see: **convenīrent**, Ex. 4, and **posset**, Ex. 5)? Frame a rule for the Moods to be used with **dum** and **quoad**.

659. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 328 (to the period); H. 519, I., II., 1, 2; G. 571, 573, 574.

660. OBSERVATION: Note that, in Ex. 1, **dum** is used with the present indicative (see **morātur**) although *past time* is referred to.

661. REFERENCES: A. & G. 276, e; H. 467, 4; G. 572.

662.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit** (Plin. N. H. 7, 31), *Isocrates sold a single oration for twenty talents.*
2. **Emamus vel magnō** (Cic. Att. 13, 29, 3), *let us buy even [if we have to buy] at a high price.*
3. **Lis aestimatur centum talentis** (Nep. Tim. 3, 5), *the fine is fixed at a hundred talents.*
4. **Nemo nisi victor pace bellum mutavit**¹ (Sall. Cat. 58, 15), *none but the victor exchanges war for peace.*

663. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **vendidit** (Ex. 1) is a verb of *selling*, **emamus** (Ex. 2), a verb of *buying*, **aestimatur** (Ex. 3), a verb of *valuing*, and **mutavit** (Ex. 4), a verb of *exchanging*; by what case is the price denoted (see: **talentis**, Ex. 1, **magnō**, Ex. 2, **talentis**, Ex. 3, **pace**, Ex. 4)? Frame a rule for the Case of words denoting Price.

664. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 252; H. 422; G. 404.

665.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Emi tantū quantū Pythius voluit** (Cic. Off. 3, 14, 59), *he bought at Pythius's own price* (for as much as Pythius wished).
2. **Vendō hōn plūris, fortasse etiam minōris** (Cic. Off. 3, 12, 51), *I sell no dearer, perhaps even cheaper.*

666. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **emi** (Ex. 1) and **vendō** (Ex. 2) are verbs of *buying* and *selling* respectively; and that the price is here expressed by **tantū** (Ex. 1), **quantū** (Ex. 1), **plūris** (Ex. 2), and **minōris** (Ex. 2). In what case are these words? Frame a special rule for the constructions here illustrated.

667. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 252, d; H. 405; G. 380.

668.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Dum ea geruntur, iī quī prō portīs castrōrum ī stationē erant, Caesarī nūtiāvērunt pulverem vidērī.
2. Ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs conlocātās cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōstituit.
3. Dicit quantū cuiusque agrī

decimās vēndiderit. 4. Quot minīs eam ēmit? Quad-
gintā minīs. 5. Ipse, equō vulnerātō, dējectus, quoad p-
tuit fortissimē restitit. 6. Quod nōn opus est, asse cārui-
7. Vēndō meum minōris quam ille. 8. Sic deinceps
omne ōpus contexitur dum jūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātu-
9. Dum haec geruntur, nūntiātum est equitēs accēdere.

II. 1. Nōr did they cease to pursue² until the horsemen
had utterly routed the enemy.³ 2. But to wait until the
forces of the enemy should be augmented, he thought was
the height of folly.⁴ 3. For how much did he buy her
Cheap.⁵ 4. Would a good man buy⁶ for a denarius⁷ what
is worth a thousand denarii⁸? 5. While he was delaying
a few days near (ad) Vesontio, great alarm suddenly took
possession of the army. 6. That sufficient time might
intervene for the soldiers to assemble,⁹ he answered the
envoys . . . 7. We cannot buy for less. 8. This penalty
was fixed at fifty talents.

669.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum in Santonēs
Helvētīi perveniant. 2. Quae tribuerat beneficia tam diū memi-
nerat quoad ille grātus erat qui accēperat. 3. Hōc nōn minōris
aestimāmus quam quemlibet amplissimum triumphum. 4. Eōrum
salūtem civitās levī mōmentō aestimāre nōn potest.

II. 1. Wait until you can know what you have to do.¹⁰ 2. While
they were getting¹¹ these things together,¹¹ about six thousand men
made haste to [reach] the Rhine. 3. I did my utmost¹² to dispose
of¹³ the tithes at the highest possible price.

¹ The perfect is here used to express a general truth, and must be translated by the present.

² Trans.: make an end of pursuing.

³ Trans.: drove the enemy headlong.

⁴ Translate: he thought to be of the greatest folly.

⁵ VIII (sc. pretiō), at a low rate.

⁶ Ematne?

⁷ See *dēnārius*, Latin-English vocab.

⁸ Translate: what is of a thousand denarii; for form of genitive (*dēnāri-um*), see: A. & G. 40, e; H. 52, 3; G. 29, 3; for mood of verb, see Exs. in 573.

⁹ cf. 657, Ex. 4.

¹⁰ cf. 317, Ex. 1.

¹¹ Express passively.

¹² Translate: Effort was bestowed by me with the greatest energy.

¹³ ut with subjunctive.

LESSON LXXXVI.

PLACE FROM WHICH. — PLACE TO WHICH. — PLACE
WHERE.

670.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ab urbe proficisci** (1, 7, 1), *to set out from the city.*
2. **Civitātī persuāsīt ut dē finibus suis exīrent** (1, 2, 1), *he persuaded his countrymen to emigrate.*
3. **Ex prōvinciā convēnerant** (1, 8, 1), *they had come together from the province.*
4. **Brundisiō veniēbant** (Caes. B. C. 3, 25, 1), *they came from Brundisium.*
5. **Athēnīs vēnimus** (Cic. Att. 5, 12, 1), *we came from Athens.*
6. **Domō dūxerat** (1, 53, 4), *he had brought from home.*
7. **Rūre [redīre]** (Ter. Eun. 3, 5, 63), *to return from the country.*

671. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that, in Exs. 1–3, which illustrate the common usage, *place from which* is denoted by the ablative *with a preposition* (see: **ab urbe**, Ex. 1, **dē finibus**, Ex. 2, **ex prōvinciā**, Ex. 3). Note, however, that in Exs. 4 and 5, where the substantive denoting ‘place from which’ is the name of a town, the ablative *without a preposition* is used (see: **Brundisiō**, Ex. 4, and **Athēnīs**, Ex. 5). Note, further, that **domus** and **rūs**, like names of towns, *have no preposition* (see: **domō**, Ex. 6, and **rūre**, Ex. 7). Frame a rule for the expression of Place From Which.

672. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 258, a; H. 412, I, II, 1; G. 411, Rem. 1².

673.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ad eum locum vēnit** (1, 40, 1), *he came to that place.*
2. **In Galliam contendit** (1, 7, 1), *he hastens into Gaul.*
3. **Rōmam profectus** (6, 12, 5), *having set out for Rome.*
4. **Corfinium pervenit** (Caes. B. C. 1, 15, 6), *he comes to Corfinium.*
5. **Domum revertērunt** (2, 29, 1), *they returned home.*
6. **Domōs suās invitāt** (Sall. Jug. 66, 3), *they invite to their homes.*
7. **Abī rūs** (Pl. Most. 1, 1, 63), *go into the country.*

674. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that in Exs. 1 and 2, which illustrate the common usage, *place to which* is denoted by the *accusative with a preposition* (see: **ad locum**, Ex. 1, and **in Galliam**, Ex. 2). Note, however, that in Exs. 3 and 4, where the substantive denoting 'place to which' is the name of a *town*, the *accusative without a preposition* is used (see: **Rōmam**, Ex. 3, and **Corfinium**, Ex. 4). Note, further, that **domus** and **rūs**, like names of towns, have *no preposition* (see: **domum**, Ex. 5, **domōs**, Ex. 6, **rūs**, Ex. 7). Frame a rule for the expression of Place To Which.

675. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 258, b; H. 380, I., II., 2, 1); G. 410.

676.**EXAMPLES.**

1. **In eōrum finibus** (1, 1, 4), *in their territories*.
2. **Erat in Galliā legiō ūna** (1, 7, 2), *there was in Gaul one legion*.
3. **Ut Rōmae cōsulēs, sic Carthāginī rēgēs** (Nep. Hann. 7, 4), *as at Rome consuls, so at Carthage kings*.
4. **Remanēre Brundisiī** (Caes. B. C. 1, 25, 2), *to stay at Brundisium*.
5. **Tum maximum magistrātum Thēbīs obtinēbat** (Nep. Pel. 3, 2), *at that time he held the highest magistracy at Thebes*.
6. **Domī militiaeque, marī atque terrā** (Sall. Cat. 53, 2), *at home and abroad, on land and sea*.
7. **Bellī domique** (Sall. Jug. 41, 7), *in war and in peace*.
8. **Locus humī dēpressus** (Sall. Cat. 53, 3), *a place underground (sunk in the ground)*.
9. **An rūri cēnsēs tē esse** (Pl. Most. 1, 1, 7), *do you think you're in the country?*

677. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that, in Exs. 1 and 2, which illustrate the common usage, *place where* is denoted by the *ablative with a preposition* (see **in finibus**, Ex. 1, and **in Galliā**, Ex. 2). Note, however, that in Exs. 3-5, where the substantive denoting place is the name of a *town*, a *locative* form is used *without a preposition* (see: **Rōmae** and **Carthāginī**, Ex. 3, **Brundisiī**, Ex. 4, and **Thēbīs**, Ex. 5). Note, further, that in the first and second declensions singular, this *locative* is the same in form as the *genitive* (see **Rōmae**, Ex. 3, and **Brundisiī**, Ex. 4); and that, in the third declension and in the plural, it is the same as the *dative* or *ablative* (see **Carthāginī**, Ex. 3, and **Thēbīs**, Ex. 5). Note,

further, that the *preposition* is not used with the *ablatives* **marī** and **terrā** (Ex. 6); also with the *locatives* **domī** (Exs. 6 and 7), **militiae** (Ex. 6), **belli** (Ex. 7), **humī** (Ex. 8), and **rūrī** (Ex. 9). Frame a rule for the expression of Place Where.

678. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 258, c, d; II. 425, I., II., 426, 2; G. 412, Rem. 1.

LESSON LXXXVII.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING CONSTRUCTIONS.

679.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. 2. Lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt. 3. Interim Diōn Syracūsīs interfectus est. 4. In Galliā morārī cōstituit. 5. Id nōs faciēmus, cum tū domō proficiēscēs vēneris Lemnum.¹ 6. Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsīs expulsus Corinthī puerōs docēbat. 7. Nullam partem Germānōrum domum remittere possum. 8. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. 9. Celeriter ad eās quās dīximus mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt. 10. Diem quō Rōmā sīs exitūrus, cūrā ut sciam. ✓ 11. Armōrum māgnā multitudīne dē mūrō in fossam jactā, pāce sunt ūsī. 12. Nunc rūs abībō. 13. Illī erat animus bellī ingēns, domī modicus. 14. Xerxēs terrā marīque bellum intulit Graeciae. 15. Vārus venientem Uticam Tūberōnem portū atque oppidō prohibet. 16. Jacet humī. 17. Rēs ipsa hortārī vidētur paucīs² insti-tūta mājōrum domī militiaeque disserere. 18. Rūre hūc advenit.

II. 1. Having gone out from the camp, they hastened to the Rhine. 2. Caesar came to Brundisium. 3. When this battle had been reported³ across the Rhine, the Suebi began

to return home. 4. He thinks he's in the country. 5. Complete control of public affairs,⁴ both civil⁵ and military,⁶ was intrusted to Alcibiades. 6. Oedipus was born at Thebes. 7. A certain Demaratus fled from Corinth to Tarquinii. 8. His services in the battle before (apud) Sena were highly⁶ valued. 9. There were but two routes by which they could go out from home. 10. Neither by land nor by sea had the enemy been able to prove a match⁷ [for them]. 11. The archers came from Crete¹ and Lacedaemon. 12. When (cum) his arms had been seized⁸ at Capua and his slaves seen at Naples, he abandoned his design. 13. The Allobroges are on their way home. 14. Eporedorix had very great influence⁹ at home.

680.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Uxorē donō secum dūxerat. 2. Multa populus Rōmānus domi militiæque, mari atque terrā, praeclāra facinora fecit. 3. Sed is nātus et omnem pueritiā Arpinī altus est. 4. Arcem Syracūsā quam mūnierat Dionysius ad urbem obsidendā, ā fundamētis disiecit. 5. Eōrum quī domum redierunt cēsus habitus est. 6. Quibus rēbus Rōmānū nūntiātis, tantus repente terror invāsīt ut cōsul ex urbe profugeret. 7. Athēnis profectus est -

II. 1. I am able to sleep on the ground. 2. He learns that the envoys have been sent home in advance. 3. A letter^{as} brought from Athens for Archias,¹⁰ who held the chief magistracy in Thebes. 4. In the consulship of Marcus Claudius and Lucius Furius,³ envoys came from Rome to Carthage. 5. A list had been¹¹ made out [showing] how many of them had left their homes. 6. The people of Zama meantime sent envoys to Caesar at Utica. 7. He is very powerful at home.

¹ The names of small islands have the same construction as the names of towns.

² *briefly*.

³ Ablative absolute.

⁴ *tōta rēs publicā*.

⁵ Translate: *at home and in war*.

⁶ A. & G. 232, a; H. 404; G. 379.

⁷ "to prove a match" = *to be equal*.

⁸ In what mood? cf. *Exa. unde* 627.

⁹ Translate: *was of very great influence*.

¹⁰ See Lesson LXXII., foot-note 7.

¹¹ "how many" = *what number*.

¹² Trans.: *had gone out from home*.

¹³ Trans.: *to Caesar to Utica*.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE: DECLARATORY AND
IMPERATIVE SENTENCES.

681.

EXAMPLES.

- a. **Mōns tenētur**, *the mountain is held.*
 - b. Cōsidius dicit **montem tenērī** (1, 22, 2), *Considius says that the mountain is held.*
- 2.
 - a. [**Nōs**] **parātī sumus**, *we are ready.*
 - b. **Sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt** (1, 5, 2), *they thought that they were ready.*
- 3.
 - a. **Helvētīī castra mōvērunt**, *the Helvetians have broken up their camp.*
 - b. Caesar cōgnōvit **Helvētīōs castra mōvisse** (1, 22, 4), *Caesar learned that the Helvetians had broken up their camp.*
- 4.
 - a. **Ego id quod in Nervīīs fēcī faciam**, *I shall do what I did in the case of the Nervii.*
 - b. Caesar respondit **sē id quod in Nervīīs fēcisset factūrum** (2, 32, 2), *Caesar replied that he should do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.*

682. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the examples marked *a* in the foregoing illustrations, give the *exact language* of the *original speaker* as it came from his lips (see Exs. 1 and 4), as it passed through his mind without being actually spoken (see Ex. 2), or as it was communicated through messengers or letters (see Ex. 3). Note, further, that the examples marked *b* show the *transformations* which the language of the original speaker undergoes when it is *reported*. The examples marked *a* illustrate what is called *Direct Discourse*; the examples marked *b* illustrate what is called *Indirect Discourse*. Define Direct Discourse. Define Indirect Discourse.

683. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 335; H. 522, 1; G. 651.

681.

EXAMPLES.

1. { a. **Mōns tenētur**, the mountain is held.
 b. **Cōsidius dicit montem tenērī** (1, 22, 2), *Cōsidius says that the mountain is held.*
2. { a. **[Nōs] parātī sumus**, we are ready.
 b. **Sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt** (1, 5, 2), *they thought that they were ready.*
3. { a. **Helvētīī castra mōvērunt**, the Helvetians have broken up their camp.
 b. **Caesar cōgnōvit Helvētīōs castra mōvisse** (1, 22, 4), *Caesar learned that the Helvetians had broken up their camp.*
4. { a. **Ego id quod in Nervīis fēcī faciam**, I shall do what I did in the case of the Nervīi.
 b. **Caesar respondit sē id quod in Nervīis fēcisset factūrum** (2, 32, 2), *Caesar replied that he should do what he had done in the case of the Nervīi.*

684. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the examples marked *a* illustrate declaratory sentences in which the principal verb is in the indicative mood (see: **tenētur**, Ex. 1, *a*; **sumus**, Ex. 2, *a*; **mōvērunt**, Ex. 3, *a*; **faciam**, Ex. 4, *a*) and its subject in the nominative case (see: **mōns**, Ex. 1, *a*; **nōs**, Ex. 2, *a*; **Helvētīī**, Ex. 3, *a*; **ego**, Ex. 4, *a*).

Note, further, that, in the corresponding examples of Indirect Discourse marked *b*, the indicative has been changed to the infinitive (see: **tenērī**, Ex. 1, *b*; **esse**, Ex. 2, *b*; **mōvisse**, Ex. 3, *b*; **factūrum**, Ex. 4, *b*), and that the nominative has been changed to the accusative (see: **montem**, Ex. 1, *b*; **sē**, Ex. 2, *b*; **Helvētīōs**, Ex. 3, *b*; **sē**, Ex. 4, *b*).

Note, finally, in Ex. 4, that the verb of the subordinate clause has been changed from the indicative of the Direct Discourse (see **fēcī**, Ex. 4, *a*) to the subjunctive in the Indirect (see **fēcisset**, Ex. 4, *b*).

Frame a rule for the constructions to be used in Declaratory Sentences of Indirect Discourse.

685. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 336; H. 523, I., 524; G. 653.

686.

EXAMPLES.

1. {
 - a. **Adi cīvitātēs**, *visit the communities.*
 - b. Huic imperat **adeat cīvitātēs** (4, 21, 8), *he ordered this man to visit the communities.*
2. {
 - a. **Nōli hostis populō Rōmānō fierī**, *do not become an enemy to the Roman people.*
 - b. Lēgātōs ad Bocchum mittit postulātum **nē hostis populō Rōmānō fieret** (Sall. Jug. 83, 1), *he sent ambassadors to Bocchus to urge him not to become an enemy to the Roman people.*

687. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the examples marked *a* in the foregoing illustrations contain *imperative* expressions (see: **adi**, Ex. 1, *a*, and **nōli fierī**, Ex. 2, *a*). Note, in the corresponding examples of Indirect Discourse marked *b*, that these imperative expressions are denoted by the *subjunctive* (see: **adeat**, Ex. 1, *b*, and **nē fieret**, Ex. 2, *b*). Frame a rule for Imperative Expressions in Indirect Discourse.

688. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 339; H. 523, III.; G. 655.

689. NOTE: The Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse follow the rules already framed for dependent infinitives (see **466** and **467**, Lesson LIX.); the Tenses of the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse follow the rules already framed for dependent subjunctives (see **439-442**, Lesson LV.). But see, also: H. 525, 1; G. 657.

LESSON XC.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

692.

EXAMPLES.

- a. **SI** quid ille mē vult, illum ad mē venīre oportet, *if that man wants anything of me, he ought to come to me.*
- b. Ariovistus respondit: **SI** quid ille sē velit,¹ illum sē venīre oportere (1, 34, 2), *Ariovistus replied that, if that man wanted anything of him, he ought to come to him.*
- a. **SI** quid petere vultis, ab armis discēdite, *if you wish to ask for anything, lay down your arms.*
- b. Mārcius respondit: **SI** quid petere velint,¹ ab armis discēdant¹ (Sall. Cat. 34, 1), *Mārcius replied that, if they wished to ask for anything, they must lay down their arms.*
- a. **SI** quid mihi opus esset, ego vēnissem, *if I were in need of anything, I should have come myself.*
- b. Ariovistus respondit: **SI** quid ipsi opus esset, sēs ventūrum fuisse (1, 34, 2), *Ariovistus replied that, if he were in need of anything, he should have come himself.*
- a. **Id** **SI** fiet, māgnō cum periculō erit, *if this happens (shall happen), it will be attended with great danger.*
- b. **Id** **SI** fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum periculō futūrum (1, 10, 2), *he saw clearly that, if this should happen, it would be attended with great danger.*
- a. **SI** id ita fēceris, populō Rōmānō amicitia tēcum erit, *if you do (shall have done) this, you will have the friendship of the Roman people.*
- b. Ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātis mittit: **SI** id ita fēcisset, populō Rōmānō amicitiam cum eō futūram (1, 35, 1 and 4), *Caesar sent ambassadors to him, who were commissioned to say that, if he should do this, he would have the friendship of the Roman people.*

- G. { a. **Voluptās quidem, sī ipsa prō sē loquātur, concēdat dignitatī, indeed, if Pleasure herself were to speak in her own behalf, she would yield precedence to Worth.**
 b. **Voluptātem quidem, sī ipsa prō sē loquātur, concēssūram arbitror, dignitatī** (Cic. *Fin.* 3, 1, 1), *indeed, I think that, if Pleasure herself were to speak in her own behalf, she would yield precedence to Worth.*

693. NOTE: The foregoing examples involve no new principles; they merely illustrate the application of the principles of Indirect Discourse to Conditional Sentences.

694.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sī iterum experīri vultis, ego iterum parātus sum dēcertāre. 2. Ariovistus respondit: sī iterum experīri velint,¹ sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre. 3. Nōlī proelium committere nisi meae cōpiaē prope hostium castra vīsae erunt. 4. Labiēnō erat praeceptum ā Caesare: nē proelium committeret nisi ipsius cōpiaē prope hostium castra vīsae essent.² 5. Caesar profectus est in Italiam; neque aliter Carnūtēs interficiendī Tasgetiī cōsiliū cēpissent, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra venīrent. ✓ 6. Titūrius clāmitābat: Caesarem profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnūtēs interficiendī Tasgetiī cōsiliū fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs esse. 7. Aeduīs ego bellum nōn inferam, sī in eō manēbunt quod convēnit. 8. Ariovistus respondit: Aeduīs sē bellum inlātūrum nōn esse, sī in eō manērent quod convēnisset. 9. Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: velle sē agere cum eō; utī aut conloquiō diem cōstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ē suīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.

II. 1. If Hamilcar had lived longer, the Carthaginians would have carried their arms into³ Italy. 2. It was evident that, if Hamilcar had lived longer, the Carthaginians would have carried⁴ their arms into Italy. 3. Unless you

withdraw⁵ your army from these regions, I shall regard you as (prō) an enemy. 4. Ariovistus answered that, unless Caesar should withdraw his army from these regions, he should regard him as an enemy. 5. If you wish to enjoy peace, it is unreasonable to object to the tribute. 6. Ariovistus answered that, if they wished to enjoy peace, it was unreasonable to object to the tribute. 7. If you want anything, return on the thirteenth of April.⁸ 8. He told the ambassadors in reply,⁷ to return on the thirteenth of April if they wanted anything.

695.

Supplementary Exercises.

NOTE: In the following sentences, restore to the direct form the passages in indirect discourse.

I. 1. Caesar respondit: si iudicium senātūs observāri oportere liberam debēre esse Galliam. 2. Ariovistus respondit: si dī cēssisset⁸ Caesar, māgnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum, quaecumque bella gerī vellet sine ūllō ējus labōre et periculō cōnfectūrum. 3. Nisi eō ipsō tempore nūntiī dē Caesaris victōriā essent adlātī, existimābant plērique futūrum fuisse ut⁹ oppidum amitteretur.

II. 1. If the flight of the Gauls disquiets any, these can learn, they take the trouble to inquire,¹⁰ that Ariovistus conquered more by craft than by valor. 2. Caesar took them severely to task [saying that] if the flight of the Gauls disquieted any, these could learn, if they should take the trouble to inquire, that Ariovistus had conquered more by craft than by valor. 3. Most people think that Hamilcar, if he had lived longer, would have carried⁴ his arms into Italy.

f. foot-note 9, preceding lesson.
Note that, in accordance with the sequence of tenses, the future per-sae erunt (sent. 3) has become perfect subjunctive visae essent
e secondary tense erat praec-
a: II. 525, 2.

1a Inferre with dative.

visae captūrōs, sent. 6, pre-
ercise.

12, Ex. 4.

Idūs Aprilis or ad Id. April.

See Idūs in the general vocab. Note that Aprilis is here an adjective in the accusative plural agreeing with Idūs.

⁷ Lēgātis respondit.

⁸ cf. foot-note 2.

⁹ futūrum fuisse ut amitteretur is a periphrastic expression for the fut. pass. infin. of amittō; translate: a great many thought that the town would have been lost.

¹⁰ Translate: if they -

LESSON XCI.

NOTE: In this and the following lessons on formation, attention is confined to modes of formation as are easily understood, and are copiously illustrated in vocabulary of this book.

FORMATION: SUBSTANTIVES.

I. NAMES OF AGENTS.

696.

EXAMPLES.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
ROOTS OR VERB STEMS.	SUFFIX.	STEMS.	NAMES OF AGENTS.
- 1√duc-, <i>lead</i> ,	+ -tōr- =	ductōr-, st. of	ductor, <i>leader</i> .
- √vic-, <i>conquer</i> ,	+ -tōr- =	vīctōr-, st. of	vīctor, <i>conqueror</i> .
3. ōrā-(st. of ōrō), <i>speaking</i> ,	} + -tōr- =	ōrātōr-, st. of	ōrātor, <i>speaker</i> .
4. imperā-(st. of imperō), <i>com-</i> <i>mand</i> ,			
	} + -tōr- = imperātōr-, st. of { imperātor, <i>com-</i> <i>mander</i> .		

697. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the substantives in column IV. denote the *agent* (doer) of the *action* expressed by the corresponding *root* or *verb stem* in column I. Thus **duct** from √duc-, *lead*, means 'he who leads' or 'leader.' Hence the substantives are called *Names of Agents*. Note that these names of agents are formed by adding to *roots* (see Exs. 1 and 2) or *verb stems* (see Exs. 3 and 4) the *suffix* -tōr-, nom. -tor. Form rule for the formation of Names of Agents.

698. Form, as in the foregoing examples, Name Agents from the following —

1. **Roots:** √doc-, TEACH; √lēg-,² *read*; √pīg-,² *paint*; √sta (= *make stand*); √suād-,³ (*make sweet*, and so)

2. VERB STEMS: *approbā-*, approve; *dēprecā-*, intercede; *dictatē-*, dictate; *explōrā-*, explore; *mercā-*, trade.
3. COMPOUNDS ENDING IN A ROOT: *dē-√ser-*, desert; *im-√pel-*, impel; *in-√ven-*, COME UPON, discover; *prae-√i-*,⁵ go before; *prō-√da-*,⁶ give away, betray.

II. ABSTRACTS DENOTING STATE.

699.

EXAMPLES.

I. ROOTS OR BASES TREATED AS ROOTS.	II. SUFFIX.	III. STEMS.	IV. ABSTRACTS DENOTING STATE.
1. <i>√dol-</i> , TEAR, <i>rend</i> ,	+ <i>-ōr-</i> =	<i>dolōr-</i> , st. of	<i>dolor</i> , pain.
2. <i>√fur-</i> , rage,	+ <i>-ōr-</i> =	<i>furōr-</i> , st. of	<i>furor</i> , fury.
3. Base <i>am-</i> (in <i>amō</i>), love,	} + <i>-ōr-</i> =	<i>amōr-</i> , st. of	<i>amor</i> , love.
4. Base <i>pud-</i> (in <i>pu-</i> <i>det</i>), shame,		+ <i>-ōr-</i> = <i>pudōr-</i> , st. of	<i>pudor</i> , modesty.

700. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the substantives in column IV. are *abstracts denoting the state* suggested by the corresponding roots or bases in column I. Thus *furor* from *√fur-*, *rage*, means 'a state of rage' or 'fury.' Note that these abstracts are formed by adding to *roots* or to *bases treated as roots* the *suffix -ōr-*, nom. *-or*. Frame a rule for the formation of Abstracts denoting State.

701. Form Abstracts denoting State from the following —

1. ROOTS: *√ang-*, squeeze; *√lab-*, lay hold of; *√ters-*,⁷ tremble; *√tim-*, choke, be breathless.
2. BASES TREATED AS ROOTS: *rūm-*, sound; *clām-*, call, call out.

¹ Roots are denoted by the sign *√*. Thus *√duc-* is to be read 'root *duc-*.'

² *-g-* and *-gu-* become *-c-* before *-t-*.

³ *-dt-* becomes *-s-*.

⁴ *-o-* of the root is here weakened to *-u-*, and *-t-* of the suffix becomes *-s-*.

⁵ *prae-i-* is contracted to *prae-*.

⁶ *-u-* of the root is here weakened to *-i-*.

⁷ *-s-* of the root becomes *-r-*.

LESSON XCII.

FORMATION : SUBSTANTIVES (*continued*).

III. ABSTRACTS DENOTING ACTION.

702.	EXAMPLES.			
I.	II.	III.	IV.	
ROOTS OR VERB STEMS.	SUFFIXES.	STEMS.	ABSTRACTS DENOT- ING ACTION.	
1. √ <i>sta-</i> , STAND,	+ <i>-tiōn-</i>	= <i>statiōn-</i> , st. of	{ <i>statiō</i> , STANDING ; a post or <i>station</i> .	
2. √ <i>gnā-</i> , be born,	+ <i>-tiōn-</i>	= ¹ (<i>g</i>) <i>nātiōn-</i> , st. of	{ <i>nātiō</i> , being born ; a race or <i>nation</i> .	
3. <i>ōrā-</i> (st. of <i>ōrō</i>), speak,	{ + <i>-tiōn-</i>	= <i>ōrātiōn-</i> , st. of	{ <i>ōrātiō</i> , speaking ; an address.	
4. <i>lēgā-</i> (st. of <i>lēgō</i>), de- pute,			{ <i>lēgātiō</i> , deputing ; a deputation or em- bassy.	
5. √ <i>ic-</i> , hit,	+ <i>-tu-</i>	= <i>ictu-</i> , st. of	<i>ictus</i> , hitting ; a blow.	
6. √ <i>or-</i> , rise,	+ <i>-tu-</i>	= <i>ortu-</i> , st. of	<i>ortus</i> , rising ; origin.	
7. <i>cōnā-</i> (st. of <i>cōnor</i>), en- deavor,	{ + <i>-tu-</i>	= <i>cōnātu-</i> , st. of	{ <i>cōnātus</i> , endeavor- ing ; an effort or undertaking.	
8. <i>equitā-</i> (st. of <i>equitō</i>), ride,			{ <i>equitātus</i> , riding ; cavalry.	

703. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE : Note that the substantives in column IV. are *abstracts* denoting the *action* suggested by the corresponding roots or verb stems in column I. Note further, however, that these abstracts may become *concrete* and assume other than their literal meanings. Thus *ōrātiō*, from the verb-stem *ōrā-*, *speak*, means not only 'speaking,' but 'that which is spoken' or 'an address.'

Note that these abstracts are formed by adding to *roots* or to *verb stems* the *suffixes* **-tiōn-**, *nom.* **-tiō** (Exs. 1-4), and **-tu-**, *nom.* **-tus** (Exs. 5-8). Frame a rule for the formation of Abstracts denoting Action.

704. Form Abstracts in **-tiō** from the following—

1. ROOT: **√fac-**, *DO, make.*
2. BASE TREATED AS ROOT: **quaes-**, *inquire.*
3. COMPOUNDS ENDING IN A ROOT: **cō-√gnā-**, *be born with*; **cor-√ten-**, *stretch vigorously, struggle*; **con-√jug-**,² *YOKE together*; **oc-√cād-**,³ *fall towards*; **re-√vert-**,⁴ *turn back*; **ē-√rup-**, *break forth*; **pro-√fac-**,⁵ *make FORTH or off*; **dē-√fend-**,⁸ *thrust off.*
4. COMPOUNDS ENDING IN BASES TREATED AS ROOTS: **dis-sent-**, *think differently*; **in-curr-**,⁶ *rush against.*
5. VERB STEMS: **mūnī-** (*st. of mūniō*), *fortify*; **aestimā-** (*st. of aestimō*), *value*; **perturbā-** (*st. of perturbō*), *throw into confusion*; **cunctā-** (*st. of cunctor*), *delay*; **conjūrā-** (*st. of conjūrō*), *swear together*; **supplicā-** (*st. of supplicō*), *kneel*; **cohortā-** (*st. of cohortor*), *exhort*; **exercitā-**, (*st. of exercitō*), *exercise repeatedly*; **vēnā-** (*st. of vēnor*), *hunt*; **commūtā-** (*st. of commūtō*), *change completely*; **māchinā-** (*st. of māchinor*), *devise.*

705. Form Abstracts in **-tus** from the following—

1. ROOTS: **√vīgu-**,⁷ *live*; **√frūgu-**,⁷ *enjoy*; **√si-**, *put*; **√cād-**,³ *fall*; **√por-**, *FARE, go through*; **√flūgu-**,⁷ *flow*; **√col-**,⁸ *till*; **√pat-**,⁹ *spread.*
2. BASES TREATED AS ROOTS: **quaes-**, *seek*; **sent-**,⁴ *become aware*; **ūt-**,⁴ *enjoy, use.*
3. COMPOUNDS ENDING IN A ROOT: **ad-√i-**, *go to, approach*; **ad-√ven-**, *COME to*; **cōn-√spec-**, *SPY at a glance*; **amb-√i-**, *go about*; **con-√ven-**, *COME together*; **sūm-**,¹⁰ (*for sub-√em-*), *spend*; **circu-√i-**, *go round*; **oc-√cād-**,³ *fall towards or down.*

TEMS: **cruciā-** (st. of **cruciō**), *torture*; **magistrā-** (st. **agistrō**), *direct, be master*; **commē-** (st. of **commēō**), *and fro*; **vestī-** (st. of **vestiō**), *clothe*.

is lost before -n-.

tract formed from **con-**

before -g- after the anal-
ngō; see also foot-note 2,

note 3, Lesson XCI.

nes -s-.

root is here weakened to

⁶ One -r- disappears and -t- becomes

-s-.

⁷ See foot-note 2, Lesson XCI.

⁸ -o- is weakened to -u-.

⁹ -tt- becomes -ss-.

¹⁰ -p- sometimes (as here) grows up
between -m- and -t-.



LESSON XCIII.

FORMATION: SUBSTANTIVES (*continued*).

SUBSTANTIVES DENOTING SUBJECT, MEANS, RESULT.

EXAMPLES.

II. SUFFIXES.	III. STEMS.	IV. SUBSTANTIVES DE- NOTING SUBJECT, MEANS, RESULT.
q, + -min-	= crimin- , st. of	{ crimen , <i>that which sifts; a judicial decision.</i>
d, + -min-	= agmin- , st. of	{ agmen , <i>that which is led; army (on the march).</i>
{ + -mento-	= impedimento- , st. of	{ impedimentum , <i>means of hindering; impediment.</i>
{ + -mento-	= fragmento- , st. of	{ fragmentum , <i>result of BREAKING; fragment.</i>

707. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the substantives in column IV. denote: (1) the *subject* of the action, viewed actively (see Ex. 1) or passively (see Ex. 2); (2) the *means* or *instrument* (see Ex. 3); (3) the *result* (see Ex. 4). Note that these substantives are formed by adding to *roots* or *verb stems* the *suffixes* **-mīn-**, nom. **-men**, and **-mento-**, nom. **-mentum**. Frame a rule for the formation of substantives denoting Subject, Means, Result.

708. Form substantives in **-men** from the following—

1. **ROOTS:** √**sē-**, *sow*; √**vī-**, *plait*; √**nū-**, *nod*; √**lūc-**,¹ *shine*; √**flūg-**,¹ *flow*.
2. **VERB STEM:** **certā-**, *struggle*.

709. Form substantives in **-mentum** from the following—

1. **ROOTS:** √**torqu-**,¹ *twist, hurl*; √**sarp-**,² *lop, prune*; √**mov-**,³ *push*; √**jūg-**,¹ *YOKE*; √**frūg-**,¹ *enjoy*.
2. **COMPOUND ENDING IN A ROOT:** **dē-√trī-**, *rub away*.
3. **VERB STEMS:** **mūnī-**, *fortify*; **fundā-**, *BOTTOM, make secure*; **testā-**, *bear witness*; **ōrnā-**, *embellish*.

V. NEUTER ABSTRACTS: PRIMITIVE AND DENOMINATIVE.

710.

EXAMPLES.

I. ROOTS, OR COMPOUNDS ENDING IN A ROOT.	II. SUFFIX.	III. STEMS.	IV. NEUTER ABSTRACTS: PRIMITIVES.
1. √ od- , <i>hate</i> ,	+ -io- =	odio- , st. of	{ odium , <i>hatred</i> ; a grudge.
2. con-√loqu- , talk with,	{ + -io- =	conloquio- , st. of	{ conloquium , <i>talking</i> together; a confer- ence.
3. in-√cand- , ⁴ set fire to,	{ + -io- =	incendio- , st. of	{ incendium , <i>setting</i> fire to; a conflagra- tion.

NOUN STEMS.

NEUTER ABSTRACTS:
DENOMINATIVES.

arbitro,-⁵ (st. of **arbitr**), *umpire*, } + **-io** = **arbitrio**,-, st. of { **arbitrium**, *being umpire; a decision (of the umpire)*.

artific,- (st. of **artifex**), *artificer*, } + **-io** = **artificio**,-, st. of { **artificium**, *artisan-ship; a trade*.

exsul,- (st. of **exsul**), *exile*, } + **-io** = **exsilio**,-⁶ st. of { **exsiliium**, *being an exile; banishment*.

¶11. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the substantives in column IV. are *neuter abstracts* which may become *concrete* meaning. Note that the neuter abstracts in Exs. 1-3 are from *s* and are therefore called *Primitives*; whereas those in Exs. 4-6 are from *noun stems* and are therefore called *Denominatives*. Further, that the denominatives denote *office* (see Ex. 4), *employment* (see Ex. 5), *condition* (see Ex. 6). Note, finally, that both primitives and denominatives are formed by the suffix **-io**, 1. **-ium**. Frame a rule for the formation of Primitive and Denominative Neuter Abstracts.

¶12. Form Primitive Abstracts in **-ium** from the following —

COMPOUNDS ENDING IN A ROOT: **prae-*vsed***,-⁷ *SIT before*; **sub-*vsed***,-⁷ *SIT in support*; **in-*vgen***,- *beget IN*.

¶13. Form Denominative Abstracts in **-ium** from the following —

UN⁸ STEMS: **convivā**,-⁵ (st. of **conviva**), *table companion*; **indic**,- (st. of **index**), *informer*; **jūdic**,- (st. of **jūdex**), *judge*; **supplic**,- (st. of **supplex**), *suppliant*; **benefico**,-⁵ (st. of **beneficus**), *kind, obliging*; **malefico**,-⁵ (st. of **maleficus**), *mischievous*; **sacrifico**,-⁵ (st. of **sacrificus**), *sacrificial*; **rēmig**,- (st. of **rēmex**), *rower*; **aedific**,- (st. of ***aedifex**⁹), *builder*.

¹ Medial *-c-* (or *-qu-*) and *-g-* (or *-gu-*) are dropped before many consonants (here before *-m-*).

² *-p-* here disappears before *-m-*.

³ *-v-* becomes *-u-*, and the resulting diphthong *-ou-* becomes *-ō-*.

⁴ See foot-note 5, Lesson XCII.

⁵ The final vowel of the stem disappears before the initial vowel of the suffix.

⁶ *-u-* of the stem is weakened to *-i-*.

⁷ *-e-* of the root is here weakened to *-i-*.

⁸ The term 'noun' includes both 'substantive' and 'adjective.'

⁹ The asterisk * is used to mark a form which is not found in any classical writer, but which is assumed as affecting a rational explanation of existing forms. In the present case, as *artifex* gave rise to *artificium* (see 710, Ex. 5), so it is assumed that **aedifex* gave rise to *aedificium*.



LESSON XCIV.

FORMATION: SUBSTANTIVES (*continued*).

VI. FEMININE ABSTRACTS DENOTING QUALITY.

714.

EXAMPLES.

I. ADJECTIVE STEMS.	II. SUFFIXES.	III. STEMS.	IV. FEMININE ABSTRACTS DENOTING QUALITY.
1. <i>audāci</i> ⁻¹ (st. of <i>audāx</i>), <i>bold</i> ,	} + <i>-iā-</i>	= <i>audāciā-</i> , st. of	{ <i>audācia</i> , <i>boldness</i> .
2. <i>ignāvo</i> ⁻¹ (st. of <i>ignāvus</i>), <i>idle</i> ,			
3. <i>trīsti</i> - (st. of <i>trīstis</i>), <i>sad</i> ,	} + <i>-tiā-</i>	= <i>trīstitiā-</i> , st. of	{ <i>trīstitia</i> , <i>sadness</i> .
4. <i>jūsto</i> ⁻² (st. of <i>jūstus</i>), <i>just</i> ,			
5. <i>brevi</i> - (st. of <i>brevis</i>), <i>short</i> ,	} + <i>-tāt-</i>	= <i>brevitāt-</i> , st. of	{ <i>brevitās</i> , <i>shortness</i> .
6. <i>dīgno</i> ⁻² (st. of <i>dīgnus</i>), <i>worthy</i> ,			
7. <i>forti</i> - (st. of <i>fortis</i>), <i>brave</i> ,	} + <i>-tūdin-</i>	= <i>fortitūdin-</i> , st. of	{ <i>fortitūdō</i> , <i>bravery</i> .
8. <i>lāto</i> ⁻² (st. of <i>lātus</i>), <i>broad</i> ,			

715. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the substantives in column IV. are *feminine abstracts* denoting *quality*, and that they are formed from *adjective stems* by the addition of the *fixes*: **-iā**, nom. **-ia**; **-tiā**, nom. **-tia**; **-tāt**, nom. **-tās**; **-tūdin**, m. **-tūdō**. Note that vowel stems *lose* their *final vowel* before the initial vowel of the suffix **-iā** (see Exs. 1 and 2); and that the *u* vowel of **-o**-stems is weakened into **-i** before the suffixes **-tiā**, **-tāt**, and **-tūdin** (see Exs. 4, 6, 8). Frame a rule for the formation of Feminine Abstracts denoting Quality.

716. Form Feminine Abstracts in -ia from the following —

JECTIVE STEMS: **adulēscēt-** (st. of **adulēscēns**), *young*; **diligēt-** (st. of **diligēns**), *attentive*; **grāto-** (st. of **grātus**), *pleasing*; **infāmi-** (st. of **infāmis**), *disreputable*; **inopi-** (st. of **inops**), *without resources*; **invido-** (st. of **invidus**), *envious*; **insciēt-** (st. of **insciēns**), *inexperienced*; **irācundō-** (st. of **irācundus**), *passionate*; **misericordi-** (st. of **misericors**), *tender-hearted*; **potēt-** (st. of **potēns**), *powerful*; **prūdēt-** (st. of **prūdēns**), *sagacious*; **sciēt-** (st. of **sciēns**), *knowing*; **superbo-** (st. of **superbus**), *proud*.

717. Form, in like manner, Feminine Abstracts in from the following —

STANTIVE STEMS: **custōd-** (st. of **custōs**), *guard*; **milit-** (st. of **miles**), *soldier*; **victōr-** (st. of **victor**), *victor*.

718. Form Feminine Abstracts in -tia from the following —

JECTIVE STEMS: **amīco-** (st. of **amīcus**), *friendly*; **dūro-** (st. of **dūrus**), *hard*; **inimīco-** (st. of **inimīcus**), *unfriendly*; **laeto-** (st. of **laetus**), *joyful*; **pudīco-** (st. of **pudīcus**), *modest*.

719. Form, in like manner, a Feminine Abstract in from the following —

STANTIVE STEM: **puero-** (st. of **puer**), *child*.

720. Form Feminine Abstracts in **-tās** from the following —

ADJECTIVE STEMS: **aequo-** (st. of *aequus*), *even*; **alacri-** (st. of *alacer*), *eager*; **atrōci-** (st. of *atrōx*), *savage*; **celeri-** (st. of *celer*), *swift*; **crūdēli-** (st. of *crūdēlis*), *cruel*; **cupido-** (st. of *cupidus*), *desirous*; **familiāri-** (st. of *familiāris*), *intimate*; **hūmāno-** (st. of *hūmānus*), *refined*; **inīquo-** (st. of *inīquus*), *unjust*, **nōbili-** (st. of *nōbilis*), *noble*; **obscurō-** (st. of *obscurus*), *obscure*; **opportūno-** (st. of *opportūnus*), *convenient*; **probo-** (st. of *probus*), *upright*; **vāno-** (st. of *vānus*), *empty*; **vēro-** (st. of *vērus*), *true*.

721. Form, in like manner, Feminine Abstracts in **-tās** from the following —

SUBSTANTIVE STEMS: **cīvi-** (st. of *cīvis*), *citizen*; **auctōr-**³ (st. of *auctor*), *author*; **hērēd-**³ (st. of *hērēs*), *heir*.

722. Form Feminine Abstracts in **-tūdō** from the following —

ADJECTIVE STEMS: **alto-** (st. of *altus*), *high*; **longo-** (st. of *longus*), *long*; **māgno-** (st. of *māgnus*), *great*; **multo-** (st. of *multus*), *much*; **sōlo-** (st. of *sōlus*), *alone*; **cōnsuēto-**⁴ (st. of *cōnsuētus*), *accustomed*.

¹ See foot-note 5, Lesson XCIII.

² Final **-o-** of the stem is here weakened to **-i-** before the suffix.

³ The suffix here assumes **-i-** after the analogy of vowel stems, and becomes **-itāt-**, nom. **-itās**.

⁴ The syllable **-ti-** in ***cōnsuētītūdō** produced a stuttering sound; it therefore disappeared, and the form became **cōnsuētūdō**.

LESSON XCV.

FORMATION : ADJECTIVES.

I. ADJECTIVES DENOTING BELONGING OR PERTAINING TO.

723.

EXAMPLES.

I. SUBSTANTIVE STEMS.	II. SUFFIXES.	III. STEMS.	IV. ADJECTIVES DENOTING BE- LONGING OR PERTAINING TO.
1. <i>rēg-</i> (st. of <i>rēx</i>), <i>king</i> ,	$\left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} \text{ } \end{array}} \right\} + \text{-āli-}$	$= \text{rēgāli-}$, st. of	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rēgālis, belonging or} \\ \text{pertaining to kings,} \\ \text{regal, royal.} \end{array} \right.$
2. <i>nāvi</i> ⁻¹ (st. of <i>nāvis</i>), <i>ship</i> ,	$\left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} \text{ } \end{array}} \right\} + \text{-āli-}$	$= \text{nāvāli-}$, st. of	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{nāvālis, belonging or} \\ \text{pertaining to ships,} \\ \text{naval.} \end{array} \right.$
3. <i>milit-</i> (st. of <i>miles</i>), <i>sol-</i> <i>dier</i> ,	$\left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} \text{ } \end{array}} \right\} + \text{-āri-}^2$	$= \text{militāri-}$, st. of	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{militāris, belonging} \\ \text{or pertaining to} \\ \text{soldiers, military.} \end{array} \right.$
4. <i>auxilio</i> ⁻¹ (st. of <i>auxili-</i> <i>um</i>), <i>help</i> ,	$\left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} \text{ } \end{array}} \right\} + \text{-āri-}^2$	$= \text{auxiliāri-}$, st. of	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{auxiliāris, belonging} \\ \text{or pertaining to} \\ \text{help, auxiliary.} \end{array} \right.$
5. <i>cīvi</i> ⁻¹ (st. of <i>cīvis</i>), <i>citi-</i> <i>zen</i> ,	$\left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} \text{ } \end{array}} \right\} + \text{-ili-}$	$= \text{cīvīli-}$, st. of	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{cīvīlis, belonging or} \\ \text{pertaining to citi-} \\ \text{zens, civil.} \end{array} \right.$
6. <i>viro</i> ⁻¹ (st. of <i>vir</i>), <i>man</i> ,	$\left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} \text{ } \end{array}} \right\} + \text{-ili-}$	$= \text{virīli-}$, st. of	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{virīlis, belonging or} \\ \text{pertaining to men,} \\ \text{manly.} \end{array} \right.$
7. <i>legiōn-</i> (st. of <i>legiō</i>), <i>le-</i> <i>gion</i> ,	$\left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} \text{ } \end{array}} \right\} + \text{-ārio-}$	$= \text{legiōnārio-}$, st. of	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{legiōnārius, belong-} \\ \text{ing or pertaining to} \\ \text{legions, legionary.} \end{array} \right.$
8. <i>ālā</i> ⁻¹ (st. of <i>āla</i>), <i>wing</i> ,	$\left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} \text{ } \end{array}} \right\} + \text{-ārio-}$	$= \text{ālārio-}$, st. of	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ālārius, belonging or} \\ \text{pertaining to the} \\ \text{wing.} \end{array} \right.$

724. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the Adjectives in column IV. denote *belonging* or *pertaining to*, and that they are

I.	II.	III.	IV.
NOUN ¹ STEMS.	CHARACTERISTIC FORMATIVE VOWELS.	VERB STEMS.	DENOMINATIVE VERBS.
4. <i>nōmin-</i> (st. of <i>nōmen</i>), NAME, }	+ <i>-ā-</i> = <i>nōminā-</i> , st. of }	<i>nōminō</i> , call by NAME, NAME.	
5. <i>clāro</i> ² (st. of <i>clārus</i>), bright, }	+ <i>-ē-</i> = <i>clārē-</i> , st. of }	<i>clāreō</i> , be bright.	
6. <i>flōs</i> ³ (st. of <i>flōs</i>), flower, }	+ <i>-ē-</i> = <i>flōrē-</i> , st. of }	<i>flōreō</i> , be in flower.	
7. <i>fini</i> ² (st. of <i>finis</i>), end, }	+ <i>-ī-</i> = <i>finī-</i> , st. of }	<i>finiō</i> , put an end to.	
8. <i>mollī</i> ² (st. of <i>mollis</i>), soft, }	+ <i>-ī-</i> = <i>mollī-</i> , st. of }	<i>mollīō</i> , make soft, soften.	
9. <i>īnsāno</i> ² (st. of <i>īnsānus</i>), in- <i>sane</i> , }	+ <i>-ī-</i> = <i>īnsānī-</i> , st. of }	<i>īnsāniō</i> , be insane.	

730. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *stems* of the *verbs* in column IV. are formed from the corresponding *noun stems* in column I. by the addition of the *characteristic vowels* of the *first* (see Exs. 1-4), *second* (see Exs. 5 and 6), and *fourth* (see Exs. 7-9) *conjugations*. Because these verbs are formed from *noun stems*, they are called *Denominatives*. Note that the *noun stems* which end in a *vowel* (see Exs. 1-3, 5, 7-9) *lose* this vowel before the characteristic vowels *-ā-*, *-ē-*, *-ī-*. Frame a rule for the formation of Denominative Verbs.

731. Form Denominative Verbs of the First Conjugation from the following—

NOUN¹ STEMS: *loco-* (st. of *locus*), place; *cūrā-* (st. of *cūra*), care; *nūntio-* (st. of *nūntius*), messenger; *pūgnā-* (st. of *pūgna*), fight; *honesto-* (st. of *honestus*), honorable; *interpret-*⁴ (st. of *interpre*s), interpreter; *labōs*³ (st. of *labor*), labor; *laud-* (st. of *laus*), praise; *memori-* (st. of *memor*), mind-ful; *proelio*⁴ (st. of *proelium*), battle; *rēgno-* (st. of *rēgnum*), sovereignty; *salūt-* (st. of *salūs*), safety; *celebri-* (st. of *celeber*), frequented; *sacro-* (st. of *sacer*), sacred; *damno-* (st. of *damnum*), loss; *equit-* (st. of *eques*), horse-

man; *glōriā*⁴ (st. of *glōria*), *glory*; *hiem-* (st. of *hiems*), *winter*; *jūdic-* (st. of *jūdex*), *judge*; *laeto*⁴ (st. of *laetus*), *joyful*; *libero-* (st. of *liber*), *free*; *nūdo-* (st. of *nūdus*), *bare*; *novo-* (st. of *novus*), *new*; *integro-* (st. of *integer*), *whole*; *vulnes*³ (st. of *vulnus*), *wound*.

732. Form Denominative Verbs of the Second Conjugation from the following —

NOUN¹ STEMS: *albo-* (st. of *albus*), *white*; *flāvo-* (st. of *flāvus*), *yellow*; *lūc-* (st. of *lūx*), *light*.

733. Form Denominative Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation from the following —

NOUN¹ STEMS: *lēni-* (st. of *lēnis*), *soft*; *saevo-* (st. of *saevus*), *fierce*; *siti-* (st. of *sitis*), *thirst*; *custōd-* (st. of *custōs*), *guard*.

¹ See foot-note 8, Lesson XCIII.

² See foot-note 5, Lesson XCIII.

³ See foot-note 5, Lesson XCV.

⁴ Make the verb deponent, i.e., give it a passive form with active or reflexive meaning.

mē scripserat, Oedipum⁹ Colōnēum,⁹ recitāsse¹⁰ iudiciis, quaesisseque¹¹ num illud¹² carmen dēsipientis vidērētur.¹³ Quō¹⁴ recitātō, sententiis iudicium est liberātus.

— [Cic. Cat. Maj. VII.] †

¹ **Sophoclēs**, -is, m., *Sophocles*, the famous Attic tragic poet, born at the village of Colonus, near Athens, 495 B.C.; died 406 B.C.

² Perfect indicative of **faciō**, *make, compose*.

³ *this* (lit., which), acc. neut. sing.

⁴ **cum vidērētur**, *as he was thought*.

⁵ *to the end that*.

⁶ **cum removērent**, *might remove him*.

⁷ **eam**, acc. sing. fem., *that*.

⁸ **quam**, acc. sing. fem., *which*.

⁹ **Oedipūs**, -odis and -i, m., *Oedipus*; **Colōnēus**, -a, -um, adj., *of Colonus*.

The "Oedipus of Colonus," which was the last and finest play of Sophocles, recalls the scenery and the religious associations of the poet's native village (cf. footnote 1). The passage said to have been recited on the occasion here referred to, contains a chorus descriptive of the beauties of Athens.

¹⁰ *to have recited*.

¹¹ *to have asked*.

¹² **illud**, nom. neut. sing., *that*.

¹³ *seemed* [to them].

¹⁴ **Quō**, abl. neut. sing., *this* (lit., which).

737.

Tit for Tat.

[To follow Lesson XLII.]

Nāsica¹ cum ad² poētam Ennium³ vēnisset,² ēique⁴ ab ōstiō quaerentī Ennium ancilla dīxisset⁴ domī nōn esse,⁵ Nāsica sēnsit illam⁶ dominī jūssū dīxisse⁶ et illum⁷ intus esse.⁷ Paucis post diēbus, cum ad Nāsicam vēnisset Ennius et eum⁸ ā jānuā quaereret,⁸ exclāmat Nāsica sē⁹ domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius: "Quid?¹⁰ ego nōn cōgnōscō," inquit, "vōcem tuam?" Hic Nāsica: "Homo es impudēns. Ego, cum tē quaererem,¹¹ ancillae tuae crēdidī tē⁹ domī nōn esse; tū mihi¹² nōn crēdis ipsi¹²?"

— [Cic. de Orat. 2, LXVIII.]

¹ **Nāsica**, -ae, m., *Nasica* (Publius Cornelius Scipio Nasica), a celebrated Roman jurist.

² **ad vēnisset**, *had come to* [call on].

³ **Ennius**, -ii, m., *Ennius* (Quintus), the father of Roman epic poetry; lived 239–169 B.C.

⁴ **ēi** (dat.) **dīxisset**, *had told him*.

⁵ **domī esse**, *was* (lit., to be) *at home*.

⁶ **illam dīxisse**, *that she had said* [so].

⁷ **illum esse**, *that his friend was* (lit., him to be).

⁸ **eum quaereret**, *inquired for him*.

⁹ The subject of an infin. (here **esse**) is in the acc.

¹⁰ *What?*

¹¹ *I inquired for*.

¹² **ipsi**, dat. sing., *self*.

738.

The Soul Immortal.

[To follow Lesson XLVI.]

Apud Xenophōntem¹ moriēns Cŷrus² mājor haec dicit :
 “Nōlite arbitrārī,³ ō meī cārissimī filiī, mē,⁴ cum ā vōbīs
 discēsserō, nusquā aut nūllum fore.⁵ Nec enim, dum
 eram vōbīscum, animum meum vidēbātis, sed eum esse in
 hōc corpore ex iīs rēbus quās⁶ gerēbam intellegēbātis.
 Eundem⁴ igitur esse crēditōte, etiam sī nūllum vidēbitis.

—[Cic. Cat. Maj. XXII.]

¹ The reference is to a passage in Xenophon's *Cyropaedia*, an historical romance founded on the career of Cyrus the elder.

² Cyrus the elder founded the Persian empire 559 B.C.; after a long and prosperous reign, he was killed in battle 529 B.C. Xenophon, however, in the passage here referred to, represents him as dying

quietly in bed with his children and friends about him.

³ Nōlite arbitrārī, *do not suppose* (lit., be unwilling to suppose).

⁴ cf. 737, foot-note 9.

⁵ fore, used as fut. infin. of *sum*; mē fore, *that I shall be*.

⁶ quās, acc. pl. fem., *which*.

739.

Dead Muscle.

[To follow Lesson L.]

Quae¹ vōx potest esse² contemptior quam Milōnis Crotōni-
 ātae?³ quī, cum jam senex esset⁴ āthlētāsque sē exercentis
 in curriculō vidēret,⁵ adspexisse⁶ lacertōs suōs dīcitur inlacri-
 mānsque dīxisse:⁷ “At hī quidem mortuī jam sunt.” Nōn
 vērō tam istī quam tū ipse, nūgātor! Neque enim ex tē
 umquam es nōbilitātus, sed ex lateribus et lacertis tuīs.

—[Cic. Cat. Maj. IX.]

¹ Quae, interrog. pron., nom. sing. fem., *what*.

² See Lesson LIII., foot-note 5.

³ Milō, -ōnis, *Milo*; Crotōniātēs, -ae, m., *inhabitant of Crotona*. Milo was a famous athlete of Crotona, in

Italy; many stories of his extraordinary feats are told by the ancient writers.

⁴ he was.

⁵ saw.

⁶ to have looked at.

⁷ to have said.

740.

Tertia's Pet Dog.

[To follow Lesson LIV.]

L. Paullus, cōsul iterum, cum ēi bellum ut¹ cum rége Persē² gereret¹ obtigisset, ut eā ipsā diē domum³ ad vesperum rediit,⁴ filiōlam suam Tertiam,⁵ quae tum erat admodum parva, osculāns⁶ animum advertit tristiculam. "Quid est," inquit,⁷ "mea Tertia? quid⁸ trīstis es?" "Mi⁹ pater," inquit, "Persa¹⁰ periit."¹¹ Tum ille artius¹² puellam complexus:¹³ "Accipiō," inquit, "mea filia, ōmen." Erat autem mortuus catellus eō nōmine.¹⁴ — [Cic. *de Div.* 1, XLVI.]

¹ *ei gereret*, to conduct (lit., that he would conduct).

² See *Persēs* in general vocabulary; for *act.* *Persē*, cf. A. & G. 37 (*comē-tēs*); 14, 50 (*pyritēs*).

³ *Acc.* of place to which without prep.

⁴ See *redo* in general vocabulary.

⁵ The English form is the same as the Latin noun.

⁶ See *osculor* in general vocab.; *osculor* has a pass. form with act. meaning.

⁷ See Lesson LIII., foot-note 12.

⁸ Adverbial accusative, *why*.

⁹ See Lesson XX., foot-note 6.

¹⁰ Name of a pet dog; also a possible form of the name *Persēs*.

¹¹ See *pereō* in general vocabulary.

¹² *artius*, adv., *more closely, closer*.

¹³ See *complector* in general vocabulary; *complector* has a pass. form with active meaning.

¹⁴ cf. *Ets.* in 322.

741. Roman Character in the Earlier Days of the Republic.

[To follow Lesson LIX.]

Curio¹ ad focum² sedentī māgnūm aurī pondus Samnitēs³ cum attulissent,⁴ repudiātī sunt. Nōn enim aurū habere praeclārū sibi vidērī dixit, sed eīs quī habērent aurum imperāre. — [Cic. *Cat. Maj.* XVI.]

¹ Manius Curius Dentātus, consul three times; he is often referred to in Cicero's writings as a noble example of the early Roman simplicity.

² *focus*, -ī, m., *fire-place, hearth*. The *focus* was a small platform of brick or stone raised a few inches above the ground; it stood in the *ātrium*, which in primitive times served as sitting room, dining room, and kitchen.

³ *Samnitēs*, -īum, m., *the Samnites*. The incident here narrated belongs to the period (about 273 B.C.) which followed the great wars of the Romans with the Samnites and Pyrrhus. Curius then retired to his farm in the Sabine country, and is said to have been found here by the Samnite ambassadors, sitting at his hearth and roasting turnips.

⁴ See *adferō* in general vocabulary.

Brain Better than Brawn.

[To follow Lesson LXI.]

pie¹ per stadium² ingressus esse³ Milō⁴ dicitur cum
sustinēret bovem. Utrum⁵ igitur hās corporis an⁶
rae⁶ tibi mālīs⁷ vīrīs⁸ ingenīi darī? — [Cic. *Cat. Maj.* X.]

Olympia, -ae, f., *Olympia*, a
n in Elis, celebrated as the
e Olympic games; these games
at intervals of four years and
spectators and participants
rts of the world inhabited or
y Greeks.

stadium, -ii, n., *race-course*. The
was an oblong area having
straight and the other semi-
nd having its sides parallel.
is area rose the seats of the

The stadium was especially
or the foot-race. The course
rom the straight end (see A,
a point near the centre of the
at the opposite end (see B,
d was 606½ feet long.

ingredior in general vocab.;
r has a pass. form with act.

⁴ See 739, foot-note 3.

⁵ See references in foot-note 1, Lesson
XLI.

⁶ **Pythagorās**, -ae, m., *Pythagoras*,
a celebrated Greek philosopher who
taught at Crotona in Italy. Three
hundred of his disciples were formed
into a brotherhood, partly philosophical,
partly religious, and partly political, for
the purpose of studying the doctrines of
their master, and cultivating the observ-
ances which he enjoined. The contrast
drawn in the text between Pythagoras
and Milo is suggested by the fact that
Milo was a member of this brotherhood.

⁷ **mālīs**, second sing. pres. subj. of
mālō, *prefer*; translate: *should you
prefer?*

⁸ See refs. in foot-note 10, Lesson
XXXVI.

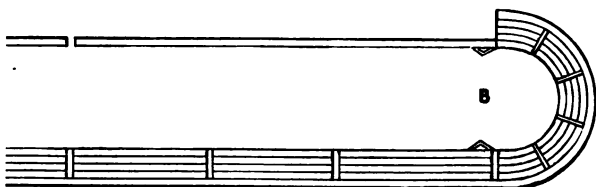


Fig. 1. — Ground-plan of a stadium at Cibiya in Lycia.

READING LESSONS.

I.

743. Division into Parties a Characteristic Feature of Gallic Society.

In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis partibusque,¹ sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiones sunt; earumque factionum principes sunt qui² summam auctoritatem eorum iudicio³ habere existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium⁴ iudiciumque⁴ summa⁵ omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat.⁶ Idque ejus rei causā⁷ antiquitus institutum⁸ videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiorum auxilium⁹ egret:¹⁰ suos enim¹¹ quisque opprimi et circumveniri non patitur, neque, aliter si faciat,¹² ullam inter suos habet¹³ auctoritatem. Haec eadem ratio est in summa¹⁴ totius Galliae;¹⁵ namque omnes civitates in partes divisaе sunt duae.

744. Classification of the Inhabitants of Gaul.

In omni Galliā eorum hominum qui aliquo sunt numero¹ atque honore,¹ genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs² paene servorum habetur loco,³ quae⁴ nihil audet per se, nullo adhibetur consilio.⁵ Plērique, cum aut aere alieno aut magnitudine tributorum aut injuriā potentiōrum premuntur, sese in servitūtem dicant nobilibus: in⁶ hos eadem omnia sunt jura quae dominis⁷ in⁶ servos. Sed de his duobus generibus⁸ alterum est Druidum,⁹ alterum equitum.

745. The Druids the Supreme Authority in Religious and Social Matters.

Illi¹ rebus divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur. Ad hos magnus adolescentium numerus disciplinae causā concurrat, magnoque hī² sunt apud eos honore. Nam ferē de omnibus contrō-

versūs pūblicis prīvātisque cōstituunt; et sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hēreditāte, sī dē finibus contrōversia est, idem³ dēcernunt; praemia poenāsque cōstituunt. Sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit,⁴ sacrificiis interdicunt.⁵ Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum,⁵ hī numerō⁶ impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur; hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant; neque hīs petentibus jūs redditur neque honōs ullus cōmunicātur.

746. The Government of the Druids; their Annual Meeting; the Origin of their System.

Hīs autem omnibus Druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō,¹ aut, sī quī² ex reliquīs³ excellit dignitāte, succēdit; aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō⁴ Druidum, nōnunquam etiam armis, dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in finibus Carnūtum,⁵ quae regiō tōtius Galliae⁶ media habētur, cōnsidunt in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt, eōrumque dēcrētis jūdicīisque pārent. Disciplīna⁷ in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trāslāta esse exīstimātur;⁸ et nunc quī⁹ diligentius¹⁰ eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō discendī causā proficiscuntur.

747. Immunities Enjoyed by the Druids; their Doctrines Orally Transmitted.

Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōsuērunt,¹ neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt; militiae vacatiōnem omniumque rērum habent immūnitātem. Tantīs excitātī praemiis, et² suā sponte multi in disciplīnam conveniunt³ et ā parentibus propīnquisque mittuntur.⁴ Māgnū ibi⁵ numerum versuum ēdiscere⁶ dicuntur:⁶ itaque annōs nōnnālli vicēnōs⁷ in disciplīnā⁸ permanent. Neque fās⁹ esse exīstimant ea lītterīs

mandāre,¹⁰ cum¹¹ in reliquīs ferē rēbus, publicīs privātisque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur.¹² Id¹³ mihi duābus dē causīs instituisse videntur,¹⁴ quod neque in vulgum disciplinam efferri velint,¹⁵ neque eōs quī discunt litterīs¹⁶ cōfissos minus memoriae studere; quod ferē plērisque accidit¹⁷ ut praesidiō¹⁷ litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō¹⁸ ac memoriam remittant.¹⁹

748. Teachings of the Druids.

In primīs¹ hōc volunt persuādere,² nōn interire animās, sed ab aliīs³ post mortem trānsire ad aliōs,³ atque hōc⁴ māximē ad virtutem excitārī⁵ putant, metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praeterea dē sideribus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac terrārum⁶ māgnitūdine, dē rerum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortalium vī ac potestāte disputant et juventūtī trādunt.

749. The Knights or Warrior Class.

Alterum genus est equitum.¹ Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod² bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī injūriās inferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent³), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque eōrum ut quisque⁴ est genere cōpūsque amplissimus, ita⁴ plurimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamque nōvērunt.⁵

750. Human Sacrifices Prevalent among the Gauls.

Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus,¹ atque ob eam causam quī sunt adfectī graviōribus² morbis quique in proeliis periculisque versantur,³ aut prō victimis hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrisque⁴ ad ea sacrificia Druidibus ūtantur, quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vitā reddātur,⁵ nōn posse deōrum immortalium nūmen placārī arbitrantur, publicēque ejusdem generis habent institūta⁶ sacrificia. Alii immānī māgnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vivīs hominibus

complent; quibus succēnsīs, circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut in latrōciniō aut aliquā noxā sint comprehēsi⁷ grātiōra diīs immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum ējus generis cōpia dēfēcit,⁸ etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

751. The Gods Worshipped by the Gauls.

Deūm māximē Mercurium colunt. Hūjus sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc¹ omnium inventōrem¹ artium ferunt, hunc viārum² atque itinerum² ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim māximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem³ et Mārtē et Jovem⁴ et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum⁵ initia trādere, Jovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtē bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō⁶ dīmicāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō⁶ cēperint⁷ plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt. Multis in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs tumultōs locis⁸ cōnsecrātis cōspicārī licet, neque saepe accidit⁹ ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne¹⁰ aut capta apud sē¹¹ occultāre aut posita tollere audēret;¹² gravissimum ēī rēi supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

752. Traditional Origin of the Gauls; their Mode of Designating Intervals of Time; the Relation of Children to Parents.

Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte¹ prōgnātōs praedicant, idque² ab Druidibus prōditum dicunt. Ob eam causam³ spatia omnis temporis⁴ nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium⁵ finiunt⁶; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur.⁷ In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtis hōc ferē⁸ ab reliquīs differunt,⁹ quod suōs liberōs,¹⁰ nisi cum¹¹ adolēverunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre¹² nōn patiuntur; filiūque puerilī aetate¹³ in publicō in cōspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

✓ 753. Marriage Settlements among the Gauls; Subjection of Wives.

Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonīs, aestimātiōne factā, cum dōtibus commūnicant.¹ Hūjus omnis pecūniae conjūctim² ratiō habētur fructūsque servantur: uter eōrum vitā³ superārit,⁴ ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs, sicutī in liberōs, vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae inlustrīore locō nātus decēssit,⁵ ejus propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit,⁵ dē uxōribus in servilem modum⁶ quaeestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est,⁷ ignī atque omnibus tormentis excruciatīs interficiunt.

✕ 754. Funeral Rites and Usages. ✓

Fūnera sunt prō cultū¹ Gallōrum māgnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vivīs² cordī² fuisse arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia: ac paulō³ suprā hanc memoriā⁴ servi et clientēs, quos ab iis dilēctos esse cōstābat, jūstis fūneribus⁵ cōfectis, unā cremābantur.

755. Free Discussion of Public Questions Forbidden by Law.

Quae civitatēs commodius¹ suam rem publicam administrāre existimantur,² habent lēgibus sāctum,³ sī quis⁴ quid⁴ dē rē publicā ā finitimis rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit,⁵ utī ad magistrātum dēferat⁶ nēve⁷ cum quō⁴ aliō commūnicet: quod saepe hominēs temerariōs atque imperitōs falsis rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōsiliū capere⁸ cōgnitum est.⁹ Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt¹⁰ occultant; quaeque esse ex ūsū jūdicāvērunt, multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē publicā nisi per conciliū¹¹ loquī nōn concēditur.

II.

756. The Worship of the Germans; their Out-of-Door Life.

Germānī multum ab hāc¹ cōsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque Druidēs habent quī rēbus dīvinīs praesint, neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et² Volcānum³ et² Lūnam: reliquōs nē fāmā⁴ quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus⁵ atque in studiīs rēi militāris⁶ cōnsistit; ab parvulis⁷ labōrī ac dūritiae student.

757. Means of Subsistence; Annual Change of Abode.

Agricultūrae nōn student; māiorque pars eorum victūs in lacte, cāseō,¹ carne¹ cōnsistit. Neque quisquam² agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs, sed magistrātūs ac principes in annōs singulōs³ gentibus cōgnātiōnibusque hominum quī ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī⁴ attribuunt, atque annō⁵ post aliō trānsire cōgunt.

758. The Reasons Assigned for this Annual Change of Abode.

Ejus rēi multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā cōsuētūdine captū studium bellī gerendī agricultūrā¹ commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant potentiōrēsque humiliōrēs possēssiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs² aedificent; nē qua³ oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factionēs dissēsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, [cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.⁴]

759. Deserted Frontiers Deemed an Evidence of Military Greatness.

Cīvitātibus māxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vastātis finibus¹ sōlitudinēs habēre. Hōc² propriū³ virtū-

tis⁴ exīstīmant, expulsōs agrīs finitīmōs cēdere neque quemquam⁵ prope audēre cōsistere: simul hōc⁶ sē fore⁷ tūtiorēs arbitrantur, repentināe incursiōnis timōre sublātō.⁸ X

**760. Methods of Government in War and in Peace;
Predatory Warfare Deemed Honorable.**

Cum bellum cīvītās aut inlātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs quī ēī bellō praesint¹ ut vītāe necisque habeant² potestatem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis³ magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum⁴ atque pāgōrum⁴ inter suōs jūsdicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent⁵ infāmiam quae extrā finēs cūjusque cīvītātis fiunt; atque ea juventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiāe minuendae causā fieri praedicant. X

761. Loyalty of the Germans to their Chiefs; Hospitality to Strangers.

Atque ubī quis¹ ex prīncipibus² in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore, quī³ sequī velint⁴ profiteantur,⁵ cōnsurgunt īī quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ab multitudine conlaudantur; quī³ ex hīs⁶ secūtī nōn sunt, in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs⁷ rerum postea fidēs dērogātur.⁸ Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī³ quācumque dē causā ad eōs vērēerunt, ab injūriā prohibent, sāctōs⁹ habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque communicātur. X

EXPLANATORY NOTES ON THE PRECEDING READING LESSONS.

743. ¹ *pāgīs* refers to the *districts*; *partibus* to the *parts* or *subdivisions* of the districts. — ² *quī*, *those who*; cf. 393 and 394. — ³ *eōrum jūdiciō*, *in their (i.e., the Gauls') judgment*. — ⁴ *arbitrium*, *decision* (of the arbitrator); *jūdicium*, *sentence* (of the judge). — ⁵ *summa redeat*, *the final appeal is to be made*. — ⁶ *redeat*: for mood, cf. 573, Ex. 1. — ⁷ Note the position of *causā*. — ⁸ *institūtum*: sc. *esse*. — ⁹ *auxilli*: A. & G. 223; H. 410, V., 1; G. 389, Rem. 2. — ¹⁰ *egēret*: for mood, cf. 528, Ex. 2; note that *egēret* takes its tense from *institūtum* (*esse*), not from *vidētur*: A. & G. 287, a; H. 495, IV.; G. 518, Exc. — ¹¹ Note that *enim* is postpositive. — ¹² *faciat*: for mood and tense, cf. 601, Ex. 1. — ¹³ *habet*: H. 511, 1, (1). — ¹⁴ *in summā*, *in general*. — ¹⁵ *Galliae*: predicate possessive genitive limiting *ratio* and separated from it by *est*: A. & G. 214, c; H. 401; G. 365.

744. ¹ *numerō* and *honōre*: cf. 322, Ex. 6. — ² *plēbēs*: archaic form of nominative = *plēbs*. — ³ *locō*: for absence of preposition, see A. & G. 258, f; H. 425, 2; G. 385, Rem. — ⁴ *quae*: *and they* (referring to the common people). — ⁵ *cōnsiliō*: dat., *they are admitted to no council*. — ⁶ *in*: *over*. — ⁷ sc. *sunt*; for case of *dominiis*, cf. Exs. in 449. — ⁸ Might the partitive genitive have been used in place of *dē . . . generibus*? See A. & G. 216, c; H. 397, n. 3; G. 371, Rem. 5. Why is it not used? — ⁹ *Druidum*: A. & G. 214, c; H. 401; G. 365.

745. ¹ *Illī*: refers to *Druidum* at the end of 744. — ² *hī*: refers to the Druids. — ³ *idem*: nom. pl. — ⁴ *dēcrētō nōn stetit*: *does not acquiesce in the decision*; note that *stetit* is construed with the ablative (*dēcrētō*); for tense of *stetit* (translated present), see A. & G. 279, b; H. 471, 5. — ⁵ *sacrificiis interdicunt* and *Quibus est interdictum*: with *interdicō*, the thing from which the person is excluded is expressed by the abl. of separation (see *sacrificiis*); the person on whom the prohibition is laid is expressed by the dat. (see *Quibus*). For the impersonal use of *interdicō* in the pass., cf. Exs. in 522. — ⁶ *numerō*: abl. of place where, without prep.

746. ¹ *mortuō*: perf. part. of *morior*; *hōc mortuō*, *at his death*. — ² *quī*: used subst. = *quis*. — ³ *ex reliquis*: see refs. in 744, note 8. — ⁴ *suffrāgiō*: in the same construction as *armis*. — ⁵ *Carnūtum*:

southwest of Paris, between the Seine and Loire. — ⁶ *Galliae*: gen. after *media*: A. & G. 218, *a*; H. 399, 3; G. 373. — ⁷ *Disciplina*: the *Druidical system*. — ⁸ Note that Caesar says here: *disciplina trāslāta esse existimātur*, the system is thought to have been transferred; might he have said: *disciplinam trāslātā esse existimātur*, it is thought that the system was transferred? See A. & G. 330, *b*; H. 534, n. 1, (2); G. 528. — ⁹ *quī*: cf. 743, note 2. — ¹⁰ *diligentius cōgnōscere*: to gain a more thorough acquaintance with, or a more accurate knowledge of.

747. ¹ *cōnsuērunt*: cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 2. — ² *et*: both. — ³ *in disciplinam conveniunt*: place themselves under instruction; hence, enter the order. — ⁴ *mittuntur*: sc. *multi*. — ⁵ *ēdiscere*: to learn by heart; note the intensive force of the prep. — ⁶ Note that Caesar says: *ēdiscere dicuntur*; might he have said: *eōs ēdiscere dicitur*? cf. 746, note 8. — ⁷ *vicēnōs*: why not *viginti*? — ⁸ *in disciplinā*: under training. — ⁹ *fās*, def. neut., *divine law*; hence, translated adjectively, *right, lawful, proper*. — ¹⁰ *litteris mandāre*: to commit to writing. — ¹¹ *cum*: although. — ¹² *ūtantur*: for mood, cf. 642, Ex. 3. — ¹³ *Id*: this practice. — ¹⁴ *videntur*: cf. note 6. — ¹⁵ Note that in *quod . . . velint* the writer is reporting the reason of the Druids; whereas, below, in *quod . . . accidit* he is assigning a reason of his own. For the difference of mood, see A. & G. 321 and *a*; H. 516, I. and II.; G. 540 and 541. — ¹⁶ *litteris*: abl. with *cōnfisōs*, depending on. — ¹⁷ *praesidiō*: through dependence on. — ¹⁸ *perdiscendō*: note the intensive force of the prep., and cf. note 5. — ¹⁹ *remittant*: translate *relax* with *diligentiam*, *enfeeble* with *memoriam*; for mood, cf. 556, Ex. 5.

748. ¹ *In primis*: among their foremost [doctrines]; hence, especially, particularly. — ² *persuādēre*: to inculcate. — ³ *ab aliis ad aliōs*: from one body to another. — ⁴ *hōc*: by this belief. — ⁵ *excitārī*: sc. *hominēs*. — ⁶ *terrārum*: the earth (as made up of various lands).

749. ¹ *equitum*: cf. 744, note 9. — ² *aliquid*: why not *aliquid*? See A. & G. 105, *d*, n.; H. 190, n. 1; G. 105, 1. — ³ *utī . . . inferrent* and *utī . . . prōpulsārent* are subst. clauses of result in apposition with *quod*; for the subjunctives, cf. Exs. in 556. — ⁴ *ut quisque amplissimus . . . ita plūrimōs*: the more distinguished . . . the more numerous. — ⁵ *nōvērunt*: acknowledge, recognize.

750. ¹ *religiōnibus*: superstition. — ² *graviōribus*: of unusual severity; cf. Lesson XXX., foot-note 4. — ³ *versantur*: are in the midst

of, are encompassed by. — ⁴ **administris**: predicate abl. agreeing in case with **Druidibus**; translate: *they employ the Druids as agents*. — ⁵ **reddatur**: A. & G. 336 (last sentence); H. 524; G. 653. The person making the sacrifice thinks (direct discourse): **nisi vita reddetur, nōn potest nūmen placāri**. — ⁶ **instituta**: predicate participle; translate: *they have sacrifices established* (not *they have established sacrifices*). See A. & G. 292, c; H. 388, 1, n.; G. 230. — ⁷ **sint comprehēsi**: for mood, see refs. under note 5. — ⁸ **dēfecit**: *fails*; for tense, see refs. on **stetit**, 745, note 4.

751. ¹ **hunc** and **inventōrem**: for the two accs., cf. Exs. in 397. — ² **iter** is simply a road leading to a place; **via** is the usual road, often a paved street or highway. **Viārum atque itinerum dūcem**: *their guide in journeys*. — ³ **Apollinem**, etc.: sc. **colunt**. — ⁴ **Jovem**: see **Jūpiter** in general vocabulary. — ⁵ **operum atque artificiorum**: *manufactures and industrial arts*. — ⁶ **proeliō** and **bellō**: cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 11. — ⁷ **cēperint**: fut. perf. indic. — ⁸ **locis**: A. & G. 258, f; H. 425, 2. — ⁹ **accidit**: is it in the present tense or the perfect? To determine this, observe the tense of the dependent subjunctive **audēret**: A. & G. 287, a; H. 495, 1; G. 511, Rem. 2. — ¹⁰ **religiōne**: *sacredness* (of the offering). — ¹¹ **apud sē**: *at his own house*. — ¹² **audēret**: what is the construction of the clause **ut . . . audēret**? cf. 556, Ex. 5, and 561.

752. ¹ **Dite**: *i.e.*, the god of the under world; in other words, the Gauls believed that their ancestors sprang from the soil. — ² **id**: *this tradition*. — ³ **Ob eam causam**: *i.e.*, on account of their descent from the god of the realms of darkness. — ⁴ **spatia omnis temporis**: *all their periods of time*; grammatically, however, **omnis** agrees with **temporis**. — ⁵ **noctium**: cf. the English expressions *fortnight* (fourteen nights) and *sennight* (seven nights). — ⁶ **finiunt**: *compute, reckon*. — ⁷ **ut noctem diēs subsequatur**: according to the reckoning of the Gauls, therefore, the day began at sunset, and the celebration of all anniversaries was entered upon in the evening. Compare our Christmas Eve. — ⁸ **hōc ferē**: *chiefly in this*. — ⁹ **differunt**: *differ*; this meaning appears to be confined to the present system. — ¹⁰ **liberōs**: why not **puerōs**? See Lesson XVIII., foot-note 2. — ¹¹ **nisi cum**: *until*. — ¹² **ad sē adire**: *to appear before them*. — ¹³ **filium puerili aetate**: *a son who is a minor*.

753. ¹ **quantās pecūniās . . . accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonis cum dōtibus commūnicant**: *they add to the dowries out of their own*

resources as much money as they have received. — ² **conjūctim ratiō habētur**: a joint account is kept. — ³ **vītā**: cf. Exs. in 228. — ⁴ **superārit**: fut. perf. indic. — ⁵ **dēcēssit** and **vēnit**: for force of tense, cf. 750, note 8. — ⁶ **in servilem modum**: as in the case of slaves (i.e., by torture). — ⁷ **sī compertum est**: if guilt is proved; cf. also note 5.

754. ¹ **prō cultū**: considering the [imperfect] civilization. — ² **vivīs cordī**: **cordī esse alicui** = to lie near one's heart, to be dear to one; for the two datives, cf. Exs. in 452. — ³ **paulō**: cf. Exs. in 545. — ⁴ **suprā hanc memoriā**: before our time. — ⁵ **jūstis fūneribus**: the funeral rites proper, i.e., the regular or established funeral rites.

755. ¹ **commodius**: more judiciously (than the rest). — ² **existimantur**: cf. 746, note 8. — ³ **sānctum** is here a predicate participle belonging to the clause **utī . . . commūnicet**; cf. 750, note 6. — ⁴ **quis** and **quī** are indefinite after **sī** and **nē**. — ⁵ **accēperit**: perf. subj., not fut. perf. indic.; why? — ⁶ **dēferat**: cf. Exs. in 686. — ⁷ **nēve**: and not; **nēve** (not **neque**) is the regular continuative participle in negative imperative clauses. — ⁸ **capere**: rashly enter upon. — ⁹ **cōgnitum est**: experience has shown; what is the subject? — ¹⁰ **quae vīsa sunt**: what they deem proper. — ¹¹ **per concilium**: in public council.

756. ¹ **hāc**: i.e., of the Gauls. — ² **et**: for the repetition of the conjunction, see A. & G. 208, *b* (last part); H. 554, 6 (last part); G. 483, 2. — ³ **Volcānum**: Vulcan, the fire god; hence, here, fire. — ⁴ **fāmā**: note the position. — ⁵ **vēnātiōnibus**: plural used because of the repeated instances; translate by the singular. — ⁶ **in studiis rēi militāris**: in military pursuits. — ⁷ **ab parvulis**: from childhood.

757. ¹ For the omission of the conjunction **et** with **cāseō** and **carne**, see A. & G. 208, *b* (first sentence); H. 554, 6; G. 483, 2; cf. **Sōlem et Volcānum et Lūnam** in 756. — ² Note that the clause in which **quisquam** appears is negative; see refs. in foot-note 5, Lesson LVII. — ³ **in annōs singulōs**: every year. — ⁴ **agri**: construe with **quantum**: A. & G. 216, *a*, 3; H. 397, 3; G. 371; **quantum . . . agri**, as much land and in such a place as they think fit. — ⁵ **annō post**: the year after; cf. 545, Ex. 3.

758. ¹ **agricultūrā**: cf. 662, Ex. 4. — ² **vītandōs**: for the purpose of avoiding, etc.; note that **vītandōs** belongs to **frigora** as well as to **aestūs**, but that it agrees with the latter: A. & G. 187; H. 439, 1; G. 286. — ³ **nē qua**: see 755, note 4; for **qua** instead of **quae**, see A. & G. 105, *d*; H. 190, 1; G. 105, 1. — ⁴ **videat**: cf. 642, Ex. 2.

759. ¹ *vastātis finibus*: abl. abs., *by laying waste their frontiers*. — ² *Hōc*: explained by *expulsōs* . . . *cōsistere*. — ³ *proprium*: a *special proof* (something peculiarly belonging to). — ⁴ *virtūtis*: for the gen. after *proprius* (where the dat. might be looked for), see: A. & G. 218, *d*; H. 391, II., 4, (2); G. 356, Rem. 1. — ⁵ *quemquam*: see 757, note 2. — ⁶ *hōc*: abl. of cause. — ⁷ *fore*: used as fut. infin. of *sum*. — ⁸ *sublātō*: see *tollō* in general vocabulary.

760. ¹ *praesint*: subj. of purpose. — ² *habeant*: subj. of result. — ³ *commūnis*: *common to all, having general jurisdiction*. — ⁴ *regiō-num atque pāgōrum*: *provinces and districts*; *regiō*, a portion of country of indefinite extent; *pāgus*, a district having fixed boundaries. — ⁵ *habent*: *involve, are attended with*.

761. ¹ *quis*: *ubī* (whenever) has here the force of *sī*; hence *quis* is indefinite, *anyone*. — ² *ex principibus*: cf. 744, note 8. — ³ *qui*: *those who*, cf. 743, note 2. — ⁴ *velint*: for the mood, cf. 750, note 7. — ⁵ *profiteantur*: cf. Exs. in 686; translate: *and that those who wish to follow are to give in their names*. Restore to the direct form: *sē du-cem . . . profiteantur*. — ⁶ *his*: refers to those who have expressed a willingness to follow the chief; on *ex his*, cf. note 2. — ⁷ *his*: dat. (not abl.); cf. Exs. in 620. — ⁸ *omnium . . . dērogātur*: *all confidence is thereafter withdrawn from them*. — ⁹ *sānctus*, *sacred* in the sense of inviolable; *sacer*, *sacred* in the sense of consecrated to some divinity. Could *sacrōs*, then, be substituted for *sānctōs* in the present passage?

ABBREVIATIONS.

A. & G. , Allen and Greenough's Gram.	Interj. , interjection.
abbr. , abbreviation, abbreviated.	interrog. , inter. , interrogative.
abl. , ablative.	intr. , intransitive.
abl. pers. , ablative of the person.	irreg. , irregular.
abs. , absolute, absolutely.	lit. , literal, literally.
acc. , accusative.	loc. , locative.
acc. pers. , accusative of the person.	M. , masc. , masculine.
acc. th. , accusative of the thing.	mod. , modern.
act. , active.	N. , neuter.
adj. , adjective, adjectively.	n. , note.
adv. , adverb, adverbially.	neg. , negative.
ant. , antecedent.	num. , numeral.
app. , apposition, appositive.	opp. , opposed to.
C. , common (masculine or feminine).	opt. , optative.
cf. (<i>cōfer</i>), compare.	ord. , ordinal.
cogn. , cognate with.	orig. , original, originally.
comp. , comparative.	p. , page.
conj. , conjunction.	p. a. , participial adjective.
conn. , connected.	par. , paragraph.
dat. , dative.	part. , participle.
dat. pers. , dative of the person.	part. gen. , partitive genitive.
dat. ref. , dative of reference.	pass. , passive.
dat. th. , dative of the thing.	perf. , perfect.
def. , defective.	periphr. , periphrastic.
demonstr. , demonstrative.	pers. , person, personal.
denom. , denominative.	pl. , plural.
dim. , diminutive.	poss. , possessive.
disc. , discourse.	pp. , pages.
distr. , distributive.	prep. , preposition.
e. g. (<i>exempli grātiā</i>), for example.	pres. , present.
Ex. , example.	pron. , pronoun, pronominal.
exclam. , exclamation.	q. v. (<i>quod vidē</i>), which see.
F. , fem. , feminine.	ref. , reference.
fm. , form.	reflex. , reflexive, reflexively.
fr. , from.	rel. , relative.
fut. , future.	Rem. , remark.
G. , Gildersleeve's Grammar.	sc. (<i>scilicet</i>), supply, understand.
gen. , genitive.	sent. , sentence.
gen. pers. , genitive of the person.	sing. , singular.
gen. th. , genitive of the thing.	st. , stem.
ger. , gerundive.	subj. , subjunctive.
H. , Harkness's Grammar.	subst. , substantive, substantively.
hist. , historical.	suff. , suffix.
i. e. (<i>id est</i>), that is.	sup. , supine.
imper. , imperative.	superl. , superlative.
impers. , impersonal.	tr. , trans. , transitive.
indecl. , indeclinable.	Trans. , translate.
indef. , indefinite.	usu. , usually.
indic. , indicative.	vb. , verb.
indir. , indirect.	vocab. , vocabulary.
infin. , infinitive.	w. , with.
intens. , intensive.	

VOCABULARIES.

I. LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

E: The sign '√' signifies 'root'; thus √**gen-** is to be read 'root **gen-**.' The use of the asterisk (*), see Lesson XCIII., foot-note 9.

The term 'base' is applied to stems or parts of stems treated as roots; see **R.**

L: English words or parts of words that have been *borrowed* (directly or indirectly) from Latin forms under which they appear, are printed in *this type*; for others, see: **causa, aeternus**. English words or parts of words that are *cognate* with the Latin forms under which they appear, are printed in **SMALL CAPITALS**; for examples, see: **frāter, pedes**.

S: Stems, or complete words that enter into the formation of the words in this vocabulary, are given, together with their meanings, in brackets; the nominative or verb form of each stem cited is given in parenthesis; the suffix is not given. For examples, see: **aditus, agmen, adjungō, amicitia**.

C: In the resolution of compounds given in brackets, the hyphen is appended to enable prefixes to distinguish them from the prepositions, which may stand before. Thus **in-** is the inseparable negative prefix, cognate with English **UN-**; but **in** as a preposition, cognate with English **IN**. For examples, see: **impendeō, litus, redeō**.

V: The principal parts of verbs, the perfect participle usually appears in the masculine form; but in verbs that are *invariably* intransitive the neuter form is given. For examples, see: **dūcō, veniō**.

The abbreviations used are explained on the preceding page.

ā, ab, abs

ab, abs (ab before vowels, some consonants, ā before nouns only, **abs** sometimes in the expression **abs tē**), prep. **l.**, away from, from; by; in, **ab** **sinistrā parte**, on the left; **OF: ab aliquō quaerere**, to inquire of someone; **to: āver-**, hostile to, opposed to, **averse**

dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [ab, dūcō, lead], lead away, OFF.

eō, -īre, -īvī or -īī, -itum [ab, eō, go], go away.

solvō, -ere, -vī, -ūtus [ab, solvō, loose], **absolve**, acquit.

ac-cendō

abstinentia, -ae, **F.** [abstinent (st. of abstinēns), **abstaining**], self-restraint, **abstinence**.

√abs-tineō, -ēre, -uī [abs, OFF; teneō, hold], hold OFF, **abstain**.

√ab-sum, abesse, āfui [ab, away; sum, be], be away, be absent, be distant; be wanting; **ā bellō abesse**, to take no part in war.

āc, see atque.

√ac-cēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssus [ad, to; cēdō, go or come], go or come to, approach; be added; **ac-cēdere ad**, to come up to.

√ac-cendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus [ad, to; √cand-, set fire], kindle; inflame, fire.

✓ **ac-cidō**, -ere, -cidī [ad, to; cadō, fall], happen, occur; (w. dat. pers.) happen to, befall.

✓ **ac-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ad, to (one's self); capiō, take], accept, receive; receive (as by transmission from ancestors); experience; hear of, hear.

✓ **ac-commodō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad, to; commodō, make suitable], adjust.

accūrātē, adv. [abl. form of accūrātus, careful], carefully, elaborately.

✓ **ac-currō**, -ere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum [ad, to; currō, run], run to, hasten to.

✓ **ac-cūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad, to, against; causa, charge (through denom. vb. *causō; cf. causor)], bring a charge against, call to account, take to task, accuse.

Achillās, -ae, m., *Achillas* (commander of the forces of Ptolemy Dionysus, king of Egypt).

aciēs, -ē and -ei, f. [vac, sharp], EDGE; line of battle, line, army (drawn up in battle array).

ācriter, adv. [ācri- (st. of ācer), sharp], sharply, with energy, vigorously, resolutely, valiantly.

ad, prep. w. acc. (opp. **ab**), (of motion towards) to, against; (of nearness) AT, close by; (w. num.) about; according to; (expressing purpose, especially with gerunds or gerundives) for; **ad hunc modum**, as follows; **ad Id. April.** = **ad Idūs Aprilis**, on the Ides (thirteenth) of April.

✓ **ad-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [ad, to; dūcō, lead], lead to, lead, bring to, bring; lead, prompt, move, incite, influence.

✓ **ad-eō**, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itus [ad, to; eō, go], go to, get AT, approach, come into the presence of, appear before; incur.

✓ **ad-ferō**, adferre, attulī, adlātus (allātus) [ad, to; ferō, BEAR, BRING], BRING to, BRING, BRING forward, advance.

✓ **ad-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ad, to; faciō, DO], DO (something) to, visit with; hence, (in good sense) bestow upon; (in bad sense) inflict upon; **adfectus morbis**, having diseases, laboring under diseases.

ad-finis, -e, adj. [ad, near to; finis, boundary], having adjacent boundaries, neighboring; related to; privy to, implicated in.

✓ **ad-hibeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus [ad, to, towards; habeō, hold], hold towards, bring to; summon, invite, admit; apply; exercise.

ad-hūc (accent the final syllable), adv. [ad, to; hūc, hither], hitherto, up to this time.

✓ **ad-imō**, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmtus [ad, to (one's self); emō, take], (take to one's self from another, and so) take away from, deprive of (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.).

aditus, -ūs, m. [ad-vi-, go to], a going to, approach, access; presence.

✓ **ad-jungō**, -ere, -jūnxī, -jūnctus [ad, to; jungo, join], join to, join, unite, add to.

✓ **ad-juvō**, -āre, -jūvī, -jūtus [ad, to; juvō, give aid], give aid to, aid.

ad-minister, -trī, m. [ad, near to; minister, servant], (one who is at hand to serve, and so) assistant, minister, agent.

✓ **ad-ministrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad, near to; ministrō, serve], (be at hand to serve, and so) assist; manage, execute, administer, conduct.

✓ **ad-miror**, -ārī, -ātus [ad, AT; miror, wonder], wonder AT, admire.

✓ **ad-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [ad, to; mittō, let go], let go to, admit; allow, permit; commit, perpetrate, perform.

admodum, adv. [ad, up to; modus, MEASURE, limit], (to a [great] measure, and so) excessively, extremely, quite.

✓ **ad-olēscō**, -ere, -ēvī, -nitus [ad, to (maturity); olēscō, grow], grow to or come to maturity, grow up.

adrogantia, -ae, f. [adrogant- (st. of adrogāns), *arrogant*], *arrogance, presumption*.

ad-scendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus [ad, to; scandō, climb], climb to, climb, ascend.

ad-sequor, -ī, -cūtus [ad, up to; sequor, follow], attain to, accomplish.

adsiduus, -a, -um, adj. [ad- (sed-, sit by)], (sitting or staying by, and so) constant, long-continued, incessant.

ad-sistō, -ere, -stīfī [ad, at, by; sistō, place], place one's self at or by, place one's self, stand.

ad-speciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus [ad, to, at; speciō, look], look at or upon, look.

adsuēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus [adsuē- (st. in adsuēscō), be accustomed; faciō, make], accustom, habituate, train.

ad-sum, adesse, adfuī [ad, at, near; sum, be], be at hand, be there; be by to assist, stand by.

Aduātuci, -ōrum, m., the *Aduātuci* (a German tribe in Belgic Gaul between the Meuse and the Scheldt).

adolēscēns, -entis, c. [p. a., used subst., of adolēscō (with change of o to u), grow up], one not yet grown to maturity; young man or woman, youth.

adolēscēntia, -ae, f. [adolēscēnt- (st. of adolēscēns), young], youth, the time of youth.

ad-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus [ad, to; veniō, come], come to, come.

adventus, -ūs, m. [ad- (ven-, come to), coming to, arrival].

adversus, -a, -um [p. a. of ad-vertō, turn towards], 1. turned towards, facing, opposite; unsuccessful, adverse. 2. adversus, prep. w. acc., towards.

ad-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus [ad, to; vertō, turn], turn to; *animum advertere*, to perceive.

ad-vesperāscit, -ere, -āvit, im-

pers. [ad, on, near; vesperāscit, evening is coming], evening is coming on, it is getting to be evening.

aedificium, -ī, n. [aedific- (st. of *aedifex), builder; cf. artificium, fr. artific-, st. of artifex], building.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aedific- (st. of *aedifex), builder], (act as a builder, and so) construct a building; build.

aedilis, -is, m. [aedi- (st. of aedis or aedēs), building], (adj. used subst., and so) officer having to do with (public) buildings, superintendent of public works, *aedile*.

Aedui, -ōrum, m., the *Aedui* (a tribe in Celtic Gaul between the Loire and the Saône); in sing., **Aeduus**, -ī, m., an *Aeduan*.

aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., sick, ill, diseased, feeble.

aegrē, adv. [abl. fm. of aeger, q. v.], with difficulty.

aemulus, -a, -um, adj., envious, jealous.

aequitās, -ātis, f. [aequo- (st. of aequus), even], evenness; *animi aequitās*, contented state of mind, content.

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aequo- (st. of aequus), level, equal], place on a level, put on equality, make equal, equalize.

aequor, -oris, n. [base aequo- (in aequō and aequus), level], (evenness, and so) surface; sea (as presenting a level surface).

acrarium, -ī, n. [aes- (st. of aes; -s- becomes -r-), money], (adj. used subst., and so) place for depositing money, treasury.

aes, aeris, n. [cogn. w. Eng. ore], copper, bronze; money; *aes aliēnum*, another's money, i. e., debt.

aestās, -ātis, f., summer season.

aestimātiō, -ōnis, f. [aestimā- (st. of aestimō), value], valuation, appraisal, estimate.

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, value, estimate, fix; consider, deem.

aestuōsus, -a, -um, adj. [aestu- (st. of aestus), *heat*], *full of heat, burning hot*.

aestus, -ūs, M., *boiling, tossing*, and so (of fire, etc.) *heat*; (of the sea) *swell*; **maritimī aestūs**, *tides*.

aetās, -ātis, F. [= aevitās, fr. aevo- (st. of aevum), *age*], *time of life, life, age*.

aeternus, -a, -um, adj. [= aeviternus, fr. aevo- (st. of aevum), *eternity, age*], *eternal*.

Āfricānus, -ī, M. [Āfricā- (st. of Āfrica), *Africa*], (adj. used subst.) *conqueror of Africa, Africanus* (surname of Scipio the elder as conqueror of Hannibal at Zama 202 B.C.; also of Scipio the younger as destroyer of Carthage 146 B.C.).

ager, -grī, M. [cogn. w. Eng. ACRE], *land, soil*; *field*; *district*; in pl., *fields, country districts*.

Agēsīlāus, -ī, M., *Agēsilaus* (king of the Spartans B.C. 398-361).

ag-ger, -eris, M. [ad, to; vges- (-s becomes -r-), *carry*], (what is carried to, and so) *materials for constructing a mound* (as earth, stone, brushwood, etc.); *mound, embankment*; *rampart*.

agmen, -inis, N. [vāg-, *put in motion, lead*], (that which is led, and so) *train, army* (on the march); **novissimum agmen**, *rear*.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus [vāg-, *put in motion*], *lead, drive*; *do*; (of courts, assizes, etc.) *hold*; **agere dē**, *to discuss, to talk over*; **agere cum**, *to treat or confer with*; (imper.) **agite**, *on!*

agrārius, -a, -um, adj. [agro- (st. of ager), *land*], *pertaining to land*.

agrī cultūra or **agricultūra**, -ae, F. [ager, *soil*; cultūra, *cultivation*], *cultivation of the soil, agriculture*.

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., *eager*.

alacritās, -ātis, F. [alacri- (st. of alacer), *eager*], *eagerness*.

ālārius, -a, -um, adj. [ālā- (st. of āla), *wing*], *belonging to the wing*; subst., **ālārīi**, -ōrum, M., *auxiliaries* (posted on the wings of the army).

albeō, -ēre [albo- (st. of albus), *white*], *be white*.

Alexandrēa (or -ia), -ae, F., *Alexandria* (capital of Egypt; founded by Alexander B.C. 331).

Alexandrīnī, -ōrum, M., *inhabitants of Alexandria*; see *Alexandrēa*.

algor, -ōris, M., *cold*.

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [alio- (st. of alius), *other*], *belonging to another, another's, foreign*; *unfavorable*.

aliō, adv. [old case form of alius, *other*, used adv.], *to another place, elsewhere*.

aliquandō, adv. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), giving an indefinite meaning, *some*; quandō, *when*], *at some time*; *at any time*.

aliquantus, -a, -um, adj. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), giving an indefinite meaning, *some*; quantus, *how much, what*], *somewhat*.

aliquī, -qua, -quod, indef. adj. pron. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), giving an indefinite meaning, *some, any*; quī, *which*], *some*; *any*.

aliquis, -quid, indef. pron. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), giving an indefinite meaning, *some, any*; quis, *who*], *some one, something*; *any one, anything*; *occasionally* adj., *some*; *any*.

aliquot, indecl. adj. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), giving an indefinite meaning, *some*; quot, *how many*], *several*.

aliter, adv. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), *other*], *otherwise*.

alius, -a, -ud, adj. and subst. [cogn. with English *else*], *other, another*; **alius . . . alius** (*one . . . one*), *another . . . another*; *one*

another; **ab aliis ad aliōs**, from one [body] to another.

Allobrogēs, -um, M., the *Allobroges* (a tribe of Celtic Gauls between the Rhone and the Isère).

alō, -ere, alui, altus [val, nourish], nurture, rear, bring up, support, maintain.

alter, -tera, -terum, adj. [comparative form of base al- seen in alius; hence alter refers to two objects, or groups of objects], OTHER (of two); **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other, each other.

altitūdō, -inis, F. [alto- (st. of altus), high, deep], height; depth.

altus, -a, -um [p. a. of alō, nurture; cogn. w. English OLD], (made great by nurturing, and so) high, tall; deep.

amāns, -antis [p. a. of amō, love], loving, fond, friendly.

ambactus, -ī, M., vassal.

Ambliāni, -ōrum, M., the *Ambiani* (a tribe in Belgic Gaul).

ambitus, -ūs, M. [amb-vī-, go about], going about; corrupt canvassing for votes, and so bribery.

amicē, adv. [abl. form of amicus, friendly, kind], kindly, favorably.

✓ **amicitia**, -ae, F. [amico- (st. of amicus), friendly], friendship, amity.

amicus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. amō, love], friendly, favorably disposed; subst., friend.

ā-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [ab, from; mittō, let go], lose.

amor, -ōris, M. [base am- (in amō), love], love.

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [amplifico- (st. of *amplificus), making large], enlarge, increase, extend.

amplus, -a, -um, adj., large, ample; illustrious, glorious, distinguished, magnificent; n. comp. used adv., **amplius**, more.

Amūlius, -iī, M., *Amulius* (legendary king of Alba).

an, conj., or.

an-ceps, -cipitis, adj. [amb-, on

both sides, double; capit- (st. of caput), HEAD], (with head on both sides, double headed, and so) double; doubtful; treacherous.

ancilla, -ae, F., maid-servant, girl.

ancora, -ae, F., *anchor*.

angor, -ōris, M. [vāng-, squeeze], strangling; *anguish*.

angulus, -ī, M., *angle*, corner.

angustiae, -ārum, F. [angusto- (st. of angustus), strait, narrow], straits, difficulties, perplexities.

anima, -ae, F., air; breath; life; soul, spirit, mind.

animadvertō, -ere, -itī, -versus [animum, mind; advertō, turn to], turn the mind to, perceive, observe, notice, note; (w. in and acc.) inflict punishment on.

animal, -ālis, N. [= animale, n. adj. used subst., fr. animā- (st. of anima), breath, life], (that which has breath or life, and so) living creature, *animal*.

animōsus, -a, -um, adj. [animo- (st. of animus), courage], full of courage, spirited.

animus, -ī, M., soul, spirit; disembodied or departed spirit; mind; heart, feelings; disposition; courage.

annālis, -e, adj. [anno- (st. of annus), year], pertaining to the year.

annōsus, -a, -um, adj. [auno- (st. of annus), year], full of years.

annus, -ī, M., year; in **annōs singulōs**, each year, every year.

annuus, -a, -um, adj. [auno- (st. of annus), year], yearly, *annual*; translated adv., *annually*.

ante, prep. w. acc., before, in advance of; adv., before, earlier.

anteā, adv. [ante, before; acc. pl. n. eā (orig. eā), these things], before.

ante-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [ante, before; ferō, BEAR], BEAR before; prefer.

† This is sometimes explained as an abl.; but see Corss. Ausspr. I. 799, II. 455.

ante-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus [ante, *before*; pōnō, *place*], *place before, prefer*.

ante quam orantequam [ante, *sooner*; quam, *than*], *before; until*.

antiquitus, adv. [antīquo- (st. of antiquus), *ancient*], *anciently, in former times, in early times*.

antiquus, -a, -um, adj. [=antīcus, fr. anti- (st. of ante), *before*], *ancient, of early date, early*.

aperiō, -īre, -erui, -ertus, *open*.

apertē, adv. [abl. fm. of apertus, *open*], *openly, manifestly, obviously*.

apertus, -a, -um [p. a. of aperiō, *open*], *open, exposed; free from trees*.

Apollō, -inis, M., *Apollo* (son of Jupiter and Latona, and brother of Diana; god of the sun, and of divination, healing, archery, poetry, music, etc.).

ap-pāreō, -ēre, -pāruī [ad, *to, before*; pāreō, *be ready*], *appear; appāret, it is evident*.

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *accost, address, greet; entitle, call*.

appetēns, -entis [p. a. of appetō, *seek after*], *desirous; covetous*.

ap-petō, -ere, -ivī or -ī, -itus [ad, *to, towards, after*; petō, *seek*], *seek after, strive to secure*.

approbātor, -ōris, M. [approbā- (st. of approbō), *approve*], *approver; approbātor esse, to approve*.

ap-propīnquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad, *to*; propīnquō, *draw near*], *draw near to, approach*.

Aprilis, -is, M. [= *Aperīlis, adj. used subst., fr. aperi- (st. of aperiō), *open*], (the month which opens the ground, i.e.) *April*.

Apsus, -ī, M., *Apsus* (a river in southern Illyria).

apud, prep. w. acc., (in designations of place) *with, at, near, about, before*; (w. subst. referring to persons) *at the headquarters of, at the house of, in the works of, according to; in the estimation of, in the case of; among*.

Āpūlia, -ae, F., *Apulia* (province in southern Italy).

aqua, -ae, F., *water*.

aquilō, -ōnis, M. [aquilo- (st. of aquilus), *dark*], (the bringer of storms and darkness, and so) *north wind*; (used adj. w. ventus) *north*.

Aquitāni, -ōrum, M., *the Aquitani*; see Aquitānia.

Aquitānia, -ae, F., *Aquitania* (one of the three chief divisions of Transalpine Gaul, between the Garonne river and the Pyrenees mountains).

āra, -ae, F., *altar*; see Fig. 2.



Fig. 2.

Altar, from a Pompeian painting.

arbitrium, -ii, N. [arbitro- (st. of arbitro), *witness, umpire*, being umpire; *decision* (of the umpire) -

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus [arbitro- (st. of arbitro), *witness*], (be a witness or observer, and so) *be of the opinion, think*.

arbor, -oris, F., *tree*.

arceō, -ēre, -uī [conn. w. arx, *stronghold*], *ward off*.

arcēssō, -ere, -ivī, -itus [intens. fm. of accēdō, *come to*, but with causative meaning; ar = ad], (cause to come to, and so) *invite, summon*.

Arethūsa, -ae, F., *Arethusa* (celebrated fountain near Syracuse, Sicily).

Ariovistus, -ī, M., *Ariovistus* (king of a German tribe in the time of Caesar).

arma, -ōrum, N. [var., *fit*; cf. ars], (what is fitted to the body, and so) *arms*.

armātūra, -ae, F. [armā- (st. of armō), *equip*, *arm*, *equipment*, *armor*].

Arpinum, -ī, N., *Arpinum* (town in Latium; birthplace of Cicero and Marius).

arrogantia, see adrogantia.

ars, artis, F. [var., *fit*; cf.

arma], (fitting, skill in fitting, and so) skill, art; handicraft, occupation, profession.

artificium, -ī, n. [artific- (st. of artifex), *artificer*], *artisanship*; *handicraft*, trade; in pl., *industrial arts*.

Arverni, -ōrum, m., the *Arverni* (a powerful tribe of Celtic Gaul, south of the Aedui).

arx, arcis, f. [varc-, hold fast], *stronghold*, fortress, citadel.

ās, assis, m., *as* (copper coin worth about four-fifths of a cent).

a-scendō, see *adscendō*.

Asia, -ae, f., *Asia* (the continent).

asper, -era, -erum, adj., rough, rugged; harsh, rude, fierce.

a-spiciō, see *adspiciō*.

as-sequor, see *adsequor*.

assiduus, see *adsiduus*.

as-sistō, see *adsistō*.

assuēfaciō, see *adsuēfaciō*.

at, conj., but, on the other hand.

Athēnae, -ārum, f., *Athens* (capital of Attica).

Athēniēnsis, -e, adj. [Athēnā- (st. of Athēnae), *Athens*], *Athenian*; used subst., an *Athenian*.

āthlēta, -ae, m. [borrowed fr. the Greek], *wrestler*, *athlete*.

atque (before vowels and consonants) or **ac** (before consonants only), conj. [ad, in addition; que, and], and also, and.

Atrebatēs, -um, m., the *Atrebatēs* (a tribe in Belgic Gaul).

atrōcītās, -ātis, f. [atrōci- (st. of atrōx), *fierce*], *ferocity*, *cruelty*, *severity*.

atrōx, -ōcis, adj. [apparently fr. ātro- (st. of āter), *dark*, but w. change of quantity], *dark*, *hideous*, *atrocious*.

at-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus [ad, towards; tendo, stretch], stretch or direct towards; direct the attention to, consider.

attentē, adv. [abl. fm. of attentus, *intent*, *attentive*], *attentively*, *earnestly*.

Atticus, -ī, m., *Atticus* (surname of Titus Pomponius, friend of Cicero; given to him on account of his long residence in Athens and his familiarity with Greek literature).

at-tingō, -ere, -tigī [ad, to; tangō, touch], touch, come in contact with; reach, arrive at.

at-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [ad, to; tribuō, allot], allot to, assign.

auctor, -ōris, m. [vaug-, be strong, grow], (he who makes strong or makes grow, and so) *author*; *adviser*.

auctōritās, -ātis, f. [auctōr- (st. of auctor), *author*], *authority*, *influence*.

audācia, -ae, f. [audāci- (st. of audāx), *bold*], *boldness*, *recklessness*, *audacity*.

audācter, adv. [audāci- (st. of audāx), *bold*], *boldly*, *with boldness*. Comp. **audācius**, *more boldly*.

audāx, -ācis, adj. [conn. w. audeō, dare], *daring*, *bold*.

audeō, -ēre, ausus [= *avideō, fr. avido- (st. of avidus), *eager*], (be eager, and so) *dare*, *venture*.

audiō, -īre, -īvī or -īī, -ītus [conn. w. auris, ear], *hear*; *listen*.

au-ferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus [ab, from; ferō, bear], *BEAR* or *carry away*, *remove*.

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus [vaug-, be strong, grow; cogn. w. Eng. wax], (make grow, and so) *augment*, *increase*.

augur, -uris, c. [au- = avi- (st. of avis), *bird*], (one whose predictions are founded [in part] on the observation of birds, i.e.) an *augur*.

aurum, -ī, n. [vaus- (-s becomes -r-), *shine*], (the shining metal, and so) *gold*.

aut, conj., either, or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or.

autem, conj. [conn. w. aut], but, however; moreover, further.

Autrōnius, -īī, m., *Publius Autrōnius Paetus* (one of Catiline's con-

dē-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [dē, from, off; faciō, make], (make off, break loose from, and so) forsake, desert, abandon; fail, cease, be wanting.

dē-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī [dē, from; fugiō, flee], flee from, avoid, shun.

dē-iciō (pronounced: dējiciō), -ere, -jēcī, -jectus [dē, down; jaciō, throw], throw down, cast down; unhorse; disappoint.

dēin-ceps, adv. [dein (abridged fm. of deinde), thereafter, next; vcap-, take], (taking place next, and so) in succession.

dē-leō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus [dē, from, out; *leō, for which, linō, smear, blot], blot out, obliterate; destroy.

dē-liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, intens., well, thoroughly; *liberō (cf. librō, balance)], weigh well, weigh, deliberate.

dēlictum, -ī, n. [n. perf. part. of dēlinquō, transgress, used subst.], transgression, offence.

dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus [dē, from, out; legō, gather, pick], pick out, select, choose.

dēmentia, -ae, f. [dēmenti- (st. of dēmēns), out of one's senses, mad], madness, folly.

dē-minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [dē, from, away; minuō, make less, lessen], lessen by taking away, diminish, take away.

dē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [dē, down; mittō, cast], cast down.

dēmum, adv. [superl. fm. of dē, down, from], (downmost, farthest from, and so) at last, at length.

dēnārius, -ī, m. [masc. of adj. dēnārius, containing TEN (sc. nummus, coin)], (coin containing [originally] ten asses) *denarius* (a Roman silver coin equivalent in value to about 16 cents).

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *dense*.

dē-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [dē, from, away; pellō, drive], drive away, avert.

dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus

[dē, away, aside; pōnō, place, put], put or lay aside, drop.

dē-populor, -ārī, -ātus [dē, intens., utterly; populor, lay waste], lay waste utterly, lay waste, ravage.

dēprecātor, -ōris, m. [dēprecā- (st. of dēprecor), pray away, avert by prayer], (one who averts a threatened evil by entreaty, and so) intercessor.

dē-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [dē, down; primō, press], press down, depress, sink.

dē-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, denoting withdrawal or reversal of action; rogō, (of a law) propose for enactment], (withdraw a proposal for enactment, and so) repeal (applied to part of a law); take away, withdraw, withhold.

dē-scendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus [dē, down; scandō, climb], climb down, descend; have recourse, resort.

dē-sciscō, -ere, -scivī (-ī), -scitum [dē, denoting withdrawal or reversal of action; sciscō, approve, assent], (withhold assent, and so) withdraw, revolt.

dē-serō, -ere, -ruī, -rtus [dē, denoting withdrawal or reversal of action; serō, join], desert, abandon.

dēsertor, -ōris, m. [dē-+ser-, desert], deserter.

dēsiderium, -ī, n., longing, regret (for the absence of something needed).

dēsidia, -ae, f. [dēsīd- (st. of *dēses, gen. -idis), idle], idleness, inactivity.

dēsīgnātus, -a, -um [perf. part. of dēsīgnō, designate, elect], elected, elect (term applied to a person already elected to an office, but not yet inaugurated).

dē-sillō, -īre, -lūī [dē, down; sillō, leap], leap down.

dēsīpiēns, -entis [p. a. of dēsīpiō, be childish], childish, in one's dotage.

caelum, -ī, N., *sky, heaven*; pl. *caeli*, M., in verse only.

Caepiō, -ōnis, M., *Quintus Servilius Caepio* (as proconsul, fought unsuccessfully with the Cimbri 105 B.C.).

Caesar, -aris, M., *Gaius Julius Caesar* (the famous Roman general and statesman; lived 100-44 B.C.).

calamitās, -ātis, F., *disaster, calamity*.

Campānia, -ae, F., *Campania* (district on the south-west coast of Italy).

capāx, -ācis, adj. [vcap-, *take*], (able to take or hold much, and so) *capacious; capable*.

capillus, -ī, M. [dim. form fr. *capit-* (st. of *caput*), *HEAD*; lit., adj. (sc. *crinis*, *hair*)], *hair of the HEAD, hair*.

capīō, -ere, cēpī, *captus* [vcap-, *take*], *take, lay hold of; capture; win, allure, charm, enchain*; (w. *cōsiliū*) *form, adopt*.

captivus, -ī, M. [adj. used subst. fr. vcap-, *take*], *captive*.

Capua, -ae, F., *Capua* (chief city of Campania).

caput, -itis, N., *HEAD*; (w. numerals) *person, soul; capital crime, capital punishment, death; chief city*.

capitālis, -e, adj. [*capit-* (st. of *caput*), *HEAD*], *pertaining to the HEAD or life, capital*.

carcer, -eris, M., *prison*.

careō, -ēre, -uī, *be without*.

carina, -ae, F., *keel*.

carmen, -inis, N., *song, verse, strain*.

Carnūtēs, -um, M., *the Carnutes* (a tribe of Celtic Gaul on both sides of the Loire).

carō, *carnis*, F., *flesh, meat*.

carpō, -ere, -psi, -ptus, *pluck*; *pluck at, carp at, revile*.

carrus, -ī, M., *cart, wagon*.

Carthāgō, -inis, F., *Carthage* (city on the northern coast of Africa; destroyed by Scipio the younger 146 B.C.).

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj. [*Carthāgin-* (st. of *Carthāgō*), *Carthage*], *Carthaginian*; see *Carthāgō*.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear, precious*.

cāseus, -ī, M., *cheese*.

Cassius, -ī, M., *Lucius Cassius Longinus* (defeated and killed by the Tigurini 107 B.C.).

castellum, -ī, N. dim. [*castro-* (st. of *castrum*), *fortified place*], *stronghold*.

Casticus, -ī, M., *Casticus* (a Sequanian, son of Catamantaloedes). **castra**, -ōrum, N., *camp*.

cāsus, -ūs, M. [vcad-, *fall*], *falling; chance; misfortune; unfortunate condition*.

Catamantaloedēs, -is, M., *Catamantaloedes* (ruler of the Sequani).

catellus, -ī, M. [dim. fr. *catulo-* (st. of *catulus*)], *young dog, puppy*.

Catilina, -ae, M., *Catiline* (notorious Roman conspirator; lived 108-62 B.C.).

Catō, -ōnis, M., *Marcus Porcius Cato* (called the elder, or the censor; lived 234-149 B.C.).

causa, -ae, F., *cause, reason; excuse, pretext; enterprise; causā* (following its genitive), *for the sake, for the purpose*.

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, *cautus*, *be on one's guard*.

cēdō, -ere, cēssī, cēssus, *go; withdraw, retire, depart; grant, concede*.

celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*celebro- (presumed original st. of *celeber*) *frequented*], (make frequented, and so) *throng, frequent; celebrate*.

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift*.

celeritās, -ātis, F. [*celeri-* (st. of *celer*), *swift*], *swiftness, speed, celerity*.

celeriter, adv. [*celeri-* (st. of *celer*), *swift*], *swiftly, quickly, speedily*.

Celtae, -ārum, M., *Celts or Kelts* (name applied by Caesar to the

Gauls who dwelt between the Seine and the Garonne).

cēnsēō, -ēre, -suī, -sus, *rate*; (of proceedings in the senate) *vote*, *decree*; *think*.

cēnsor, -ōris, *M.* [base *cēns*- (in *cēnsēō*), *rate*], (the rating officer, *i.e.*) **censor** (one of two Roman magistrates whose duty it was: 1. to superintend the registration of the citizens and their property; 2. to exercise control over the conduct and morals of the citizens; 3. to superintend the administration of the finances of the state).

cēnsus, -ūs, *M.* [base *cēns*- (in *cēnsēō*), *rate*], *rating*, *registration*, *enumeration*, **census**.

centum, indecl. num. adj., *a* **HUNDRED**.

centuria, -ae, *F.* [conn. w. *centum*, **HUNDRED**], **century** (the century was one-sixtieth of a legion, and contained in Caesar's time, about 100 men; see *legiō*).

centuriō, -ōnis, *M.* [centuriā- (st. of *centuria*), **century**], **centurion** (the commanding officer of a century; there were sixty centurions in a legion).

Ceraunus (**Ptolomaeus**), -ī, *M.*, **Ptolemy Ceraunus** (murdered Seleucus and obtained possession of Macedonia 280 B.C.).

cernō, -ere, *crēvī*, *certus* [*ŷcer*-, *separate*], *separate*; *distinguish* (by the senses), *perceive*, *see*; *decide*.

certāmen, -inis, *N.* [certā- (st. of *certō*), *struggle*], (result of struggling, and so) *contest*.

certē, adv. [abl. fm. of *certus*, *certain*], *certainly*, *assuredly*, *at any rate*.

certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [intens. of *cernō*, *decide*, fr. *certo*- (st. of perf. part. *certus*)], *decide by contest*, *struggle*, *vie*.

certus, -a, -um [p. a. of *cernō*, *decide*], *decided*, *fixed*, *particular*; *certain*, *assured*, *undoubted*; **cer-**

tiōrem facere, *to inform*; **certior fieri**, *to be informed*.

cervus, -ī, *M.* [conn. w. *cornū*, **HORN**], (horned animal, and so) *stag*.

cēssō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [intens. of *cēdō*, *go*, *retire*], *loiter*, *abate*, *cease*.

***cēterus**, -a, -um, adj., usu. pl., *the OTHER*, *the remaining*, *the rest of*; subst., **cēteri**, -ōrum, *the rest*.

Cicerō, -ōnis, *M.*, **Cicero** (the celebrated Roman orator; lived 106-43 B.C.).

circiter, adv. and prep. w. acc. [*circō*- (st. of *circus*), **circle**], *round about*, *about*.

circuitus, -ūs, *M.* [*circu(m)-vī*-, *go around*], *going around*, **circuit**.

circum, adv. and prep. w. acc. [acc. of *circus*, **circle**], *around*, *about*.

circum-dō, -are, -dedī, -datus [circum, *around*; *dō*, *put*], *put around*, *surround*, *build around*, *enclose*.

circum-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [circum, *around*; *dūcō*, *lead*], *lead around*.

circum-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [circum, *around*; *ferō*, **BEAR**], *carry round*, *pass round*.

circum-mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [circum, *around*; *mūniō*, *wall*], *wall around*, *fortify*, *protect*.

circum-stō, -āre, -stetī [circum, *around*; *stō*, **STAND**], *stand around*, *surround*.

circum-veniō, -īre, -vērī, -ventus [circum, *around*; *veniō*, **COME**], *surround*, *envelop*; *surround in a hostile manner*, *oppress*, *defraud*.

citerior, -ius, adj. [comp. of *citer*, *belonging to this side*], **HITHER**, *on this side*.

citrā, adv. and prep. w. acc. [abl. fem. of *citer*, *belonging to this side*], *on this side of*.

civilis, -e, adj. [*civi*- (st. of *civis*), *citizen*], *pertaining to citizens*, **civil**.

civis, -is, *C.*, *citizen*, *fellow-citizen*.

civitas, -atis, f. [civi- (st. of *ivis*), *citizen*], *citizenship; citizens; community, state.*

clam, adv., *secretly, stealthily; Prep. w. abl., without the knowledge of.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [intens. of *clāmō*, *call*], *cry out, call out.*

clāmor, -ōris, m. [base *clām* (in *clāmō*), *call*], *calling, shout.*

clāreō, -ēre [clāro- (st. of *clārus*)], *bright, be bright.*

clārus, -a, -um, adj. [√clā-, *call, sound*, conn. w. *clāmō*, *call out*], *clear-sounding; bright; illustrious, renowned, held in honor.*

clāssis, -is, f., *fleet.*

claudō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *shut, close; agmen claudere, to bring up the rear.*

clēmēs, -entis, adj., *mild, gentle, forbearing, merciful, clement.*

eliēs, -entis, m. [= *cluēs*, pres. part. of *cluō*, *hear, obey*, used subst.], (one who hears or obeys, and so) *dependent, retainer, client.*

Clōdīus, -iī, m., *Publius Clodius Pulcher* (opponent of Cicero, whose banishment he procured; killed by Milo 52 B.C.).

Cn. abbr. of *Gnaeus*, -ī, m., *Gnaeus* (a Roman praenomen or first name).

co-emō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptus [co(m)-, *together*; *emō*, *buy*], *buy up.*

co-eō, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -itus [co(m)-, *together*; *eō*, *go*], *go together to form a whole, unite, combine.*

coepī, *coeptus*, def., *began.*

co-erceō, -ēre, -cui, -citus [co(m)-, *completely*; *arceō*, *shut up*], *enclose, encompass; restrain, confine.*

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [co(m)-, *together*; *agitō*, *drive*], (drive a matter to and fro in the mind, and so) *weigh carefully, ponder, think, reflect.*

cōgnātīō, -ōnis, f. [co(m)-√gnā-,

be born with], *being born with; blood-relationship; kindred, family.*

cō-gnōmen, -inis, n. [co(m)-, *with, i.e. in addition to*; (g)nōmen, *NAME*], *family NAME, surname* (the third in order of the names of a Roman citizen, being preceded by the praenomen, or name of the individual, and the nomen, or name of the gens to which the individual belonged; e.g., *Mārcus* (praenomen) *Tullius* (nomen) *Cicerō* (cognomen)).

cō-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [co(m)-, *completely, thoroughly*; (g)nōscō, *become acquainted with*], *become thoroughly acquainted with, ascertain, learn; recognize; in perf., know; diligētiūs cōgnō-scere, to gain a more thorough acquaintance with, or a more accurate knowledge of.*

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus [co(m)-, *together*; agō, *drive*], *drive together, collect; compel, force, constrain.*

cohors, -rtis, f., *enclosure*; (body of men enclosed, and so) *cohort* (the tenth part of a legion; it was divided into three maniples and—as each manipule contained two centuries—into six centuries; the number of men in a cohort varied at different periods from 300 to 600, but in Caesar's time the cohort contained about 600 men).

cohōrtātīō, -ōnis, f. [cohōrtā- (st. of *cohōrtor*), *exhort*], *exhortation, encouragement.*

co-hortor, -ārī, -ātus [co(m)-, intens.; *hortor*, *exhort*], *exhort, encourage, admonish; cohōrtārī inter sē, to exhort one another.*

col-laūdō, see *conlaudō*.

collēga, see *conlēga*.

col-ligō, see *conligō*.

collis, -is, m. *HILL*.

col-locō, see *conlocō*.

colloquium, see *conloquium*.

col-loquor, see *conloquor*.

colluviō, see *conluviō*.

colō, -ere, colū, cultus [col-

till], till, cultivate; honor, reverence, worship.

colōnus, -ī, M. [comm. w. colō, till], tiller of the soil; colonist.

color, -ōris, M., color.

com-būrō, -ere, -ūssī, -ūstus [com-, completely; *būrō, burn], burn up, consume.

comes, -itis, C. [com-*vi*, go with], (one who goes with, and so) comrade, companion.

commeātus, -ūs, M. [commeā- (st. of commeō), go to and fro], passing to and fro; train, convoy; supplies.

com-memorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com-, completely; memorō, call to mind], call to mind in detail, call to mind, mention, recount.

com-mendō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com-, completely; mandō, commit], commit without reservation, commit, intrust.

com-meō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com-, habitually; meō, go, pass], go to and fro, go.

com-minus, adv. [com-, together; manus, hand], hand to hand, at close quarters.

com-mittō, -ere, mīsi, -missus [com-, together; mittō, send, make go], combine into a whole; (w. proelium) join, give, begin, engage in; commit, intrust.

commodē, adv. [abl. fin. of commodus, convenient], conveniently, easily; judiciously, skillfully.

commodum, -ī, N. [n. of adj. commodus, convenient, used subst.], convenience, advantage.

com-moveō, -ēre, mōvi, -mōtus [com-, completely, thoroughly; moveō, move], set in violent motion, disturb, disquiet, alarm.

commūnicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [comm. w. commūnis, common], share, bestow: **commūnicāre** cum, share with, impart to; join, unite, add: **cum dōtibus commūnicāre**, to add to the dowries.

com-mūnis, -e, adj. [com-, mu-

tually; mūnis, under obligation, cf. immūnis], common, general.

commūtātiō, -ōnis, M. [commūtā- (st. of commūtō), change], change, alteration.

com-mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com-, completely; mūtō, change], change completely, alter entirely, change, transform; exchange.

com-parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com-, completely, and so carefully; parō, prepare], prepare carefully, gather, collect.

com-parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com-, together; parō, make equal, exchange], compare.

com-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [com-, together; pellō, drive], drive in a body.

com-periō, -īre, -peri, -pertus [com-*vper*, penetrate completely, cf. experior], ascertain with certainty, ascertain, establish by proof, find out.

com-plector, -ī, -plexus [com-, together; plectō, braid], (braid together, and so) enfold, embrace, clasp; grapple.

com-pleō, -ēre, -plēvi, -plētus [com-, completely; *pleō, fill], fill completely, fill, complete.

com-plūrēs, -a (-ia), gen., -ium, adj. [com-, together; plūrēs, several], several.

com-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus [com-, together; pōnō, put], put together, adjust; compose, pacify, settle.

com-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com-, together; portō, bring], bring together, collect.

com-prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus [com-, completely;prehendō, grasp], grasp completely or firmly; take, seize; arrest.

cōnāta, -ōrum, N. [n. pl. perf. part. of cōnor, endeavor, used subst.], endeavors, undertaking.

cōnātus, -ūs, M. [cōnā- (st. of cōnor), endeavor], endeavoring; effort, undertaking.

con-cēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssus [com-, intens.; cēdō, go, give way], yield, submit to, comply with one's request; grant, *concede*, permit.

con-cidō, -ere, -cidī [com-, together, in a heap; cadō, fall], fall to the ground, fall.

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [concilio- (st. of concilium), assembly], assemble, bring together; *reconcile*; win, procure.

concilium, -iī, N. [com-√cal-, call together], (calling together, and so) assembly, company; *council*: per concilium, in public council.

con-currō, -ere, -currī (-currī), -cursum [com-, together; currō, run], run together, rush together, hasten in a body, flock.

con-demnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intens.; damnō, condemn], condemn.

condicō, -ōnis, F. [com-√dic-, say with, and so agree together], agreement, stipulation, *condition*, terms; *condition*, lot.

con-dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intens.; dōnō, give], give up; overlook.

con-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [com-, together; dūcō, lead], lead or bring together; *collect*.

cōn-ferō, cōnferre, contulī, coulātus [com-, together; ferō, BEAR, BRING], bring together, *collect*; compare; bring to BEAR, apply, bestow upon; sē cōnferre, to betake one's self.

cōn-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [com-, completely; faciō, DO], bring to completion, complete, finish, bring to an end, accomplish, carry out; (of a list or register) make out.

cōn-fidō, -ere, -fisis [com-, completely; fidō, trust], trust fully, *confide* in, rely on, depend on.

cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intens.; firmō, make firm], make firm, establish; assure, re-assure; assert.

cōn-fligō, -ere, -flixī, -flictus [com-, together; fligō, strike], (strike together, and so) 1. tr., contrast, oppose; 2. intr., contend, fight.

con-gredior, -gredi, -gressus [com-, with; gradior, step, walk], meet with; engage, fight.

con-iciō (pronounced: concijciō), -ere, -jēcī, -jectus [com-, together; jaciō, throw], throw together; throw, cast, hurl; drive; in fugam conicere, to put to flight.

conjunctim, adv. [acc. used adv., fr. com-√jug-, yoke together, join], jointly, together.

conjunctiō, -ōnis, F. [com-√jug-, yoke together], (YOKING together, and so) union, intimacy.

con-jungō, -ere, -jūnxī, -jūnetus [com-, together; jungō, join], join, unite.

con-junx, -jugis, C. [com-, together; √jug-, yoke], (Yoke-fellow, and so) spouse; wife.

conjuratiō, -ōnis, F. [conjūrā-, swear together], (swearing together, and so) conspiracy.

con-jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together; jūrō, swear], swear together, conspire.

con-laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intens.; laudō, commend], commend highly, applaud.

con-lēga, -ae, M. [com-√lēg-, depute with], (fellow-deputy, and so) colleague, official associate.

con-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together; ligō, fasten], fasten together.

con-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus [com-, together; legō, gather], gather together, gather, collect.

con-locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together; locō, place], place together, place, station, establish, settle; give in marriage.

conloquium, -iī, N. [com-√loqu-, talk with], conversation, conference.

con-loquor, -ī, -cūtus [com-, with; loquor, talk], converse, confer, have a conference with.

conluviō, -ōnis, F. [com-vluv-, wash together], (collected washings, and so) dregs, offscourings; **turba et conluviō**, vile rabble.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, endeavor, attempt, undertake.

cōn-sanguineī, -ōrum, M., adj. used subst. [com-, denoting connection; sanguineus, pertaining to blood], (those connected by blood, and so) blood-relations, kinsmen.

cōn-sciscō, -ere, -scīvī or -scīī, -scītus [com-, together, in a body; sciscō, decree], decree in a body or in common; adjudge; inflict; **sibi mortem cōnsciscere**, to commit suicide.

cōnscius, -a, -um, adj. [com-√sci-, know with], knowing in conjunction with others; **conscious**.

cōnscriptus, -a, -um [perf. part. of cōnscrībō, enroll], enrolled: **patrēs cōnscriptī, conscript fathers** (a title used in formal addresses before the Roman senate. The term **cōnscriptī** was at first applied to the new senators enrolled from the ranks of the equites in the early days of the republic, and the original form of address was **patrēs et cōnscriptī**).

cōn-secrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, wholly; sacrō, make sacred], **consecrate, dedicate**.

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, M. [com- sent- (base in sentiō), perceive or feel with or in common], (feeling in common, and so) **consent**.

cōn-sentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus [com-, together, in common; sentiō, feel], agree; **conspire**.

cōn-sequor, -ī, -cūtus [com-, close upon; sequor, follow], follow close upon, follow after, follow, ensue.

cōn-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intens.; servō, keep], maintain, preserve, save.

cōnsēssus, -ūs, M. [com-, together; √sēd-, sit], (sitting together, and so) assembly.

cōn-sīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sēssum

[com-, together; sīdō, sit], sit down together, settle, establish one's self; post one's self; encamp.

cōn-sīllium, -iī, N. [conn. w. cōnsulō, deliberate], deliberation, counsel; plan, design, purpose, intention, scheme; measure, line of conduct, course, policy; advice; sagacity; council.

cōn-sistō, -ere, -stitī [com-, intens.; sistō, stand], come to a halt, stop, take a position; stand, maintain one's footing or position, make a stand; settle; (w. in and abl.) **consist in** or of.

cōn-spectus, -ūs, M. [com-√spec-, spy (all parts together, and so) at a glance], sight at a glance, sight; presence.

cōn-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus [com-, together (all parts being taken in at a glance); speciō, look at], catch sight of, descry, see.

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus [com-√spec- (through presumed noun stem), spy (all parts together, and so) at a glance], catch sight of, descry, see.

cōnstantia, -ae, F. [cōnstant- (st. of p. a. cōnstāns), standing firm], firmness, constancy.

cōn-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [com-, together, and so firmly; statuō, set up], (set up firmly, and so) station, post; establish, appoint; arrange, fix, settle upon, decide upon; decide, resolve; **dē contrōversīis cōnstituere**, to settle or decide disputes.

cōn-stō, -āre, -stitī [com-, with; stō, stand], stand with; be in agreement with; impers., be settled, undisputed, generally understood, well known.

cōn-suēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus [com-, intens.; suēscō, become accustomed], become accustomed, accustom one's self; in perf., be accustomed.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, F. [cōn-suē(to)- (st. of cōnsuētus), accustomed], habit, manner, custom, usage, practice.

cōnsul, -is, M., *consul* (one of the two highest Roman magistrates chosen annually under the republic).

cōnsulāris, -e, adj. [cōnsul- (st. of cōnsul), *consul*], *belonging or pertaining to a consul, consular*.

cōnsulātus, -ūs, M. [cōnsul- (st. of cōnsul), *consul*], *consulship*.

cōsulō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *reflect, deliberate, take counsel*; (w. dat.) *take thought for, have regard for, have an eye to*; (w. acc.) *consult* (for advice). [tum.

cōnsultum, see senātus cōnsul-
cōn-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus [com-, *completely*; sūmō, *take*], *take up completely; consume*.

cōn-surgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -sur-
rēctum [com-, *together*; surgō, *rise*], *rise in a body, stand*.

contāgiō, -ōnis, F. [com-+tāg-, *touch together*], *contact*.

contemptiō, -ōnis, F. [com-+tem-, *cut up* (com is intens.)], *(cutting treatment, and so) contempt, scorn, defiance*.

contemptus, -a, -um (p. a. of contemnō, *despise*), *contemptible*.

contemptus, -ūs, M. [com-+tem-, *cut up* (com- is intens.)], *(cutting treatment, and so) contempt*.

con-tendō, -ere, -dī, -tus [com-, intens.; tendō, *stretch*], *stretch vigorously, strive; hasten; contend, struggle; vie; contend successfully, prevail*.

contentiō, -ōnis, F. [com-+ten-, *stretch vigorously, struggle*], *struggling, contention, dispute*.

con-texō, -ere, -xui-, -xtus [com-, together; texō, *weave*], *weave, join, or put together, frame, construct*.

continēns, -entis [p. a. of continēō, *hold together*], *uninterrupted*.

continenter, adv. [continent- (st. of continēns), *uninterruptedly*], *uninterruptedly, continuously*.

contineō, -ere, -tinui-, -tentus [com-, *together*; teneō, *hold*], *hold together, hold, keep; bound, confine; hem in, hold in check, restrain*.

contingō, -ere, -tigi-, -tactus [com-, *completely, closely*; tangō, *touch*], *touch, be contiguous to*.

continuus, -a, -um, adj. [com-+ven-, *stretch together*], *(stretching or hanging together, and so) successive, continuous*.

contrā, adv. and prep. w. acc., *against*.

contrōversia, -ae, F. [contrō-+verso- (st. of contrōversus), *opposite*], *(opposition, and so) dispute, controversy*.

contumēlia, -ae, F., *abuse, insult, indignity, reproach*; per contumēliam, *by injurious reports, through slanderous accusations; buffeting, violence*.

con-veniō, -īre, -vēnī-, -ventus [com-, *together*; veniō, *COME*], *COME together, assemble; convenit, it is agreed upon*.

conventus, -ūs, M. [com-+ven-, *COME together*], *meeting; court*.

con-vertō, -ere, -tī-, -sus [com-, intens.; vertō, *turn*], *turn about, change the direction of, reverse; conversa signa inferre, to face about and advance against*.

conviviam, -iī, N. [convivā- (st. of conviva), *table companion*], *eating together; banquet*.

con-vocō, -āre, -āvi-, -ātus [com-, *together*; vocō, *call*], *call together, call, convoke, assemble*.

cōpia, -ae, F., *abundance, supply*; in pl., *supplies, stores, wealth, resources, numbers; troops, forces*.

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [cōpiā- (st. of cōpia), *wealth*], *abounding in wealth, well supplied, rich*.

cōpula, -ae, F., *grapnel hook* (by which vessels were fastened together in battle).

cor, cordis, N., *HEART*.

Corinthus, -ī, F., *Corinth* (commercial city of Peloponnesus on the isthmus of Corinth).

cornū, -ūs, N., *HORN*; (of an army) *wing*.

corpus, -oris, N., *body*.

frōns, frontis, F., BROW, *front*.

Frontō, -ōnis, M., *Marcus Cornelius Fronto* (celebrated orator, native of Cirta in Numidia, flourished in the second century A.D.).

fructuōsus, -a, -um, adj., [fructu- (st. of fructus), *fruit*], *fruitful*, *productive*.

fructus, -ūs, M. [√frūgu-, *enjoy*], (enjoyment, and so) *fruit*, *produce*, *profit*, *income*.

frumentārius, -a, -um, adj. [frumento- (st. of frumentum), *grain*], *pertaining to grain*; *rēs frumentāria*, *provisions*.

frumentum, -ī, N. [√frū(gu)-, *enjoy*], (means of enjoyment, and so) *grain* (usu. harvested); in pl., *grain* (especially, standing grain).

fruer, -ī, fructus [√fru(gu)-, *enjoy*], *derive enjoyment from*, *enjoy*.

frustrā, adv. [conn. w. *fraus*, *deceit*], *in vain*.

fuga, -ae, F. [√fug-, *bend*, *turn aside*, *flee*], *flight*.

fugiō, -ere, fugī [√fug-, *bend*, *turn aside*, *flee*; cognate w. Eng. *bow*], *flee*.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fugā- (st. of fuga), *flight*], *put to flight*.

fugitivus, -ī, M. [adj. used subst., fr. √fug-, *bend*, *turn aside*, *flee*], *fugitive*, *deserter*.

fūmus, -ī, M., *smoke*.

fundāmentum, -ī, N. [fundā- (st. of fundō), *bottom*, *make secure*], (means of making secure, and so) *foundation*.

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, *pour*.

fungor, -ī, fūctus, *discharge*, *perform*.

fūnis, -is, M., *rope*.

fūnus, -eris, N. [said to be conn. w. fūmus, *smoke*, and having reference primarily to the burning of the body after death], *funeral*, *funeral rites*.

fūr, fūris, c. [conn. w. √fer-, *BEAR*], (one who carries off, and so) *thief*.

furor, -ōris, M. [√fur-, *rage*], *madness*, *insane folly*, *fury*.

fūrtim, adv. [acc. used adv.; conn. w. fūr, *thief*], *stealthily*.

fūrtum, -ī, N. [conn. w. fūr, *thief*], *theft*.

G.

Galba, -ae, M., *Servius Sulpicius Galba* (one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul).



Fig. 3.

Helmet of a Romansoldier, from the column of Trajan.

galea, -ae, F., *HELMET*; see Fig. 3.

Galli, -ōrum, M., *the Gauls* (inhabitants of Gaul; see Gallia).

Gallia, -ae, F., *Gaul* (Transalpine Gaul comprised substantially modern France, the Netherlands, and Switzerland; Cisalpine Gaul comprised the valley of the Po in northern Italy).

Gallieus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic*, *of the Gauls* (see Galli and Gallia).

Gallus, -ī, M., *Gaius Sulpicius Gallus* (celebrated for his knowledge of Greek and astronomy; famous also as an orator; lived in the second century B.C.).

Gallus, -ī, M., *a Gaul* (see Gallia).

gaudium, -iī, N. [conn. w. gaudēō, *rejoice*], *joy*.

Genāva, -ae, F., *Geneva* (on Lake Geneva at its outlet into the Rhone).

gener, -erī, M., *son-in-law*.

gēns, gentis, F. [√gen-, *beget*, *give birth to*], *offspring*, *race*, *people*, *Nation*, *tribe*.

genus, -eris, N. [√gen-, *beget*, *give birth to*], *birth*; *stock*, *race*, *family*; *kind*, *class*, *order*, *mode*.

Gergovia, -ae, F., *Gergovia* (town of the Arverni in Celtic Gaul).

Germanī, -ōrum, M., *the Germans*.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus [√ges-

eustōdia, -ae, f. [custōd- (st. of custōs), *guard*], *guardianship, protection*; in pl., *guards*.

eustōdiō, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -ītus [custōd- (st. of custōs), *guard*], *guard, watch over*.

eustōs, -ōdis, c., *guard, guardian*.

D.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [damno- (st. of damnum), *loss*], *inflict loss upon, harm, damage; condemn*.

dē, prep. w. abl., (of place) *down from, from*; (of time) *in, during, about*: **dē tertiā vigiliā**, *in the THIRD WATCH*; (of the cause from which a thing proceeds) *for*: **quā dē causā**, *for which reason, so*; (of the subject of thought, discussion, etc.) *of, about, concerning, upon, over*; **merēri dē**, *to deserve at the hands of*; **contendere dē**, *to strive or contend for*.

dēbeō, -ēre, -buī, -bitus [dē, *from*; habēō, *have*], (have from another, and so) *owe, be under obligation, ought*.

dē-cēdō, -ēre, -cēssī, -cēssum [dē, *from*; cēdō, *go*], *withdraw, depart from, depart*; *die, decease*.

decem, indecl. num. adj., TEN.

decem et novem or **decem novem**, indecl. num. adj., NINE-TEEN.

dē-cernō, -ēre, -crēvī, -crētus [dē, *from, out*; cernō, *separate, sift*], (sift or separate, as the true from the false, the important from the unimportant, etc., and so) *decide*; (give official expression to one's decision, and so) *vote, decree; appoint*.

dē-certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, *intens.*, and so *to the end, out*; certō, *fight*], *fight it out, fight, contend*.

decet, -ēre, -cuit, impers. [vdec-, *esteem*; conn. w. decus, *comeliness*, and dignus, *worthy*], *it is becoming, it is proper*.

decima for **decuma**, -ae, f. (usu. in pl.) [fem. of decimus, *TENTH*

(sc. pars, *part*)], *Tithe* (tax levied on landholders in the Roman provinces).

decimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [decem, TEN], *TENTH*.

dē-ci-piō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [dē, *giving a bad sense to the verb*; capiō, *take* (cf. the English 'take in')], *deceive*.

dē-clinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, *from*; *clinō, *bend*], *turn aside from, and so have recourse to*.

dē-clivis, -e, adj. [dē-clivo- (st. of clivus, *hill*), *down hill*], *sloping*.

dē-crētum, -ī, n. [n. perf. part. of dē-cernō, *decide, decree*, used subst.], (what has been decided or decreed, and so) *official decision, decree, ordinance*.

decus, -oris, n. [vdec-, *esteem*; conn. w. decet, *it is becoming*, and dignus, *worthy*], *comeliness; ornament; honor; dignity of behavior*.

dē-decus, -oris, n. [dē, w. neg. force; decus, *honor*], *dishonor, disgrace, infamy; act of baseness, deed of infamy*.

dē-dō, -ere, -didī, -dītus [dē, *from, away, up*; dō, *give*], *give up, surrender, devote*.

dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [dē, *from, away*; dūcō, *lead*], *lead out, withdraw, carry off, bring down, bring away, recall*.

dē-fatigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, *intens.*, *utterly, out*; fatigō, *weary*], *tire out, exhaust*.

dē-fendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus [dē, *from, off*; *fendō, *strike, thrust*], *ward off, repel; defend, protect*.

dē-fensiō, -ōnis, f. [dē-vfend-, *thrust off*], (thrusting off assailants, and so) *defence*.

dē-fēnsor, -ōris, m. [dē-vfend-, *thrust off*], (thrusting off assailants, and so) *defender*.

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [dē, *from*; ferō, *bring*], *bring from, and so report*.

dē-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [dē, from, off; faciō, make], (make off, break loose from, and so) for sake, desert, abandon; fail, cease, be wanting.

dē-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī [dē, from; fugiō, flee], flee from, avoid, shun.

dē-iciō (pronounced: dējiciō), -ere, -jēcī, -jectus [dē, down; jaciō, throw], throw down, cast down; unhorse; disappoint.

dēin-ceps, adv. [dein (abridged fm. of deinde), thereafter, next; vcap, take], (taking place next, and so) in succession.

dē-leō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus [dē, from, out; *leō, for which, linō, smear, blot], blot out, obliterate; destroy.

dē-liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, intens., well, thoroughly; *liberō (cf. librō, balance)], weigh well, weigh, deliberate.

dēlictum, -ī, n. [u. perf. part. of delinquō, transgress, used subst.], transgression, offence.

dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus [dē, from, out; legō, gather, pick], pick out, select, choose.

dēmentia, -ae, f. [dēmenti- (st. of dēmēns), out of one's senses, mad], madness, folly.

dē-minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [dē, from, away; minuō, make less, lessen], lessen by taking away, diminish, take away.

dē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [dē, down; mittō, cast], cast down.

dēmum, adv. [superl. fm. of dē, down, from], (downmost, farthest from, and so) at last, at length.

dēnārius, -ī, m. [masc. of adj. dēnārius, containing TEN (sc. nummus, coin)], (coin containing [originally] ten asses) *denarius* (a Roman silver coin equivalent in value to about 16 cents).

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *dense*.

dē-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [dē, from, away; pellō, drive], drive away, avert.

dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus

[dē, away, aside; pōnō, place, put], put or lay aside, drop.

dē-populor, -ārī, -ātus [dē, intens., utterly; populor, lay waste], lay waste utterly, lay waste, ravage.

dēprecātor, -ōris, m. [dēprecā- (st. of dēprecor), pray away, avert by prayer], (one who averts a threatened evil by entreaty, and so) intercessor.

dē-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [dē, down; premō, press], press down, depress, sink.

dē-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, denoting withdrawal or reversal of action; rogō, (of a law) propose for enactment], (withdraw a proposal for enactment, and so) repeal (applied to part of a law) = take away, withdraw, withhold.

dē-scendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsu [dē, down; scandō, climb], climb down, descend; have recourse, resort.

dē-sciscō, -ere, -scīvī (-ī), -scitum [dē, denoting withdrawal or reversal of action; sciscō, approve, assent], (withhold assent, and so) withdraw, revolt.

dē-serō, -ere, -ruī, -rtus [dē, denoting withdrawal or reversal of action; serō, join], desert, abandon.

dēsertor, -ōris, m. [dē-+ser-, desert], deserter.

dēsiderium, -ī, n., *longing, regret* (for the absence of something needed).

dēsidia, -ae, f. [dēsīd- (st. of *dēses, gen. -idis), idle], idleness, inactivity.

dēsīgnātus, -a, -um [perf. part. of dēsīgnō, designate, elect], elected, elect (term applied to a person already elected to an office, but not yet inaugurated).

dē-siliō, -īre, -luī [dē, down; saliō, leap], leap down.

dēsipiēns, -entis [p. a. of dēsipiō, be childish], childish, in one's dotage.

dē-sistō, -ere, -stitī [dē, *from, off*; sistō, *stand*], *desist*; (w. abl.) *desist* (*from*), *abandon*.

dē-spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, w. neg. force; spērō, *hope*], *despair*.

dē-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus [dē, *down*; speciō, *look*], *look down upon*, *despise*.

dē-spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, intens.; spoliō, *strip, rob*], *strip, rob, despoil*.

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make fast*.

dē-sum, deesse, dēfui [dē, *from*; sum, *be*], *BE wanting, fail, desert, abandon*.

dēsuper, adv. [dē, *from*; super, *above*], *from above*.

dē-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [dē, *from, off*; terreō, *frighten*], *frighten off, deter*.

dē-trahō, -ere, -traxī, -tractus [dē, *from, off*; trahō, *draw*], *withdraw, take away, seize, snatch*.

dētrimentum, -ī, n. [dē+tri-, *rub away*], (result of rubbing away, and so) *loss, damage, detriment*.

deus, -ī, m. [conn. w. diēs], *god, deity*.

dē-voeō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtus [dē, intens.; voeō, *promise solemnly, vow*], *solemnly promise to sacrifice, devote, vow*.

dexter, (-tera) -tra, (-terum) -trum, adj., *right*.

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [as if fr. st. dico-, found only in compounds, as vēridicus, *truth-telling*; conn. w. dicō], (orig.) *proclaim*; (usu.) *give up, devote, dedicate*.

dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus [vdic-, *point out, show*], *say, express, give expression to, tell, talk of, mention*; *call, name*; *jūs dicere, to administer justice*; *pauca dicere, to speak briefly*.

dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictā- (st. of dictō), *prescribe, dictate*], *dictator*.

dictum, -ī, n. [perf. part. of dicō, *say*, used subst.], *what is said, saying*; *word of command, order*.

diēs, -ēī (-ei, -ē), m. (sometimes f. in sing.) [conn. w. deus], *day*; *time*.

dif-ferō, differre, distulī, dilātus [dis-, *in different directions*; ferō, *BEAR*], *carry in different directions*; *differ* (this meaning appears to be confined to the pres. system).

difficilis, -e, adj. [dis-, w. neg. force; facilis, *easy*], *hard, difficult*.

difficultās, -ātis, f. [difficuli- (st. of difficul, old form of difficilis), *difficult*], *difficulty*.

dignitās, -ātis, f. [dīgno- (st. of dignus), *worthy*], *worth, dignity*; *standing, position*.

dignus, -a, -um, adj., *worthy*.

diligēns, -entis, adj. [p. a. of diligō, *esteem*], (*esteeming, and so*) *devoted (to), attentive, diligent*.

diligenter, adv. [diligent- (st. of diligēns), *attentive*], *attentively*; *thoroughly*; **diligentius cōgnō-scere**, *to gain a more accurate knowledge of*.

diligentia, -ae, f. [diligent- (st. of diligēns), *attentive*], *carefulness, attentiveness, diligence*.

dī-ligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus [dis-, *apart*; legō, *choose*], (*show one's esteem for an object by choosing it in preference to others, and so*) *esteem highly, love*.

dī-micō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dis-, *implying two contestants, and so against*; micō, *dart to and fro*], (*dart to and fro against, and so*) *contend*.

dīmidium, -īī, n. [n. of adj. dīmidius, *half*, used subst.; fr. dis-, *in two* and medius, *MIDDLE*], *half*.

dī-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [dis-, *in different directions*; mittō, *send*], (*send in different directions, and so*) *dismiss, disband, break up, dissolve*; *forego, lose*.

inceptum, -ī, n. [n. perf. part. of incipō, *begin*], (that which has been begun, and so) *attempt, undertaking*.

in-cidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsus [in, upon; cadō, *fall*], *fall upon; happen, occur, arise*.

in-cipō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [in, upon; capiō, *lay hold*], (lay hold upon, and so) *begin*.

in-colō, -ere, -uī [in, IN; colō, *dwell*], *inhabit; dwell*.

incolumis, -e, adj., *uninjured, unharmed*.

incommodum, -ī, n. [n. of adj. incommodus, *inconvenient*, used subst.], *inconvenience, disadvantage, injury, harm, disaster, defeat*.

in-crēdibilis, -e, adj. [in-, *not*; crēdibilis, *credible*], *incredible*.

in-crepitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in, to, *against*; crepitō, *rattle much, make a loud noise*], *call out to; exclaim against, rebuke, chide*.

incursiō, -ōnis, f. [in-curr- (base in currō), *rush in or against*], *incursion, inroad*.

in-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in, *against*; causa, *charge* (through presumed denom. vb. *causō; cf. causor)], *bring a charge against, find fault with, complain of, blame, upbraid*.

inde, adv., *from that place, thence; next in order*.

indiciū, -iī, n. [indic- (st. of index), *he who or that which points out*], *pointing out, informing; information, testimony*.

in-dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in, to, *towards*; dicō, *make known, and so point*], *point out, disclose, reveal, betray*.

indigeō, -ēre, -uī [indigo- (st. of indigus), *in want*], *be in want of, need, stand in need of*.

indignē, adv. [abl. form of indignus, *unworthy*], *unworthily, undeservedly*.

in-dignus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, *not*; dignus, *worthy*], *unworthy*.

in-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [in, INTO; dūcō, *lead*], *lead INTO*.

indulgeō, -ēre, -sī, -tus, *indulge*.

induō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [indu, ON; vā, *clothe*], *put ON*.

industria, -ae, f., *industry*.

in-eō, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -itus [in, INTO; eō, *go*], *go INTO, enter; enter upon or INTO, begin, form*.

inermis, -e, adj. [in-, *without*; armo- (st. of arma, *arms*)], *without arms, unarmed*.

infāmia, -ae, f. [infāmi- (st. of infāmis), *disreputable*], *disrepute, dishonor, disgrace, infamy*.

in-fēlix, -icis, adj. [in-, *not*; fēlix, *happy*], *unhappy*.

inferior, -ius, adj., comp. of inferus, q. v.

in-ferō, inferre, intulī, inlātus [in, prep., *against*; ferō, BEAR], (of war) *wage or carry ON against*, (of arms or standards) *carry INTO, carry against; inflict*; (w. in and acc.) *cast INTO; vim et manūs inferre, to lay violent hands upon*.

inferus, -a, -um, adj., *below*. Comp., **inferior**, -ius, *lower*. Superl., **infimus**, -a, -um, *lowest, lowest part of, at the bottom*.

infestus, -a, -um [p. a. of *in-fendō, *strike or thrust against*; cf. defendō, *strike or thrust off*], (dashed against, and so) *hostile, opposed*; **infestis signis consistere**, *to come to a halt and assume the defensive*.

infimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of inferus, q. v.

in-firmus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, *not*; firmus, *firm*], *weak, feeble, infirm*.

in-fluō, -ere, -xī, -xum [in, INTO; fluō, *flow*], *flow INTO, flow*.

ingenium, -iī, n. [in-igen-, *beget in*], (what is born in one, and so) *disposition; mind*.

ingēns, -entis, adj. [in-, *out of, beyond*; genti- (st. of gēns) *kind, class*], (beyond its kind, and so) *great (in an exaggerated degree), huge; a great quantity of*.

in-gredior, -ī, -gressus [in, INTO; *radior, step*], *go INTO, enter; alk.*

in-iciō (pronounced: injiciō), -ere, -jēcī, -jectus [in, INTO; jaciō, *throw*], *throw INTO, infuse, impart.*

inimicitia, -ae, f. [inimico- (st. of inimicus), *hostile, unfriendly*], *hostility, enmity.*

in-imicus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, *not*; amicus, *friendly*], *unfriendly, hostile*; subst., *personal enemy* (opp. hostis, *public enemy*), *enemy*.

iniquitās, -ātis, f. [iniquo- (st. of iniquus), *unjust*], *injustice.*

in-īquus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, *not*; aequus, *fair*], *unfair; unreasonable.*

initium, -iī, n. [in-vi-, *go INTO, begin*], *beginning; first principles, elements.*

injūria, -ae, f. [in-, *not*; jū- (st. of jū), *right* (-s becomes -r-)], (violation of right, and so) *injury, wrong, unjust treatment, oppression*; **injūriā**, *wrongfully, unjustly, without provocation.*

in-lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [in, *at*; lacrimo, *shed TEARS*], *shed TEARS, weep.*

in-liciō, -ere, -lexī, -lectus [in, INTO; *laciō, *lure*], *lure INTO, entice, decoy, seduce.*

in-lustris, -e, adj., *distinguished, illustrious, high, exalted.*

in-nocēns, -entis, adj. [in-, *not*; nocēns, *criminal, guilty*], *guiltless, innocent*; subst., *the innocent.*

inopia, -ae, f. [inopi- (st. of inops), *without resources*], *want; necessitous condition.*

in primis, **inprimis**, or **imprimis**, (among the first, and so) *especially, particularly.*

inquam, def., *I say*; **inquit**, *says he; said he.*

insānō, -īre, -ivī and -iī, -itum [insāno- (st. of insānus), *insane*], *be insane.*

inscientia, -ae, f. [inscient- (st. of insciēns), *inexperienced*], *inexperience.*

in-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus [in, ON; scribō, *write*], *inscribe, entitle.*

in-sequor, -ī, -cūtus [in, *close upon*; sequor, *follow*], *follow close upon or after, pursue.*

insigne, -is, n. [n. of adj. īnsīguis, *marked*], *distinguishing mark, badge.*

insolenter, adv. [insolent- (st. of īsolēns), *insolent*], *insolently.*

in-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [in, INTO; statuō, *place*], (place INTO, and so) *fix, establish, institute.*

institutum, -ī, n. [n. perf. part. of instituō, *establish*], (what is established, and so) *institution, regulation, usage.*

in-struō, -ere, -struxī, -strūctus [in, INTO; struō, *build*], *build INTO; draw up, arrange.*

insula, -ae, f., *island.*

in-sum, inesse, infui [in, IN; sum, *be*], *be IN, belong to.*

integer, -gra, -grum, adj. [in-utag-, *not touch*], *untouched, whole*; **in integrum**, *to a former condition.*

integrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [integro- (st. of integer), *whole*], *make whole, renew.*

intel-legō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus [inter, *between, INTO*; legō, *see*], *see INTO, UNDERSTAND, know; perceive, be aware.*

in-tempestus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, *not*; *tempestus, *seasonable*], *unseasonable*; **intempestā nocte**, *at an unseasonable hour of the NIGHT, late at NIGHT.*

inter, adv. and prep. w. acc. [comp. fm. of in, IN], *between, among*; **inter sē**, (according to the context) *among themselves, to one another, from one another, one another, with each other, etc.*

inter-cēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum [inter, *between*; cēdō, *go*], *go between, intervene.*

inter-clūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus [inter, *between*; claudō, *shut*]

shut off' (by interposing something), shut out, cut off.

inter-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus [inter, between; dicō, speak], forbid, prohibit, exclude.

interdum, adv. [inter, between; dum, while], sometimes, occasionally.

intereā, adv. [inter, among; acc. pl. n. ea (orig. eā), these things. cf. antea w. foot-note], meanwhile.

inter-eō, -īre, -īī, -itum [inter, among; eō, go, be lost], (be lost among other things, and so) perish, become extinct.

inter-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [inter, among; faciō, put, make go, cause to be lost. cf. intereō], (cause to be lost among other things, and so) dispatch, kill, put to death.

interim, adv., meanwhile.

inter-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptus [inter, (out from) among; emō, take], (take an object out from its surroundings, and so) kill.

interior, -ius, adj. [comp. of *interus], inner; the interior of.

inter-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [inter, between, and so, in the midst; mittō, let go], (leave off in the midst, and so) interrupt, intermit; let pass, suffer to elapse.

inter-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus [inter, between; pōnō, place], interpose.

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus [interpret- (st. of interpres), interpret-er], explain, expound, interpret.

inter-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [inter, between (the questioner and the person questioned); rogō, ask], interrogate, question, ask.

inter-sum, -esse, -fuī [inter, between; sum, be], be between, intervene; take part in, have to do with; attend to, superintend; impers., interest, it concerns, it interests, it is important.

intervallum, -ī, n. [inter, between, and so within; vāllum,

rampart], (space within the rampart, i.e. between the rampart and the soldiers' tents, and so) interval, distance.

in-tueor, -ēri, -itus [in, at, on; tueor, look], look at, gaze on.

intus, adv. [in, in], within.

in-ūtilis, -e, adj. [in-, not; ūtilis, useful], useless, unprofitable; injurious.

in-vādō, -ere, -vāsī [in, into; vādō, go], go into, enter, invade, rush in, fall upon, take possession.

in-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus [in, upon; veniō, come], come upon, find (by accident; cf. reperiō, which often means 'find by searching').

inventor, -ōris, m. [in-ven-, come upon, discover], discoverer, inventor, contriver.

in-victus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not; victus (perf. part. of vincō), conquered], unconquered; invincible.

in-videō, -ēre, -vidī, -visus [in, askance at; videō, look], look askance at; envy.

invidia, -ae, f. [invido- (st. of invidus), envious], envy; obloquy, odium, unpopularity.

invitus, -a, -um, adj., unwilling.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, demonstr. pron., self, himself, herself, itself; mere, very, in person.

ira, -ae, f., anger, passion.

irācundia, -ae, f. [irācundo- (st. of irācundus), passionate], passion.

irācundus, -a, -um, adj. [irā- (st. of *īror), be angry], passionate, choleric.

irāscor, -ī, irātus [incept. fr. irā- (st. of *īror), be angry], give way to passion, be angry; irātus, -a, -um, p. a., angry, in anger.

ir-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -raptus [in, into; rumpō, burst], burst or rush into.

is, ea, id, demonstr. pron., 1. adj., this, that, such, of such a kind; 2. subst., this one, that one, he, she, it; in pl., these, those,

they; **eō . . . quō**, by that . . . by which, the . . . the.

iste, ista, istud, demonstr. pron., THAT of yours, THAT; (with contemptuous implication) THAT, THAT one; **ista vērītās**, THE truth coming from you.

ita, adv., in such a way, so, THUS; **ita . . . ut**, so . . . as.

Italia, -ae, f., Italy.

itaque, conj. [ita, so; -que, and], and so, therefore.

item, adv. [conn. w. ita, so], likewise.

iter, itineris, n. [vi-, go], journey, march, marching, passage; way, road, route, line of march; **iter facere**, to march.

iterum, adv., again, a second time.

J.

jaceō, -ēre, -cuī [intr. fm. conn. w. **jacio**, throw], (be thrown, and so) lie, lie prostrate.

jacio, -ere, **jēci**, **jactus**, throw, cast.

jam, adv., now; already; at once, forthwith; even.

jānuā, -ae, f., street door, door.

Juba, -ae, m., **Juba** (king of Numidia and opponent of Caesar).

jubeō, -ēre, **jūssi**, **jūssus**, order.

jūcundus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. **juvō**, help], (helpful, and so) pleasant, agreeable.

jū-dex, -icis, c. [jūs- (st. of jū), what is binding; **dic-**, point out], (one who points out what is binding, i.e. justice, and so) judge.

jūdicium, -ii, n. [jūdic- (st. of jūdex), judge], judgment, decision, sentence; in **jūdicium vocāre**, to summon before the court.

jūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [jūdic- (st. of jūdex), judge], judge; pronounce, proclaim; consider, deem, think.

jugum, -ī, n. [vjug-, YOKE], YOKE; (mountain) ridge.

Jūliānus, -a, -um, adj. [Jūlio- (st. of Jūlius)], **Julian** (i.e., belonging to Julius Caesar).

jūmentum, -ī, n. [vjū(g)-, YOKE], (that which is yoked, and so) beast of burden.

Jūppiter, **Jovis**, m. [Jovi- (for Diovi-, st. of Diovis), god of heaven; pater, FATHER], **Jupiter** (supreme deity of the Romans).

Jūra, -ae, m., the **Jura** mountains (a chain extending from the Rhine to the Rhone and separating the Sequani from the Helvetii).

jūs, **jūris**, n. [vjū-, bind, conn. w. **vjug-**], (that which is binding, and so) right, justice; authority; one's rights, redress; in pl., rights, authority; **jūs dicere**, to pronounce judgment, to administer justice.

jūsjurandum, **jūrisjurandī**, n. [jūs, what is binding; gerundive of **jūrō**, swear], oath.

jūssū, m. (in abl. sing. only) [fr. same root as **jubeō**, order], at the bidding.

jūstitia, -ae, f. [jūsto- (st. of jūstus), just], justice.

jūstus, -a, -um, adj. [jūs- (st. of jū), right], founded in right, just; regular, proper, due, usual.

juventūs, -ūtis, f. [juven- (st. of juvenis), YOUNG], YOUTH.

juvō, -āre, **jūvī**, **jūtus**, help, aid, assist, benefit.

K.

Karthägō, see **Carthägō**.

L.

L, abbr. of **Lūcius**, -iī, m., **Lucius** (Roman praenomen or first name).

Labienus, -ī, m., **Titus Labienus** (Caesar's chief lieutenant in the Gallic war, 58-50 B.C.).

labor, -ōris, m. [vlab-, lay hold of], (laying hold of, and so) labor, toil, exertion.

lābor, -ī, **lāpsus** [vlāb-, glide, fall], glide, fall, sink; err.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [labōr- (st. of labor), labor], labor; struggle against odds.

lac, **lactis**, n., milk.

Lacedaemōn, -onis, *F.*, **Lacedaemon** or **Sparta** (chief city of Laconia, in Peloponnesus).

Lacedaemonii, -ōrum, *M.*, **Lacedaemonians** (inhabitants of Lacedaemon, *q. v.*).

lacertus, -i, *M.*, **upper arm, arm**; *n pl.*, also **muscle, brawn**.

laccessō, -ere, -ivī, -itus, **challenge, irritate, attack**.

lacrima, -ae, *F.*, **TEAR**.

lacus, -ūs, *M.*, **lake**.

Laeca, -ae, *M.*, **Marcus Parcius Laeca** (one of Catiline's accomplices in the conspiracy of 63 B.C.).

Laelius, -iī, *M.*, **Gaius Laelius** (friend of Scipio Africanus the younger, and principal character in Cicero's work on Friendship; flourished in the latter half of the second century B.C.).

laetitia, -ae, *F.* [**laeto** (st. of **aetus**), **joyful**], **joy**.

laetor, -ārī, -ātus [**laeto** (st. of **aetus**), **joyful**], **be joyful, rejoice; rejoice at**.

lapis, -idis, *M.*, **stone**.

largior, -iī, -itus [**largo** (st. of **argus**), **abundant**], **bestow lavishly, be lavish of**.

lātē, *adv.* [*abl. fm.* of **lātus**, **wide**], **widely**; **quam lātissimē**, **as widely or extensively as possible**.

Latinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, **Latin** (pertaining to **Latium**, *q. v.*).

lātitudō, -inis, *F.* [**lāto** (st. of **ātus**), **broad**], **breadth, extent**.

Latium, -iī, *N.*, **Latium** (district in Italy containing the city Rome).

Latovici, -ōrum, *M.*, **the Latovici** (German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii).

latrō, -ōnis, *M.*, **robber**.

latrōcinium, -iī, *N.* [*conn.* w. **atrōcinor**, **rob on the highway**], **robbery**.

lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, **broad, extensive**.

latus, -eris, *N.*, **side, flank**.

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**laud** (st. of **laus**), **praise**], **commend, praise**.

laus, **laudis**, *F.*, **praise, commendation; glory, distinction, renown**.

lēctor, -ōris, *M.* [**vlēg**, **read**], **reader**.

lēgatiō, -ōnis, *F.* [**lēgā** (st. of **lēgō**), **depute**], **deputing; deputa-tion, embassy**.

lēgātus, -i, *M.* [*perf. part.* of **lēgō**, **depute**], (one commissioned or deputed, and so) **ambassador, envoy; lieutenant** (the **lēgātī** were experienced officers commanding separate divisions of the army under the general direction of the commander-in-chief; often in special exigencies they exercised independent command).

legiō, -ōnis, *F.* [**vlēg**, **pick, gather**], (a **levy**, and so) **legion** (a full legion in Caesar's time contained about 6000 men; the legion was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort into three maniples, and each manipule into two centuries).

legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**legiōn** (st. of **legiō**), **legion**], **pertaining to legions, legionary**.

legō, -ere, **lēgī**, **lēctus** [**vlēg**, **pick, gather**], **gather; select; read**.

Lemannus, -i, *M.*, (ancient name of) **Lake Geneva**.

Lemnos or **Lemnus**, -i, *F.*, **Lemnos** or **Lemnus** (island in the northern part of the Aegean sea).

Lemovicēs, -um, *M.*, **the Lemovices** (tribe in Celtic Gaul, west of the Arverni).

lēniō, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -itus [**lēn** (st. of **lēnis**), **soft**], **make soft, soothe**.

Lentulus, -i, *M.*, **Publius Cornelius Lentulus Sura** (one of Catiline's accomplices in the conspiracy of 63 B.C.).

leō, -ōnis, *M.*, **lion**.

Lepidus, -i, *M.*, **Manius Aemilius Lepidus** (consul 66 B.C.).

levis, -e, *adj.*, **LIGHT, slight**.

levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**levi** (st. of **levis**), **LIGHT**], **LIGHTEN, relieve, release**.

lĕx, lĕgis, F., LAW.

libenter, adv. [libent- (st. of libĕns), willing], willingly, cheerfully.

liber, -brī, M., book, treatise, work.

liber, -era, -erum, adj., free, unrestricted.

liberālis, -e, adj. [libero- (st. liber), free], belonging to a freeman; liberal, lavish.

liberāliter, adv. [liberāli- (st. liberālis), pertaining to a freeman], (in a manner becoming a freeman, and so) graciously, courteously.

liberē, adv. [abl. fm. of liber, free], freely, without constraint.

liberī, -ōrum, M. [masc. pl. of adj. liber, free, used subst.], (the free members of the household in distinction from the slaves, and so) children (with reference to their parents; cf. puerī, children in general).

liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [libero- (st. of liber), free], set free, free, liberate, relieve, release.

libertās, -ātis, F. [libero- (st. of liber), free], freedom, liberty.

libet, -ēre built or -bitum est (older forms, lubet, etc., vlub, desire; cognate w. English LOVE), it is pleasing or agreeable; **mihi libet**, I am disposed.

licet, -ēre, -cuit or -citum est [vlic-, leave free (through presumed adj.)], it is permitted, it is lawful, one is at liberty, it is possible.

Lingonēs, -um (acc. Lingonas), M., the *Lingones* (tribe in Celtic Gaul near the sources of the Marne and Meuse).

lingua, -ae, F., TONGUE; language.

Liscus, -ī, M., *Liscus* (prominent Aeduan of Caesar's time).

Litaviceus, -ī, M., *Litaviceus* (Aeduan of Caesar's time).

littera, -ae, F., letter (of the alphabet), character; in pl., letter (epistle), dispatch, letters, dis-

patches; **litteris mandāre**, to commit to writing.

litus, -oris, N., shore (of the sea; cf. ripa, bank of a river).

locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [loco- (st. of locus), place], place.

locus, -ī, M.; in pl., (usu.) loca, -ōrum, N., (sometimes) locī, -ōrum, M., place, spot, site, position; room; rank.

longē, adv. [abl. fm. of longus, LONG], far; by far; for a LONG time, LONG.

longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. longus], LONG, LONG-continued.

longitūdō, -inis, F. [longo- (st. of longus), LONG], LENGTH.

longus, -a, -um, adj., LONG; **nāvis longa**, ship of war.

loquor, -ī, -cūtus [vloqu-, sound, speak], speak.

lūcēō, -ēre, lūxī [conn. w. lūx, LIGHT], be LIGHT, shine.

lūdus, -ī, M., game.

lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, mourn, lament.

lūmen, -inis, N. [vlū(c)-, shine], (that which shines, and so) LIGHT.

lūna, -ae, F. [vlū(c)-, shine], moon.

lūstrum, -ī, N. [vlou-, wash], purificatory sacrifice.

lūx, lūcis, F. [vlūc-, shine], LIGHT.

Lycus, -ī, M., *Lycus* (an Athenian, father of Thrasybulus; lived in the fifth century B.C.).

M.

M., abbr. of **Mārcus**, -ī, M. (Roman praenōmen or first name).

M', abbr. of **Mānius**, -īī, M. (Roman praenōmen or first name).

māchinātīō, -ōnis, F. [māchinā- (st. of māchinor), devise], (devising, and so) mechanism; engine.

māchinor, -ārī, -ātus [māchinā- (st. of māchina), machine], invent, contrive, devise.

magis, adv. [for *magius, n. acc. sing. comp. of adj. used adv.], MORE.

magister, -trī, M. [vmag-, *be great, be powerful*, w. double comp. suff.: -is = -ius, and -ter], (he who is greater or more powerful, and so), *master*.

magistrātus, -ūs, M. [magistrā- (st. of *magistrō), *be master*], (being master, and so) *office of a magistrate, magistracy; magistrate*.

māgnificus, -a, -um, adj. [māgno- (st. of māgnus), *great; vfac-, do*], (of great deeds, and so) *magnificent, glorious, splendid*.

māgnitūdō, -inis, F. [māgno- (st. of māgnus), *great*], *greatness, size, bulk, extent, magnitude*.

māgnus, -a, -um, adj. [vmag-, *be great*], *great, large; māgnī* (gen. of value), *greatly, highly*. Comp., *māior*, -us, *greater; older, elder*; pl. subst., *māiorēs*, *ancestors; māiorēs nātū*, *elders, old men*. Superl., *māximus*, -a, -um, *greatest; quam māximus* (with or without some form of possum), *greatest possible*.

māior, -us, see *māgnus*.

male, adv. [abl. fm. of *malus*, *bad*], *badly, ill*.

maleficium, -iī, N. [malefico- (st. of maleficus), *mischievous*], *mischievous*.

mālō, mālī, mālūi [mage (=magis), *rather; volō*, *wish*], *wish rather, choose rather, prefer*.

malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad, evil, mischievous, evil-minded; wretched, unfortunate*; subst., *malum*, -ī, N., *evil*. Comp., *pēior*, -us, *worse*. Superl., *pessimus*, -a, -um, *worst*.

mandātum, -ī, N. [n. perf. part. of *mandō*, *command*], *injunction, order, commission, message*.

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [manu- (st. of manus), *hand; dō*, *give* (through presumed adj. st.)], (put into one's hands, and so) *commit, intrust; order, command*.

māne, adv., *early in the morning*.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum

[vman-, *think*], (stand wrapt in thought, and so) *wait, remain, abide, continue; manēre in*, *to remain in, to abide by*.

manus, -ūs, F., *hand; art; force, band; in manibus*, *in preparation; vim et manūs inferre*, *to lay violent hands upon*.

Mārcius, -iī, M., *Quintus Marcus Rex* (consul 68 B.C.).

mare, -is, N., *sea; mari*, on the sea, by sea.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj. [mari- (st. of mare), *sea*], *belonging to the sea, maritime*.

Mārs, Mārtis, M., *Mars* (Mars was originally a Roman agricultural divinity, but early came to be identified with the Greek god Ares; hence he is generally viewed as the god of war).

Massiva, -ae, M., *Massiva* (grandson of the Numidian king Masinissa; assassinated at the instigation of Jugurtha B.C. 108).

māter, -tris, F. [vmā-, *form, fashion, make*], *MOTHER*.

māteria, -ae, F. [māter, *MOTHER*], (mother-stuff, and so) *materials; timber*.

mātūrē, adv. [abl. fm. of *mātūrus*, *ripe*], *seasonably; speedily*. **mātūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [mātūro- (st. of mātūrus), *ripe*], *ripen; hasten*.

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. *māne*, *early in the morning*], *ripe*.

māximē, adv. [abl. fm. of *māximus*, *greatest*], *especially, most of all, most*.

māximus, -a, -um, see *māgnus*.

mediocris, -e, adj. [conn. w. *medius*, *MIDDLE*], *MIDDLE*; *slight*.

medius, -a, -um, adj., *MIDDLE*, *MIDDLE part of, in the MIDDLE; per mediōs*, *through the MIDDLE of them*.

mehercle or **mehercule** [mē, acc. pers. pron. w. vowel shortened (sc. *juvēs*); *hercle* or *hercule*, voc. of *Herculēs*], (*Hercules*, [help] me! and so) *by Hercules!*

melior, -ius, see bonus.

membrum, -ī, N., *limb, member*.

memini, def. (only in perf. system, w. meaning of pres.) [*ymen, think*; cf. *mēns*], *think of, remember, cherish the memory of; mention, make mention of*.

memor, -oris, adj. [*ymor* (reduplicated), *tarry over, brood*; conn. w. *mora, delay*], *mindful, thoughtful, recalling*.

memoria, -ae, f. [*memori* (st. of *memor*), *mindful*], *remembrance, memory; time; memoriae prōditum est, the story runs* (lit., it has been handed down to memory).

memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*memori* (st. of *memor*), *mindful*], (make *mindful*, call to mind, and so) *mention, recount*.

Menapii, -ōrum, M., *the Menapii* (tribe in the northern part of Belgic Gaul).

mēns, *mentis*, f. [*ymen, think*], *MIND, the intellectual faculties; disposition; opinion; purpose, intention*.

mēnsis, -is, M. [conn. w. *mētiōr*, *measure*] (measure of time, and so) *month*.

mentior, -īrī, -ītus [*menti* (st. of *mēns*), *MIND* (with special reference to the imagination)], (draw upon the imagination, invent, romance, and so) *lie, speak falsely*.

mercātor, -ōris, M. [*mercā* (st. of *mercor*), *trade*], *trader, merchant*.

mercātūra, -ae, f. [*mercā* (st. of *mercor*), *trade*], *trade, traffic, commerce*; in pl., *commercial transactions*.

mercēs, -ēdis, f. [conn. w. *mercātor* and *mercātūra*], *hire, pay*.

Mercurius, -īī, M. [conn. w. the foregoing words], *Mercury* (Roman god of commerce and gain; later identified with Greek god *Hermes*, and so viewed as herald and messenger of the gods, *presider over roads*, etc.).

mereor, -ēri, -ātus, *deserve, merit*. **Messālla**, -ae, M., *Messalla* (Messala).

-met (pron. suff. appended for emphasis to certain forms of the pers. and poss. prons.), *self*.

mētiōr, -īrī, mēnsus [conn. w. *modus, measure*, and *mēnsis, month*], *measure, estimate, judge*.

metuō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus (once) [*metu* (st. of *metus*), *fear*], *fear*. **metus**, -ūs, M., *fear, apprehension*.

meus, -a, -um, poss. pron., MY; **meā interest**, *it interests ME, it is of importance to ME*.

miles, -itis, M., *soldier*.

militāris, -e, adj. [*milit* (st. of *miles*), *soldier*], *pertaining to soldiers, military; rēs militāris, the military art*.

militia, -ae, f. [*milit* (st. of *miles*), *soldier*], *warfare, military service; militiae, abroad, in the field*.

mille, in sing., indecl. adj., *thousand*; also in nom. and acc. sing. (w. part. gen.), subst., *thousand*: **mille passuum**, *a thousand paces, a mile*; in pl., **millia** (*millia*) (w. part. gen.), subst., *thousands*: **millia passuum** or **millia** (sc. *passuum*), *miles*.

Miltiadēs, -is, M., *Miltiades* (celebrated Athenian general; defeated the Persians in the battle of Marathon B.C. 490).

mina, -ae, f. [borrowed from the Greek], *mina* (sum of money equivalent to about \$18).

Minerva, -ae, f., *Minerva* (goddess of wisdom, of the arts and sciences, of spinning and weaving, etc.).

minimus, -a, -um, see *parvus*. **minimē**, adv. [abl. fm. of *minimus, least*], *least, least of all*.

minitor, -ārī, -ātus [intens. of *minor, threaten*; formed as if the perf. part. were *minitus*], *threaten, menace*.

minor, -us, see *parvus*.

minus, adv. [acc. n. sing. of minor], *less; not; minus valēre*, *not to be strong enough, to be too weak.*

√ **minuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [conn. w. minor, *less*], *lessen, diminish; check, prevent; (of disputes) settle.*

mirābilis, -e [mīrā- (st. of mīror), *wonder at*], *to be wondered at, wonderful.*

mīror, -ārī, -ātus [mīro- (st. of mīrus), *wonderful*], *wonder at, admire, wonder.*

mīrus, -a, -um, adj. [√(s)mī-, SMILE], *wonderful, strange; mīhī mīrum vidētur*, *I am at a loss to understand.*

miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched, unfortunate.*

misereror, -ērī, -eritus or -ertus [misero- (st. of miser), *wretched*], *(be wretched in another's behalf, and so) feel pity, pity, have compassion.*

miseret, -ēre, -eritum, impers. [misero- (st. of miser), *wretched*], *it distresses, it moves to pity; mē miseret*, *I pity, I am sorry for.*

misericordia, -ae, f. [miseri-cordi-, (st. of misericors), *tender-HEARTED*], *tender-HEARTEDNESS, compassion, pity.*

miseri-cors, -cordis, adj. [misero- (st. of miser), *wretched*; cordi- (st. of cor), *HEART*], *tender-HEARTED, compassionate.*

miseror, -ārī, -ātus [misero- (st. of miser), *wretched*], *express pity for, lament, bewail.*

Mithridatēs, -is, m., *Mithridates* (king of Pontus and enemy of the Roman people; committed suicide 63 B.C.).

mītis, -e, adj., *mild.*

mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus, *send.*

modestē, adv. [abl. fm. of modestus, *temperate*], *temperately.*

modestus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. modus, *MEASURE*], *(measured, observant of due restraint, and so) modest.*

modicus, -a, -um, adj. [modo-

(st. of modus), *MEASURE*], *moderate.*

modo, adv. [abl. of modus, *MEASURE*, w. final vowel shortened], *(by measure, i.e. not exceeding, and so) only, merely, but; if only; nōn modo . . . vērum etiam, not only . . . but also.*

modus, -ī, m. [√mod-, *MEASURE*], *MEASURE, quantity, amount; manner, way, sort; hūjuscē modī, of this sort, the following, as follows; ejusmodī, of such a kind, such; ad hunc modum, as follows; in servilem modum, as in the case of slaves.*

molestus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. mōlēs, *mass, burden*], *burden some, troublesome, annoying.*

mollīō, -īre, -īvī and -īi, -ītus [mollī- (st. of mollis), *soft*], *soften.*

mollis, -e, adj., *soft, pliant, yielding; feeble.*

mōmentum, -ī, n. [√mov-, *push*], *(result of pushing, and so) movement; weight, importance, moment.*

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus [√mon-, *think, cause to think*], *REMINd, warn.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*

morbus, -ī, m. [√mor-, *waste away*; conn. w. morior and mors], *disease.*

Morini, -ōrum, m., *the Morini* (tribe in Belgic Gaul near strait of Dover).

morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus [√mor-, *waste away*; conn. w. morbus and mors], *die.*

moror, -ārī, -ātus [morā- (st. of mora), *delay*], *delay, remain, linger.*

mors, -tis, f. [√mor-, *waste away*; conn. w. morior and morbus], *death.*

mortālis, -e, adj. [morti- (st. of mors), *death*], *pertaining to death, mortal; subst., human being, mortal, man.*

mortuus, -a, -um [p. a. of morior, *die*], *dead.*

mōs, mōris, m., *custom, wont, usage, practice; in pl., morals, character.*

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus [√mov-, push (through presumed adj. st.)], *move*; *excite, cause; affect, disturb, trouble; influence.*

muller, -eris, F., *woman.*

multiplex, -icis, adj. [multo- (st. of multus), *much*; √plec-, FOLD], *manifold*; **plausus multiplex**, *repeated outbursts of applause.*

multitūdō, -inis, F. [multo- (st. of multus), *much*], *great number, multitude; the people, the public.*

multō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [multā- (st. of multa), *penalty, fine*], *punish, fine*; **aliquem pecūniā multāre**, *to fine one in a sum of money.*

multus, -a, -um, adj., *much*; in pl., *many*; **multum** (used adv.), *much, widely*; **multō** (w. comp.), *much, far*; **multā nocte**, *late at night.* Trans. adv., *frequently.* Comp., **plūs**, **plūris**, *more*; pl., **plūrēs**, **plūra**, *more than one, and so several.* Superl., **plūrimus**, -a, -um, *most, very much, very many, most numerous*; **plūrimum posse**, *to be most or very powerful, to be very influential.*

Mulvius, -a, -um, adj., *Mulvian* (bridge across the Tiber).

mundus, -i, M., *universe, world.*

mūnimentum, -i, N. [mūnī- (st. of mūniō), *fortify*], *means of defence, fortification, rampart.*

√mūniō, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -itus [old fm., moeniō, fr. moeni- (st. of moenia, walls)], *build a wall; make secure, fortify.*

mūnitio, -ōnis, F. [mūnī- (st. of mūniō), *fortify*], *fortification.*

mūnus, -eris, N., *office, function, duty; burden; service; gift.*

mūrus, -i, M., *wall.*

mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [for *mōtō, intens. of moveō, *move*; fr. mōto-, st. of perf. part. mōtus], *change.*

N.

nam, conj. (stands at the beginning of the sentence), *for*; (in interrog. sentences expressing surprise or emotion) *but or pray.*

namque, conj. [nam, *for*; que, *and*; cf. etenim] (*stronger than nam*), *for indeed, for.*

nāscor, -ī, nātus [for *gnāscor, inceptive fr. √gnā-, *be born*], *be born; arise.*

nātālis, -e, adj. [nāto- (st. of nātus), *born*], *pertaining to one's birth; diēs nātālis*, *birthday.*

nātiō, -ōnis, F. [for *gnātiō, fr. √gnā-, *be born*], *being born, birth; race; nation, people, tribe.*

√nātū (in abl. only), M. [for *gnātū, fr. √gnā-, *be born*], *by birth; grandis nātū*, *advanced in years.*

nātūra, -ae, F. [for *gnātūra, fr. √gnā-, *be born*], *nature, character; nātūrā*, *by nature, naturally.*

nātūrālis, -e, adj. [nātūrā- (st. of nātūra), *nature*], *belonging to nature, natural.*

nātus, -a, -um [perf. part. of nāscor, *be born*], *born.*

nāvēlis, -e, adj. [nāvi- (st. of nāvis), *ship*], *belonging or pertaining to ships, naval.*

nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nāvi- (st. of nāvis), *ship*; √ag-, *drive* (through presumed adj. st.)], *sail.*

nāvis, -is, F., *ship*; **nāvis longa**, *ship-of-war, man-of-war*; see Fig. 6.



Fig. 6.

Nāvis longa, from a mosaic in a tomb near Puteoli.

nē, adv. (regular negative w. hort. and opt. subj.), *Not*; (in final clauses) *that Not, lest*; (w. verbs of fearing) *that or lest.*

nē . . . quidem, *Not even* (w. emphatic word or words between nē and quidem).

-ne, enclitic interrog. particle; it simply inquires, without implying what answer is expected. cf. nōne and num.

Neāpolis, -is, *F.*, *Naples* (New-ton).

nec, see *neque*.

necesse, *n.* *adj.* used in *nom.* and *acc. sing.*, *necessary*.

neg-legō, -ere, -ēxi, -ēctus [*nec*, *not*; *legō*, *gather*, *heed*], *disregard*, *neglect*; *set at defiance*.

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deny*, *say* . . . *Not*.

negōtium, -iī, *N.* [*nec*, *Not*; *ōtium*, *leisure*], *business*, *affair*, *matter*, *enterprise*, *undertaking*.

nēmō (in place of *gen. nēminis*, *nūllūs* is used; in place of *abl. nēmine*, *nūllō*, *M.* or *nūllā*, *F.* is used), *C.* [*nē*, *Not*, *no*; *homo* (*homo*), *man*], *no one*, *nobody*.

neque or **nec**, *conj.* [*nē* (*w.* vowel shortened), *Not*; -*que*, *and*], *and Not*, *Neither*, *Nor*; **neque** . . . **neque** or **nec** . . . **nec**, *Neither* . . . *Nor*.

Nervii, -ōrum, *M.*, *the Nervii* (tribe in Belgic Gaul between the Sambre and the Scheldt).

ne-sciō, -īre, -īvi or -īi [*nē*, *Not*; *sciō*, *know*], *Not know*.

neuter, -tra, -trum, *adj.* [*nē*, *Not*; *uter*, *either*], *Neither*; in *pl.*, *neutrī*, *Neither party*.

nēve or **neu**, *conj.* [*nē*, *Not*; *ve*, *or*], *and Not*, *Nor*, *and that Not* (takes the place of *neque* in clauses expressing purpose, exhortation, and prohibition).

√ nex, *necis*, *F.* [*√nec*, *destroy*; *conn. w. noceō* and *perniciēs*], *death* (by violence). √

niger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, *black*.

nihil, *N.*, *def.* (also *nihilum*, -ī, *N.*, and *nīl*) [*nē*, *Not*; *hīlum*, *trifle*, *the least thing*], *nothing*; **nihil** (*adv. acc.*) *not at all*; **nihil posse**, *to be without any effective strength*.

nimis, *adv.*, *too*, *excessively*.

* **nimius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*conn. w. foregoing*], *too much*, *excessive*.

nisi, *conj.* [*nē*, *Not*; *sī*, *if*], *if*

Not, *unless*, *except*; **nihil nisi**, *Nothing but*; **nisi cum**, *until*.

nitor, -ī, *nīsus* or *nīxus*, *depend*, *rely*.

nōbīlis, -e, *adj.* [*√gnō*, *know*], *capable or worthy of being known*; *famous*, *celebrated*, *renowned*; *high-born*, *noble*; *subst.*, *nobleman*, *noble*.

nōbilitās, -ātis, *F.* [*nōbīli-* (*st. of nōbīlis*), *well known*], *fame*; *nobility*, *noble birth*, *rank*; *nobles*, *the nobility*.

nōbilitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*nōbīli-* (*st. of nōbīlis*), *famous*], *make famous*.

noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [*√noc*, *destroy*, *injure* (through presumed *adj. st.*); *conn. w. nex* and *perniciēs*], *injure*, *damage*, *inflict injury*.

nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*conn. w. noctū*, *by night*], *pertaining to the night*, *nocturnal*, *posted by night*.

nōlō, *nōlle*, *nōluī* [*nē*, *Not*; *volō*, *wish*], *be unwilling*, *decline*; *id nōlle*, *to object to this*.

nōmen, -inis, *N.* [*√gnō*, *know*], (*means of knowing*, and so) *NAME*; **nōmine**, *under the NAME*, *as, by way of*.

nōminātim, *adv.* [*nōminā-* (*st. of nōminō*), *NAME*], *by NAME*, *in detail*.

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*nōmin-* (*st. of nōmen*), *NAME*], *NAME*, *call*.

nōn, *adv.* [*old forms*, *noenum*, *noenu*, *fr. nē*, *Not*, and *ūnum*, *ONE*], *Not*, *NO*.

nōnāgēsīmus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, *NINETIETH*.

nōndum, *adv.* [*nōn*, *Not*; *dum*, *yet*], *Not yet*.

nōnne [*nōn*, *Not*; -*ne*, *interrog. particle*], *interrog. particle* introducing questions to which an affirmative answer is expected.

nōn nūllus or **nōnnūllus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*nōn*, *Not*; *nūllus*, *no*], *some*; *pl. subst.*, *nōnnūllī*, *some*.

nōn nunquam (nunquam) or **nōnnunquam** (nunquam), adv. [nōn, Not; nunquam, Never], sometimes.

nōnus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [conn. w. novem, NINE], NINTH.

Nōricus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to **Noricum** (a country lying between the Alps and the Danube) **Norican**.

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus [inceptive fr. vgnō, KNOW], become acquainted with; acknowledge; in perf., KNOW.

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. [nōs, we], our.

novem, num. adj. indecl., NINE.

novō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [novo- (st. of novus), NEW], make NEW, reNEW.

novus, -a, -um, adj., NEW, strange; superl., novissimus, hindmost, rear; novissimum agmen, rear; ab novissimis, in the rear.

nox, noctis, f. [vnoc-, destroy, injure; conn. w. noceō], NIGHT; multā nocte, late at NIGHT.

noxa, -ae, f. [vnoc-, destroy, injure; conn. w. noceō], offence, crime.

nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus, (of a bride) veil one's self (for the bridegroom), and so marry; nūptum (sup.) conlocāre, to give in marriage.

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nūdo- (st. of nūdus), bare], strip, lay bare.

nūdus, -a, -um, adj. [for *nug-; cognate w. English NAKED], bare, destitute.

nūgātor, -ōris, m. [nūgā- (st. of nūgor), trifle], trifler.

nūllus, -a, -um, adj. [nē, Not; ūllus, any], Not ANY, No; annihilated; subst., No ONE.

num, interrog. particle introducing questions to which a neg. answer is expected; also (in dependent questions), whether.

Numantia, -ae, f., **Numantia**

(town in Spain on the upper Douro, destroyed by Scipio Africanus the younger 133 B.C.).

nūmen, -inis, n. [vnū-, nod], (that which is expressed by a nod, and so) divine will or power.

numerus, -i, m., number; account, estimation, rank.

numquam, see nunquam.

nunc, adv., now.

nunquam or **numquam**, adv. [nē, Not; unquam, ever], Never.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nūntio- (st. of nūntius), messenger], announce, report.

nūntius, -ii, m. [conn. w. novus, NEW], messenger; message, NEWS; order, injunction.

nusquam, adv. [nē, Not; usquam, anywhere], NOWHERE.

O.

ō, interj., O, Oh.

ob, prep. w. acc., in view OF, on account OF, for.

ob-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, ductus [ob, towards, forward; dūcō, draw], draw forward, extend.

ob-iciō (pronounced: objiciō), -ere, -jēcī, -jēctus [ob, before, against; jaciō, cast], cast before; set against, match.

oblītus, -a, -um [p. a. of obli-visor, forget], forgetful.

obliviscor, -i, -lītus, forget, turn one's thoughts from.

obscuritās, -ātis, f. [obscurō- (st. of obscurus), obscure], obscurity.

ob-secrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, towards, before; sacrō, declare sacred], (appeal to one in the name of the gods, and so) beseech, implore.

ob-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, before; servō, keep], observe, mark, keep; respect, follow, comply with.

ob-ses, -idis, c. [ob, before; sed-, sit], (one who sits or remains as a pledge, and so) hostage.

ob-sideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sēssus [ob, *before*; sedeō, sit], *besiege*.

ob-stō, -āre, -stīti [ob, *against*; stō, stand], stand *against*, *oppose*.

ob-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus [ob, *against*; struō, build], build *against*, *barricade*.

ob-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [ob, *against*; teneō, hold], lay hold OF; hold; be in authority over; *obtain*.

ob-tingō, -ere, -tigī [ob, *towards*; tangō, touch], fall to one's lot.

ob-truncō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ob, *implying attack*; truncō, cut off], cut down, kill.

obviam, adv. [ob, *towards*, on; via, way], on the way, to meet; **obviam ire** (w. dat.), to go to meet, to resist.

occāsio, -ōnis, f. [ob-vcād-, fall towards], (falling towards one, and so) *occasion*, *chance*, *opportunity*.

occāsus, -ūs, m. [ob-vcād-, fall towards, sink down], (sinking, and so) *setting*.

oc-cidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus [ob, *against*; caedō, cut], kill, slay.

occultē, adv. [abl. fm. of occultus, secret], *secretly*.

occultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [intens. of oculō, cover up, fr. occulto- (st. of perf. part.)], *conceal*, *secrete*.

occultus, -a, -um [perf. part. of oculō, cover up], *concealed*, *secret*; in occultō, in secret.

occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ob-vcap-, lay hold of (through presumed adj. st.)], take possession OF, seize; *occupy*, *employ*.

oc-currō, -ere, -currī (-cucurrī, rare), -cursum [ob, *towards*; currō, run], run to meet; hasten to oppose; hasten (against the enemy) to the rescue (of one's friends).

Oceanus, -ī, m., *ocean*.

oetīginti, -ae, -a, num. adj. [oetīn-, conn. w. octō, EIGHT; -gintī, conn. w. centum, HUNDRED], EIGHT HUNDRED.

octō, indecl. num. adj., EIGHT.

octōgēsīmus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., EIGHTIETH.

octōgintā, indecl. num. adj. [octō, EIGHT; -gin- represents (de)cem, TEN], EIGHTY.

oculus, -ī, m. [fr. voc., see (through presumed subst.)], EYE.

ōdī, ōsus, def. (pres. system wanting), hate, cherish hatred.

odium, -ī, n. [vod-, hate; conn. w. ōdī], hatred; grudge.

of-ferō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus [ob, *towards*; ferō, BEAR], present, offer.

officium, -īī, n. [base op- (in opus), work, service; vfac-, DO], service, office, duty; sense of duty; obedience, allegiance.

ōmen, -īnis, n., *omen*.

o-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [ob, *before*, aside; mittō, let go], let go; disregard.

omnīnō, adv. [abl. fm. conn. w. omnis], altogether, in all, only, but; in general.

omnis, -e, adj., all, every.

onus, -eris, n., burden, weight; ennui.

opēs, -um, f. (nom. sing. used only as name of goddess of Plenty), means, resources, property, wealth, riches; **opīs** (gen. sing.), aid, help, assistance.

opiniō, -ōnis, f. [conn. w. opinor, be of opinion], opinion, views, belief, impression; expectation; suspicion; **celerius opiniōne**, more quickly than any one had supposed possible.

opitulator, -ārī, -ātus [opi- (st. of opis), aid; vtol-, bear (through *opitulus)], bring aid, relieve.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, impers., it is proper, it is right, it behooves.

oppidānus, -a, -um, adj. [oppido- (st. of oppidum), town], belonging to the town; subst., **oppidāni**, -ōrum, m., inhabitants of the town, townspeople.

oppidum, -ī, n., town (viewed as stronghold).

opportunitās, -ātis, f. [opportuno- (st. of opportunus), convenient], convenience, favorableness; opportunity.

opportunus, -a, -um, adj., convenient, fit, opportune.

op-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [ob, against; premō, press], crush, overpower.

op-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, against; pugnō, fight], assault.

optimus, see bonus.

[Ops], opis, f., see opēs.

opus, -eris, n., work; undertaking; in pl., manufactures.

opus, n., used as nom. and acc. only [same as foregoing], need, necessity; translated adj., necessary.

orātiō, -ōnis, f. [orā, speak], speaking, speech, language; address.

orātor, -ōris, m. [orā, speak, plead], speaker, orator.

orbis, -is, m., circle, orb; compact mass.

ordō, -inis, m., row, rank; company.

Orgetorix, -igis, m., Orgetorix (prominent Helvetian of Caesar's time).

orior, -irī, ortus, rise, spring up, take one's origin, begin; descend.

ornāmentum, -ī, n. [ornā- (st. of ornō), embellish], (means of embellishing, and so) mark of honor, distinction, ornament.

ornō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, embellish, adorn, honor, distinguish.

orō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ōs- (st. of ōs) (-s- becomes -r-), mouth], entreat, beg, beseech.

ortus, -ūs, m. [vor, rise; conn. w. orior], rising; origin.

osculator, -ārī, -ātus [osculo- (st. of osculum), a kiss], kiss.

os-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus [*obs=ob, towards; tendō, stretch], point out, show; make known, declare, give to understand.

ostium, -ī, n. [conn. w. ōs, mouth], entrance, door.

otium, -ī, n., leisure.

P.

P., abbr. of Pūblius, -īī, m. (Roman praenomen or first name).

paene, adv., almost.

paenitet, -ēre, -uit, impers. [conn. w. poena, penalty], cause to repent; mē paenitet, I repent, I regret, I am dissatisfied.

pāgus, -ī, m. [vpāg-, make fast], (place enclosed by fixed boundaries, and so) district.

palam, adv., openly, publicly.

Palātium, -īī, n., the Palatine hill (one of the seven hills on which Rome was built).

palūs, -ūdis, f., swamp, marsh.

pandō, -ere, pandī, pāssus, stretch out, expand.

pār, paris, adj., equal; match for; of equal rank or consideration.

parātus, -a, -um [p. a. of parō, prepare], prepare, ready; eager.

parcō, -ere, pepercī (parsī), SPARE.

parēns, -entis, c. [part. of pariō, bring forth, used subst.], parent.

pārēō, -ēre, pārui [intr. form conn. w. tr. parō, make ready], (be ready, and so) appear; (appear in response to orders, and so) obey.

pariter, adv. [pari- (st. of pār), equal], equally; at the same time.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tr. fm. conn. w. intr. pārēō, be ready], make ready, prepare; procure, acquire.

pars, partis, f. [vpar, assign, make ready; the same root is contained in parō and pārēō], (assignment, and so) part, portion, share; side, direction, quarter.

parti-ceps, -cipis, adj. [parti- (st. of pars), part; vcap, take], taking part, sharing; particeps, to come in for a share.

partior, -irī, -itus [parti- (st. pars), part], part, divide, distribute.

parum, adv. [acc. used ad parum (for *sparum) is conn.

parcō (for *sparcō), SPARE], *too little*.

parvulus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. fr. parvo- (st. of parvus), *small*], *very small, tiny*; **ab parvulis**, *from childhood*.

parvus, -a, -um, adj. [= *paurus (cf. nervus = *neururus); conn. w. pauci, FEW], *small, little, slight*. Comp., **minor**, -us, *less, smaller*; **minus**, used adv.: *less*; **not**; **minus valēre**, *not to be strong enough, to be too weak*. Superl., **minimus**, -a, -um, *very little, least*.

passus, -ūs, M. [vpat-, *spread, stretch*; conn. w. pateō], (stretching forth of the legs in walking, and so) *pace*; (as a measure of length) *five Roman feet* (a little less than five English feet).

pateō, -ēre, -uī [vpat-, *spread, stretch* (through presumed adj. st.)], *be open, lie open, extend*.

pater, -tris, M. [of uncertain origin], FATHER.

pater familiās or **paterfamiliās**, patris familiās, M. [pater, FATHER; familia, *household of slaves*], *master of a house, head of a household*.

patera, -ae, F. [conn. w. pateō, through vpat-, *spread*], *libation-saucer, sacrificial dish*; see Fig. 7.



Fig. 7.

Front and side view of two paterae, one with handle, the other without. The illustrations are copies of bronze originals found at Pompeii.

patienter, adv. [patient- (st. of patiēns), *patient*], *patiently*.

patior, -i, passus, *suffer*; *permit*.

✓ **patria**, -ae, F. [fem. of patrius, *belonging to one's fathers*; sc. terra], *native country*.

pauci, -ae, -a, adj. (sing. *very rare*) [conn. w. parvus, *small*,

q. v.], FEW, *but* FEW; **pauca**, FEW *words, briefly*; **paucis**, in a FEW *words, briefly*.

paulisper, adv., *for a little while, for a short time*.

paulus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. fr. *pauro- = parvo- (stem of parvus) *little*], *a little*; **paulō**, *by a little, a little*.

Paullus, -ī, M., 1. *Lucius Aemilius Paullus* (Roman consul, killed in the battle of Cannae 216 B.C.); 2. *Lucius Aemilius Paullus* (son of preceding, defeated Perses, king of Macedon, at Pydna 168 B.C.).

pāx, pācis, F. [vpāc-, *bind fast*], (that which binds fast, and so) *peace*; **pāce tuā**, *with your permission*.

peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *make a mistake, transgress, sin*.

pecūnia, -ae, F. [conn. w. pecū, *cattle*], (as cattle constituted the earliest form of wealth, therefore) *wealth, riches*; *money, a sum of money*.

pedes, -itis, M. [ped- (st. of pēs), *FOOT*], *FOOT-soldier*.

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. [pedit- (st. of pedes), *FOOT-soldier*], *pertaining to FOOT-soldiers*.

peditātus, -ūs, M. [peditā- (st. of peditō) *go on FOOT*], (orig. going on foot, and so, used concretely) *FOOT-soldiers, infantry*.

pějor, -us, comp. of malus, q. v.

pellis, -is, F. [cognate w. English FELL], *skin*; **tent**; **sub pellibus**, *in camp*.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *beat*; *drive, expel*; *roul*.

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, *weigh*; *pay*.

pēnsus, -ī, N. [n. perf. part. of pendō, *weigh*], *something weighed*; *weight, consideration, importance*; **pēnsi habēre**, *to consider of importance*.

per, prep. w. acc., *through*; *by*, *by means of*, *through the instrumentality of*; **per se**: of himself,

herself, itself or themselves; through his, her, its or their own exertions.

per-cipio, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [per, completely; capio, take], perceive, learn, understand; receive in one's own person, experience.

per-discō, -ere, -didici [per, thoroughly; discō, learn], learn thoroughly, commit to memory.

per-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus [per, through, away; dō, put], make way with, destroy, ruin. The forms of pereō supply the pass.

per-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [per, through; dūcō, lead], lead through, lead; carry, extend, conduct.

peregrinus, -a, -um, adj. [peregro- (st. of adv. peregrē, abroad)], strange, foreign; subst., stranger, foreigner.

per-eō, -ire, -iī [per, through, away; eō, go, pass], perish, be destroyed; perit, is dead.

per-facilis, -e, adj. [per, very; facilis, easy], very easy; **perfacile est**, it is a very easy matter.

per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [per, through; ferō, BEAR], BEAR to the end, endure, submit to, sustain.

per-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [per, through; faciō, DO], carry through or out, accomplish; finish, bring to completion.

per-fruor, -ī, -fructus [per, thoroughly; fruor, enjoy], enjoy fully.

perfuga, -ae, M. [per-√fug-, flee through (the lines)], (one who flees through the lines, and so) deserter.

pergō, -ere, perrexī, perrectus [per, through, on; regō, guide], 1. tr. proceed with; 2. intr. proceed.

periclitor, -ārī, -ātus [intens. verb; conn. w. periculum, trial], make trial of, try, test.

periculōsus, -a, -um [periculo- (st. of periculum), peril], full of peril, dangerous, perilous.

periculum, -ī, N. [perī- (st. of *perior; cf. experior and peritus), try, test], trial; danger, peril, risk.

peritus, -a, -um [p. a. of *perior (cf. experior), try, test], tried, experienced, skillful.

per-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum [per, through; maneō, stay], stay through, remain, abide, continue; survive.

per-misceō, -ēre, -scuī, -mīstus or -mīxtus [per, thoroughly; misceō, MIX], disturb, throw into confusion.

per-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [per, through; mittō, let go] (orig., let go through), intrust, commit.

per-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [per, thoroughly; moveō, move], move deeply, influence, alarm.

perniciēs, gen. -iī, -iēs, or -iē, f. [per-√nec-, completely destroy], destruction, ruin.

perniciōsus, -a, -um, adj. [perniciē- (st. of perniciēs), destruction], destructive, ruinous, pernicious.

per-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus [per, through; rumpō, break], break or rush through.

per-sequor, -ī, -cūtus [per, persistently; sequor, follow], follow up; avenge.

Persēs, -ae, M., *Perses* (last king of Macedonia, defeated by Lucius Aemilius Paullus at Pydna 168 B.C.).

per-solvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus [per, completely; solvō, discharge], discharge fully, pay.

per-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus [per, through; specio, look], examine; perceive, ascertain.

per-suādēō, -ēre, -sī, -sus [per, through, to the end; suādēō, urge], persuade, convince; inculcate.

per-terreo, -ēre, -uī, -itus [per, thoroughly; terreo, frighten], frighten thoroughly; paralyze with fear.

per-tineō, -ēre, -uī [per, through, to the end; teneō (intr.), continue], extend; TEND.

perturbātiō, -ōnis, f. [perturbā- (st. of perturbō), throw into confusion], confusion, disquiet, perturbation.

per-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [per, greatly; turbō, disturb], throw into confusion, rout; disturb, disquiet, discompose, agitate.

per-veniō, -īre, -vērī, -ventum [per, through, to the end; veniō, come], arrive, come; (of money) revert.

pēs, pedis, m. [vped-, tread], FOOT.

petō, -ere, -ivī or -īī, -itus [vpet-, fly at, fall], fall upon; make for, repair to; go to seek, go after, seek, ask for, beseech.

pictor, -ōris, m. [vpig-, paint], painter.

pietās, -ātis, f. [pio- (st. of pius), dutiful, reverential], dutiful or reverential conduct; (with reference to the gods) piety; (with reference to parents) filial respect.

piget, -ēre, -uit, -itum, it irks, it disgusts; *mē piget*, I loathe, I am disgusted.

pilum, -ī, n., heavy javelin.

pingō, -ere, pinxī, pictus [vpig-, paint], paint.

Pisō, -ōnis, m., 1. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso* (lieutenant of Cassius 107 B.C.); 2. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesonius* (grandson of the preceding and father-in-law of Caesar).

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (p. a.) [conn. w. placō, reconcile], be pleasing; impers., *placet*, it pleases, it seems good, it is one's pleasure.

placidus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. placeō, be pleasing], calm, placid.

placō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. placeō, be pleasing], reconcile; appease, propitiate.

plānitēs, gen. -ae, f. [plāno- (st. of plānus), level], plain.

plānus, -a, -um, adj., level, flat, plane.

plausus, -ūs, m. [base plaud- (in plaudō), clap], (clapping, and so) applause.

plēbēs, f., archaic form of plēbs, q. v.

plēbs, -is, f. [conn. w. plēnus, full, through vplē-, fill], the multitude, the common people, commons, lower orders, populace.

plēnus, -a, -um, adj. [vplē-, fill], full.

plērumque, see plērusque.

plērusque, -raque, -rumque, adj. (usu. pl.) [conn. w. plēnus, full], very many, most, the greater part; adv., **plērumque**, for the most part, commonly.

plūrēs, pl. of plūs, q. v.

plūrimus, -a, -um, superl. of multus, q. v.

plūs, plūris, comp. of multus, q. v.

poena, -ae, f., satisfaction; penalty, punishment; **poenās dare**, to give satisfaction, and so to suffer punishment.

Poenī, -ōrum, m., inhabitants of Carthage, Carthaginians (see Carthāgō). The Carthaginians were descended from the Phoenicians; hence the name Poenī).

poēta, -ae, m. [borrowed from the Greek], poet.

pol-līceor, -ērī, -itus [por- (old prep.), to, towards; liceor, make an offer], promise (voluntarily).

Pompējus, **Pompēi**, m., **Pompey** (celebrated conqueror of the pirates of the Mediterranean and of Mithridates; defeated by Caesar at the battle of Pharsalus 48 B.C.).

Pompējus, -a, -um, adj., of Pompey, Pompeian (see preceding).

pondus, -eris, n. [conn. w. pendō, weigh], weight.

pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, place, deposit; (of a camp), pitch.

pōns, pontis, m., bridge.

populāris, -e, adj. [populo- (st. of populus), *people*], *belonging to the people, popular*.

populor, -āri, -ātus, *lay waste, devastate*.

populus, -ī, m. [conn. w. plēbs and plēnus], *people*.

porta, -ae, f. [√por-, *FARE, go through*], *gate*.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [portā- (st. of porta), *gate*], *carry*.

portus, -ūs, m. [√por-, *FARE, go through*], *entrance; harbor, port*.

poscō, -ere, poposcī, *ask urgently for, demand*.

possessiō, -ōnis, f. [por- (old prep.), *BEFORE*; √sed-, *SIT*], (*sitting before, and so*) *possession, property*.

pos-sideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sēssus [por- (old prep.), *BEFORE*; sedeō, *SIT*], *hold, be master of, possess*.

possum, posse, potuī [potis, *able; sum, be*], *can, be able*; **plūrimum posse**, *to be the most powerful, to have the most power, to be very influential*; **nihil posse**, *to be without any effective strength*; **facere nōn possum quīn**, *I can not help*.

post, adv. and prep. w. acc., 1. adv.: *afterwards, later, after*; **annō post**, *the year after*. 2. prep. w. acc.: (of place) *behind, in the rear of*, next to; (of time) *after*.

postea, adv. [post, *after*; acc. pl. n. ea (orig. eā), *these things*; cf. antea], *afterwards*.

***posterus**, -era, -erum, adj. [posti- (st. of post), *after*], *coming after, following*; subst., **posterī**, -ōrum, m., *posterity*. Comp., **posterior**, -ius, *later*. Superl., **postrēmus**, -a, -um, *last*.

postquam or **post quam** [post, *later*; quam, *than*], *after, when*.

postrēmus, -a, -um, superl. of ***posterus**, q. v.

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. poscō], *press earnestly, demand, claim, request*.

potēns, -entis [p. a. of verb

conn. w. possum, *be able*], *powerful*.

potentātus, -ūs, m. [potent- (st. of potēns), *powerful* (through presumed verb stem)], *political power*.

potentia, -ae, f. [potent- (st. of potēns), *powerful*], *political power, influence*.

potestās, -ātis, f. [potent- (st. of potēns), *powerful*], *power; sovereignty, majesty; possibility*.

potior, -īri, -itus [poti- (st. of potis), *able*], *become master of, get possession of, obtain; reduce to subjection*.

potius, adv. [n. sing. comp. of potis, *able*], *rather*.

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [= prae-hibeō, fr. prae, *BEFORE*; habeō, *hold*], *offer, produce, furnish, give ground for*.

prae-cēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssus [prae, *BEFORE*; cādō, *go*], *go before, precede; surpass, excel*.

praeceps, -cipitis, adj. [prae, *BEFORE*; caput, *HEAD*], *HEAD FOREMOST, HEADLONG; steep, precipitous*.

prae-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [prae, *BEFORE*; capiō, *take*], *take BEFOREHAND; instruct, order, direct*.

prae-clārus, -a, -um, adj. [prae, *exceedingly*; clārus, *illustrious*], *very illustrious, illustrious, glorious*.

praeda, -ae, f. [conn. w. prehendō, *seize*], *booty*.

prae-dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prae, *BEFORE, and so publicly*; dicō, *declare*], *proclaim, declare, maintain, avow*.

prae-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [prae, *BEFORE*; faciō, *make, put*], *appoint over, place in command*.

prae-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [prae, *FORWARD*; mittō, *send*], *send FORWARD, send in advance*.

praemium, -ī, n. [= ***praeimium**, fr. prae-venī, *take before* (others)], (what one receives more

than or in preference to others, and so) reward; *privilege*.

praescriptum, -ī, n. [n. perf. part. of praescribō, *prescribe*], *dictate, order*.

praesidium, -iī, n. [prae-*sed-*, sit *before*], (sitting before for protection, and so) *defence, protection, aid, support; guard, garrison*.

prae-stō, -āre, -itī, -ātus (once), -itus (once) [prae, *before*; stō, *stand*], (intr. w. dat. pers.) *excel, surpass*; (impers.) **praestat**, it is better; (tr.) *perform; exhibit, display*.

praestō, adv. [superl. fm. conn. w. prae, *before*], (in the foremost place, and so) *at hand*.

prae-sum, -esse, -fui [prae, *before*; sum, *be*], *BE at the head of, have charge or command of, BE invested with, preside over*.

praeter, adv. and prep. w. acc. [comp. form of prae, *before*], *beyond; besides; except*.

praeterea, adv. [praeter, *besides*; acc. pl. n. ea (orig. eā), *these things*; cf. antea], *besides, moreover, too*.

praeter-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [praeter, *beyond, by*; mittō, *let go*], *let pass, omit, leave*.

praeteritus, -a, -um [p. a. of praeterēō, *go by*], *past*.

practor, -ōris, m. [= *praeitor, fr. prae-*vi-*, *go before*], (one who goes before, and so) *leader; praetor* (Roman magistrate who administered justice).

precēs, -um, v. (usu. pl.), *entreaties, prayers*.

prēndō = **prehendō**, -ere, -hendi, -hēnsus, *grasp*.

premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, *press hard, beset, weigh down, burden, overpower, distress*.

pretium, -ii, n., *price*.

***prex**, ***precis**, r., see **precēs**.

prīdiē, adv. [prī- = prae (loc.),

before; loc. or abl. form of diēs, *day*], *the day before*.

primus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of prior, q. v.

prin-ceps, -cipis, adj. [primo- (st. of primus), *first*; *veap-*, *take*], (taking the first place, and so) *FOREmost, chief*; subst., *FOREmost man, leader, head*.

principātus, -ūs, m. [princip- (st. of princeps), *FOREmost* (through presumed verb st.)], (being foremost, and so) *FOREmost place, supremacy, presidency*.

principium, -ii, n. [princip- (st. of princeps), *FOREmost*], *beginning*.

prior, prius, adj. [comp. of st. conn. w. prae and prō], *FORMER*. Superl., **primus**, -a, -um, *FIRST, FOREmost*; (in agreement with subst., often) *FIRST part of; in primis, especially, particularly*; adv., **primum**, *FIRST*.

pristinus, -a, -um, adj. [pris- for priōs- (st. of prior), *FORMER*], *belonging to FORMER times, FORMER, earlier, ancient, pristine*.

prius quam or **priusquam**, adv. [prius, *sooner*; quam, *than*], *before, until*.

privātus, -a, -um [p. a. of privō, *deprive*], *private*; subst., *private individual*.

prō, prep. w. abl., *in front of, before; in behalf of, FOR; in view of, considering; in the light of, as; in return FOR*.

probitās, -ātis, f. [probo- (st. of probus), *upright, good*], *uprightness, probity*.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [probo- (st. of probus), *good*], *esteem good, approve; recommend, make satisfactory or acceptable*.

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cēssi, -cēssum [prō, *before*; cēdō, *go*], *go FORWARD, advance, proceed*.

Procillus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Procillus* (a Gaul much trusted by Caesar).

prō-cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prō,

in behalf of, FOR; cūrō, take care], attend to, look after, conduct, superintend.

prō-currō, -ere, -curri and -curri, -cursum [prō, forward; currō, run], run forward.

prōditio, -ōnis, f. [prō-ſda, give up, betray], betrayal, treachery, treason.

prōditor, -ōris, m. [prō-ſda, give up, betray], betrayer, traitor.

prō-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus [prō, forth; dō, give, put], give or put forth, make known, publish; give up, betray; hand down (as by tradition); memoriae prōditum est, the story runs (lit., it has been handed down to memory).

proelior, -āri, -ātus [proelio (st. of proelium), battle], engage in battle, fight.

proelium, -iī, n., battle, fighting.

profectio, -ōnis, f. [prō (w. vowel shortened) -ſfac, make off], (making off, and so) setting out, departure.

profectō, adv. [prō (w. vowel shortened), FOR; factō (abl. of factum), accomplished fact], assuredly.

pro-ficiscor, -ī, -ſectus [prō (w. vowel shortened), forth, off; *faciscor (inceptive of faciō), begin to make], (begin to make off, and so) set out, depart, proceed; proficisci in w. acc., set out for, depart to join.

pro-fiteor, -ēri, -ſessus [prō (w. vowel shortened), forth, openly; fateor, acknowledge], declare one's self, give in one's name, volunteer.

pro-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī [prō (w. vowel shortened), forth; fugiō, flee], flee forth, flee, run away.

prō-gnātus, -a, -um, adj. [prō, forth, from; (g)nātus, born, perf. part. of nāscor], born from, born, descended.

pro-hibeō, -ēre, -nī, -itus [prō (w. vowel shortened), forth, off; habeō, hold], keep off, exclude, cut

off, restrain, prevent, impede; prohibit; defend.

prō-iciō (pronounced: prō-jiciō), -ere, -jēcī, -jectus [prō, forth, off; jaciō, cast], cast off.

prō-lātō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [prō, forward; *lātō (intens. fr. st. of lātus, perf. part. of ferō), carry], (carry forward, and so) defer, postpone.

prō-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [prō, forward; moveō, move], move forward.

prope, adv. and prep. w. acc., near.

prōpēnsus, -a, -um [p. a. of prōpendeō, hang forward], inclined, disposed.

propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [comp. w. prope, near], near; substs.: propinquus, -i, m., relative, kinsman; propinqua, -ae, f., female relative, kinswoman.

propior, -ius, adj. [comp. of st. contained in prope, near], nearer. Superl., proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next, neighboring; proximā nocte, last night.

prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus [prō, forth; pōnō, put, set], set forth, display; make known, declare.

proprius, -a, -um, adj., one's own, peculiar to one's self, private, personal.

propter, adv. and prep. w. acc. [comp. form of prope, near; cf. inter and praeter], close to; owing to, on account of.

prō-pūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [prō, in front; pūgnō, fight], rush out to fight, make a sortie.

prō-pulsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [prō, forth, off; pulsō, drive], ward off, repel, avert.

prō-ripiō, -ere, -uī [prō, forth; rapiō, seize, drag], drag forth; w. se, rush forth.

prō-vidēō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus [prō, forward; videō, see], provide, have in view.

prōvincia, -ae, f., province.

proximitās, -ātis, f. [proximo- (st. of proximus), *next*], *nearness; relationship*.

proximus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of propior, q. v.

proximē, adv. [abl. fm. of proximus, *nearest*], *last*.

prudentia, -ae, f. [prudent- (st. of prūdēns), *sagacious*], *sagacity, practical wisdom, prudence, skill*.

Ptolomaeus, see Ceraunus.

pūblicē, adv. [abl. fm. of pūblicus, *belonging to the state*], *in behalf of the state, from a public point of view, as a measure of state policy*.

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [= *populicus, fr. populo- (st. of populus), *people*], *belonging to the people or state, public, common; rēs pūblica, common weal; common-wealth; in pūblicō, in public*.

pudet, -ēre, puduit or puduit est, *it shames; mē pudet, I am ashamed*.

pudicitia, -ae, f. [pudico- (st. of pudicus), *modest*], *modesty; chastity*.

pudor, -ōris, m. [base pud- (in pudet), *shame*], *sense of shame, modesty*.

puella, -ae, f. [= *puerula (-u disappeared and -r was assimilated to -l-) dim. fr. puero- (st. of puer) *child*], *female child, girl, little girl*.

puer, -erī, m., *child; boy*.

puerilis, -e, adj. [puero- (st. of puer), *child, boy*], *boyish, youthful*.

pueritia, -ae, f. [puero- (st. of puer), *child*], *childhood, boyhood*.

pūgna, -ae, f., *fight*.

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pugnā- (st. of pūgna), *fight*], *fight*.

pulcher, -ehra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful; honorable, glorious*.

pulvis, -eris, m., *dust*.

pungō, -ere, pupugī, punctus [v-pug-, *thrust*], *prick, sting; disquiet*.

✓ **pūniō**, -īre, -īvī or -īī, -ītus [old form, poenīō, fr. poenā- (st. of

poena), *punishment*], *inflict punishment on, punish*.

puppis, -is, f., *stern*.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [= *pūri-gō, fr. pūro- (st. of pūrus), *clean*; *vag-, drive, make* (through presumed adj. st.)], *make clean, cleanse, purge; free from suspicion, exculpate*.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [puto- (st. of putus), *cleansed*], *cleansed; (of trees) prune; (of accounts) clear up, settle; reckon; think, suppose*.

Q.

Q., abbr. of **Quīntus**, -ī, m., **Quintus** (Roman praenōmen or first name).

quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj. [quadrā-, conn. w. quattuor, *FOUR*; -gin- represents (de)cem, *TEN*], *FORTY*.

quadrīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [fr. st. of quadrīni, distr. num. adj., *FOUR*; -gentī, conn. w. centum, *HUNDRED*], *FOUR HUNDRED*.

quaerō, -ere, -sīvī or -sīī, -sītus, *seek, search, strive to obtain; acquire; ask, ask for, seek to learn, inquire, make inquiry, inquire for*.

quaestīō, -ōnis, f. [base quaes- (in quaerō, orig. quaesō), *inquire*], *inquiring; investigation; examination by torture*.

quaestus, -ūs, m. [base quaes- (in quaerō, orig. quaesō), *acquire*], *acquiring, acquisition; gain*.

quālis, -e, interrog. and rel. adj. [pron. st. quo- seen in forms of quis and quī], 1. interrog., *of what sort*; 2. rel., *of which sort, as*.

quam, interrog. and rel. adv., *how*; (used to strengthen superlatives) **quam māximus**, *as great as possible, the greatest possible*; **quam lātissimē**, *as extensively as possible*; (in comparisons) *as, than*.

quam ob rem or **quamobrem**, interrog. and rel. adv., *wherefore, for which or what reason*.

quamquam, conj. [quam, how; quam, how], (however, and so) *though, although; and yet*.

quamvis, adv. and conj. [quam, how, as; vis (volō), you wish], *as you will; however, however much, though, although, though ever so*.

quantus, -a, -um, interrog. and rel. adj. [pron. st. quo- seen in forms of quis and quī], 1. interrog., *how great, how much; quanti* (gen. of indef. value), *for how much*. 2. rel. (correlating with tantus) *as; (w. tantus omitted) as much as; quantō . . . tantō, by how much . . . by so much, the . . . THE*.

quārē, interrog. and rel. adv. [abl. of quae rēs], *WHY, wherefore*.

quartus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quattuor, FOUR], *FOURTH*.

quasi, adv. [quam, as; sī, if], *as if*.

quaterni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [quattuor, FOUR], *FOUR [from] each*.

quattuor, indecl. num. adj., *FOUR*.

quattuordecim, indecl. num. adj. [quattuor, FOUR; decem, TEN], *FOURTEEN*.

-que, conj., *and*.

quem ad modum or **quemadmodum**, interrog. and rel. adv., *in what or which way*.

queror, -ī, questus, *complain*.

qui, quae, quod, interrog., rel., and indef. pron., 1. interrog. (used adj.) *WHICH, WHAT*. 2. rel., *WHO, WHICH, WHAT, THAT; (w. aut. omitted) HE WHO, those WHO, any WHO, etc.; (at the beginning of a sentence, often) this, these, etc.; (= ut is, etc.) in order that HE, that HE, etc.; quō . . . eō, by what . . . by that, the . . . the; eō . . . quō, by that . . . by which, the . . . the*. 3. (after sī and nē), indef., *any*.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. rel. pron. [quī,

rel. pron.; -cumque, indef. suff.], *whoever, whatever; any whatever*.

quidam, quaedam, quoddam and (subst.) quiddam, indef. pron. [quī, rel. pron.; -dam, pron. suff.], *a, a certain, some one*.

quidem, adv., *indeed; nē . . . quidem* (with emphatic word or words between nē and quidem), *Not even*.

quiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus (p. a.), *become quiet, go to rest, refrain from action*.

quiētus, -a, -um [p. a. of quiēscō, *be quiet*], *quiet, at rest*.

quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet and (subst.) quidlibet, indef. rel. pron. [quī, rel. pron.; libet, *it is pleasing*], *any you will, any whatever*.

quīn, conj. [quī, abl. fm. of rel. pron. quī; nē, Not], *WHO . . . Not, that, but that, so that Not, from or without (w. part.)*.

quīndecim, indecl. num. adj. [quīnque, FIVE; decem, TEN], *FIFTEEN*.

quīnī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [quīnque, FIVE], *FIVE apiece*.

quīnquāgintā, indecl. num. adj. [quīnquā, conn. w. quīnque, FIVE; -gin- represents (de)cem, TEN], *FIFTY*.

quīnque, indecl. num. adj., *FIVE*.

quīnquennium, -ī, n. [quīnquenni- (st. of quīnquennis), *of five years*], *a period of FIVE years*.

quīntus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quīnque, FIVE], *FIFTH*.

Quirītēs, -īum, m. [Curi- (st. of Curēs, town of the Sabines)], *Quirites (i.e., inhabitants of Cures. After the union of the Sabines with the Romans, the name Quirītēs was applied to the combined people when acting in a civil capacity; the name Rōmānī, on the other hand, was applied to them when acting in a military capacity); fellow citizens*.

quis, **quid**, interrog. and indef. pron. 1. interrog., WHO, WHAT; (occasionally used adj.) WHAT; neut. sing. acc. **quid** (used adv.), WHY. 2. (after *si* and *nē*) indef., any one, any thing; (occasionally used adj.) any; *si quid*, if anything, if at all.

quispiam, **quaepiam**, **quodpiam** and (subst.) **quidpiam** or **quipiam**, indef. pron., any one, any.

quisquam, **quicquam** or **quidquam** (pl. and fem. sing. wanting), indef. pron. (used when a neg. is expressed or implied), any one, any thing.

quisque, **quaque**, **quodque** and (subst.) **quicque** or **quidque**, indef. pron., every one, each one, every, each; **nobilissimus quisque**, all the nobility; **antiquissimum quodque tempus**, priority (of occupation) in each instance.

quivis, **quaevis**, **quodvis** and (subst.) **quidvis**, indef. pron. [**quī**, rel. pron.; **vis** (volō), you wish], any you please, any whatever; any one you please, any one whatever.

quō, adv. [case fm. of pron. **st.** **quo-**], whither; (at the beginning of a sentence, often) thither, there.

quō, conj. [neut. abl. of rel. pron. **quī**] (= ut **eō**, usu. w. comp.), that thereby, in order that, that.

quoad, adv. [**quō** (w. vowel shortened), whither; ad, to], (how long, and so) as long as; until.

quod, conj. [neut. acc. of rel. pron. **quī**], because, that.

quōminus, conj. [**quō**, neut. abl. of rel. pron. **quī**; **minus**, less, not], that thereby the less, so that not, from (w. part.).

quoniam, conj. [**quom** = cum, since; jam, now], seeing that.

quot, indecl. interrog. and rel. adj., how many; as.

quot annis or **quotannis**

[quot, HOW many, as many as; annis, abl. pl. of annus, year], (on as many years as there are, and so) every year, annually.

quotiens, adv. [quot, how many], HOW often, HOW many times; as often as.

R. [snatch.

rapiō, -ere, -uī, raptus, seize, **ratio**, -ōnis, F., account, computation; list, register; business matter, transaction; manner, way, method, procedure.

ratis, -is, F., float, raft.

Raurici, -ōrum, M., the Raurici (tribe in Celtic Gaul, neighbors of the Helvetians).

recēns, -entis, adj., recent.

re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [re(d)-, again, back; capiō, take], take back; receive; sē recipere, to betake one's self, return, flee for refuge, recover; sē inde recipere, to come off.

re-citō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re(d)-, intensive; citō, recite], recite.

re-cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [re(d)-, again; cōgnōscō, become acquainted with], recall to mind, review.

recordor, -ārī, -ātus [re(c)-, again; cord- (st. of cor), HE], (through presumed adj. st-), (take to heart, and so) think of, reflect on, review, recall.

rēctē, adv. [abl. fm. of **rēct** RIGHT], RIGHTLY.

rēctus, -a, -um [p. a. of **reg** RIGHT, fitting].

re-cūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re(d)-, against; causa, objection (through denom. vb. *causō; cf. causor)], make objection against, refuse, **recūsāre dē**, to make objection to object to.

red-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus [red- back; dō, give], give back, return, restore; accord, award, grant, pay.

red-eō, -īre, -īī, -itum [red-, back eō, go], go or come back, return, come for settlement, come in the last resort.

red-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus [red-, back; agō, drive, bring], bring back, reduce.

red-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmtus [red-, back; emō, buy], buy back, redeem; contract for, farm; purchase, procure.

red-integrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [red-, again; integrō, make whole], make whole again, renew.

re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [re(d)-, back; dūcō, lead], lead or bring back.

re-ferciō, -ire, -sī, -tus [re(d)-, intens.; ferciō, stuff, cram], fill full, crowd.

re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus [re(d)-, back; ferō, BEAR], BEAR, carry or bring back, report; **re-ferre ad senātum**, to lay a matter before the senate.

rē fert or **rēfert**, -ferre, -tulit, it matters, it is of importance.

re-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī [re(d)-, back; fugiō, flee], fleeback, retreat.

rēgālis, -e, adj. [rēg- (st. of rēx), king], pertaining to a king, royal.

rēgiō, -ōnis, f. [vreg-, guide, direct], direction; boundary-line; territory, region; province, district.

rēgius, -a, -um, adj. [rēg- (st. of rēx), king], pertaining to a king, royal, regal.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [rēgno- (st. of rēgnum), sovereignty], exercise sovereignty, reign.

rēgnum, -ī, n. [vreg-, guide, direct], kingdom; sovereignty, royal power.

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus [vreg-, guide, direct], direct; rule, preside over.

re-laxō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re(d)-, intens.; laxō, loosen], relax, unbind.

religiō, -ōnis, f. [re(d)-vleg-, go over again, regard attentively], (regard for the gods, and so) religion; superstition, sacredness, sanctity; in pl., religious matters, religious rites, matters pertaining to the worship of the gods.

re-liquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus [re(d)-, back, behind; liquō, leave], leave behind, leave.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [re-liqu-, leave behind], remaining, other, rest of; subst., the rest.

re-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī [re(d)-, back, behind; maneō, stay], stay behind, remain.

remedium, -ī, n., *remedy*, means of defence.

Rēmi, -ōrum, m., the *Remi* (tribe in Belgic Gaul on the Marne).

rēmigium, -ī, n. [rēmig- (st. of rēmex), rower], rowing; oars; rowers.

re-miniscor, -ī [re(d)-, again; *miniscor, call to mind], recall to mind.

re-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [re(d)-, back; mittō, send, let go], send or let go back; relax, enfeeble.

re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [re(d)-, back, away; moveō, move], remove, dismiss.

re-mūneror, -ārī, -ātus [re(d)-, back, in return; mūneror, bestow], recompense.

Rēmūs, -ī, m., one of the *Remi* (see Rēmi), a *Reman*.

re-novō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re(d)-, again; novō, make NEW], RENEW.

re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re(d)-, back; nūntiō, bring word], bring back word, report.

re-pellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus [re(d)-, back; pellō, drive], drive back.

repente, adv. [case fm. of repēns, sudden], suddenly.

repentinus, -a, -um [repent- (st. of repēns), sudden], sudden.

re-periō, -ire, repperī, repertus [re(d)-, again; periō, procure], find, find out (by making inquiry) learn, ascertain, discover; invent, devise.

re-petō, -ere, -īvi or -īi, -ītus [re(d)-, again; petō, demand], demand back, demand; lay claim to.

re-prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus [re(d)-, *back*; *prehendō*, *grasp*, *hold*], *hold back*, *check*; *disapprove*, *reprehend*.

re-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [re(d)-, *back*; *primō*, *press*], *check*, *restrain*, *repress*.

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [repudiō- (st. of *repudium*)], *rejection*], *reject*.

re-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re(d)-, *back*, *against*; *pugnō*, *fight*], *oppose*, *resist*.

re-quirō, -ere, -sivī or -sīī, -sītus [re(d)-, *again*; *quærō*, *seek*], *seek after*, *ask for*, *be in want of*.

rēs, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F., *thing*, *affair*, *matter*, *subject*, *object*, *fact*, *circumstance*, *condition*, *movement*, *business*, *enterprise*, *it*; **rēs militāris**, *the military art*; **rēs frūmentāria**, *corn*, *grain*, *provisions*; **rēs pūblica**, *common weal*, *public welfare*; *civil affairs*, *government*, *commonwealth*, *state*; **summa rēs pūblica**, *the highest interests of the commonwealth*; **tōta rēs pūblica**, *complete control of public affairs*; **rēs familiāris**, *private resources*, *patrimony*, *property*; **in turbidis rēbus**, *in distressed circumstances*; **rēs dē**, *proposition to*.

re-sistō, -ere, -stitī [re(d)-, *back*, *against*; *sistō*, *stand*], *resist*.

re-spondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus [re(d)-, *in return*; *spondeō*, *promise*], (orig., *present in return*), *answer*, *make answer*, *say* or *tell in reply*.

respōnsū, -ī, N. [neut. perf. part. of *respondeō*, *answer*], *answer*.

re-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ītus [re(d)-, *again*; *statuō*, *set up*], *restore*.

re-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [re(d)-, *back*; *teneō*, *hold*], *hold fast*, *retain*, *detain*, *keep*.

re-vellō, -ere, -velli, -volsus or -vulsus [re(d)-, *back*, *away*; *vellō*, *pluck*, *pull*], *pull away*, *tear away*.

re-versiō, -ōnis, F. [re(d)-vert-, *turn back*], *return*.

re-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus

[re(d)-, *back*; *vertō*, *turn*], *turn back*; *return*.

re-vertor, -ī, -versus [re(d)-, *back*; **vertor*, *turn*], *turn back*; *return*.

re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re(d)-, *back*; *vocō*, *call*], *recall*, *restore*.

rēx, *rēgis*, M. [vrēg-, *guide*, *direct*], *king*.

Rhēnus, -ī, M., *Rhine* (river separating Gaul from Germany).

Rhodanus, -ī, M., *Rhone* (river in Gaul).

ripa, -ae, F., *bank of a river*.

rōbur, -oris, N., *oak*.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask*.

Rōma, -ae, F., *Rome* (city on the Tiber in Italy).

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [Rōmā- (st. of *Rōma*)], *Rome*, *belonging to Rome* (see *Rōma*), *Roman*; subst., **Rōmāna**, -ae, F., *Roman woman*.

Rōmānī, -ōrum, M., *Romans* (inhabitants of Rome; see *Rōma*).

rota, -ae, F., *wheel*.

ruber, -bra, -brum, adj. [vrub-, *REDDEN*], *RED*.

Rūfus, -ī, M., *Lucius Vibullius Rufus* (adherent of Pompey).

ruīna, -ae, F. [conn. w. *ruō*, *fall violently*], *downfall*, *crash*.

rūmor, -ōris, M., (orig., *noise*, *murmur*, and so) *hearsay*, *rumor*, *report*.

rūpēs, -is, F. [vrūp-, *break*], (broken, precipitous) *rock*.

rūrsus, adv. [= *revorsus*, perf. part. of *revertō*, *turn back*], *again*.

rūs, *rūris*, N., *the country* (opp. the city).

S.

Sabis, -is, M., *the Sabis* (mod. Sambre, river in Belgic Gaul).

Saburra, -ae, M., *Saburra* (lieutenant of Juba, king of Numidia).

sacrificiū, -ī, N. [sacrifico- (st. of *sacrificus*)], *sacrificial*], *sacrifice*.

sacrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sacro- (st. of *sacer*)], *sacred*], *declare sacred*.

saepe, adv. [neut. acc. of *sae-
pis, *crowded, frequent*; conn. w.
saepēs, *hedge*], *often*.

saepe numerō or **saepenumero**
rō [saepe, *often*; numerō, *in num-
ber*], *oftentimes, again and again*.

saepēs, -is, f. [conn. w. saepe,
q. v.], *hedge, fence*.

saeviō, -īre, -iī, -itum [saevo-(st.
of sacvus), *fierce*], *be fierce, rage*.

sagittārius, -iī, m. [adj. used
subst., fr. sagittā-(st. of sagitta),
arrow], (one having to do with
arrows, and so) *archer, bowman*.

salūs, -ūtis, f. [conn. w. salvus,
safe], *safety*.

salūtāris, -e, adj. [salūt-(st. of
salūs), *safety*], *pertaining to safety,
salutary*.

salūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [salūt-
(st. of salūs), *safety*], *wish safety
to, greet, pay one's respects to, sa-
lute*.

salvus, -a, -um, adj. [vsal-(akin
to vser in servus), *protect, sup-
port*], *sound, unimpaired, safe, un-
harmed, preserved*.

sancio, -īre, sanxi, sānctus
(sancitus, once) [conn. w. sacer,
sacred], *render sacred*; (of laws)
establish, ordain, enact.

sānctus, -a, -um [p. a. of san-
ciō, q. v.], *sacred, inviolable*.

sānē, adv. [abl. fm. of sānus,
sound], *indeed, by all means, for
aught I care, if you will*.

sanguis, -inis, m., *blood* (flow-
ing in the body).

Santoni, -ōrum, m., *the Santoni*
(tribe in Celtic Gaul on the
northern bank of the Garonne).

sapiēns, -entis, p. a. (of sapiō,
taste; discern) *discerning, wise*.

Sardinia, -ae, f., *Sardinia* (island
in the Mediterranean, west of
Italy).

Sardiniēnsis, -e, adj. [Sardiniā-
(st. of Sardinia), *Sardinia*], *of
Sardinia, Sardinian* (see Sardinia).

sarmenta, -ōrum, n. (usu. pl.)
[vsarp-, *lop, prune*], (what is
lopped, and so) *light branches*.

sarmentum, see sarmenta.

satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently*;
very.

satis faciō or **satisfaciō**, -ere,
-fēcī, -factum [satis, *enough*; faciō,
do], *give satisfaction, make repar-
ation*.

saxum, -ī, n., *stone* (large and
rough).

Scaevola, -ae, m., *Quintus Mu-
cius Scaevola* (augur and jurist of
Cicero's time; he was a son-in-
law of Laelius).

scelerātus, -a, -um [perf. part.
of scelerō, *pollute*], *polluted*; *ac-
cursed*.

scelus, -eris, n., *crime*.

scientia, -ae, f. [scient-(st. of
sciēns), *knowing*], *knowledge,
skill*.

sciō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, *know*.

Scipiō, -ōnis, m., 1. *Publius
Cornelius Scipio Africanus Major*
(conqueror of Hannibal at Zama
202 B.C.). 2. *Publius Cornelius
Scipio Africanus Minor* (destroyer
of Carthage 146 B.C.).

scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus
[vscrib-, *dig, grave*], (cut with a
pointed instrument, grave, and
so) *write*.

scūtum, -ī, n. [vscl-, *cover*],
an oblong shield
(the scūtum of the
Roman legionaries
was made of wood
covered with leath-
er; it was semi-
cylindrical in shape,
and was 4½ ft. long
by 2½ ft. broad);
see Fig. 8.

sē-cernō, -ere,
-crēvī, -crētus [sē(d),
apart; cernō, *sepa-
rate*], *set apart, sepa-
rate*.

secundus, -a, -um,
adj. [= *sequendus,
*gerundive of se-
quor, follow*], (following, and so)

second; *favorable*.



Fig. 8.
Shield (scūtum)
of the Roman in-
fantry soldier,
from the column
of Trajan. The
decoration rep-
resents a thun-
derbolt.

sed, conj. *but*.

sedes, -ēre, **sedī**, **sēssum**, **sit**.

sēdes, -is, **F.** **sēdī**, **sīt**: cf. **sedē**. **SEAT**: *habitation, abode*.

Sēgusiāvi, -ōrum, **M.** *the Segusiavi* tribe in Celtic Gaul on the Rhone.

sē-jungō, -ere, **jūnxī**, **jūnctus** [**sē** *dis-*, *apart*; **jungō**, *join*], *disjoin, separate, sever*.

Selencus, -ī, **M.** *Selencus* (one of the ablest generals of Alexander the Great: murdered by Ptolemy Ceraunus 240 B.C.).

sēmen, -inis, **N.** [**sē**, *sow*], *that which is sown, and so* **SEED**: *origin, source*.

sēmentis, -is, **F.** [**sēmen**, **SEED**], *sowing*.

sēminārium, -īi, **N.** [**adj.** used subst., **fr.** **sēmin-** (st. of **sēmen**)], **SEED**, *having to do with seed, and so* **nursery**.

semper, **adv.** [**conn. w.** **Lat. similis** and **English SAME**], *always*.

Semprōnia, -ae, **F.** **Sempronia** (wife of Decimus Junius Brutus; Sempronia was implicated in Catiline's conspiracy 63 B.C.).

senātor, -ōris, **M.** [**conn. w.** **senex** and **senātus**], **senator**.

senātus, -ūs, **M.** [**conn. w.** **senex**, *elder*], *council of elders, senate*.

senātūs cōnsultum or **senātuscōnsultum**, -ī, **N.**, *decree of the senate*.

senectūs, -ūtis, **F.** [**senec-** (st. of **senex**)], *old*, *old age*.

senex, **senis**, **adj.** *old, aged*; **subst.** *old man or woman*.

senilis, -e, **adj.** [**sen-** (st. of **senex**)], *old person*, *belonging to an old person, senile*.

Senonēs or **Sēnōnēs**, -um, **M.**, *the Senones* (tribe in Celtic Gaul along the upper Seine).

sēnsus, -ūs, **M.** [**base sent-** (in **sentiō**)], *become aware through the senses*, *sense-perception*; **sense**.

sententia, -ae, **F.** [**conn. w.** **sen-**

tiō, *think*], *opinion, view; vote; ad sententiam redire, to come back to the main question; in eam sententiam, to this effect, of this purport*.

sentiō, -īre, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**, *perceive, be aware; think*.

septem, indecl. **num. adj.** **SEVEN**.

septentriō, -ōnis, **M.**; also pl., **septentriōnēs**, -um, **M.** [**septem**, **SEVEN**; **triōnēs**, *ploughing oxen*], *the SEVEN prominent stars in the constellation Ursa Major or the Great Bear; the north*.

septimus, -a, -um, **ord. num. adj.** [**septem**, **SEVEN**], **SEVENTH**.

Sēquani, -ōrum, **M.**, *the Sequani* (tribe in Celtic Gaul enclosed by the Saône, the Rhone, and Mt. Jura); **sing.**, **Sēquanus**, -ī, **M.**, *a Sequanian*.

sequor, -ī, **secūtus** [**sequ-**, *follow*], *follow, pursue*.

sermō, -ōnis, **M.** [**ser-**, *connect*], *connected discourse, and so* *conversation, intercourse*.

servilis, -e, **adj.** [**servo-** (st. of **servus**)], *slave*, *pertaining to a slave, servile*.

serviō, -īre, -ivī and -īi, -itum [**servo-** (st. of **servus**)], *slave*, *be a slave, serve, submit to*.

servitūs, -ūtis, **F.** [**servo-** (st. of **servus**)], *slavery, servitude; serfdom, vassalage*.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**servo-** (st. of **servus**)], *protected; see servus*, *protect, preserve; keep, lay by*.

servus, -ī, **M.** [**ser-** (akin to **sal-** in **salvus**)], *protect*, *(a captive in war, not killed, but saved alive, and so) slave*.

Sēstius, -īi, **M.**, *Publius Sestius* (tribune of the people 57 B.C., and friend of Cicero).

sevērus, -a, -um, **adj.**, **severe**.

sex, indecl. **num. adj.**, **SIX**.

sexāgintā, indecl. **num. adj.** [**sexā**, **conn. w.** **sex**, **SIX**; **gin-** represents (de)cem, **TEN**], **SIXTY**.

Sextius, -ī, M., *Titus Sextius* (one of Caesar's lieutenants).

sextus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [sex, SIX], SIXTH; **sextus decimus**, SIXTEENTH.

sī, conj., *if*; **sī quis**, *if any one*; **sī quī**, *if any* (see *quis* and *quī*).

sic, adv., *in such a way, so, in this way, thus; as follows; to such a degree; ut . . . sic, as . . . so, although . . . yet.*

sicut and **sicuti**, adv. [sīc, *so*; *ut* or *utī*, *as*], *just as, as.*

sīdus, -eris, N., *group of stars, constellation; star.*

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sīgnific-(st. of *sīgnifex), *sign-making*], *show by signs, show, make evident.*

signum, -ī, N., *sign, signal*; in pl., *military standards; signa ferre, to advance against the enemy; conversa signa inferre, to face about and advance against the enemy; infestis signis consistere, to come to a halt and assume the defensive*; see Fig. 9.

silva, -ae, F., *wood, forest.*

silvestris, -e, adj. [conn. w. *silva*, *wood*], *overgrown with wood, wooded.*

similis, -e, adj. [cognate w. *same*], *like.*

simul, adv. [neut. fm. of *similis*, *like*], *at the same time; simul atque, as soon as.*

simulācrum, -ī, N. [simulā-(st. of *simulō*), *imitate*], *image.*

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fr. st. of *similis*, *like*, seen in adv. *simul*], *imitate; pretend.*

sīn, conj. [sī, *if*; nē, *not*], *if however, but if.*

sine, prep. w. abl. [sī, *if*, in that case; nē, *not*], *without.*

singulī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., *one by one, single, individual, separate, several*; translated adv., *singly, individually*; **in annōs singulōs**, *each or every year.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left.*

sī quidem or **siquidem**, conj. [sī, *if*; *quidem*, *indeed*], *since indeed.*

sitis, -is, F., *thirst.*

sitiō, -īre, -īvī or -ī [siti- (st. of *sitis*), *thirst*], *thirst.*

situs, -ūs, M. [vsī-, *put*], (*putting or placing, and so*) *position, situation.*

socer, -erī, M., *father-in-law.*

socius, -ī, M. [adj. used subst., fr. *vsoc*, *follow*; conn. w. *sequor*], *associate, confederate, ally.*

Sōcraticus, -a, -um, adj. [borrowed from the Greek], *belonging to Socrates* (celebrated Athenian philosopher; lived 468-399 B.C.); subst., *disciple of Socrates.*

sodālis, -is, C., *mate, comrade, intimate.*

sōl, sōlis, M., *SUN.*

soleō, -ēre, -itus, *be accustomed, be wont.*

sōlītūdō, -inis, F. [sōlo- (st. of *sōlus*), *alone*], *solitude; deserted place or tract, desert, wilderness.*

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sollicito- (st. of *sollicitus*), *agitated*], *stir up, agitate, urge, stimulate, incite; approach with corrupt overtures, corruptly solicit.*

Solōn (**Solō**), -ōnis, M., *Solon* (famous Athenian law-giver; his public career belongs to the first half of the sixth century B.C.).

solum, -ī, N., *ground, soil.*

sōlum, adv. [neut. of *sōlus*, *alone*], *only; nōn sōlum, not only.*

sōlus, -a, -um, adj. *alone, only, sole.*

somnus, -ī, M. [for **sopnus*, fr. *vsop*, *sleep*], *sleep.*

somniaum, -ī, N. [adj. used subst., fr. *somno*- (st. of *somnus*)],



Fig. 9.

Military standards, from a medal. The middle figure represents the eagle, the standard of the legion; the two side figures represent the standards of cohorts.

sleep], (resulting from sleep, and so) *dream*.

spatium, -iī, N. [vs̄pa-, SPAN, *stretch out*], *space*; *distance*; *time enough*, *time*; *interval*, *division*, *period*.

speciēs, gen. -ē, F. [vs̄pec-, SPY], *seeing*; *appearance*; *show*.

spectāculum, -i, N. [spectā- (st. of spectō), *look at*], *spectacle*, *sight*.

spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [intens. of speciō, formed as if from a perf. part. *spectus], *look at*; *face*, *extend*; *regard*, *heed*.

spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [conn. w. spēs, *hope*], *hope*, *look for*.

spēs, gen. -ēi (-ēi), F., *hope*; *prospect*; *hopefulness*; *in spem venire*, *to cherish or entertain hope*.

spīritus, -ūs, M. [conn. w. spīrō, *breathe*], *breath*.

spolium, -iī, N., usu. in pl., *spolia, -ōrum, N., *spoils*.*

sponte, abl. F. (only in gen. [spontis] and abl. sing.), *impulse*; *sponte* is regularly accompanied by a poss. pron.; as, *tuā sponte*, *of your own free will*.

statim, adv. [acc. fm. of st. statī, fr. vs̄ta-, STAND], *on the spot*, *forthwith*.

statiō, -ōnis, F. [vs̄ta-, STAND], *standing*; *station*, *post*; *in statiōe*, *on guard*.

Stator, -ōris, M. [vs̄ta- (causative), *make STAND*], *stayer*, *supporter* (epithet of Jupiter).

statuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus [statu- (st. of status), STAND], *standing*, *position*, *put in position*, *set up*, *station*; *decide*, *determine*, *resolve*.

statūra, -ae, F. [vs̄ta-, STAND], (standing, and so) *stature*.

stipendium, -iī, N. [= *stipipendium, fr. stipi- (st. of *stips), *contribution*; *base pend-* (in pendo), *pay*], (payment of a contribution, and so) *tribute*, *tribute money*.

stirps, -is, F., *stock*, *root*; *origin*, *source*.

stō, -āre, stetī [vs̄ta-, STAND], *stand*; *abide*; *dēcrētō stāre*, *acquiesce in a decision*.

streptitus, -ūs, M. [base strep- (in strepō), *make a noise*], *noise*, *din*.

studeō, -ēre, -uī, *be eager for*, *strive earnestly for*, *apply one's self to*, *devote special attention to*, *cultivate*; *exercise partiality*.

studiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [studio- (st. of studium), *zeal*], *full of zeal*, *zealous*, *earnest*; *eager* [for], *assiduous* [in], *fond* [of].

studium, -iī, N. [base stud- (in studeō), *be eager*], *eagerness*, *earnest desire*, *zeal*, *enthusiasm*; *devotion*, *attachment*; *pursuit*. In pl., *zealous efforts*; *studies*, *pursuits*.

suāsor, -ōris [vs̄uād-, *make SWEET*, *urge*, *advise*], (one who advises, and so) *adviser*; *suāsor esse*, *to advise*.

sub, prep. w. acc. and abl., *under*; **sub occāsum**, *towards the setting*.

sub-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [sub, *from under*; dūcō, *draw*], *withdraw*.

sub-eō, -īre, -īvi or -iī, subitus [sub, *under*; eō, *go*], *go under*, *go close to*, *approach*; *come stealthily*; (w. acc.) *undergo*, *submit to*.

sub-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus [sub, *under*; agō, *drive*, *force*], *constrain*, *impel*, *prompt*.

subitō, adv. [n. abl. of subitus, *sudden*], *suddenly*.

subītus, -a, -um [p. a. of subeō, *come stealthily*], *sudden*.

sublātus, -a, -um, perf. part., *raised* (see tollō).

submōtus, -a, -um [perf. part. of submoveō, *remove*, *drive back*], *driven back*; subst., **submōti**, *those driven back*.

sub-sequor, -ī, -cūtus [sub, *close upon*; sequor, *follow*], *follow close upon*, *follow*, *succeed*.

subsidiū, -iī, N. [sub-vs̄sed-, *sit in support of*], (sitting in re-

serve for support, and so) *sup-
port, aid, relief.*

sub-sistō, -ere, -stitī [sub, under; sistō, STAND STILL], come to a halt, halt; maintain one's ground, withSTAND.

sub-trahō, -ere, -xī, -ctus [sub, from under; trahō, draw], with-draw, keep out of reach.

sub-veniō, -īre, -vērī, -ventum [sub, under, to the support of; veniō, COME], come to the support of.

sue-cēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum [sub, under, close upon; cēdō, go], follow close upon; *succeed.*

sue-cendo, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus [sub, from below; *cendō (vcand-), set fire], set fire to (from below).

Suebī, -ōrum, m., the *Suebi* or *Swabians* (collective name of several German tribes; their king at the time of Caesar's first campaign in Gaul was Ariovistus).

Suebus, -a, -um, adj., pertaining to the *Suebi, Swabian.*

Suessiōnēs, -um, m., the *Suessi-
ones* (tribe in Belgic Gaul).

suffrāgium, -iī, n. [sub-vfrāg-, BREAK somewhat or partially], (fragment used for voting, and so) *voting tablet; vote, suffrage.*

sui, gen. (nom. wanting), reflex. pron., of himself, herself, itself, themselves; *inter sē*, see *inter*.

Sūlla, -ae, m., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla* (famous Roman dictator 82-79 B.C.).

✓ **sum**, esse, fui [sum, vs., be; esse, ves-, be; fui, vfu-, grow, become], BE (cognate w. vfu-), exist, prevail, consist, live, remain.

summa, -ae, f. [fem. of summus (sc. rēs), highest], the main thing, *sum; supreme control or direc-
tion; in summā, in general.*

summōtus, see **submōtus**.

summus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of **superus**, q. v.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus [sub, from under, up; emō, take], take UP, take; *assume, arrogate; sibi sūmere, to take UPON one's self,*

to assume; supplicium sūmere dē, to exact punishment from, to inflict punishment on.

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, adj. [sūmptu- (st. of sūmptus), ex-pense], expensive, costly.

sūmptus, -ūs, m. [sūm- for sub-ven-, take UP (for some purpose, and so) spend], expense; in pl., *extravagance.*

superbia, -ae, f. [superbo- (st. of superbus), proud], *pride, arro-
gance.*

superior, -ius, adj., comp. of **superus**, q. v.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [supe-ro- (st. of superus), ABOVE] (be above, and so) *be left OVER, re-
main, survive; surpass, exceed; beat, defeat, OVERCOME, conquer, vanquish; vitā superāre, outlive.*

superstitiō, -ōnis, f. [super-sta-, STAND OVER], (standing over as in wonder, awe, etc., and so) *ex-
aggerated fear of the gods, super-
stition.*

super-sum, -esse, -fui [super, OVER; sum, be], *BE left, remain.*

superus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. sub, from under, UP], above. Comp., **superior**, -ius, higher, UP-
PER; (of time) preceding, former; **superiōre nocte**, NIGHT before last. Superl., **summus**, -a, -um, highest; greatest, chief; of the highest importance; **supreme; ex-
treme; summus mōns**, the summit of the mountain; **summus cruci-
ātus**, the severest punishment.

supplex, -icis, adj. [sub, under; vplec-, FOLD, bend], (kneel-
ing, and so) *suppliant; translated
adv., in supplication.*

supplicātiō, -ōnis, f. [supplicā- (st. of supplicō), kneel to, pray to], (kneeling to, praying to, and so) *public supplication; thanks-
giving.*

supplicium, -iī, n. [supplic- (st. of supplex), suppliant], (humilia-
tion, and so) *punishment; in pl.,
sacrifice.*

sup-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub, from below, UP to; portō, convey], convey to a place, bring UP.

suprā, adv. and prep. w. acc. [abl. fem. of superus, ABOVE], 1. adv., above; (of time) before, previously. 2. prep., before.

suspiciō, -ōnis, f. [conn. w. spiciō, look askance at], suspicion; ground of suspicion; in **suspiciōnem venire**, to be attended with suspicion, to be open to suspicion.

sus-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [*subs, collateral fm. of sub, from below, UP; teneō, hold], support, sustain; perform, discharge; rein in, check; withstand.

suus, -a, -um, poss. pron., his own, her own, its own, their own; his, her, its, their; subst., suī, his men.

Syrācūsae, -ārum, f., **Syracuse** (city on the eastern coast of Sicily).

T.

T, abbr. of **Titus**, -ī, m., **Titus**, (Roman praenōmen or first name). **tābēscō**, -ere, tābui [inceptive fr. tābē- (st. of tābeō), melt], begin to melt; pine away.

tabula, -ae, f., board, plank; writing tablet; **tabula picta**, painting.

tabulātum, -ī, n. [neut. of tabulātus, boarded], flooring, story.

taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, be silent; pass over in silence.

taedet, -ēre, -duit or (rarely) -sum est, it wearies; **mē taedet**, I am weary.

talentum, -ī, n., **talent** (sum of money equivalent in value to about \$1080).

tālis, -e, adj. [pron. st. to-, THAT; cf. quālis], of THAT kind, of such a kind, such.

tam, adv., so; **nōn tam**, Not so, Not so much.

tamen, adv., nevertheless, yet, still, however, notwithstanding.

tametsi, conj. [tamen, nevertheless; etsi, although], although.

tandem, adv., at length; (in exclam.) pray.

tantulus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. fr. tanto- (st. of tantus), so great], so small, so slight.

tantummodo, adv. [tantum, so much, so far, n. acc. of tantus; modo, only], only, merely.

tantus, -a, -um, adj. [pron. st. to-, THAT; cf. quantus], so great, so much, so strong a, so important, such (= so great); so foul, so heinous, of such enormity; **quantus . . . tantus**, how much . . . so much, and so as much . . . as; **quantō . . . tantō**, by how much . . . by so much, the . . . THE; est **tanti**, it is worth while.

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tardo- (st. of tardus), slow], make slow, retard, delay, hinder.

tardus, -a, -um, adj., slow, tardy. **Tasgetius**, -iī, m., **Tasgetius** (chief of the Carnutes in the time of Caesar).

taurus, -ī, m. [for *staurus; cognate w. English STEER], bull.

Taurus, -ī, m., **Taurus** (mountain range in Asia Minor).

✓ **tectum**, -ī, n. [n. perf. part. of tegō, cover], roof; dwelling.

✓ **tegō**, -ere, tēxi, tectus [vt. teg-, cover; cognate w. English THATCH and DECK], cover.

tēlum, -ī, n., javelin; weapon.

temerārius, -a, -um, adj. [fr. st. contained in adv. temerē, rashly], headstrong, rash, indiscreet.

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. tempus, (lit.) portion], apportion duty; (conduct one's self with due proportion, and so) refrain, abstain; (w. dat.) restrain.

tempestās, -ātis, f. [conn. w. tempus, time], time; weather; storm.

templum, -ī, n. [prob. for *temulum, dim. fr. vtem, cut, through lost subst.], (orig. a space marked off by the augur's wand and consecrated, and so) a consecrated place; temple.

tempus, -oris, N. [vtēm-, cut], (lit., a section or portion, and so) a period of time, season, time.

tendō, -ere, tetendi, tēnsus or tentus [vtēn-, stretch], stretch, stretch out, extend.

tenebrae, -arum, F., darkness.

teneō, -ēre, -uī [vtēn-, stretch], hold fast, hold, keep; occupy; detain; (with quōminus) restrain, prevent; (culpā) tenēri, to be controlled by, to be under the dominion of, to be subject to, to be chargeable with; enchain, hold spell-bound, paralyze; (of wind) adversum tenēre, to blow in the face of.

tentō or **temptō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [intens. fr. tento- (st. of perf. part. of tendō, stretch)], attempt, try to effect, test.

tenus, prep. w. abl. (follows its word) [vtēn-, stretch], as far as.

tergum, -ī, N., back.

ternī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [tri- (st. of trēs) THREE], THREE and THREE, in groups of THREE, THREE from each, THREE apiece, THREE each.

terra, -ae, F. [for *tersa, fr. vtors-, be dry; conn. w. Lat. torreō, parch, and cognate w. English THIRST], dry land, land, earth, ground; terrā, by land, on land; land, country; in pl., the earth (as made up of various lands).

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [for *tersēō, vtērs-, tremble], frighten, terrify, alarm.

terribilis, -e, adj. [conn. w. terreō, frighten], frightful, terrible.

terror, -ōris, M. [for *tersor, fr. vtērs-, tremble], fright, alarm, terror.

tertius, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [conn. w. trēs, THREE], THIRD.

testāmentum, -ī, N. [testā- (st. of testor), bear witness], (what is acknowledged before witnesses, and so) will.

testis, -is, C., witness.

theātrum, -ī, N. [borrowed from the Greek], theatre.

Thēbae, -arum, F., Thebes (most important city of Boeotia).

Thrasybūlus, -ī, M., Thrasymbulus (distinguished Athenian general; freed Athens from the yoke of the thirty tyrants 403 B.C.).

Thūys, Thūynis, M., Thūys (prince in Paphlagonia).

Tigurinus pāgus, -ī, M., Tigurine district (one of the four divisions of the Helvetian country; its inhabitants were called Tigurini).

timeō, -ēre, -uī, fear.

timor, -ōris, M. [vtim-, choke, be breathless; conn. w. timeō], fear, alarm; cowardice.

Titūrius, -ii, M., Quintus Titurius Sabinus (one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war).

Titus, -ī, M., Titus (Roman praenomen or first name).

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. tollō (vtol-, raise), sustain].

tollō, -ere, (sustulī), (sublātus) [vtol-, lift, raise; perf. and perf. part. borrowed from sustollō], raise; remove, take away, break off; put an end to.

Tolōsa, -ae, F., Tolosa (mod. Toulouse, city in the Roman province of Gaul).

tormentum, -ī, N. [vtor(qu)-, twist, hurl], (means of hurling, and so) engine for hurling missiles; instrument of torture; torture.

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., whole, all, entire, complete, throughout.

trā-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus [trā(ns), over; dō, give], surrender, deliver; intrust, impart.

trā-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [trā(ns), across; dūcō, lead], lead, convey or conduct across.

tragoedia, -ae, F. [borrowed from the Greek], tragedy.

trahō, -ere, traxī, tractus, draw, drag.

trā-iciō (pronounced: trājiciō)

l. interrog. which (of two). 2. indef. rel., *whichever* (of two).

uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. [uter; cf. quisque from quis], *each of two, both*.

Utica, -ae, f., *Utica* (city in northern Africa, north of Carthage).

ūtilis, -e, adj. [base ūt- (in ūtor), *use*], *useful*.

ūtilitās, -ātis, f. [ūtili- (st. of ūtilis), *useful*], *usefulness, serviceableness, utility*.

utinam, adv. [utī (w. vowel shortened), *how*; nam, *pray*], *O that! would that!*

ūtor, -ī, ūsus, *use, make use of, employ; enjoy*.

utrum, adv. [n. acc. of uter, *which of two*], *whether*.

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife*.

V.

vacātiō, -ōnis, f. [vacā- (st. of vacō), *be free*], (being free, and so) *exemption*.

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *be empty; be free from; (of lands) lie unoccupied*.

vacuus, -a, -um, adj. [base vac- (in vacō), *be empty*], *vacant, empty*.

valeō, -ēre, -uī, (fut. part.) *valitūrus*, *be strong* (physically), *be well; have power, be able; (in leave-taking) farewell; minus valēre*, *not to be strong enough, to be too weak*.

Valerius, see Procillus.

vāllum, -ī, n. [neut. of vāllus, *stake*, used in collective sense], (collection of stakes, and so) *wall, rampart* (of earth surmounted by a palisading of sharpened stakes).

vānitās, -ātis, f. [vāno- (st. of vānus), *empty*], *emptiness; vanity*.

Vārus, -ī, m., *Publius Attius Varus* (praetor in Africa and adherent of Pompey).

vastō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vastō-

(st. of vastus), *unoccupied, waste, lay waste*.

vectigāl, -ālīs, n. [neut. of vectigālīs (w. final -e lost)], (payment for carriage, and so) *tax; revenue*.

vectigālīs, -e, adj. [conn. w. vehō, *carry*], *pertaining to payment for carriage, pertaining to taxes or tribute; subject to tribute, tributary*.

vehementer, adv. [vehement- (st. of vehemēns), *violent, vehement*], *violently, impetuously; strongly, powerfully, greatly, exceedingly, severely*.

vel, conj. [prob. imperat. of volō, *wish, choose*], (take your choice, and so) *or, or if you please; vel . . . vel, either . . . or*.

vēlōciter, adv. [vēlōci- (st. of vēlōx), *swift*], *swiftly, quickly*.

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., *swift*.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, f. [vēnā- (st. of vēnor), *hunt*], *hunting*.

vēn-dō, -ere, -didi, -ditus (vēn-eō, -īre, -ivī or -ī, -itum, is used as the pass.) [vēnum (acc. of place to which), *sale*; dō, *put*], (expose for sale, and so) *sell*.

Veneti, -ōrum, m., *the Veneti* (tribe in Celtic Gaul on the coast).

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum [vven-*COME*], *COME; in spem venire*, *to cherish or entertain hope*.

ventus, -ī, m., *WIND*.

verbum, -ī, n. [vver-, *speak*], *WORD*; in pl., *WORDS, expressions*.

Vercingetorix, -igis, m., *Vercingetorix* (prominent leader of the Gauls in the time of Caesar).

vērē, adv. [abl. fm. of vērus, *true*], *truly, rightly*.

vereor, -ērī, -itus [vver-, *be wary* (through presumed adj.)], *fear*.

vergō, -ere, *incline, slope, verge*. **vergobretus**, -ī, m., *vergobretus, vergobret* (title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui).

vērītās, -ātis, f. [vēro- (st. of vērus), *true*], *truth*.

vērō, adv. [n. abl. of vērus, *true*], *in truth, indeed, verily, pray; but*.

versor, -ārī, -ātus [intens., fr. verso- (st. of perf. part. of *vertō*, turn)], *busy one's self, occupy one's self, engage*; **versari in**, *to be encompassed by, to expose one's self to*.

versus, -ūs, M. [vvert-, turn], (lit., a turning [of the plow], and so) *furrow*; *verse*.

vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, turn.

vērūm, adv. [n. acc. of *vērus*, true], (but in truth, and so) *but*; **vērūm etiam**, *but also*.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true*; subst., **vērūm**, -ī, N., *the truth*.

vescor, -ī, take food, eat, *subsist*.

Vesontio, -ōnis, M., *Vesontio* (mod. Besançon, chief town of the Sequani in Celtic Gaul).

vesper, -erī and -eris, M., *evening*.

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. [vōs, you], *your* (pl.).

vestigium, -iī, N. [conn. w. *vestigō*, track, trace], *footstep, track*; *place, spot*; **in vestigiō**, *on the spot, forthwith*.

vestiō, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -ātus [vesti- (st. of *vestis*), clothing], *clothe*.

vestitus, -ūs, M. [vestī- (st. of *vestiō*), clothe], *clothing*.

vetus, -eris, adj., *old*; **of long standing**; *veteran*; *former*.

vēxillum, -ī, N., *red flag hoisted on the general's tent as a signal for battle*; see Fig. 11.

via, -ae, F. [vveh-, move, carry; conn. w. *vehō*, carry], *way, highway, road, street*; *journey, march*; *distance*; *method, way*.

viātor, -ōris, M. [viā- (st. of *viō*), travel], *traveller*.

Vibullius, see *Rufus*.

vicēni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [conn. w. *viginti*, TWENTY], *TWENTY each, TWENTY*.

vicēsīmus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [*viginti*, TWENTY], *TWENTI-*

eth; **vicēsīmus sextus**, TWENTY-SIXTH.

victima, -ae, F. [vvig-, be strong, w. superl. suff. (the finest animals being selected for sacrifice)], *victim for sacrifice, sacrifice*.

victor, -ōris, M. [vvic-, conquer], *victor*; used adj., *victorious*.

victōria, -ae, F. [victōr- (st. of *victor*), *victor*], *victory*.

victus, -a, -um [perf. part. of *vincō*, *vanquish*], *vanquished*; subst. **victi**, -ōrum, M., *the vanquished*.

victus, -ūs, M. [vvīgu-, live], (living, and so) *sustenance, food, maintenance*; **cōnsuetūdō victūs**, *manner of living, mode of life*.

vicus, -ī, M. [vvic-, settle; cf. the ending -wick in English geographical names; as, Warwick, Berwick], *village*.

videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsus [vvid-, see (through presumed adj. st.)], *see*. In pass., *be seen*; *seem*; *seem good*.

vigeō, -ēre [vvig-, be strong (through presumed adj. st.)]; conn. w. *vigil*, *awake*], *be vigorous, thrive, be in force*.

vigilia, -ae, F. [vigili- (st. of *vigil*), *awake*], *wakefulness*; *WATCH* (the Romans divided the night, i.e. the interval from sunset to sunrise, into four equal parts called watches; hence the watch, like the hour, varied in length according to the season); in pl., *WATCHMEN*.

vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vigili- (st. of *vigil*), *awake*], *WATCH*.

viginti, indecl. num. adj. [vī- (= dvī-), conn. w. *duo*, TWO; -ginti represents (de)cent, TEN], *TWENTY*.

viginti quattuor, indecl. num. adj., *TWENTY-FOUR*.

viginti quinque, indecl. num. adj., *TWENTY-FIVE*.

vimen, -inis, N. [vvī-, plait], (that which is plaited, and so) *with, osier*.

vincō, -ere, vicī, victus [vvic-, conquer], *vanquish, conquer*.



Fig. 11.
Vexillum.

Arverni, *Arvernī, -ōrum*, M.
as, *ut* or *utī*, adv.; *quemadmodum*, adv.; (= that which) *id quod*; (= inasmuch as) *quoniam*, conj.; (= since) *cum* (w. subj.), conj.; **just** —, *sicut*, adv.; — **follows**, *sic*, adv.; — **soon** —, *ubi primum, simul atque*; — **not** (in clauses of result) *quā nōn* or *ut nōn*; — **usual**, *ex consuetudine*; **so** . . . **as**, *tam . . . quam*; **to regard** —, *habere prō* (w. abl.); **to serve** —, *esse* w. dat.; — **to** (= concerning) *dē*.

ascend, *adscendō*.³
ascent, *adscēsus*, -ūs, M.
ascertain, *cōgnoscō*.³
ashamed, **I am** —, *mē pudet* (w. gen.).

aside, *lay* or *put* —, *dēponō*.³
ask, *rogō*¹ (w. two accs.); *quaerō*³ (w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. *ex* or *ē*, *ab* or *ā*, or *dē*); **ask** — **for**, *petō*³ (w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. *ab* or *ā*).

assault, 1. subst., *impetus*, -ūs, M. 2. vb., *oppugnō*¹; **take by** —, *expugnō*.¹

assemble, 1. tr., *convocō*.¹ 2. intr., *conveniō*.⁴

assembly, *concilium*, -iī, N.
assent, **to** — **to**, *approbātor esse* (w. gen.).

assert, *dicō*.³
assign, *attribuō*.³

assistance, *auxilium*, -iī, N.
associate, *socius*, -iī, M.

assume, *sibi sūmō*.³
asunder, **keep** —, *distineō*.²

at, (= in) *in*, prep. w. abl.; [arrive] **at**, *ad*, prep. w. acc.; (= at the house of) *apud*, prep. w. acc.

Athenian, *Athēniēnsis*, -e, adj.; also used subst.

Athens, *Athēnae*, -ārum, F.
attach, *adjungō*³ (w. acc. and dat.).

attachment, *studium*, -iī, N.
attack, 1. subst., *impetus*, -ūs, M.; *congressus*, -ūs, M. 2. vb., (= thrust at, rush at, aim at)

*petō*³; (= provoke, challenge to

combat, irritate) *laccēsō*³; (= approach with hostile intention) *adeō*.⁴

attempt, *tentō*¹ or *temptō*¹; *cōnor*.¹

attention, **call one's** — **to** (= remind forcibly), *commonefaciō*.³

audacity, *audācia*, -ae, F.
augment, *augeō*.²

authority, *auctoritās*, -ātis, F.; (= right) *jūs*, *jūris*, N.; **sovereign** —, *rēgnum*; **supreme** —, *imperium*, -iī, N.; **to be in** — **over**, *obtinere* (w. acc.).

Autronius, *Autrōnīus*, -iī, M.
auxiliaries, *auxilia*, -ōrum, N.;

ālārū, -ōrum, M.
avail, *valeō*.²

avert, *dēpellō*.³
avoid, *vītō*.¹

await, *expectō*.¹
award, *tribuō*.³

aware, **be** — **of**, *sentīō*⁴; *sciō*.⁴
away, — **from**, *ab* (before vowels and some consonants), *ā* (before consonants only).

Axona, *Axona*, -ae, M.

B.

bad, (morally) *improbus*, -a, -um, adj.

back, *re(d)*-.
badge, *insigne*, -is, N.

baggage, *impedimenta*, -ōrum, N.
band, *manus*, -ūs, F.

banishment, *exsiliū*, -iī, N.
bank, (of a river) *ripa*, -ae, F.

barbarian, *barbarus*, -i, M.
barely, *vix*, adv.

barricade, *obstruō*³ (w. acc.).
base, *turpis*, -e, adj.

battle, *proellum*, -iī, N.; **carry on** —, *pugnō*.¹

be, *sum*; — **in**, *insum* (w. dat.); — **away**, *absum*.

beak, *rōstrum*, -i, N.
beat, *pellō*.³

beautiful, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, adj.

beauty, *forma*, -ae, F.
because, *quod* (w. indic.); *cum* (w. subj.).

become, *fīō*; — firmly established, *inveterāscō*, -ere, -ūvī.

becoming, it is —, *deceat*,² impers.

beech, *fāgus*, -ī, F.

before, *ante*, prep. w. acc.; *antequam*, *priusquam*, conj.; (= preceding) *superior*, -ius, adj. comp.; (= already) *jam*, adv.; (= near) *apud*, prep. w. acc.; (= up to) *ad*, prep. w. acc.; — one's time, *immātūrus*, -a, -um, adj.; on the day —, *pridie*, adv.; to lay the matter —, *referre ad* (w. acc.).

beg, *petō*³ (w. *ab* or *ā* and abl. pers.).

began, *coepī*, def.

begin, (= make a beginning) *initium faciō*³; (= enter) *ineō*⁴ (w. acc.); — at (= rise from) *orior*⁴ (w. *ab* and abl.); to — battle, *proelium committere*.

beginning, *initium*, -ī, N.

behalf, in — of, *pro*, prep. w. abl.

behavior, (= thing) *rēs*, F.

behind, leave —, *relinquō*.³

Belgians, *Belgae*, -ārum, M.

believe, *credō*³ (w. dat. pers.); (= judge) *iudicō*.¹

Bellovacī, *Bellovacī*, -ōrum, M.

belonging, — to the town, *oppidānus*, -a, -um, adj.

bench, *subsēllium*, -ī, N.

benefit, *beneficium*, -ī, N.

besech, *petō*³ (w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. *ab* or *ā*).

best, *optimus*, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of *bonus*).

bestow, *dō*.

betake, to — one's self, *sē cōnferre*.

betoken, *dēsīgnō*.¹

betray, (= surrender treacherously) *prōdō*³; (= point out) *indicō*.¹

better, it is —, *praestat*, impers.

between, *inter*, prep. w. acc.; (= in) *in*, prep. w. abl.

bewail, *miseror*.¹

beyond, *extrā*, prep. w. acc.; *suprā*, prep. w. acc.

bidding, at the —, *jussū* (in abl. only).

bitter, — experience, *acerbitās*, -ātis, F.

blockade, *obsidēō*.²

blood, *sanguis*, -inis, M.

bloodshed, *clādēs*, -is, F.

boast, *glōrior*¹; make a — of, *glōrior*¹ (w. abl.); to make the same —, *idem glōriārī*.

body, *corpus*, -oris, N.

boldly, *audācter*, adv.; more —, *audācius*, adv. comp.

boldness, *audācia*, -ae, F.; with —, *audācter*, adv.; with the greatest —, superl. of *audācter*.

book, *liber*, -brī, M.

booty, *praeda*, -ae, F.

bordering, — on, *fīnitimus*, -a, -um, adj.

born, be —, *nāscor*.³

both, (= each of two) *uterque*, *utrumque*, *utrumque*, pron.; both... and, *et . . . et*.

bound, *contineō*.²

boy, *puer*, -erī, M.

branches, light —, *virgula*, -ōrum, N.

brave, *fortis*, -e, adj.

breadth, *lātītūdō*, -inis, F.

break, (= throw into disorder) *perturbō*¹; — through, *perfrīngō*³; — through (= burst through) *perrumpō*³; — into, *irrumpō*³ (w. acc.).

bribe, *largior*.⁴

bridge, *pōns*, *pontis*, M.

bring, *adferō*; (= lead to) *adducō*³; (= lead across) *trāducō*³; — back, *reducō*.³

Britain, *Britannia*, -ae, F.

Britons, *Britannī*, -ōrum, M.

broad, *lātus*, -a, -um, adj.

brother, *frāter*, -tris, M.

Brundisium, *Brundisium*, -ī, N.

Brutus, *Brūtus*, -ī, M.

bulld, *aedificō*¹; — up, *exstruō*.³

building, *aedificium*, -ī, N.

bulk, great —, *māgnitūdō*, -inis, F.

burn, *exūrō*, -ere, -ūssū, -ūctus; cremō,¹ ignī cremō.¹

burst, — into view, *ērumpō*³;
— through, *perrumpō*³.
business, *negōtium*, -*ī*, N.;
(= care) *cūra*, -*ae*, F.

but, *sed*, conj.; (somewhat stronger than *sed*) *vērūm*; (introducing with emphasis a new thought, e.g. a supposed objection) *at*; (= indeed) *vērō*, adv.; (= unless) *nisi*, conj.; (= in all, altogether) *omnino*, adv.; (= except) *praeter*, prep. w. acc.; (= only) *modo*, adv.; **nothing** —, *nihil nisi*; **no one** —, *nēmō nisi*; **but also or even**: *sed* or *vērūm etiam*; (correlating with *et*) *et*.

butcher, *jugulō*¹.

buy, *emō*³; — **up**, *coēmō*³.

by, (denoting agency) *ab* (before vowels and some consonants), *ā* (before consonants only); (denoting means) sign of abl.; (= through) *per*, prep. w. acc.

C.

Caesar, *Caesar*, -*aris*, M.

Caeparius, *Caepārius*, -*ī*, M.

call, (= name) *appellō*¹; (= call together) *convocō*¹; — **one's attention to** (= remind forcibly), *commonefaciō*³; — **to mind** (for the purpose of reflecting on), *recordor*¹ (usu. w. acc.); — **to account**, *accūsō*¹.

calm, *tranquillus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.

camp, *castra*, -*ōrum*, N.

can, *possum*; (= may) *licet*² impers. (w. dat.).

capital, *capitālis*, -*e*, adj.

capitol, *capitōlium*, -*ī*, N.

Cappadocian, *Cappadox*, -*ocis*, M.

captive, *captivus*, -*ī*, M.

Capua, *Capua*, -*ae*, F.

care, *cūra*, -*ae*, F.; **take** —, *cūrō*¹.

carry, *portō*¹; — **on**, *gerō*³; — **off** (= lead away), *abducō*³ *dēducō*³; — **on battle**, *pugnō*¹; **to — on war against**, *bellum inferre* (w. dat.); **to — one's arms into**, *arma inferre* (w. dat.).

Carthage, *Carthāgō*, -*inis*, F.

Carthaginians, *Poenī*, -*ōrum*, M.

case, in the — of, in, prep. w. abl.

Cassandra, *Cassandra*, -*ae*, F.

Cassius, *Cassius*, -*ī*, M.; **with** —, *Cassiānus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.

cast, *mittō*³; — **down**, *dēmittō*³.

Casticus, *Casticus*, -*ī*, M.

catch, — **sight of**, *cōspiciō*³.

Catiline, *Catīlina*, -*ae*, M.

Cato, *Catō*, -*ōnis*, M.

Caturiges, *Caturigēs*, -*um*, M.

cattle, *pecus*, -*oris*, N.

cause, 1. subst., *causa*, -*ae*, F.

2. vb., *faciō*³; *efficiō*³.

cavalry, 1. subst., *equitātus*, -*ūs*, M.; *equitēs*, -*um*, M. (pl. of *eques*, horseman). 2. adj., *equester*, -*tris*, -*tre*, adj.

cease, *dēsistō*³; *finem faciō*³.

Celts (Kelts), *Celtae*, -*ārum*, M.

centurion, *centuriō*, -*ōnis*, M.

Ceraunus, *Ceraunus*, -*ī*, M.

certain, *a* —, *a* — *man*, *quīdam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam* and (subst.) *quiddam*.

Cethegus, *Cethēgus*, -*ī*, M.

change, — **the direction of**, *convertō*³.

chariot-man (i.e. one who fights from a chariot), *essedārius*, -*ī*, M.

charioteer, *aurīga*, -*ae*, M.

cheap, *vīlis*, -*e*, adj.

cheese, *cāseus*, -*ī*, M.

cherish, — **the memory of**, *meminī*, def.;

— **hatred**, *odī*, def.

chief, 1. subst., *princeps*, -*ipis*, M. 2. adj., *māximus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj. (superl. of *māgnus*).

chiefly, *plērūque*, adv.

child, *puer*, -*erī*, M.

children (in general) *puerī*, -*ōrum*, M.; (with reference to their parents) *liberī*, -*ōrum*, M.

choose, — **rather**, *mālō*.

Cicero, *Cicerō*, -*ōnis*, M.

Cimbri, *Cimbrī*, -*ōrum*, M.

Cimon, *Cimōn*, -*ōnis*, M.

Cingetorix, *Cingetorix*, -*igis*, M.

circuit, *circuitus*, -*ūs*, M.

circuitous, by a — path, *en circuitū*.

citizen, *civis*, -is, c.

city, *urbs*, -is, f.; in the — (= belonging to the city), *urbānus*, -a, -um, adj.

civil, *civilis*, -e, adj.

claim, have a —, *oportet*,² impers. (w. acc. and influ.); lay — to, *repetō*,³

class, *genus*, -eris, N.

Claudius, *Claudius*, -ū, M.

clear, (= make vacant) *vacuēfaciō*³; make —, *explānō*¹; it is altogether —, *satis cōstat*, impers.

climb, *adscendō*,³

Clodia, *Clōdia*, -ae, f.

close, at — quarters, *commīnus*, adv.

clothe, *vestiō*,⁴

clothing, *vestītus*, -ūs, M.

coast, *ōra*, -ae, f.; sea —, *ōra maritima*.

cohort, *cohors*, -tis, f.

collect, *cōgō*³; *cōligō*³; *comparō*,¹

come, *veniō*⁴; (= arrive) *perveniō*⁴; — upon, *occurrō*³ (w. dat.); — out, *ēgredior*³; — back, *redeō*⁴; to — off, *sē inde recipere*; to — up to, *accēdere ad* (w. acc.); to — up with, *venire ad* (w. acc.).

command, 1. subst., *mandātum*, -ī, N.; (military) *imperium*, -ū, N. 2. vb., *imperō*¹; be in — of, *praesum* (w. dat.); place in — of, *praeſciō*³ (w. acc. pers. and dat. th.).

commander, *imperātor*, -ōris, M.

commend, (= praise) *laudō*,¹

commit, (of an injury) *faciō*³; (of crime) *admittō*³; (= intrust) *permittō*³ (w. acc. and dat.); *commendō*¹ (w. acc. and dat.).

common, *communis*, -e, adj.

commonwealth, *rēs publica*, *rēi publicae*, f.

community, *civitas*, -ātis, f.

company, *concilium*, -ū, N.

compare, *comparō*¹ (w. acc., and dat. or cum [abl.]).

compassion, have — on, *miserereor*² (w. gen.).

compel, *cōgō*,³

comrade, *comes*, -itis, c.

concerns, it —, *interest*, impers.

concerning, *dē*, prep. w. abl.

condemn, *damnō*¹ (w. gen. of charge or penalty); *condemnō*¹ (w. gen. of charge or penalty); *multō*¹ (w. acc. and abl.); to — to death, *capitis damnāre*.

condition, (= thing) *rēs*, f.

conduct, (= manage) *gerō*⁴; — across, *trādūcō*,³

confer, *agō*,³

conference, *conloquium*, -ū, N.;

have a —, *conloquor*,³

confidence, *fides*, -ēi (-ei, -e), f.

confident, — expectation, *fiducia*, -ae, f.

confines, *fīnēs*, -ium, M. (pl. of *fīnis*).

conflagration, *incendium*, -ū, N.

confusion, *tumultus*, -ūs, M.

conquer, *vincō*,³

conqueror, come off —, *superior discēdō*,³

conscious, *cōnsciūs*, -a, -um, adj. (w. gen. th.; w. or without dat. pers.).

conscript, *cōnscriptus*, -a, -um, p. a.

consent, withhold — (= [be] unwilling), *invitus*, -a, -um, adj.

consider, (= hold, regard) *habēō*² (w. two accs. in act.); (= ponder) *reputō*,¹

consign, *mandō*¹ (w. acc. and dat.).

consist, — in, *sum* (w. in and abl.).

conspiracy, *conjuratiō*, -ōnis, f.

conspire, *cōsentiō*,⁴

constitution, *jūs*, *jūris*, N.

constrain, *cōgō*,³

consul, *cōsul*, -is, M.

consulship, in the — of, *cōsul* (abl. abs. w. name of pers.).

consult, *cōsulō*² (w. acc.); — for, — the interests of, *cōnsulō*³ (w. dat.).

consume (by fire), *cremō*,¹

contempt, *contemptus*, -ūs, M.
contend, *contendō*³ (w. *cum* and abl.); *certō*¹ (w. *cum* and abl.).
contentedly, *aequō animō*.
contention, *contentiō*, -ōnis, F.
continue, *manēō*².
contradictory, *contrārius*, -a, -um, adj.
contribute, *cōnferō*.
control, (supreme) *imperium*, -ī, N.
convene, (= call) *vocō*¹.
convey, (in a body) *comportō*¹; — across, *trādūcō*³.
convict, *convincō*, -ere, -vīcī, -vīctus (w. gen. of the crime).
convince, *persuādēō*² (w. dat. pers.).
Corinth, *Corinthus*, -ī, F.
corner, *angulus*, -ī, M.
Cotta, *Cotta*, -ae, M.
council, *concilium*, -ī, N.
country, (= native country) *patria*, -ae, F.; (= land) *ager*, -grī, M.; (= territories) *fīnēs*, -ium, M. (pl. of *fīnis*); (opp. city) *rūs*, *rūris*, N.; (= commonwealth) *rēs publica*, *rēi publicae*; **native** —, *patria*, -ae, F.; — districts, *agrī*, -ōrum, M. (pl. of *ager*); **in the** —, *rūrī* (loc.).
countrymen, *cīvēs*, -ium (pl. of *cīvis*); *civitās*, -ātis, F.
courage, *animus*, -ī, M.; **full of** —, *animōsus*, -a, -um, adj.
course, (= plans, measures, proceedings) *cōnsilia*, -ōrum, N. (pl. of *cōnsilium*); **shameless** —, *audācia*, -ae, F.
cover, *tegō*³.
covetous, *appetēns*, -entis, p. a. (w. gen.).
cowardice, *timor*, -ōris, M.
craft, *ratio*, -ōnis, F.
Crassus, *Crassus*, -ī, M.
creature, **living** —, *animal*, -ālīs, N.
Crete, *Crēta*, -ae, F.
crew, **that** —, *istī*, -ōrum, M.
crime, *scelus*, -eris, N.; (= daring, lawless crime) *facinus*, -oris, N.
criticize, (adversely) *accūsō*¹

cross, *trānseō*⁴.
crown, (as, with glory) *honōrō*¹.
cruel, *crūdēlis*, -e, adj.
crush, (= break in pieces) *frangō*; (= overpower) *opprimō*³.
custody, *custōdia*, -ae, F.
custom, *mōs*, *mōris*, M.
cut, — **off**, *excipiō*³; — **off**, (from supplies) *prohibeō*² (w. acc. and abl.).
Cyrus, *Cyrrus*, -ī, M.

D.

daily, *cotidianus*, -a, -um, adj.
damage, *noceō*² (w. dat.).
danger, *periculum*, -ī, N.
dangerous, *periculōsus*, -a, -um, adj.
dare, *audeō*².
dart, *telum*, -ī, N.
daughter, *fīlia*, -ae, F.
day, *diēs*, gen. -ēī (-ēī, -ē), M. (sometimes F. in sing.); **on the** — **before**, **on the preceding** —, *pridie*, adv.
dear, *cārus*, -a, -um, adj.; **how** —, *quanti* (gen. of indef. value).
death, *mors*, *mortis*, F.; (as a penalty for crime) *caput*, -itis, N.; **put to** —, *necō*¹; **to condemn to** —, *capitis damnare*.
deceive, *fallō*³.
decide, *cōstituō*³.
Decii, *Decii*, -ōrum, M.
decision, *iudicium*, -ī, N.
declare, *dēclārō*¹; *prōnūntiō*¹; (= set forth) *prōpōnō*³; (of war) *indīcō*³.
decline, (= be unwilling) *nōlō*.
decree, *cēnseō*².
deem, *iudicō*¹ (w. two accs. in act.).
deep, *altus*, -a, -um, p. a.
deeply, — **move**, *permovēō*².
defeat, 1. subst., *adversum proelium*. 2. vb., *superō*¹.
defend, *dēfendō*³.
defence, *praesidium*, -ī, N.; **means of** —, *remedium*, -ī, N.
defiance, **set at** —, *neglegō*³.
delay, *moror*¹.
deliberate, *dēliberō*¹

deliver, (of an address) *habēō*.²

demand, *poscō*³; (= claim, demand as a right) *postulō*¹ (w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. *ab*, *ā*); (= command, order) *imperō*¹ (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.).

Demaratus, *Dēmarātus*, -ī, M.

denarius, *dēnārius*, -ī, M.

dense, *dēnsus*, -a, -um, adj.

deny, *negō*.¹

depart, *exeō*⁴; *dēcēdō*³; *sēcēdō*³; (= set out) *proficiscor*³; — to join, *proficiscor*³ in (w. acc.).

departure, *profectiō*, -ōnis, F.

depredation, *malefīcium*, -ī, N.; *injūria*, -ae, F.

deprive, (= wrest from) *ēripiō*³ (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.).

descend, (of birth) *orior*.⁴

description, (= kind) *genus*, -eris, N.

desert, (= be wanting, fail) *dēsūm*.

deserter, *perfuga*, -ae, M.

deserve, *mereor*²; to — well of, *merēri dē*.

design, *cōsiliūm*, -ī, N.

desire, 1. subst., *volūtās*, -ātis, F. 2. vb., (of voluntary desire, i.e. desire prompted by the will) *volō*; (of involuntary desire, i.e. natural inclination) *cupiō*³; — ardently, *exoptō*.¹

desirous, *studiōsus*, -a, -um, adj. (w. gen.).

desperately, (= sharply, vigorously) *ācritēr*, adv.

despise, *dēspiciō*.³

destitute, *nūdus*, -a, -um, adj. (w. abl.).

destroy, (= annihilate) *dēlēō*²; (= squander, ruin) *perdō*³ (*pereō* is used for the pass.); (= break through) *perfringō*³; (= cut down, e.g. a bridge) *interscindō*, -ere, -scidi, -scissus.

destruction, *perniciēs*, gen., -ī, -iēs or -iē, F.; (= downfall) *obitus*, -ūs, M.

destructive, *perniciōsus*, -a, -um, adj.

detail, in —, *singulātīm*, adv.

deter, *dēterreō*²; to — from, *dēterrēre quōminūs* (w. subj.).

determine, (= fix, establish) *cōstituō*.³

devote, — one's self, *serviō*¹ (w. dat.).

devoted, — to, *diligēns*, -entis, adj. (w. gen.).

devotion, *studium*, -ī, N.

dictates, *praescriptum*, -ī, N.

die, *morior*, *mori* (*moriri*), *mortuus*; *ēmorior*.

differ, *differō*, *differre* (the meaning *differ* appears to be confined to the pres. system); to — from one another, *inter sē differre*.

difficult, *difficilis*, -e, adj.

difficulty, with —, *aegrē* adv.; (= scarcely) *vix*; with the utmost —, *aegerrimē*, adv. (superl. of *aegrē*).

difficulties, *angustiae*, -arum, F.

digest, *digerō*, -ere, -gessi, -gestus.

dignity, priestly —, *sacerdotium*, -ī, N.

diligence, *diligentia*, -ae, F.

diminutive, — stature, *brevitās*, -ātis, F.

Dionysius, *Dionȳsius*, -ī, M.

direct, (= order) *imperō*¹ (w. dat.).

direction, (= part) *pars*, *partis*, F.; (= supreme control) *imperium*, -ī, N.; change the — of, *convertō*.³

disaffection, *aliēnātiō*, -ōnis, F.

disagreement, *dissēnsiō*, -ōnis, F.

disapprove, *reprehendō*.³

disaster, *calamitās*, -ātis, F.

discharge, *fungor*³ (w. abl.).

discipline, *disciplīna*, -ae, F.

discuss, *disserō*³ (w. *dē* and abl.); *agō*³ (w. *dē* and abl. th., and cum w. abl. pers.).

dish, sacrificial —, *patera*, -ae, F.

dismiss, *dimittō*³; (= lay aside) *dēponō*.³

dispatch, *mittō*.³

display, *ostendō*.³
dispose, — of (= sell), *vendō*³ (*vēneō* is used as the pass.).
disposed, *cupidus*, -a, -um, adj. (w. gen.); **favorably** —, *amicus*, -a, -um, adj.; **be not disposed**, *nōlō*.
disposition, *animus*, -ī, M.; **favorable** —, *voluntās*, -ātis, F.
dispute, *contrōversia*, -ae, F.
disquiet, *perturbō*¹; *commoveō*.²
disquieting, *molestus*, -a, -um, adj.
disregard, *neglegō*³; (= despise) *contemnō*, -ere, -tempſi, -temptus.
dissatisfied, I am —, *mē paenitet*, impers. (w. gen.).
dissension, *dissēnsiō*, -ōnis, F.
distance, *intervāllum*, -ī, N.; **to a** —, *procul*, adv.; **at a** — **from**, *longē ā*.
distant, *be* —, *absum*.
distress, *premō*.³
distribute, *distribūō*.³
district, *pāgus*, -ī, M.; (= territory, domain), *ager*, -grī, M.; (= quarter, region) *regiō*, -ōnis, F.; **country** —s, *agri*, -ōrum, M.
disturb, *perturbō*.¹
ditch, *fossa*, -ae, F.
Divico, *Diviciō*, -ōnis, M.
divine, *divīnus*, -a, -um, adj.
Divitiacus, *Divitiacus*, -ī, M.
divulge, *ēnūntiō*.¹
do, *faciō*³; *agō*³; **have to** — **with**, *pertineō*² (w. *ad* and *acc.*); **— away with**, *tollō*.³
done, *be* —, *fīō*.
doubt, *dubitō*¹; **there is no** —, *nōn est dubium* (w. *quān* and subj.).
doubtful, *dubius*, -a, -um, adj.
doubtless, *profectō*, adv.
down, *cast* —, *dēmittō*³; **to lay** — **arms**, *ab armīs discēdere*.
drag, *trahō*.³
draw, (of a sword) *ēducō*³; (= draw apart) *distrahō*³; — **near**, *appropinquō*¹ (w. *dat.* or *ad* w. *acc.*); — **up**, *instruō*.³
dream, l. subst., *somnium*, -ī, N.; vb., *somniō*.¹

drink, *bibō*, -ere, *bibī*.
drive, *agō*³; (= cast out) *ēiciō*³; (= drive in a body) *compellō*³; — **out**, *expellō*.³
drag, *medicāmentum*, -ī, N.
Dumnorix, *Dumnorix*, -igis, M.
dust, *pulvis*, -eris, M.
duty, *officium*, -ī, N.
dwell, *incolō*.³
dwelling, *tectum*, -ī, N.; — **place**, *domicilium*, -ī, N.

E.

each, — **one**, *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quodque* (adj.) and *quicque* or *quidque* (subst.), indef. pron.; (of two) *uterque*, -traque, -trumque, pron.; **with** — **other**, *inter sē* (*sēsē*).
eager, *alacer*, -cris, -cre, adj.
eagerly, *intentus*, -a, -um, p. a. (in agreement w. subst.).
earlier, *prīstinus*, -a, -um, adj.
early, (= ancient) *antīquus*, -a, -um, adj.
earnest, *studiōsus*, -a, -um, adj. (w. gen.).
earnestly, *press* —, *postulō*¹ (w. *acc.* th. and *abl.* pers. w. *ab*, *ā*).
earth, — **mound**, *tumulus*, -ī, M.
easily, *facile*, adv.; (= at random) *temerē*, adv.; **very** — (after a neg.), *satis commodē*, adv.
east, (= rising sun) *sōl oriēns*, *sōlis orientis*, M.
easy, *very* —, *perfacilis*, -e, adj.
Ebro, *Hibērus*, -ī, M.
effect, **to** — **a purpose**, *rem efficere*, *rem obtinēre*.
effects, **their** —, n. pl. of *suus*, -a, -um, poss. pron.
effectually, *facile*, adv.
effort, *opera*, -ae, F.; **to bestow** —, *operam dare* (w. *ut* and subj.).
eight, *octō*, indecl. num. adj.
eighteenth, *duodēvicesimus*, -a, -um or *octāvus decimus*, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.
eighty, *octōgintā*, indecl. num. adj.

either . . . or, (when an alternative is offered) *vel . . . vel*; (when one excludes the other) *aut . . . aut*; **not . . . either . . . or**, *neque . . . neque, nec . . . nec*.
elect, *dēsīgnātus*, -ī, masc. p. a.
embankment, *agger*, -is, M.
embarked, — **on**, *impositus*, -a, -um, perf. part. of *impōnō* (w. in and acc.).

embassy, *lēgatiō*, -ōnis, F.
empty, (= make vacant) *vacuēfaciō*.³

encamp, *cōnsīdō*.³
end, *fīnis*, -is, M. (sometimes F. in sing.).

endeavor, *cōnor*¹; **to — to force** (= to attempt by force), *per vim tentāre*.

endeavors, *cōnātā*, -ōrum, N.

endure, *ferō*; *patior*.³

enemy, (personal) *inimicus*, -ī, M.; (public) *hostis*, -is, C.; (= a hostile army) *hostēs*, -ium, pl. (usu., but also) *hostis*, -is, M., sing.

energy, *vīs*, -is, F.; **with —**, *ācritēr*, adv.; **with the greatest —**, superl. of *ācritēr*.

engage, **to — in battle**, *proelium committere*.

engagement, (= battle) *proelium*, -i, N.; **to come to an —**, *proeliō decertāre*; **to open an —**, *proelium committere*.

engine, *māchinātiō*, -ōnis, F.

enjoy, *fruor*³ (w. abl.); (= make use of) *ūtōr*³ (w. abl.).

enmity, *inimicitia*, -ae, F.

enough, *satis*, adv.; **well —**, *commode*, adv.

ensue, *sequor*.³

enterprise, (= thing) *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.; (= business) *negōtium*, -i, N.

entire, *tōtus*, -a, -um, adj.

entreat, *orō*.¹

entreaties, *precēs*, -um, F. pl.

envoy, *lēgātus*, -ī, M.

envy, 1. subst., *invidia*, -ae, F.
 2. vb., *invidēō*² (w. dat.).

Epaminondas, *Epaminōndās*, -ae, M.

Eporedorix, *Eporedorix*, -is, M.

equal, *pār*, *paris*, adj.; *aequus*, -a, -um, adj.; (= same) *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*, demonstr. pron.

equally, *juxtā*, adv.

equanimity, *aequus animus*.

erect, *erigō*³; (of a tower) *excitō*.¹

error, *peccātum*, -ī, N.

escape, *effugiō*³; (= flee) *fugiō*.³

especially, *māximē*, adv.

establish, *cōfirmō*.¹

established, **become firmly —**, *inveterāscō*, -ere, -āvi.

esteem, (= consider) *habēō*.²

eternal, *aeternus*, -a, -um, adj.

even, *etiam*, conj.; — **to**, *jam*

ad (w. acc.); **but —**, *sed etiam*,

vērūm etiam; **not —**, *nē . . . quidem* (w. the emphatic word or

words between *nē* and *quidem*);

— **though**, *etiāmsi* (w. indic. and

subj., like *si*; the indic. is more

common).

ever, *unquam* or *umquam*, adv.

every, *omnis*, -e, adj.; —, —

one, *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quodque*

(adj.), and *quicque* or *quidque*

(subst.), indef. pron.

every thing, *omnia* (n. pl. of

omnis, -e, adj.); *cūncta* (n. pl. of

cūnctus, -a, -um, adj.).

evident, **make —**, *significō*¹;

it is —, *appāret*.²

exceed, *superō*.¹

excel, *praestō*¹ (w. dat.); *superō*¹

(w. acc.); *praecēdō*³ (w. acc.).

except, *praeter*, adv. and prep.

w. acc.; (= unless) *nisi*, conj.

excessive, *nimius*, -a, -um, adj.

exchange, **to —**, *inter sē dare*.

exclaim, *conclāmō*.¹

exculpate, *pūrgō*.¹

execute, *administrō*.¹

exercise, (= apply) *adhībēō*²;

— **partiality**, *studeō*.²

exhort, *cohortor*.¹

exile, *exsiliūm*, -i, N.

expectation, *opiniō*, -ōnis, F.;

confident —, *fūdiācia*, -ae, F.

expel, *expellō*³; (= drive) *pellō*³; (= cast out) *ēiciō*³.

expense, *sūmptus*, -ūs, M.

experience, 1. subst., *ūsus*, -ūs, M.; **bitter**, *acerbitās*, -ātis, F.

2. vb. (= receive) *accipio*³.

experienced, *peritus*, -a, -um, p. a. (w. gen.).

explain, (= set forth) *expōnō*³.

explanation, say by way of —, *explānō*¹.

expression, *vōx*, *vōcis*, F.

extend, 1. intr., *exeō*⁴; (= lie open) *pateō*²; (= look) *spectō*¹.

2. tr. (= construct) *perducō*³.

extensive, *lātus*, -a, -um, adj.

extreme, *extrēmus*, -a, -um, adj. (superl.).

eye, *oculus*, -ī, M.

eyes, in my —, *mihi* (dat. ref.).

F.

Fabius, *Fabius*, -ī, M.

face, in the — of, *contrā*, prep. w. acc.

fact, (= thing) *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.; **in point of** —, *rē* (abl. of *rēs*).

Faesulae, *Faesulae*, -ārum, F.

fall, 1. intr., *dēsum*. 2. tr. and intr., *dēficiō*³. 3. tr., *dēserō*³.

faint-hearted = of feeble courage; see **feeble** and **courage**.

faithful, *fīdus*, -a, -um, adj.

fall, (of javelin) *accidō*³; (= fall together, fall with a crash) *corruō*; — **upon**, (= chance upon) *incidō*³ (w. in and acc.).

family, (= stock, race) *genus*, -eris, N.

famous, (= that) *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, demonstr. pron.

fancy, *arbitror*¹.

Fannius, *Fannius*, -ī, M.

far, *longē*, adv.; **by** —, *longē*, adv.; **too** —, *longius*, adv. (comp. of *longē*).

farm, *redimō*³.

farther, *ūterior*, -ius, adj.

fast, make —, *dēstinō*¹.

father, *pater*, -tris, M.; **genitor**, -ōris, M.

father-in-law, *socer*, -erī, M.

fault, *culpa*, -ae, F.

favor, *faveō*² (w. dat.).

favorable, (= good) *bonus*, -a, -um, adj.; — **disposition**, *voluntās*, -ātis, F.

favorableness, *opportunitās*, -ātis, F.

favorably, — **disposed**, *amīcus*, -a, -um, adj.

fear, 1. subst., *metus*, -ūs, M.; *timor*, -ōris, M. 2. vb., *timeō*²; *metuō*³; *vereor*²; **paralyze with** —, *perterreō*².

fearing (pres. part.), *veritus*, -a, -um (perf. part. of *vereor*).

feeble, *infirmus*, -a, -um, adj.

fellow, — **citizen**, *civis*, -is, C.

fertile, *ferāx*, -ācis, adj.

few, *pauci*, -ae, -a, adj.; **a** — **words**, *pauca*, -ōrum, N.

field, *ager*, -grī, M.

fifteen, *quīdecim*, indecl. num. adj.

fifty, *quīquāgintā*, indecl. num. adj.

fight, 1. subst., *pūgna*, -ae, F. 2. vb., *pūgnō*¹; *cōfligō*³.

fighting, *pūgna*, -ae, F.; (= battle) *proelium*, -ī, N.

figure, (= body) *corpus*, -oris, N.

fill, *compleō*²; (= fill full, crowd) *referciō*⁴.

find, (by search or inquiry) *reperiō*⁴; — **out**, (= trace out) *investigō*⁴.

finish, *cōnficiō*³.

fir, *abiēs*, -etis, F.

fire, *ignis*, -is, M.

firmly, **become** — **established**, *inveterāscō*, -ere, -āvī.

first, *primus*, -a, -um, adj.; *primum*, adv.; **for the** — **time**, *primum*, adv.; **at** —, *primō*, adv.

five, *quīque*, indecl. num. adj.; **in groups of** —, *quīnī*, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.

five hundred, *quīngentī*, -ae, -a, num. adj.

fix, (= value, appraise) *aestimō*¹.

flattery, *adsentatiō*, -ōnis, F.

flee, *fugio*³; (= flee forth) *pro-*

groups, in — of five, *quīnī*, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.; in — of six, *senī*, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.

guard, *custōs*, -ōdis, c.; (= gar-
rison) *praesidium*, -ī, n.; be on
one's —, *caveō*.²

H.

habitation, *sedēs*, -is, f.

Hamilear, *Hamilear*, -aris, m.

hand, *manus*, -ūs, f.; at —,
praestō, adv.

Hannibal, *Hannibal*, -alis, m.

happen, *accidō*³; (= become,
be done) *fiō*.

happy, *beātus*, -a, -um, p. a.

harass, *premō*³; *exagitō*.¹

haste, make —, *contendō*.³

hasten, *mātūrō*¹; *contendō*³;
properō.¹

hate, *odī*, def.

hatred, *cherish* —, *odī*, def.

have, *habeō*²; *sum* (w. dat. of
possession); — to do with, *per-
tineō*² (w. *ad* and acc.).

he, (= that man) *ille*; (weaker
than *ille*) *is*; (emphatic, = him-
self) *ipse*; (in indir. disc. refer-
ring to principal subject) *sē*;
omitted when implied in the end-
ing of the vb.

head, *caput*, -itis, n.; (= chief
man) *princeps*, -ipīs, m.

headlong, *praeceps*, -ipitis, adj.

headstrong, *temerārius*, -a, -um,
adj.

health, *valētūdō*, -inis, f.

hear, *audiō*⁴; (= hear from a
distance or hear distinctly) *exau-
diō*⁴; (= receive by communica-
tion from others) *accipio*.³

heaven, *caelum*, -ī, n.

heavily, *graviter*, adv.

height, *altitūdō*, -inis, f.

heinous, so —, *tantus*, -a, -um,
adj.

help, *auxilium*, -iī, n.; I can-
not —, *facere nōn possum* (w.
quā and subj.).

Helvetians, *Helvētī*, -ōrum, m.

Helvetii, *Helvētī*, -ōrum, m.

hem, — in, *contineō*² (w. acc.).

hence, *hinc*, adv.

Hercules, by —, *mehercule*.

here, be —, *adsum*.

herself, (reflex.) *sē*.

hesitate, *dubitō*.¹

Hesperia, *Hesperia*, -ae, f.

high, *altus*, -a, -um, p. a.; (=
great) *māgnus*, -a, -um, adj.

higher, superior, -ius, adj.
(comp. of *superus*).

highest, *summus*, -a, -um, adj.;
(superl. of *superus*); at the —
possible price, *quam plurimō*.

highly, *māgnī* (gen. of indef.
value).

hill, *collis*, -is, m.

himself, (reflex.) *sē*; (em-
phatic) *ipse* (alone or in apposi-
tion w. the reflex. *sē*).

hinder, *impediō*.⁴

hire, *condūcō*.³

his, *eius* (gen. of *is*); (referring
to the subject) *suus*, -a, -um,
poss. pron.; — own, *suus*, -a, -um,
poss. pron.; omitted when the
context shows who is meant.

hither, *citerior*, -ius, adj.

hold, *teneō*²; *obteneō*²; — off,
*abstineō*²; (= regard, consider)
habeō.²

home, *domus*, -ūs, f.; at —,
domī; from —, *domō*.

honor, *honor*, -ōris, m.; per-
sonal —, *modestia*, -ae, f.

honorable, *honestus*, -a, -um, adj.

hope, *spēs*, -ēi (-ēi), f.

horse, *equus*, -ī, m.; (= horse-
men) *equitēs*, -um, m.

horseman, *eques*, -itis, m.

hostage, *obses*, -idis, c.

hostile, *inimicus*, -a, -um, adj.

hour, *hōra*, -ae, f.

house, *domus*, -ūs, f.; at the
— of, *apud*, prep. w. acc.

how, *quam*, adv.; — great,
quantus, -a, -um, adj.; — much,
quantus, -a, -um, adj.; — dear,
quantū (gen. indef. value); —
long: *quam diū*, adv.; (= how
far) *quousque*, adv.

however, *quavis*, adv.; (=
nevertheless) *tamen*, conj.

hundred, *centum*, indecl. num. adj.; **two** —, *ducenti*, -ae, -a, num. adj.; **three** —, *trecenti*, -ae, -a, num. adj.; **six** —, *sescenti*, -ae, -a, num. adj.

hundredth, *centēsimus*, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.

I.

I, *ego*, *mei*, pers. pron.

Iecius, *Iecius*, -ī, M.

idleness, *ignāvia*, -ae, F.

if, *sī*; — **not**, *sī nōn*; — **not** (= unless) *nisi*; — **only**, *dum*, conj. (w. subj.).

ignominiously, *turpiter*, adv.

ill, *aeger*, -gra, -grum, adj.

illustrious, *clārus*, -a, -um, adj.; *amplius*, -a, -um, adj.

imagine, (= think) *existimō*.¹

immortal, *immortalis*, -e, adj.

impede, *impediō*¹; **to — the army's march**, *itinerē exercitum prohibere*.

implore, *obsecrō*¹; *implorō*.¹

import, *importō*¹; *inferō*.

importance, **of the highest** —, *summus*, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of *superus*); **it is of —** : *interest*, *impers*.

important, **it is —** : *interest*; *rēfert*, *ferre*, *tulit*.

in, *in*, prep. w. abl.; (after a superl.) sign of the gen.; (= into) *in*, prep. w. acc. : **in breadth**, *in width*, *in latitudinem*; **in length**, *in longitudinem*; **to be —**, *inesse* (w. dat.); **to vie —**, *certare dē* (w. abl.); — **the rear**, *ā novissimō agmine*, *ab novissimis*; — **my eyes**, *mihi* (dat. ref.); — **that he**, *quī* (= *cum is*) w. subj.

inasmuch, — *as*, *quoniam*, conj.; sign of abl. abs. denoting cause.

incident, *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.

inclination, **to restrain one's — to**, *sibi temperare quin* (w. subj.).

increase, *amplificō*¹; *augeō*.²

incur, *adeō*⁴ (w. acc.).

indeed, *quidem* (follows the word that it emphasizes), adv.; (introducing a corroborative or a parenthetical clause) *etenim*, conj.

indignity, *contumēlia*, -ae, F.

indulge, *indulgeō*² (w. dat.).

industry, *industria*, -ae, F.

inexperience, *inscientia*, -ae, F.

infamy, *infāmia*, -ae, F.

infantry, *cōpia pedestrēs* (*pedester*, -tris, -tre, adj.).

inflict, *sūmō*³; **to — punishment on** : *supplicium sūmere dē* (w. abl.); *vindicāre in* (w. acc.).

influence, *auctoritās*, -ātis, F.; (arising from good will) *grātia*, -ae, F.; **of great —**, *potēns*, -entis, adj.; **to have very little —**, *minimum posse*; **to have very great —**, *largiter posse*.

inform, *certiōrem faciō*³; **be informed**, *certior fiō*; **thoroughly —**, *ēdoceō*² (w. two accs. in act.).

infuse, *inferō* (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.).

inhabit, *incolō*³ (w. acc.).

inhabitants, (= people) *homines*, -um, M.

injure, *noceō*² (w. dat.).

injury, *injūria*, -ae, F.; **without risk of —**, *sine fraude*.

innocent, *innocēns*, -entis, adj.

inquire, *quaerō*³ (w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*).

inquiry, *make —*, *quaerō*.³

insane, — *folly*, *furor*, -ōris, M.

institution, *institutum*, -ī, N.

instruction, (= commission, injunction) *mandātum*, -ī, N.

intellect, *ingenium*, -ī, N.

intelligence, **receive — of**, *cōgnōscō*³ (w. *dē* and *abl.*).

intend, *esse in animō* (w. dat. pers.).

intention, **it is one's —**, *alicui est in animō*.

intercession, **at the — of**, *dēprecātor*, -ōris, M. (abl. abs.).

intercessor, *dēprecātor*, -ōris, M.

Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, M., abbr. *M.*
maritime, maritimus, -a, -um,
 adj.

Marius, Marius, -ī, M.

mark, — out, mētor.¹

marriage, to give in —: *nūp-*
tum (sup.) *dare*; *conlocō*¹ (w. or
 without *nūptum*).

marry, (of the woman) nūbō^a;
 see also marriage.

Marseilles, from —, Massiliē-
sis, -e, adj.

marsh, palūs, -ūdīs, F.

mass, — meeting, cōntiō, -ōnis,
 F.

massacre, caedēs, -is, F.

Massiva, Massiva, -ae, M.

master, magister, -trī, M.; domi-
nus, -ī, M.

match, to be a — for, pār
 (gen. *paris*) *esse*; — **against, obi-**
*ciō*¹ (w. acc. and dat.).

matter, (= thing) rēs, gen. rēi
 (*rēi, rē*), F.

matters, it —, interest, rē fert
 or *rēfert*; (subst.) *rēs, rērum, F.*

me, to — (= in my estimation),
apud mē.

mean, to —, sibi velle (see *volō*).
means, (= resources) facultā-
tēs, -um, F. (pl.); — of defence,
remedium, -ī, N.; by no —, mi-
nimē, adv.

meantime, (of an event ex-
 tending through the interval) *in-*
terea, adv.; (of an event occurring
 within the interval) *interim, adv.*

meanwhile, interim, adv.; in-
terea, adv. See also meantime.

measure, (= thing) rēs, gen.
rēi (rēi, rē), F.

Medea, Medēa, -ae, F.

meet, to —, (w. vbs. of motion)
obviā, adv.

meeting, mass —, cōntiō, -ōnis, F.

memory, memoria, -ae, F.;

cherish the — of, meminī, def.

men, (w. poss. pron.) omitted:
 as, our —, *nostrī, -ōrum, M.*

merchant, mercātor, -ōris, M.

mere, ipse, ipsa, ipsum, de-
monstr. pron.

merely, solum, adv.

messenger, nūntius, -ī, M.

Messalla, Messālla, -ae, M.

mid, — summer, media aestās
 (*-ātis, F.*).

middle, — of, medius, -a, -um,
 adj.

midst, medius, -a, -um, adj.;
through the — of them, per
mediōs.

mile, mille passūs; mille pas-
sum.

miles, milia (millia) passuum;
milia (sc. passuum).

military, militāris, -e, adj.; —
tribune, tribūnus militum.

milk, lac, lactis, N.

mind, animus, -ī, M.; ingenium,
-ī, N.; mēns, mentis, F.; (= pur-
 pose, intention) *mēns, mentis, F.;*
call to —, recordor¹ (usu. w.
acc.); recall to —, reminiscor, -ī
(w. gen.; also w. acc.). When
reminiscor and *recordor* are dis-
 tinguished, the former means
 'recall to mind,' the latter 're-
 flect on' or 'review.'

mindful, memor, -oris, adj. (w.
gen.).

mischief, malefīcium, -ī, N.

misery, malum, -ī, N.

misfortune, fortuna, -ae, F.
 (the misfortune is here implied
 in the context).

miss, dēsidērō¹

mistakes, make —, peccō¹; to
make the same —, eadem peccāre.

mob, multitudō, -inis, F.

mock, ēlūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus.

mode, cōnsuetūdō, -inis, F.; (=

kind) *genus, -eris, N.*

modestly, modestē, adv.

moment, (= time) tempus, -oris,
N.; at the — **when, tum cum;**

for the —, jam, adv.

moon, luna, -ae, F.

Moor, Maurus, -ī, M.

Moorish, Maurus, -a, -um, adj.
morally, — bad, improbus, -a,
-um, adj.

morals, mōrēs, -um, M. (pl.).

more, magis, adv.; (of quan-

tity) *plūs*, comp. adj. used subst. (w. part. gen.); (frequently w. expressions of number) *amplius*, adv.

Morini, *Morinī*, -ōrum, M.

mortification, *dolor*, -ōris, M.

most, — **people**, *plērīque*, adj. used subst.

mother, *māter*, -tris, F.

mound, **earth** —, *tumulus*, -ī, M.

mount, *mōns*, *montis*, M.

mountain, *mōns*, *montis*, M.

move, *moveō*²; — **forward**, *prōmoveō*²; — **deeply**, *permoveō*²; **to** — **on**, *pergere hinc*.

movement, (= thing) *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.

much, *multus*, -a, -um, adj.;

very —, *plūrimus*, -a, -um, adj.; (adv. = by much) *multō*; **how** —, *quantus*, -a, -um, adj.

multitude, *multitūdō*, -inis, F.

music, *mūsicē*, -ēs, F.

my, *meus*, -a, -um, poss. pron.; — **own**, *meus*; **it is** — **pleasure**, *mihī placet*; **for** — **part**, *equidem*, adv.

myself, oblique case of *ego*, *meī*, pers. pron.

N.

name, *nōmen*, -inis, N.

named, (= by name) *nōmine*.

Nantuates, *Nantuātēs*, -um, M.

Naples, *Neāpolis*, -is, F.

naturally, *nātūrā* (abl.).

nature, *nātūra*, -ae, F.

near, *ad*, prep. w. acc.

nearest, *proximus*, -a, -um, adj.

nearly, *ferē*, adv.

necessary, *opus*, N., used as nom. and acc. only (w. dat. pers. and abl. th.).

need, *opus*, N. (see foregoing word); (vb.) *indigeō*² (w. gen. or abl.).

neglect, *neglegō*³.

neighbors, *fīnitimī*, -ōrum, M. (adj. used subst.).

neighboring, *fīnitimus*, -a, -um, adj.; (= nearest) *proximus*, -a, -um, adj.

neither, *neque*, *nec*, conj.; — **party**, *neutrī*, -ōrum, M.

Nero, *Nerō*, -ōnis, M.

Nervii, *Nervī*, -ōrum, M.

never, *nunquam* or *numquam*, adv.

nevertheless, *tamen*, conj.

new, *novus*, -a, -um, adj.

next, *proximus*, -a, -um, adj.

night, *nox*, *noctis*, F.

night-fall, (= first part of the night) *prima nox* (gen. *noctis*, F.).

ninth, *nōnus*, -a, -um, ord. num. adv.

no, *nūllus*, -a, -um, adj.; (emphatic) *nēmō* (used adj.); (= not) *nōn*, adv.; — **one**: *nēmō*

(see *nēmō* in Latin-English vocabulary); *nūllus*, -ius (adj. used subst.); — **one but**, *nēmō nisi*; **by** — **means**, *minimē*, adv. (superl.).

nobility, *nōbilitās*, -ātis, F.

noble, *nōbills*, -e, adj.; subst., *nōbills*, -is, M.

nor, *neque*, *nec*, conj.

north, *septentrīō*, -ōnis, M.

north-east, see 'north' and 'east.'

not, *nōn*, adv.; *haud*, adv. (usu. w. adverbs; also w. *sciō*); (= less) *minus*, adv.; (in questions implying an affirmative answer) *nōnne*, interrog. particle; **and** —, *neque*, *nec*, conj.; **that** —, **not** (in final, hortatory, imperat., and optative clauses) *nē*; **that** — **any**, **that no** (in final and imperat. clauses), *nē quā, quā* or *quae, quod*, indef. adj.; **not** ... **either** ... **or**, *neque* ... *neque*.

note, *animadvertō*³.

nothing, *nihil* or *nīl*, N., def.; *nūlla rēs*; — **but**, *nihil nisi*.

now, *nunc*, adv.; *jam*, adv.

Numantia, *Numantia*, -ae, F.

number, *numerus*, -ī, M.

numbers, **great** —, *māgnae* * *cōpiāe* (-ārum), F.; **in great** —, *frequēns*, -entis, adj.

numerous, *crēber*, -bra, -brum, adj.

Numidians, *Numidae*, -ōrum, M.

O.

O, oh, ō, interj.

obedience, yield —, *pāreō*, -ēre, -ū.obey, *pāreō*² (w. dat.).object, *recūsō*¹; to — to, *recūsāre dē* (w. abl.).ob'ject, *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.obscurity, *obscuritās*, -ātis, F.observe, *animadvertō*³.obtain, *obtineō*² (w. acc.); (= prepare) *comparō*¹; (= obtain possession of) *potior*⁴ (w. abl.; also w. gen.); — a request, *impetrō*¹.occur, *accidō*³; *fiō*.Octodurus, *Octōdūrus*, -ī, M.odds, struggle against —, *labōrō*¹.Oedipus, *Oedipūs*, -odis or -ī, M.of, sign of gen.; (= about, concerning) *dē*, prep. w. abl.; (= from) *ab*, *ā*, *ex*, *ē*, *dē*, preps. w. abl.; out —, *ex*, *ē*, prep. w. abl.off, to come —, *sē inde recipere*; to come — conqueror, superior*discēdere*; carry —, *abducō*³;cut —: *excipiō*³; (from supplies) *prohibeō*² (w. acc. and abl.); ward — from, *propulsō*¹ (w. *ab*, *ā* and abl.); hold —, *abstineō*³.offence, *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.offer, — resistance, *resistō*³.office, (= duty, function) *mūnus*, -eris, N.often, *saepe*, adv.oftentimes, *saepenumero*, adv.old, *vetus*, -eris, adj.; — man, *senex*, *senis*, M.old age, *senectūs*, -ūtis, F.on, in, prep. w. abl.; (designating the point from which) *ab*, *ā*, *ex*, *ē*, preps. w. abl.; (= concerning) *dē*, prep. w. abl.; (= against) *in*, prep. w. acc.; (= from this place) *hinc*, adv.; On! *agite* (imperat.); (in expressions of time) sign of abl. of time.once, *quondam*, adv.; at — (= at one time) *ūnō tempore*.one, *ūnus*, -a, -um, num. adj.; (of two) *alter*, -era, -erum; (w. *substs.* pl. in form, but sing. inmeaning) *ūnī*, -ae, -a (pl. of *ūnus*); — by —, *singulī*, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.; this — thing, *id ūnum*; one . . . another, *alius . . . alius*; at one time . . . at another, *aliās . . . aliās*.one's self, *suī*, *sibi*, *sē* (*sēsē*), reflexive pron.; devote —, *serciō*⁴ (w. dat.).only, (= altogether, in all) *omnīnō*, adv.; if —, *dum*, conj. (w. subj.); the — one, *ūnus*, -a, -um, num. adj.; not only . . . but also, et . . . et, *nōn modo* or *nōn solum . . . sed etiam* or *verum etiam*; and not only . . . but also, *neque solum . . . sed etiam*.onset, *impetus*, -ūs, M.open, *laxō*¹; to — an engagement, *proclium committere*.openly, *aperitē*, adv.opinion, *sententia*, -ae, F.; opi-
niō, -ōnis, F.opportune, *opportūnus*, -a, -um, adj.opportunity, *occāsiō*, -ōnis, F.; *facultās*, -ātis, F.opposed, *diversus*, -a, -um, adj.or, *aut*, conj.; either . . . or: (when a choice is offered) *vel . . . vel*; (when one excludes the other) *aut . . . aut*; not . . . either . . . or, *neque . . . neque*.orator, *ōrātor*, -ōris, M.order, 1. subst., *imperium*, -ī, N. 2. vb., *jubeō* (w. infn.). 3. conj., in — to: *ut* (w. subj.); (w. comp.) *quō* (w. subj.).Orgetorix, *Orgetorix*, -igis, M.other, *alius*, -a, -ud, adj. and subst.; some . . . others, *pars . . . alii*; (= the rest of) *ceteri*, -ae, -a, adj. (usu. pl.); with each —, *inter sē*; some . . . the others, *alteri . . . alteri*; others', *alienus*, -a, -um, adj.ought, *dēbeō*²; *oportet*² impers. (w. acc. and infn. as subject; also w. subj. clause).our, — own, *noster*, -tra, -trum, poss. pron.; — men, — party, *nostrī*, -ūrum, M.

out, — **of**, *ex*, *-ē*, prep. w. abl.
outery, *vōx*, *vōcis*, f.
outstretch, *pandō*.³
over, see 'go' or 'step.'
overcome, — with terror, *per-terreo*.²
overlook, *condōnō*.¹
overwhelm, *opprimō*.³
owing, — **to**, *propter*, prep. w. acc.
own, his —, **their** —, *suus*, -a, -um, poss. pron.; **our** —, *noster*, -tra, -trum, poss. pron.; **my** —, *meus*, -a, -um, poss. pron.

P.

pace, *passus*, -ūs, m.
pain, *dolor*, -ōris, m.
pains, *opera*, -ae, f.
panic, there is a —, *trepidatur*.
paralyze, — with fear, *per-terreo*.²
pardon, *ignōscō*.³
parent, *parēns*, -entis, c.
Parmenio, *Parmeniō*, -ōnis, m.
part, *pars*, *partis*, f.; **for my** —, *equidem*, adv.; **take** — **in**, *intersum* (w. dat.).
partiality, exercise —, *studeō*.²
party, *pars*, *partis*, f.; **our** —, *nostrī*, -ōrum, m.
pass, *effluō*, -ere, -xī; — **judgment upon**, *sentiō*⁴ (w. *dē* and abl.); — **round**, *circumferō*; — **through**, *trāseō*.⁴
passage, *iter*, *itineris*, n.
passion, give way to —, *irā-scor*.³
passionate, *irācundus*, -a, -um, adj.
past, the —, *praeterita*, -ōrum, n., p. a. used subst.
path, by a circuitous —, *in circuitū*.
patience, *patientia*, -ae, f.
patrimony, *rēs familiāris*, adj.
patriotism, *amor patriae*.
pay, — respects to, *salūtō*.¹
peace, *pāx*, *pācis*, f.
Pelusium, *Pēlūsium*, -ī, n.
penalty, *poena*, -ae, f.; (= fine) *līs*, *litis*, f.

penetrate, — **to**, *adeō*⁴ (w. *ad* and acc.).

penetrating, *ācer*, -cris, -cre, adj.

people, *populus*, -ī, m.; **common** —, *plēbs*, -is, f.; **most** —, *plērique*, m. pl. adj. used subst.

perceive, *animum advertō* or *animadvertō*³ (w. acc.); *perspicō*.³

perform, *praestō*¹ (w. acc.).

peril, *periculum*, -ī, n.

perilous, *periculōsus*, -a, -um, adj.

period, *tempus*, -ōris, n.

permit, *patior*.³

permitted, it is —, *licet*.² **im-pers.** (w. dat. pers.).

pernicious, *perniciōsus*, -a, -um, adj.

persevere, — **in**, *cōfirmō*.¹

personally, he, they, etc. —, proper form of *ipse*.

persons, these same —, *īdem* (masc. pl.), demonstr. pron.

persuade, *persuadeō*² (w. dat. pers.).

Picene, *Picēnus*, -a, -um, adj.

pile, *lignum*, -ī, n.

pilot, *gubernātor*, -ōris, m.

Piso, *Pisō*, -ōnis, m.

pitch, *pōnō*.³

pitiable, *miser*, -era, -erum, adj.

pity, *misereor*² (w. gen.).

place, 1. subst., *locus*, -ī, m.; in pl. (usually) *loca*, -ōrum, n.; **in that** —, *ibī*, adv.; **to some** —, *ali-quō*, adv.; **take** —, *fīō*. 2. vb., *pōnō*³; *conlocō*.¹

plan, *cōsiliū*, -ī, n.

pleasant, *grātus*, -a, -um, adj.

please, *dēlectō*¹; (= wish, choose) *volō*.

pleasure, it is one's —, *placet*.² **impers.** (w. dat. pers.).

point, to that —, *eō*, adv.; **in** — of fact, *rē*; to make a — of, *dare operam ut* (w. subj.); — **out**, *expōnō*.³

policy, *cōsiliū*, -ī, n.

political, — **power**, *potentia*, -ae, f.

Pompey, *Pompējus*, *Pompēi*, m.

Pontus, Pontus, -ī, M.
poor, pauper, -eris, adj.
popular, (= acceptable) acceptus, -a, -um, p. a.
population, hominum numerus, -ī, M.
position, (= place) locus, -ī, M.;
take —, maintain one's —, cōnsistō.³

possess, possideō.²
possession, possessiō, -ōnis, F.;
obtain — of, potior⁴ (w. abl.;
also w. gen.); take — of, seize,
occupō¹ (w. acc.).

possible, possibly, (w. superl.)
quam, adv. (w. or without proper
fm. of possum); it is —, (= it is
permitted) licet,² impers. (w. dat.
pers.).

post, cōstituiō³; be posted,
cōsistō.³

posterity, posteri, -ōrum, M.
(adj. used subst.).

poverty, inopia, -ae, F.

power, potestās, -ātis, F.

powerful, potēns, -entis, adj.;

to be very —, largiter posse.

practice, cōsuetūdiō, -inis, F.;

(= training) exercitiatiō, -ōnis, F.

praetor, praetor, -ōris, M.

praise, laudō.¹

pray (exclam.), tandem, adv.

precautions, take special —,
māgnopere praecaveō (-ēre, -cāvī,
-cautus).

preceding, superior, -ius, adj.
comp.; on the — day, prīdiē,
adv.

prefer, antepōnō³ (w. acc. and
dat.); (= wish rather) mālō.

preoccupation, cōgitatiō, -ōnis,
F.

prepare, parō.¹

presence, praesentia, -ae, F.

present, praesēns, -entis, adj.;

the —, praesentia, -ium, neut. pl.

adj. used subst.; be —, adsum.

preserve, cōservō.¹

preserved, salvus, -a, -um, adj.

press, — earnestly, postulō¹
(w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. ab,
ā).

prevail, — upon, persuādeō¹
(w. dat. pers.).

prevent, prohibeō.²

price, at the highest possible
—, quam plurimō.

priestly, — dignity, sacerdoti-
tium, -ī, N.

principle, recognized —, jū-
s, jūris, N.

private, — citizen, privātus, -ī,
M. (p. a. used subst.); — re-
sources, rēs familiāris.

Procillus, Procillus, -ī, M.

proclaim, (= declare, pro-
nounce) jūdicō.¹

produce, fructus, -ūs, M.

progress, be in —, fīō.

promise, polliceor.²

proper, it is —, oportet,² impers.

prophetess, prophet, vātēs, -īs,
C.

prospect, spēs, gen. spēi (ē), F.

prosperous, flōrēns, -entis, p. a.

prostrate, lie —, jaceō.²

protect, mūniō⁴; circummū-
niō⁴; — from, prohibeō² (w. ab
and abl.).

protection, praesidium, -ī, N.

provide, prōvideō.²

provided, dum, dummodo (w.
subj.).

province, prōvincia, -ae, F.

provisions, rēs frumentāria.

provocation, without —, in-
juriā.

public, pūbicus, -a, -um, adj.;

— enemy, hostis, -is, C.

punish, pūniō.⁴

punishment, supplicium, -ī,
N.; (= expiation or penalty)

poena, -ae, F.

pupil, discipulus, -ī, M.

purificatory, — sacrifice, lū-
strum, -ī, N.

purpose, mēns, mentis, F.; (=
wish) voluntās, -ātis, F.; for the

— of, causā (w. gen. preceding);

(= thing) rēs, gen. rēi (rēi, rē), F.

pursue, sequor.³

put, — aside, depōnō³; — to

death, necō¹; — to flight, in fu-
gam coniciō.³

Q.

quantity, a great — of, ingēns, -entis, adj.

quarter, (= part, direction) pars, partis, F.

quarters, winter —, hiberna, -ōrum, N.; at close —, comminus, adv.

quest, go in — of, petō.³

question, main —, sententia, -ae, F.

quickly, celeriter, adv.

quiet, be —, quiescō.³

quietly, modestē, adv.

quite, plānē, adv.

R.

race, genus, -eris, N.; (= people) populus, -ī, M.

raid, to make a — on, sē ēicere (w. in and acc.).

raise, extruō.³

rampart, vāllum, -ī, N.

rank, ōrdō, -inis, M.; (= nobility) nōbilitās, -ātis, F.; of high —, nōbilit, -e, adj.

rapidly, strēnuē, adv.

rate, at any —, certē, adv.

rather, (w. an adj.) sign of comp.; choose —, mālō.

reach, ēvādō, -ere, -si, -sus (w. in and acc.).

readily, facīle, adv.

rear, novissimum agmen, -inis, N.; in the —: ab novissimis; ā novissimō agmine.

reason, causa, -ae, F.; for what —, quā dē causā.

recall, — to mind, reminiscor, -ī (w. gen.; also w. acc.); (= withdraw) dēdūcō.³

recalling, (= mindful of) memor, -oris, adj. (w. gen.).

receive, accipio³; (= take) capio.³

recent, recēns, -entis, adj.

recklessly, temerē, adv.

recklessness, audācia, -ae, F.

recognized, — principle, jūris, N.

recollection, animus, -ī, M.

recompense, remūneror.¹

recount, memorō¹; commemo- rō.¹

recourse, have — to, descendō³ (w. ad and acc.); declinō¹ (w. ad and acc.).

recover, to — (intr.), sē recipere; (from illness) convalescō, -ere, -ui.

redoubt, castellum, -ī, N.

reduce, redigō.³

reēnforcement, subsidium, -ī, N.

reference, make — to, referō (w. ad and acc.).

reflect, — on, recordor¹ (usu. w. acc.).

refrain, — from, temperō (w. ab and abl.).

refuge, to flee for —, sē recipere.

refuse, recūsō¹; to — to: recūsāre quōminus or quā (w. subj.); also recūsāre w. infin.; to — to pay, recūsāre dē (w. abl.).

regard, (= consider) habēō²; (= respect, heed) spectō¹; have — for, cōsulō³ (w. dat.).

region, regiō, -ōnis, F.

regret, paenitet,² impers. (w. acc. pers. and gen. th.).

reject, repudiō.¹

release, liberō¹ (w. acc. and abl.).

relief, subsidium, -ī, N.

relieve, (= succor) sublevo¹ (w. acc.); (= set free) liberō.¹

remain, manēō²; (= stay behind) remanēō²; (= stay through) permanēō²; (= be) sum.

remaining, reliquus, -a, -um, adj.

Reman, Rēmus, -ī, M.

remarkable, (= great) māgnus, -a, -um, adj.

remember, meminī, def. (w. gen.; also w. acc.); memoriā teneō.²

remembrance, memoria, -ae, F.

Remi, Rēmī, -ōrum, M.

remind, admoneō² (w. acc. pers. and gen. th.; also abl. th. w. dē).

remiss, be —, dēsum.

remotest, — part of, *extrēmus*, -a, -um, adj.

remove, *removeō*²; (= move to a distance) *āmoveō*²; (= do away with, destroy) *tollō*³.

render, *efficiō*³; (= bring) *ferō*.

renew, *renovō*¹.

renown, of the highest —, *clārissimus*, -a, -um, adj.

reparation, make —, *satisfaciō*³ (w. dat.).

repel, *dēfendō*³.

repent, *paenitet*² impers. (w. acc. pers. and gen. th.).

reply, tell in —, *respondeō*².

report, *nūntiō*¹; (= divulge) *ēnūntiō*¹; (= bring back word) *renūntiō*¹.

reprobate, *improbū*, -a, -um, adj.

reputation, *opīniō*, -ōnis, f.

request, obtain a —, *impetrō*¹.

require, *egeō*² (w. gen. or abl.).

requisition, make a — for, *imperō*¹ (w. acc. and dat.).

rescue, *ēripiō*³.

resist, *resistō*³.

resistance, offer —, *resistō*³.

resolve, *cōstituō*³.

resources, *opēs*, -um, f.; (= private resources) *rēs familiāris*.

respect, *spectō*¹; *observō*¹.

respects, pay — to, *salūtō*¹.

respond, *respondeō*².

rest, the — of, *reliquus*, -a, -um, adj.; **the** —: *reliqui*, -ōrum, masc. adj. used subst.; *cēteri*, -ōrum, masc. adj. used subst.; set at —, *compōnō*³; (vb.) *requiēscō*, -ere, -ētī, -ētus (adj.).

restore, *reddō*³; *restituō*³.

restrain, to — one's inclination, *sibi temperāre quā* (w. subj.).

result, the — is, *fit* (*fiō*).

results, it —, *fit* (*fiō*).

retain, *retineō*².

retard, *tardō*¹.

return, 1. intr., *revertō*³; *revertor*³; *redeō*⁴ 2. tr., *reddō*³.

revenue, *vectigal*, -ālīs, n.

review, *recordor*¹ (usu. w. acc.); *recōgnōscō*³.

revile, *carpō*³.

revolt, — from, *dēsciscō*³ (w. ab or ā and abl.).

reward, *praemium*, -ī, n.

Rhine, *Rhēnus*, -ī, m.

Rhone, *Rhodanus*, -ī, m.

riches, *divitiae*, -ārum, f.

ridge, *jugum*, -ī, n.

right, *dexter*, -tra, -trum, also -tera, -terum, adj.

ripe, *mātūrus*, -a, -um, adj.

rise, *orior*⁴ (w. some fms. of the 3d conjugation).

rising, *ortus*, -ūs, m.; — ground, *tumulus*, -ī, m.

risk, *periculum*, -ī, n.; — the loss of, *āmittō*³; **without** — of **injury**, *sine fraude*.

river, *flūmen*, -inis, n.

road, *iter*, *itineris*, n.; (= the travelled road) *via*, -ae, f.

rob, *exspoliō*¹ (w. acc. and abl.).

rock, *rūpēs*, -īs, f.

Roman, *Rōmānus*, -a, -um, adj.

Romans, *Rōmāni*, -ōrum, m.

Rome, *Rōma*, -ae, f.

room, *locus*, -ī, m.

rough, *asper*, -era, -erum, adj.

round, pass —, *circumferō*.

rout, (= drive before one's self) *prōpellō*, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus; (= throw into confusion) *perturbō*¹.

route, *iter*, *itineris*, n.

royal, *rēgius*, -a, -um, adj.

rugged, *asper*, -era, -erum, adj.

ruinous, *perniciōsus*, -a, -um, adj.

rule, *regō*³.

rush, make a —, *concurrō*³.

S.

Sabinus, *Sabīnus*, -ī, m.

sacrifice, 1. subst., *supplicia*, -ōrum, n.; **purificatory** —, *lustrum*, -ī, n. 2. vb., (of victims) *immolō*¹; (= lose) *āmittō*³.

sacrificial, — dish, *patera*, -ae, f.

sad, *tristis*, -e, adj.

saddles, furnished with —, *ephippiātus*, -a, -um, adj.

sadly, (= sad) *tristis*, -e, adj.
safe, *salvus*, -a, -um, adj.
safety, *salūs*, -ūtis, f.
sail, *navigō*.¹
sailor, *nauta*, -ae, m.
sake, for the — of, *causā* (w. gen. preceding).

Sambre, *Sabis*, -is, m. (acc. -im; abl. -ī).

same, *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*, demonstr. pron.; **these — persons**, *idem* (pl. masc.); **at the — time**, *simul*, adv.

Santones, *Santonēs*, -um, m.

sate, *expleō*.²

satisfaction, give —, *satisfaciō*³ (w. dat.).

satisfy, *expleō*.²

savage, *barbarus*, -a, -um, adj.

say, *dicō*³; **says he**, *inquit* (placed after one or more words of a direct quotation); — **not**, *negō*.¹

Scipio, *Scīpiō*, -ōnis, m.

sea, *mare*, -is, n.; (w. ref. to the surface) *aequor*, -oris, n.; **by —**; *marī*; (adj.) *maritimus*, -a, -um.

search, *quaerō*.³

season, winter —, *brūma*, -ae, f.

second, *secundus*, -a, -um, adj.; **a — time**, *iterum*, adv.

secondly, *deinde*, adv.

secret, in —, *occultō*, adv.

secure, *muniō*⁴; **make —**, *muniō*⁴; **strive to —**, *appetō*.³

see, *videō*²; *cernō*³; (= descry) *cōspiciō*³; (= provide or see to) *prōvideō*.²

seek, *petō*³; — **after**, *appetō*.³

seem, *videor*.²

seems, it — good, *placet*.² impers.

Segusiavi, *Segūsiāvī*, -ōrum, m.

seize, (= grasp firmly) *comprehendō*³; (= take away) *dētrahō*³ (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.); (= take possession of) *occupō*.¹

select, *diligō*.³

Sena, *Sēna*, -ae, f.

senate, *senātus*, -ūs, m.

senator, *senātor*, -ōris, m.

send, *mittō*³; — **forward**, — **in advance**, *præmittō*³; — **back**, *remittō*³; — **for**, *arcēssō*.³

separate, *dividō*³; *sēcernō*.³

Sequani, *Sēquani*, -ōrum, m.

Sequanian, *Sēquanus*, -a, -um, adj.

serve, to — as, *esse* (w. dat.).

service, *beneficium*, -ī, n.

services, *opera*, -āe, f.

serviceable, *idōneus*, -a, -um, adj.

Servius, *Servius*, -ī, m.

set, — up, *cōstituō*³; — **out**, *proficiscor*³; — **forth**, *prōpōnō*³; — **at rest**, *compōnō*.³

setting, *occāsus*, -ūs, m.

settle, (of disputes) *compōnō*.³

sever, — themselves, pass. of *discernō*, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus.

several, *comptūrēs*, -a (-ia), gen. -ium, adj.

severe, *gravis*, -e, adj.

severely, *graviter*, adv.; *vehementer*, adv.

shake, *concutiō*, -ere, -cussī, -cussus.

shameless, — course, *audācia*, -ae, f.

shames, it —, *pudet*² (w. acc. pers. and gen. th.).

shape, *figūra*, -ae, f.

shave, *rādō*, -ere, -sī, -sus.

she, ea (fem. of *is*); omitted when implied in the context.

shed, *vinea*, -ae, f.

shield, *scūtum*, -ī, n.

ship, *nāvis*, -is, f.; — **of war**, *nāvis longa*.

shipwreck, *naufragium*, -ī, n.

shore, (of the sea) *litus*, -oris, n.

short, *brevis*, -e, adj.

shortest, *proximus*, -a, -um, adj.

shouting, *clāmor*, -ōris, m.

show, *ostendō*³; *doceō*.²

shrink, — from, *dēprecior*.¹

shudder, — at, *perhorrēscō*, -ere, -horruī.

shut, — up, *clausus*, -a, -um, p. a.

sick, *aeger*, -*gra*, -*grum*, adj.
side, *latus*, -*eris*, N.; (= part)
pars, *partis*, F.

sight, *cōspectus*, -*ūs*, M.; (= eyes) *oculi*, -*ōrum*, M.; catch —
of, *cōspiciō*.³

signal, *signum*, -*ī*, N.

Silanus, *Silānus*, -*ī*, M.

similar, *similis*, -*e*, adj.

since, *quoniam*, conj.; *cum*,
conj. (w. subj.).

single, *singulī*, -*ae*, -*a*, distr.
num. adj.; a —, *ūnus*, -*a*, -*um*,
num. adj.

site, *locus*, -*ī*, M.

six, *sex*, indecl. num. adj.

sixty, *sexāgintā*, indecl. num.
adj.

skilled, *perītus*, -*a*, -*um*, p. a.
(w. gen.).

skillful, *perītus*, -*a*, -*um*, p. a.
(w. gen.).

skin, *pellis*, -*is*, F.

slaughter, *caedēs*, -*is*, F.

slave, *servus*, -*ī*, M.

slavery, *servitūs*, -*ūtis*, F.

slaves, *familia*, -*ae*, F.; *servi-*
tium, -*ī*, N. (in sing. or pl.).

slay, *occidō*.³

sleep, (= rest) *requiēscō*, -*ere*,
-*ēvi*, -*ētus* (adj.).

slight, *parvus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.;
mediocris, -*e*, adj.

sloping, *dēclivis*, -*e*, adj.

small, *parvus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.; (= low) *humilis*, -*e*, adj.

smaller, *minor*, -*us*, adj.

smoke, *fūmus*, -*ī*, M.

so, *sic*, adv.; *ita*, adv.; *tam*,
adv.; and —, *itaque*, conj.; so
... that, *sic* or *ita* ... *ut* or *ut*
(w. subj.); so ... as, *tam* ...
quam.

soil, *ager*, -*grī*, M.

soldier, *mīles*, -*itis*, M.; com-
mon —, *mīles*, -*itis*, M.; foot —,
pedes, -*itis*, M.

solicit, *postulō*.¹

solicitude, kind —, *voluntās*,
-*ātis*, F.

solitude, *sōlitudō*, -*inis*, F.

some, *aliquī*, *aliqua*, *aliquod*,

indef. adj. pron.; — one, — thing,
aliquis, *aliquid*, indef. pron.; some
(pl.), *aliquī*, *quidam*; some ...
others, *aliī* or *pars* ... *aliī*; some
... the others (the whole num-
ber being made up of two parties),
alterī ... *alterī*; to — place, *ali-*
quō, adv.

son, *filius*, -*ī*, M.

son-in-law, *gener*, -*erī*, M.

soon, as — as, *simul atque*,
ubi primum.

sooner, *celerius*, adv.; *mātū-*
rius, adv.

sorry, I am —, *mē miseret*,²
impers. (w. gen.).

sort, of such a —, *ējus modī*.

source, (= head) *caput*, -*itis*, N.

sovereign, — power, — au-
thority, *rēgnum*, -*ī*, N.

space, *spatium*, -*ī*, N.

spare, I. vb., *parcō*.³ (w. dat.).

2. adj., *exiguus*, -*a*, -*um*.

speak, *loquor*.³; *dicō*.³

speaking, generally —, *plē-*
rumque, adv.

special, (= specially) *māgno-*
pere, adv.

speed, *celeritās*, -*ātis*, F.

speedily, *celeriter*, adv.

speedy, *celer*, -*eris*, -*ere*, adj.

spend, — the winter, *hiemō*.¹

spirit, *animus*, -*ī*, M.

spiritless, *iners*, -*ertis*, adj.

spring, *vēr*, *vērīs*, N.

Spurius, *Spurius*, -*ī*, M., abbr.

Sp.

squander, *profundō*, -*ere*, -*fūdī*,
-*fusus*.

stable, *firmus*, -*a*, -*um*.

stage, *gradus*, -*ūs*, M.

stand, (= keep erect) *stō*.¹;

stand, make a —, *cōsistō*.³; —
by, *adsum* (w. dat.).

standards, *signa*, -*ōrum*, N.

state, *civitās*, -*ātis*, F.; *rēs pū-*
blica, *rēi publicae*, F.

Statilius, *Statilius*, -*ī*, M.

station, *cōstituō*.³; *conlocō*.¹

stature, *statūra*, -*ae*, F.; dimin-
utive —, *brevitās*, -*ātis*, F.

steadfastness, *cōstantia*, -*ae*, F.

stealthily, *fūrtim*, adv.
steep, (= high) *altus*, -a, -um,
 p. a.

steer, *gubernō*.¹
step, — over, *trānsgrēdiōr*, -ī,
-gressus (w. acc.).
stern, *puppis*, -is, f.
still, (= nevertheless) *tamen*,
 conj.

stimulate, *excitō*.¹
stone, *saxum*, -ī, n.
stores, *cōpia*, -arum, f.
storm, *tempestās*, -ātis, f.
story, *tabulātum*, -ī, n.
strange, *mīrus*, -a, -um, adj.;
 (= new) *novus*, -a, -um, adj.
stratagem, *cōsiliū*, -ī, n.
strengthen, *corrōborō*.¹
stretch, *tendō*.³
strife, (of political parties)
studium, -ī, n.

strike, (by lightning) *percutiō*,
-ere, -cussī, -cussus.

strive, — to secure, *appetō*.³
strong, so — a, *tantus*, -a, -um,
 adj.

struggle, 1. subst., *contentiō*,
-ōnis, f. 2. vb., — against odds,
labōrō.¹

subject, *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*),
 f.; (= tributary) *stipendiārtus*, -a,
 -um, adj.

submit, *serviō*.⁴ (w. dat.); —
 to: *patoriō*.³; *subeō*.⁴ (w. acc.).
subsist, *vescor*.³ (w. abl.).

substantially, (= almost) *ferē*,
 adv.; — as follows, *hūjusce*
modi.

successful, *secundus*, -a, -um,
 adj.; bring to a — issue, *bene*
gerō.³

succession, in —, *continūus*, -a,
 -um, adj.

successive, *continūus*, -a, -um,
 adj.

such, *tālis*, -e, adj.; is, *ea*, *id*,
 demonstr. pron.; of — a sort,
ejus modi; (= so great) *tantus*,
 -a, -um, adj.

sudden, *repentīnus*, -a, -um, adj.
suddenly, *subitō*, adv.; *repente*,
 adv.

Suebi, *Suēbī*, -ōrum, m.
Suessiones, *Suessiōnēs*, -um, m.
suffer, *patoriō*.³

sufferable, *ferendus*, -a, -um
 (ger. of *ferō*).

sufficient, *satis* (w. part. gen.);
 — **time**, *spatium*, -ī, n.

suitable, *idōneus*, -a, -um, adj.
 (w. ad and acc., or w. dat.; also
 w. rel. clause containing subj.).

Sulla, *Sūlla*, -ae, m.; of —, *Sūl-*
lānus, -a, -um, adj.

sum, *summa*, -ae, f.

summer, *aestās*, -ātis, f.; mid
 —, *media aestās*.

summit, *summus*, -a, -um, adj.

summon, *evocō*.¹

sun, *sōl*, *sōlis*, m.

sunrise, *ortus sōlis* (*ortus*, -ūs,
 m.).

sunset, *sōlis occāsus*, -ūs, m.

supplication, in —, *supplex*,
-icis, adj.

supplies, *commēātus*, -ūs, m.

supply, *cōpia*, -ae, f.

support, send to the — of,
submittō.³ (w. dat. pers.); come
 to the — of, *subveniō*.⁴ (w. dat.).

suppose, (ironical) *crēdō*.³; (= believe)
crēdō.³; (= think) *existi-*
mō.¹; (= judge) *jūdicō*.¹

supremacy, *principātus*, -ūs, m.

supreme, — **authority**, *impe-*
rium, -ī, n.

surpass, *superō*.¹

surrender, *trādō*.³; *dēdō*.³

surround, *circumstō*.¹

suspicion, (= opinion) *opiniō*,
-ōnis, f.; ground of —, *suspiciō*,
-ōnis, f.; free from —, *pūrgātus*,
 -a, -um, p. a.

sustain, *sustineō*.²; *tolerō*.¹

Swabians, *Suēbī*, -ōrum, m.

sway, *imperium*, -ī, n.

swear, *jūrō*.¹

swift, *celer*, -eris, -ere, adj.;
vēlōx, -ōcis, adj.

swiftness, *celeritās*, -ātis, f.

sword, *gladius*, -ī, m.; *ferrum*,
 -ī, n.

sworn, unite in a — league,
conjūrō.¹

T.

take, *capio*³; (= lead out) *ēducō*³; — **from or away**, *adimō*² or *eripio*³ (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.).

talent, *talentum*, -ī, N.

talk, — **of**, *dicō*³.

Tarquini, *Tarquiniū*, -ōrum, M.

task, **take to** —: *incūsō*¹ (w. acc.); *accūsō*¹ (w. acc.).

teach, *docēō*² (w. two accs.).

teacher, *magister*, -trī, M.; *praeceptor*, -ōris, M.

tear, *lacrima*, -ae, F.

tell, — **in reply**, *respondeō*².

tempest, *tempestās*, -ātis, F.

temple, *templum*, -ī, N.

ten, *decem*, indecl. num. adj.;

— **each**, *dēnī*, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.

tenth, *decimus*, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.

territory, *fīnēs*, -ium, M.

terror, **overcome with** —, *perterreō*².

Teucri, *Teucrī*, -ōrum, M.

than, *quam*.

thanks, *grātia*, -arum, F.

that, *ille*, -a, -ud, demonstr. pron.; (weaker than *ille*) *is*, *ea*, *id*, demonstr. pron.; (= that of yours) *iste*, -a, -ud, demonstr. pron.; (stronger than *iste*) *iste tuus*; (contemptuous) *iste*, -a, -ud;

— **one**, *ille*; (= who or which) *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, rel. pron.; (in final clauses): *ut*, *utī* (w. subj.); (w. comp.) *quō* (w. subj.); — **not**, *nē* (w. subj.); (in clauses of result) *ut*, *utī* (w. subj.); (after neg. expressions or interrog. expressions implying a neg.) *quān* (w. subj.); (after verbs of fearing) *nē* (w. subj.); **would** —, *utīnam* (w. opt. subj.); **in** — **the**,

quī (= cum *is*) w. subj.

the . . . the, *quō . . . eō*.

Thebes, *Thēbae*, -arum, F.

their, (referring to the subject)

— **own**, *suus*, -a, -um, poss. pron.; (= of them, of these) *eōrum*, *eārum* (gen. pl. of *is*); omitted

when readily understood from the context.

them, (pers. pron.) proper fm. of *is*, *ea*, *id*.

themselves, (reflex.) *suī*, *sibi*, *sē* or *sēsē*; (intens.) *ipsī*, -ae, -a.

then, (of time) *tum*, adv.; (= secondly) *deinde* (pronounced: de'inde), adv.; (of inference or transition) *igitur*, conj. (usu. follows the first word of the sent.).

thence, *inde*, adv.

there, *ibi*, adv.; (= thither) *eō* or *illō*, adv.

therefore, *quā rē*; *proinde* (pronounced: pro'inde), adv.

these, pl. of *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*; (weaker) pl. of *is*, *ea*, *id*; — **things**, *haec*; **these . . . those**, *hī . . . illī*.

they, (emphatic, = they themselves), *ipsī*.

thing, *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.; **this one** —, *id unum*.

think, *putō*¹; (of a personal opinion) *opinor*¹; (= reckon, consider) *existimō*¹; (= ponder, reflect on) *cogitō*¹; (= feel, be sensible of) *sentiō*⁴; (= judge) *iudicō*¹; (of an official opinion, as of a senator) *censeō*².

third, *tertius*, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.

thirst, *sitis*, -is, F.

thirteenth, (of a month) *Idūs*, -uum, F.

thirty, *trīgintā*, indecl. num. adj.

this, *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*, demonstr. pron.; (weaker than *hic*) *is*, *ea*, *id*, demonstr. pron.; (= which) *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, rel. pron.; — **man**, *hic*; — **one thing**, *id unum*.

thither, *eō*, adv.

thoroughly, — **inform**, — **train**, *ēdoceō*² (w. two accs.).

those, pl. of *ille*; (= those of yours) pl. of *iste*; (contemptuous) pl. of *iste*; (ant. of rel.) pl. of *is*; [those] **who**, *quī*; **these . . . those**, *hī . . . illī*.

though, *quāvis* (w. subj.); *licet* (w. subj.); even —, *etiam* (w. indic. and subj. like *sī*; the indic. is more common).

thought, take — for, *cōsulō*³ (w. dat.).

thousand, *mille*, indecl. adj.; also *mille* (as nom. and acc. sing.), subst. (w. part. gen.); in pl., *mīlia* or *mīllia*, subst. (w. part. gen.).

threaten, *minitor*¹ (w. dat. pers. and abl. or acc. th.).

three, *trēs*, *tria*, num. adj.; (w. substs. pl. in form, but sing. in meaning) *trīni*, -ae, -a.

through, *per*, prep. w. acc.

throughout, *tōtus*, -a, -um, adj.

throw, (= throw to, as of a javelin) *adiciō*, -ere, -jēcī, -jectus; — away, *ēmittō*³; — away (of on opportunity) *āmittō*³.

thus, *ita*, adv.

tides, *maritimā aestūs*.

Timurine, *Figurinus*, -a, -um, adj.

timber, *māteria*, -ae, f.

time, *tempus*, -oris, n.; (= season) *tempestās*, -ātis, f.; at any —, at some —, *aliquandō*, adv.; at the same —, *simul*, adv.; at that —, *tum*, adv.; up to this —, *adhūc*, adv.; at one time . . . at another, *aliās . . . aliās*.

tithes, *decimae*, -ārum, f.

Titurians, *Titūrius*, -ī, m.

Titus, *Titus*, -ī, m., abbr. *T*.

to, sign of dat.; (w. expressions of motion) *ad*, prep. w. acc.; (= into) *in*, prep. w. acc.; (expressing purpose) *ut* or (w. comp.) *quō* w. subj.

together, (= in company) *unā*, adv.; — with, *unā cum* (w. abl.); (= in succession) *continuus*, -a, -um, adj.; come —, *conveniō*⁴; get — (tr.), *cōnferō*; call —, *convocō*¹; to join — (tr.), *inter sē jungere*.

toil, *labor*, -ōris, m.

too, (before an adj.) sign of comp.; (= also) *etiam*; (= excessively) *nīmis*, adv.

topmost, *summus*, -a, -um, adj.

Torquatus, *Torquātus*, -ī, m.

total, *sum* —, *summa omnium*.

Toulouse, *Tolōsa*, -ae, f.

towards, *ergā*, prep. w. acc.; (= into or against) *in*, prep. w. acc.; — the setting, *sub occāsum*.

tower, *turris*, -is, f.

town, *oppidum*, -ī, n.; free —, *municipium*, -ī, n.; belonging to the —, *oppidānus*, -a, -um, adj.

trader, *mercātor*, -ōris, m.

train, *exerceō*².

transport, *trānsportō*¹.

treat, *agō*³.

Treveri, *Trēverī*, -ōrum, m.

trial, *periculum*, -ī, n.; with- out —, *indemnātus*, -a, -um, adj.

tribune, *tribūnus*, -ī, m.

tributary, *vectigālis*, -e, adj.

tribute, *stipendium*, -ī, n.

troops, *cōpiae*, -ārum, f.

trouble, *molestia*, -ae, f.

Troy, *Trōja*, -ae, f.

true, *vērus*, -a, -um, adj.

truly, *vērē*, adv.

trumpet, *tuba*, -ae, f.

truth, *vērītās*, -ātis, f.

try, *tentō*¹ or *templō*¹.

tumult, *tumultus*, -ūs, m.

twelfth, *duodecimus*, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.

twelve, *duodecim*, indecl. num. adj.

twenty, *vigintī*, indecl. num. adj.; — sixth, *sextus et vicēsīmus* or *vicēsīmus sextus*, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.

two, *duo*, *duae*, *duo*, num. adj.; (w. substs. pl. in form, but sing. in meaning) *binī*, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.; — each, — and —, *binī*, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.

tyrant, *tyrannus*, -ī, m.

U.

Ubii, *Ubī*, -ōrum, m.

unable, be —, *nōn possum*.

unacquainted, — with, *ignārus*, -a, -um (w. gen.).

under, (w. vb. of rest) *sub*, (prep. w. abl.; (w. vb. of motion)

sub, prep. w. acc.; — *arms*, in armis.

understand, *intelligō*.³

understood, it is generally —, *cōstat*.¹

undertake, *suscipio*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus; (= prepare) *parō*.¹

undertaking, (= work) *opus*, -eris, N.

unfair, *iniquus*, -a, -um, adj.

unfavorable, *alienus*, -a, -um, adj.

unfortunate, *miser*, -era, -erum, adj.

unharmed, *incolumis*, -e, adj.

uninjured, *incolumis*, -e, adj.

uninterrupted, *continuus*, -a, -um, adj.

unite, *conjungō*.³ (w. acc. and dat. or cum w. abl.).

unjustly, *injūstē*, adv.

unless, *nisi*, conj.

unmoved, *firmus*, -a, -um, adj.

unparalleled, *singulāris*, -e, adj.

unreasonable, *iniquus*, -a, -um, adj.

unsuccessful, *adversus*, -a, -um, p. a.

until, (= up to) *ad*, prep. w. acc.; *dum*, *quoad*, conj.; (= before) *antequam*, *priusquam*, adv.

unwilling, *invitus*, -a, -um, adj.; **be** —, *nōlō*.

up, see verb or other prominent word of the phrase.

upbraid, *incūsō*.¹ (w. acc.).

upon, see verb or other prominent word of the phrase.

upper, *superior*, -ius, adj.

urge, *hortor*.¹; — **to**, *hortor*.¹ (w. ut and subj.); — **on**, *impellō*.³

use, *ūtō*.³ (w. abl.); (= be wont) *soleō*.²; **to** — **force**, *vim facere*.

useful, (= for use) *ūsui*.

usual, as —, *ex cōsuetūdine*.

Utica, *Utica*, -ae, F.

utmost, sign of superl.

utterly, sign of superl.

V.

Vaga, *Vaga*, -ae, F.

vala, in —, *nēquāquam*, adv.

valor, *virtūs*, -ūtis, F.

value, *existimō*.¹

vanity, *vānitās*, -ātis, F.

Venelli, *Venelli*, -ōrum, M.

Venetia, *Venetia*, -ae, F.

Veneti, *Veneti*, -ōrum, M.

venture, *audeō*.²

Veragri, *Veragri*, -ōrum, M.

Verbigene, *Verbigēnus*, -a, -um, adj.

verily, *vērō*, adv.

very, sign of superl.; (= self) *ipse*, -a, -um, demonstr. pron.; — **easily**, (after a neg.) *satis com-modē*; — **first**, *primus statim*.

Vesontio, *Vesontio*, -ōnis, M.

veteran, *miles vetus* (-eris, adj.).

vice, *vitium*, -ī, N.

victor, *victor*, -ōris, M.

victory, *victoria*, -ae, F.

vie, *certō*.¹

view, in — **of**, *prae*, prep. w. abl.; **have in** —, *prōvideō*.²; **burst into** —, *erumpō*.³

vigor, *vis*, *vis*, F.

village, *vicus*, -ī, M.

violence, *vis*, *vis*, F.

violent, *sacrus*, -a, -um, adj.

virtue, *virtūs*, -ūtis, F.

visit, — **with**, *adficiō*.³ (w. acc. and abl.).

Volusenus, *Volusēnus*, -ī, M.

vote, 1. vb., *dēcernō*.³ 2. subst., *cōnsilium*, -ī, N.

voyage, **make a** —, *nāvīgō*.¹

W.

wage, — **against**, *īnferō* (w. acc. and dat.).

wagon, *carrus*, -ī, M.

wait, — **for**, *expectō*.¹

wall, (generic term) *murus*, -ī, M.; (= rampart about a camp) *vallum*, -ī, N.

want, (= wish) *volō*.

wanting, **be** —, *dēsūm*.

war, *bellum*, -ī, N.; **ship of** —, *nāvis longa*; **to make** — **on**, *bel-lum facere* (w. dat.).

ward, — **off from**, *prōpulsē*.¹ (w. ab or ā and abl.).

warlike, *bellicōsus*, -a, -um, adj.
warn, *monēō*.²
waste, *lay* —, *vastō*.¹
watchmen, *vigiliae*, -ārum, f.
water, *aqua*, -ae, f.
way, give — to passion, *irāscor*³; be on one's —, *pergō*³; in what —, *quem ad modum*.
we, *nōs*, *nostrī* and *nostrū*, pers. pron.
wealth, *divitiae*, -ārum, f.
weary, *fessus*, -a, -um, p. a. (w. abl.); I am —, *mē taedet*,² impers., w. gen.
weep, *fleō*.²
welfare, *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), f.
well, *bene*, adv.; — enough, *commode*, adv.
what, (interrog.) *quī*, *quae*, *quod* (adj.) and *quid* (subst.); (= of what sort) *quālis*, -e, interrog. and rel. adj.; (= that which) *id quod*.
whatever, any —, *quīvīs*, *quaevis*, *quodvis* and (subst.) *quidvis*, indef. pron.
when, *ubi*,² *postquam*, *postea* *quam*, ut (w. indic., usu. the perf. or hist. pres.); *cum*.
whenever, *cum* (w. indic.).
where, *ubi*, interrog. and rel. adv.
wherefore, *quam ob rem*.
whether, *num*, interrog. particle; -ne, interrog. particle.
which, *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, rel. and interrog. pron.
while, *dum*, conj.
who, *quī* (M.), *quae* (F.), rel. pron.; *quis*, interrog. pron.
whoever, *whatevēr*, *quicumque*, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque*, indef. rel. pron.; — you please, *quālibet*, *quaelibet*, *quodlibet*, and (subst.) *quidlibet*, indef. pron.
whole, *tōtus*, -a, -um, adj.; (= all joined or massed together) *cūctus*, -a, -um, adj.
why, *cūr*, adv.; (= for what reason) *quā dē causā*; *quid* (n. acc. used adv.).
wide, *lātus*, -a, -um, adj.

widely, *lātē*, adv.; more —, *lātius*, adv.
width, *lātitudō*, -inis, f.
wife, *conjunx*, -jugis, f.
wild, *ferus*, -a, -um, adj.
will, good —, *grātia*, -ae, f.
willing, be not —, *nōlō*.
wine, *vīnum*, -i, n.
wing, (of an army) *cornū*, -ūs, n.
winter, *hiems* (*hiemps*), -emis, f.; — quarters, *hiberna*, -ōrum, n.; spend the —, *hiemō*.¹
wish, *volō*; *cupiō*³; — well to, *cupiō*³ (w. dat.); — rather, *mālō*.
with, *cum*, prep. w. abl. (w. the abl. of pers. and rel. pron., *cum* is appended; as, *tēcum*, *quibuscum*); (in an expression of manner in which the subst. is limited by an adj.) sign of the abl.; — each other, *inter sē* (*sēsē*); have to do —, *pertineō*² (w. ad and acc.).
withdraw, 1. intr., *discēdō*³; *dēcēdō*³; *excēdō*³; (less often) *concēdō*.³ 2. tr., *subducō*³; (= lead out) *ēducō*.³
withhold, — consent, (= [be] unwilling), *invitus*, -a, -um, adj.
within, sign of abl. of time within which.
without, *sine*, prep. w. abl.; (w. participial noun after neg. expressions) *quīn* (w. subj.); — trial, *indemnātus*, -a, -um, adj.; — provocation, *injuriā* (abl. of manner).
withstand, *sustineō*² (w. acc.).
witness, (= eye witness) *arbitr*, -trī, m.; (one who attests) *testis*, -is, c.
woman, *mulier*, -eris, f.
wonder, — at, *mīror*.¹
wonderful, *mīrus*, -a, -um, adj.; (= to be wondered at) *mīrābilis*, -e, adj.
wont, *mōs*, *mōris*, m.
wood, *silva*, -ae, f.
word, to keep one's —, *fīdem servāre*.
words, a few —, *paucā*, -ōrum, neut. pl. adj. used subst.

work, *opus*, -*eris*, N.

worst, *pessimus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.

worthy, *dignus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.

[w. abl.; also w. rel. clause w. subj.).

would, — **that**, *utinam* (w. opt. subj.).

wound, *vulnerō*.¹

wrest, *ēripio*³ (w. acc. th. and lat. pers.).

wretched, *miser*, -*era*, -*erum*, adj.

write, *scribō*.³

wrong, *injūria*, -*ae*, F.

X.

Xenophon, *Xenophōn*, -*ōntis*, M.

Y.

year, *annus*, -*i*, M.; **the** — **after**, *unnō post*.

yet, (= nevertheless) *tamen*, conj.; **and** —, *quamquam*, conj.; **not** —, *nōndum*, adv.

yield, — **obedience**, *pāreō*.²

yoke, *jugum*, -*i*, N.

yonder, (= that) *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, demonstr. pron.

you, (sing.) *tū*, *tuī*; (pl.) *vōs*, gen. *vestrī* and *vestrūm*, pers. pron.; **to** —, (= thither where you are) *istūc* (accent the last syllable), adv.

your, (sing.) *tuus*, -*a*, -*um*; (pl.) *vester*, -*tra*, -*trum*, poss. pron.; (contemptuous) *iste*, *ista*, *istud*.

yours, **that of** —, *iste tuus*.

yourself, *tuī*, *tibi*, *tē*, pers. pron. used reflex.

yourselves, *vōs* (pl. of *tū* used reflex.).

youth, *adulēscētia*, -*ae*, F.; (= young person) *adulēscēns*, -*entis*, G.

Z.

Zama, **the people of** —, *Zā mēnsēs*, -*ium*, M.

zeal, *studium*, -*ii*, N.

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 010 251 952

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES
STANFORD AUXILIARY LIBRARY
STANFORD, CALIFORNIA 94305-6004
(415) 723-9201

All books may be recalled after 7 days

DATE DUE

28D APR 02

28D APR 09 1996

DOC

SEP 21 1998
AUG 20 1998





478.8

665ce

ser.1











Pitt Press Series

Colloquia Latina

from Erasmus

First Series



Pitt Press Series

Colloquia Latina

from Erasmus

First Series







Pitt Press Series

Colloquia Latina

from Erasmus

First Series



Colloquia Latina

Adapted from Erasmus

With Notes and Vocabulary

by

G. M. EDWARDS, M.A.

Fellow and Lecturer of Sidney Sussex College, Cambridge

FIRST SERIES

CAMBRIDGE :
at the University Press

1907

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE,
C. F. CLAY, MANAGER.

London: FETTER LANE, E.C.

Glasgow: 50, WELLINGTON STREET.



Leipzig: F. A. BROCKHAUS.

New York: G. P. PUTNAM'S SONS.

Bombay and Calcutta: MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD.

114255

First Edition 1906

Reprinted 1907

All Rights reserved.]



PREFACE.

IN the hands of Erasmus Latin is, before all things, a living language. His *Colloquies* not only form a store-house of idiom, but they exhibit real dramatic power. In the present selection variety both in subject and style has been specially aimed at. Besides the bright and playful dialogue, the reader will find here many passages which, though dramatic in form, are excellent and at the same time easy examples of the narrative and reflective styles of Latin Prose. The original text of Erasmus has been freely dealt with, in order to secure greater simplicity of vocabulary and syntax; and some of the dialogues have been considerably shortened. It is hoped that a selection of 'dramatic idylls,' thus adapted, will prove a useful and entertaining reading-book for young students.

G. M. E.

August, 1906.



•



CONTENTS.

	PAGE
THE LIFE AND TIMES OF ERASMUS . . .	vii
DRAMATIS PERSONAE.	xxiv
TEXT	1
NOTES	53
GENERAL NOTES ON SYNTAX	89
VOCABULARY	105
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES	135

PORTRAIT OF ERASMUS	<i>Frontispiece</i>
-------------------------------	---------------------

Deventer. Its head-master was Alexander Hegius, who, after a great career as a teacher, died towards the end of the century, leaving behind him 'his clothes and his books and an imperishable name.' At Deventer the young Erasmus imbibed an ardent love of Latin, and attracted the notice of Rudolf Agricola, one of the first scholars who brought the New Learning to northern Europe. While inspecting the school, the great man patted Erasmus's sunny head and remarked :—'This little man will do something by-and-by.' The boy was not a mere bookworm; for we read of a pear-tree in the garden of a neighbouring convent, which Hegius's pupils sometimes visited at night with Erasmus as ringleader; and at the same time we have a naïve complaint of excessive whipping at this school. As in later life, so in his school-days Erasmus must have been a most engaging companion.

At the age of thirteen Erasmus lost both his parents; and his three guardians were determined to make him a monk together with his elder brother Peter. To the bright and clever Erasmus this resolve came as a sentence of death. For three years he bore the stern discipline of a convent school at Bois-le-duc. The brethren taught him nothing, their practice being to crush any pupil of high and lively spirit 'by stripes, by threats, by reproaches, and other means.' But his passion for learning they could not quell. In spite of reprimand and punishment, he devoured all he could get. Possessing an extraordinary memory, he learnt Horace and Terence by heart; and he wrote Latin prose and verse—verse by preference—without end. Amongst other com-

positions, we hear of long heroic poems and of an ode to the Archangel Michael.

After a prolonged struggle with his guardians and the monks, Erasmus gave in, and at the age of nineteen he took the vows of the Augustinian Order. For about eight years he remained in the monastery of Stein, near Gouda; and he was admitted to Holy Orders by the Bishop of Utrecht. Disgusted with the coarse and illiterate society in which his lot was cast, he was eager to escape to a University,—the love of letters being, from the first, the ruling principle of his life. By strange good fortune, the Bishop of Cambray at this juncture invited Erasmus to become his private secretary. Through the Bishop's influence he was allowed to leave the monastery, and very soon enabled, when he was about twenty-eight, to join the University of Paris, which then held a commanding position in the world of letters. There he entered Montaigu College, nicknamed 'Vinegar College'; and he suffered cruelly from the Spartan discipline, the badness of the food, and the outrageous disregard of the health of the students. In the words of his younger contemporary, Rabelais, 'the unhappy creatures at that College are treated worse than galley-slaves among the Moors and Tartars.' With health permanently injured, Erasmus returned to Cambray, ultimately going back to Paris, but not to his pestilential College. Instead, he rented a humble lodging, and eked out a precarious subsistence by taking pupils. One of these was a young Englishman, William Blunt, Lord Mountjoy, who afterwards persuaded him to visit England, giving him an annual

pension of a hundred crowns, and continuing to be the kindest of friends.

Thus a new world was opened to Erasmus, and he began his famous career as a 'wandering scholar.' In those days, notwithstanding the difficulties of travel, there was wonderful freedom of intercourse among the scholars of Europe. They moved to and fro, as the demand for their services came from England, France, Germany, the Netherlands, or Italy. In Latin they had a universal language which carried them everywhere. They were real cosmopolitans, belonging to that *maior urbs*, the Republic of Letters. They had friends in every University; and it is surprising to find with how many countries they were in close and constant touch. The modern conception of a University is that it should go on its own way, independent of all others. These wandering scholars were, to borrow the striking phrase of Bacon's *New Atlantis*, true 'merchants of light.' To the northern nations of Europe Erasmus became the highest embodiment of the life-giving spirit of the New Learning.

In 1499 he went for a few months to Oxford, residing at St Mary's College, a small house of the Augustinians (his own Order), of which Richard Charnock was Prior. It was now that he made the acquaintance of some of the early advocates of Greek studies,—Grocyne, Linacre, and Latimer. The capture of Constantinople by the Turks in 1453 and the consequent flight of its Greek scholars to Italy had turned men's attention to the learning of the old world at a time when the Italian Renaissance had

Well-nigh spent its force, and when learning in England had reached its lowest ebb. Numbers of foreign scholars flocked over the Alps to learn Greek. The most notable of these was Linacre's teacher, the famous Selling, Prior of Christ Church, Canterbury, who brought a number of Greek manuscripts from Italy and turned his monastery into a hospice of Greek culture. He died shortly before Erasmus's first visit to England. It was probably in 1500 that Erasmus returned to Paris. Here he spent about five years (with occasional visits to the Netherlands) working persistently at Greek, in which he had not made much progress during his short stay at Oxford. There appears to be little foundation for the first part of Gibbon's epigram to the effect that 'Erasmus learnt Greek at Oxford and taught it at Cambridge.'

The two Oxford men with whom Erasmus became most intimate during his first visit to England were John Colet and Thomas More. 'Colet's learning and More's sweetness' (Erasmus's own description) have become proverbial. Colet was lecturing at Oxford on St Paul's Epistles 'like one inspired, raised out of himself in voice, eye, countenance, and mien.' It was he especially who encouraged Erasmus to publish the New Testament in the original Greek. Thomas More had left Oxford, and was pursuing his legal studies in London when Erasmus first met him. Shortly before leaving England, Erasmus was staying with Lord Mountjoy at Greenwich, whither More came to bid him farewell. It was then that an interesting event happened. More took Erasmus to call at a house in Eltham, where they found some

children at their games. They were, it turned out, in the royal nursery. The eldest was the future king, Henry VIII, now nine years of age. Erasmus was much struck with the young prince's regal bearing, and a few days afterwards he sent him some Latin verses in praise of Henry VII and of England. Many years after, Henry VIII alluded to Erasmus's visit to Eltham.

In the spring of 1505 Erasmus paid his second visit to England and stayed a whole year. He went to Cambridge, where he received the degree of Bachelor of Divinity. It was during this visit that he made the acquaintance of Warham, Archbishop of Canterbury and Lord Chancellor, whose favourite relaxation from the cares of Church and State was to sup with a group of scholar friends. Grocyn took Erasmus in a boat up the river to Lambeth Palace for one of these gatherings. 'Warham loves me as though he were my father or my brother'; this was Erasmus's impression of his visit. The Archbishop's subsequent kindness to him was remarkable. He offered him the Rectory of Aldington in Kent; and, when he refused this, gave him a pension of a hundred crowns a year out of the living. Later on, Warham's invitation recalled him to England. And, when he was complaining of poverty at Cambridge, the Archbishop sent him fifty angels¹. 'I wish there were thirty legions of them!' was his characteristic message. 'Happy was I,' writes Erasmus, 'to find such a Maecenas. All who have gathered good from my writings must thank Archbishop Warham for it.'

Erasmus was now enabled to realise the dream of

¹ *Gold coins* having as a device the Archangel Michael.

his life,—a visit to Italy, where he spent three years from the summer of 1506. He went as tutor to the two sons of Dr Boyer, court-physician to Henry VII. He stayed some weeks at Turin, receiving from the University the degree of Doctor of Divinity. The winter of 1506 he spent at Bologna, where he obtained leave from the Pope to lay aside his monk's dress. In 1508 he spent some months at Venice with the famous printer Aldus, in order to see through the press a second and enlarged edition of his *Adagia* (see p. 88). He tells us how he sat in the same room with Aldus, revising his book, while the great man and his proof-reader pushed on the printing. Also he made the acquaintance of the select circle of scholars who gathered round the Aldine Press. Then Erasmus went to Padua, and then to Siena, reaching Rome in 1509. In one way Erasmus's Italian visit was a great disappointment to him. He found that, owing to the unruly ambition of Pope Julius II, the home of the Renaissance was made the battle-ground of the monarchs of Europe (see p. 68). It was not till 1513 that the advent of a new Pope, Leo X, brought peace.

In 1509 the group of English scholars, whose ardour for the New Learning had not enjoyed free play during the lethargic reign of the old king, hailed with delight the accession of Henry VIII. The young king, barely eighteen years of age, aroused the highest hopes by his great gifts of person and intellect. Erasmus received in Rome a pressing letter from his old pupil, Lord Mountjoy, urging him to come to England on account of the favourable

disposition of the new king to learning and to Erasmus himself. By his English friends Erasmus was regarded as the voice of the new era. In the spring of 1510 he arrived at Thomas More's house in London, ready to pour out a triumph-song over the old world of ignorance and superstition in his famous satire, *The Praise of Folly*. For this he had made ample notes during his long journey on horseback from Rome. The book was written out during a few days' stay with More; and, as he says in the dedication, it received its Greek title *Encomium Moriae* in playful allusion to the name of his host. Folly comes forward in cap and bells, and assails with delicious satire the weak points of all classes and all professions.

Thanks to the refinement of its wit the book gave but little offence. Its victims were generally too much amused by its chastisement of others. 'Never,' Erasmus had said in his dedication, 'have I copied Juvenal in stirring up the sink of iniquity, and I have taken pains to depict laughable absurdities rather than heinous sins. Any who may take offence must find consolation in the thought that it is a fine thing to be satirised by Folly.' A great ecclesiastic said resignedly, 'Here is our old friend again!' The more nervous of the clergy would content themselves with the harmless gibe, 'See what comes of learning Greek!' But, as a matter of fact, *The Praise of Folly* played no small part as a harbinger of the Reformation. So true is the saying, *Pontifici Romano plus nocuit Erasmus iocando quam Lutherus stomachando*, 'Erasmus did more damage to the

Papacy by his playful wit than Luther with all his savage spleen.' Owing to the sweet reasonableness of his nature and the graces of his literary style Erasmus passed for a moderate man, and thus enjoyed a licence for the utterance of unpalatable truths.

At the invitation of the famous John Fisher, Bishop of Rochester and Chancellor of Cambridge, Erasmus, now forty-four years of age, settled in that University. His first extant letter from there is dated December, 1510. Fisher, who had previously been President of Queens', secured rooms for him in that College. They were in a square turret which is still called 'Erasmus's Tower.' In these rooms Erasmus gave lectures on Greek, and the New Learning made rapid progress in the University. Some years later he wrote:—'Theology is flourishing at Paris and at Cambridge as nowhere else, because the new studies, which are ready to storm an entrance, are not repelled, but warmly welcomed as guests.' It does not appear that Erasmus held any formal appointment for lecturing in Greek; but he was elected Lady Margaret Reader in Divinity in 1511, and re-elected in 1513. In the latter year Cambridge was visited by the plague, and for some months the University was almost entirely deserted.

At the end of the year he decided to leave Cambridge, chiefly, it would appear, from the disappointment of the high hopes which he had conceived of Henry VIII's good intentions towards himself. His English friends had been rudely awakened from their dreams of the king's devotion

to the New Learning, when they found him eager for European war. In 1514 Erasmus left England, to return later on for two very brief visits. While at Cambridge, he had accomplished a vast amount of literary work both on Classical authors and on the Christian Fathers, and he had made some preparations for his edition of the Greek Testament. Also he wrote elementary Latin books for the use of St Paul's School, recently founded by his friend John Colet, now Dean of St Paul's. In this foundation the educational ideas of the New Order were to be fully realised, viz. the combination of rational religion and sound learning, and the teaching of Latin according to the methods of Erasmus. Thomas More wrote to Colet:—'Your school raises a storm; for it is like the Wooden Horse, in which armed Greeks were hidden for the destruction of barbarous Troy.' This opposition came to nothing. Colet's example was soon followed in a host of other new schools throughout the country, in which his methods were carried out. At present, of course, the number of Greek teachers was far too small to allow of much Greek being attempted in the schools. Towards the end of the century we find the Harrow statutes ordaining a regular curriculum in Greek. At Oxford the new ideas at first encountered fierce opposition. The students themselves were ranged as eager partisans or opponents of the New Order under the titles of 'Greeks' and 'Trojans.' But the battle was already won.

From Cambridge Erasmus went to Basel towards the end of 1514. He was now forty-eight; and most

Of the twenty-two years which remained to him were spent in that city. First he stayed a few months there, gathering round him a circle of eager students, including the celebrated printer, Johann Froben. Then he tried to live at Louvain, where he had a house of his own. But he was thoroughly disgusted with the bigotry of the Flemish clergy and the state of the University there, which was at the mercy of monks united in intolerant opposition to the New Learning. During this period of his life Erasmus was often in difficulties. He received many offers of pensions and posts ecclesiastical and academical; but he declined them all. *Rex essem, si iuvenis essem*, he says sadly. In 1521 he settled permanently at Basel as general editor and adviser to Froben's Press. For seven years, i.e. till Froben's death, he ground incessantly in this 'mill,' as he styles it.

It was at Basel in the year 1516 that Erasmus published the first Greek text of the New Testament. This contributed much more to the liberation of the human mind than all the controversial turmoil of Luther. Certainly it was not a work of critical skill. The Greek was printed from a single Basel manuscript, which was sent as 'copy' to Froben's Press, corrections being introduced in a haphazard way from perhaps five other manuscripts. Moreover, the printing, which was unduly hurried on, was completed in a few months. Only one of the manuscripts contained the book of *Revelation*; and in this the last six verses of the last chapter were missing. Strange to say, these verses appear in Erasmus's Greek, translated by him from the Latin Vulgate.

In spite of defects, which might naturally be expected in the first work of its kind, this book had great value as being the means by which the Greek text was most widely diffused. A very important part of it was a Latin version of the New Testament, which Erasmus endeavoured to make more accurate than the Vulgate.

The book is prefaced by a remarkable exhortation, in which he proclaims his desire for an open Bible, accessible to all. He wishes that the Scriptures were translated into all languages, so as to be understood not only by Scotchmen and Irishmen, but even by Saracens and Turks. 'I long for the time,' he continues, 'when the husbandman shall say them to himself while he follows the plough, when the weaver shall hum them to the tune of the shuttle, when the traveller shall beguile with them the weariness of the journey.' Another important work of Erasmus was his *Paraphrasis*, a series of Latin paraphrases of all the books of the New Testament except *Revelation*,—his aim being to bring home the spirit and subject of each book to the mind of the ordinary reader. They were translated into English; and soon there was a copy in every parish church in the country. Finally, in his editions of the Greek and Latin Fathers, Erasmus appealed from the biblical interpretations of medieval theologians to the Fathers of the Early Church. The works of Jerome, his hero among Christian scholars, were published in the year 1516, dedicated to his old benefactor, Archbishop Warham.

In 1523 came the publication of the first complete

edition of the *Familiar Colloquies*. Erasmus's main idea about Latin school-books was that they should introduce the pupil as soon as possible to Latin reading, without keeping him long over the drudgery of grammar; also that these books should have a moral purpose. Accordingly, the object of the *Colloquies*, as stated by Erasmus, is to entice the young (1) *ad elegantiam Latini sermonis* and (2) *ad pietatem*; also (3) in particular, to caution them against 'the misdirected ambitions and outrageous superstitions of the vulgar'; for 'it is better that they should learn this from a book than from Experience, the mistress of fools.' First, there is the purely educational object of teaching good Latin as a living colloquial language, without much attention to the learning of grammar by rote; for, as he says, *multis amara sunt grammatices praecepta*. Secondly, he has a moral and religious aim; on this he writes beautifully in the dedication to the *Colloquies*, addressed to his godson, Johann Erasmus Froben, son of his printer friend, only six years old, but showing wonderful promise. Thirdly, he desires to combat popular ignorance and superstition, the prevalence of which distressed him so acutely. These three objects will be found abundantly illustrated in the selection of dialogues given in this edition. Some of the slighter pieces are evidently written with the view of teaching the elements of Latin only, and have no other interest. This class of dialogue is necessarily over-represented in this edition, which contains only a small fraction of the whole *Colloquies*.

The complete work is very much more than a school-book. It is a literary masterpiece, which gained extraordinary popularity in its day. It had an enormous circulation. To show this, one fact will suffice. A Paris bookseller, hearing that the book was likely to be condemned as heretical, printed a new edition of 24,000 copies. This was rapidly disposed of. The popularity of the book was due both to its subject-matter and to its style. This series of prose 'idylls' (or 'little pictures'), thrown into dramatic form, gives a marvellous representation of the life of the day in its thousand different phases. Erasmus has dramatic power of a very high order. Then there is the lively, sparkling style. We must remember that Erasmus passed a very large part of his life in England, France, and Germany, and that he could not speak one of the languages of these countries. Thus the ordinary language he used was Latin; hence comes the easy colloquial style of his writings, which are 'thrown off' naturally and light-heartedly rather than written with self-conscious effort, according to his own excellent description (intended as an apology), *effundo verius quam scribo omnia*. Then we should notice that he quite revels in the wealth of his vocabulary and in his extraordinary command of the best Latin idiom. Other educational works of Erasmus are the *Adagia* (see p. 88) and the *Apophthegms*, a collection of good sayings, chiefly from Plutarch. The most noteworthy of his editions of Classical authors are his Terence and Seneca. All these editions are mainly remarkable for their *prefaces*, which appeal vigorously to the

interest of the ordinary reader, and show him how the work in question may be made to serve the needs of himself and his day. Thus in his kindly, popular way he made men feel the value of the literatures of Greece and Rome.

Amid all the storm of theological controversy which darkened his declining years, Erasmus was content to stand alone and to be true to himself. He had never dreamed of renouncing his allegiance to the Roman Church, of which he was a priest; and he bitterly bewailed the disruption which Luther caused, the *tragoedia Lutherana* as he styled it. He was ready to reform abuses, but not to recast Theology. He had fought the battle of sound learning and plain common sense against ignorance and folly, whether they came from orthodox or from reforming zealots. He had employed all the resources of his wit and satire against priests and monks and the superstitions in which they traded, long before Luther became prominent. This is what his critics meant when they said to Erasmus, 'You laid the egg; Luther has hatched it.' Erasmus cleverly replied that his egg contained a peaceable hen, but, thanks to Luther's hatching, there had emerged a fighting-cock! 'I never helped Luther,' he writes, 'unless to call on a man to mend his ways is to help him.' In 1524 he wrote against Luther, but not on the main issue; this book was a treatise on Free Will.

Writing to his old friend, Lord Mountjoy, in 1529, he says, 'I seem doomed like Hercules to be fighting monsters all my life, and weary I am of it. Never

since the world began was such an age. Everywhere smoke and steam!' It was just this 'smoke and steam' that Erasmus disliked above all things. Sympathising to a great extent with Luther's object, he detested his methods and all the turmoil which he raised, chiefly because he thus hindered the progress of the New Learning. He speaks half-sadly, half-jestingly of his own waning influence in the World of Letters:—'My popularity, such as I had, is turned to hatred. Once I was Prince of Letters, Star of Germany, High-priest of Learning, Champion of a Pure Theology. The note is altered now.' Frequently he complains of 'Lutheran libels' against himself; but he is also bitterly assailed from the other side as a 'heretic leader.' In 1533 he writes:—'They still sing the old song. Erasmus laughs at the Saints, despises the Sacraments. So they gabble, and it is all lies.' Under Pope Clement VII, 'Erasmus, fit only for the Bull of Phalaris' was a common-place of orthodox controversialists. 'As for myself,' he says, 'I am at the last act of the play. I can leave the stage with a quiet mind, if Emperor, Princes, and Bishops can still the storm without spilling of blood.'

In 1535 Erasmus, who had spent the last six years at Freiburg (a town free from religious strife), returned to Basel. The new Pope, Paul III, made great efforts to enlist his services in some public manner, with a view to a peaceful solution of the great controversy. Accordingly, he nominated him to the Deanery of Deventer, and gave him to understand that he might be a Cardinal if he wished, *intimating* at the same time that the necessary

funds—3000 ducats—would be forthcoming to enable him to qualify for the dignity. But Erasmus, whose health was failing fast, was now less than ever disposed to accept ecclesiastical honours. During the winter of 1535–6 he was confined entirely to his room; but his literary activity did not cease. He was still working for the Basel Press. His last extant letter is dated June 28th, 1536, and signed *Eras. Rot. aegra manu*. He died peacefully at Basel on July 12th, in his 70th year, and was buried in the Cathedral.

DRAMATIS PERSONAE.

The references are to pages.

- | | |
|---|---|
| Adolphus, <i>Adolf</i> , 26. | Iōannēs, <i>John</i> , 1. |
| Antōnius, <i>Antony</i> , 26. | Laurentius, <i>Laurence</i> , 7, 9. |
| Augustinus, <i>Augustine</i> , 19. | Nicolāus, <i>Nicholas</i> , 5. |
| Auriga A, <i>First Coachman</i> , 48. | Paedagōgus, <i>Schoolmaster</i> , 3, 5. |
| Auriga B, <i>Second Coachman</i> , 48. | Pamphagus, <i>Pamphagus</i> , 17. |
| Bartholus, <i>Barthel</i> , 9. | Pampirus, <i>Pampirus</i> , 34. |
| Christiānus, <i>Christian</i> , 15, 19. | Paulus, <i>Paul</i> , 9. |
| Cocles, <i>Cocles</i> (i), 5. | Petrus, <i>Peter</i> , 15. |
| " " (ii), 17. | Polygamus, <i>Polygamus</i> , 34. |
| Erasmīus, <i>Erasmīus Froben</i> (godson of Erasmus), 49. | Puer, <i>Schoolboy</i> , 3. |
| Erasmus, <i>Dēsiderius Erasmus</i> (the author), 19, 49. | Rabīnus, <i>Rabinus</i> , 11. |
| Eusebius, <i>Eusebius</i> , 34. | Silvius, <i>Silvio</i> , 1. |
| Glyciōn, <i>Glycion</i> , 34. | Syrus, <i>Syrus</i> , 11. |
| Hannō, <i>Hanno</i> , 22. | Thōmās, <i>Thomas</i> , 9. |
| Hierōnymus, <i>Jerome</i> , 5. | Thrasymachus, <i>Thrasymachus</i> , 22. |
| | Vincentius, <i>Vincent</i> , 7, 9. |

COLLOQUIA LATINA.

I.

On the way to school.

SILVIUS. IOANNES.

SI. cur adeo curris, Ioannes?

Io. 'cur lepus,' ut aiunt, 'pro canibus?'

SI. quid hoc proverbium est?

rol Io. quia, nisi adfuero in tempore ante recitatum
catalogum, actum est de pelle mea. 5

SI. hac quidem ex parte nihil est periculi.
modo praeterita est quinta. inspice horologium;
manus nondum tetigit punctum, quod horam ab
hora aequis spatiis dividit.

Io. at ego vix habeo fidem horologiis; men- 10
tiuntur nonnunquam.

SI. at mihi fide, qui campanae vocem audiui.

Io. quid loquebatur?

SI. horam esse quintam.

Io. sed est et aliud, unde magis etiam timeam. 15
reddenda est memoriter hesternae lectio, satis longa.
vereor ut possim.

Sr. commune periculum narras; nam et ipse
vix satis teneo.

Io. et nosti praeceptoris saevitiam. omnis illi
culpa capitalis est. nec magis parcit nobis quam
5 si ^{bubulum} corium esset bubulum. *if even that*

Sr. verum is non aderit in ludo.

Io. quem igitur in suo loco constituit?

Sr. Cornelium.

Io. vae nostro corio! is vel Orbilio plagosior
10 est. *therefor*

Sr. verum dicis; et ideo non raro illius
braccio precatus sum perniciem.

Io. non est pium imprecari praeceptori. nobis
potius cavendum ne incidamus in illius tyranni
15 manus.

Sr. reddamus inter nos lectionem, altero reci-
tante, altero librum inspiciente.

Io. pulchre mones.

Sr. fac praesenti sis animo; nam metus nocet
20 memoriae.

Io. facile deponerem pavorem, si non adesset
periculum. at in tanto discrimine quis possit esse
securus animo?

II.

A lecture on manners.

PAEDAGOGUS. PUER.

PA. puerum ingenuum decent ingenui mores.
quotiens alloquitur te quispiam, cui debes
honorem, compone te in rectum corporis statum;
aperi caput. vultus sit nec tristis, nec torvus, nec
impudens, sed hilaris simul et modestus; oculi;
verecundi, semper intenti in eum cui loqueris.
cave ne vacilles alternis tibiis, ne sint inquietae
manus; nec mordebis labrum. totus cultus, vultus,
habitus corporis ingenuam verecundiam prae se
ferat.

10

Pu. quid si mediter?

PA. fac.

Pu. sicine satis?

PA. nondum.

Pu. quid si sic?

15

PA. propemodum.

Pu. quid si sic?

PA. hem, satis est. moneo te, ne sis inepte
loquax aut praeceps, neu vagetur animus interim.
sed attentus es, quid ille dicat. si quid erit re-
spondendum, id facito paucis ac prudenter. ne
abieris, nisi precatus veniam, aut ab ipso dimissus.
nunc age, specimen aliquod huius rei nobis praebe.
quantum temporis abfuiisti a maternis aedibus?

PU. iam sex ferme menses.

PA. addendum erat 'domine.'

PU. iam sex ferme menses, domine.

PA. nonne tangeris desiderio matris?

5 PU. nonnunquam sane.

PA. cupis eam revisere?

PU. cupio, domine, si id pace licet tua.

PA. bene habet. sic pergito. cum loqueris,
cave ne praecipites sermonem, aut haesites lingua;
10 sed clare consuescito proferre verba tua. in con-
vivio sic te praebebis hilarem, ut semper memineris
quid deceat aetatem tuam. si quid datur lautius,
recusa modeste: si instabitur, accipe, et age
gratias. arride loquentibus; ipse parce loqui nisi
15 rogatus, aliis temet anteponere, tua iactare, aliena
despicere. esto comis, etiam erga tenuis fortunae
sodales. neminem deferto. ita fiet ut sine invidia
laudem invenias, et amicos pares. si videris con-
vivium esse longius, precatus veniam, ac salutatis
20 convivis, subducito te a mensa. vide ut horum
memineris.

PU. dabitur opera, mi praeceptor. ecquid
aliud vis?

PA. adi nunc libros tuos.

25 PU. fiet.

III.

The half-holiday.

NICOLAUS. HIERONYMUS. COCLES.
PAEDAGOGUS

Nr. iamdudum et animus et caelum et dies
invitat ad ludendum.

Hr. invitant quidem haec omnia; sed solus
praeceptor non invitat.

Nr. mittendus orator quispiam, qui veniam 5
extorqueat.

Hr. apte quidem dictum 'extorqueat.' nam
citius clavam extorseris e manu Herculis quam
ab hoc ludendi veniam. at olim illo nemo fuit
ludendi avidior. 10

Nr. verum; sed iam olim ille oblitus est se
fuisse puerum. ad verbera facillimus est et liber-
alis; hic parcissimus, idemque difficillimus.

Hr. at tamen protrudendus est aliquis legatus,
non admodum verecundae frontis, quem non ilico 15
repellat suis saevis dictis.

Nr. eat qui volet: ego carere malo quam
rogare.

Hr. nemo magis commodus ad hanc legationem
quam Cocles. 20

Nr. nemo profecto. nam audacis frontis est
ac loquax. deinde sensum hominis pulchre callet.

HI. i, Cocles, ab omnibus nobis magnam initurus gratiam.

Co. equidem experiar sedulo. verum, si non successerit, ne conferte culpam in oratorem vestrum.

HI. si te satis novimus, impetrabis. abi orator; redibis exorator.

Co. eo. bene fortunet legationem meam Mercurius. salve, praeceptor.

10 PA. quid sibi vult nugator?

Co. salve, praeceptor dignissime.

PA. insidiosa civilitas. satis iam salveo. dic quid velis.

Co. totus discipulorum tuorum grex orat te
15 ludendi veniam.

PA. nihil aliud quam luditis, etiam absque venia.

Co. scit tua prudentia vigorem ingeniorum excitari moderato lusu.

20 PA. sane tenes quod pro te facit. lusu opus est iis, qui vehementer laborant: vobis, qui segniter studetis et acriter luditis, freno magis opus est quam laxatis habenis.

Co. nitimur pro viribus. et, si quid hactenus
25 cessatum est, post diligentia sarcietur.

PA. o sartores! quis erit sponsor istud futurum?

Co. ego capitis mei periculo non dubitem esse sponsor.

30 PA. immo corii periculo potius. scio quam

non sit tutum tibi credere; tamen hic periculum faciam, quam sis ^{bonae} bonae fidei. si dederis verba, posthac nequiquam mecum egeris. ludant, sed gregatim in campis. mature se recipiant domum ante solis occasum. 5

Co. fiet. ^{exoravi} exoravi, quamquam aegre.

Hi. o lepidum caput! omnes amamus te plurimum.

Co. sed interim cavendum, ne quid peccemus; de meo tergo pendendum est. spocondi vestro 10 omnium nomine. si quid accidet, non me posthac utemini legato.

Hi. cavebitur.

IV.

Young athletes.

VINCENTIUS. LAURENTIUS.

Vi. libetne certare saltu?

La. ludus iste non convenit pransis. quod 15 autem ^{salienti} salienti genus placet?

Vi. auspicemur ab eo quod est simplicissimum, a saltu ranarum, utraque tibia, sed iunctis pedibus. huius ubi erit satietas, aliud atque aliud genus experiemur. 20

La. equidem nullum recusabo genus, nisi quod geritur cum periculo tibiarum; nolim mihi rem esse cum medicis.

VI. hastae ^{hastae} innixum salire in primis est elegans.

LA. liberalius est certare cursu; si quidem hoc certaminis genus apud Vergilium proposuit et
5 Aeneas.

VI. verum; sed idem proposuit et caestuum certamen, quo non delector.

LA. designa stadium. hoc loco sit carcer; quercus ista sit meta.

10 VI. sed utinam adesset Aeneas, qui proponeret et praemia victori.

LA. victori satis magnum praemium est gloria.

VI. victo potius dandum erat praemium solacii gratia.

15 LA. sit igitur victo praemium, ut lappa coronatus redeat in urbem.

VI. equidem non recusem, si tu praecedas tibia canens.

LA. est ingens aestus.

20 VI. nec mirum, cum sit solstitium aestivum.

LA. praestat natare.

VI. mihi non placet ranarum vita. animal sum terrestre.

LA. sed tamen hoc olim in primis habebatur
25 liberale.

VI. immo etiam utile.

LA. ad quid?

VI. si fugiendum est in bello, ii potissimum valent qui sese cursu et natatione exercuerunt.

30 LA. artem narras haudquaquam aspernandam.

neque enim minus laudis est aliquando bene fugere, quam fortiter pugnare.

VI. sum plane imperitus natandi, nec sine periculo versamur in alieno elemento.

LA. sed assuescere oportet; nemo nascitur 5 artifex.

VI. at ego istius generis artifices permultos audio natasse, sed non enatasse.

LA. experieris primum innixus suberi.

VI. nec suberi fido magis quam pedibus. si 10 vobis cordi est natatio, spectator esse malo quam certator.

V.

Young sportsmen.

PAULUS. THOMAS. VINCENTIUS.
LAURENTIUS. BARTHOLUS.

PA. 'trahit sua quemque voluptas.' mihi placet venatio.

TH. placet et mihi; sed ubi canes, ubi vena- 15 bula, ubi casses? *hunting nets*

PA. valeant apri, ursi, cervi, vulpes; nos insidiabimur cuniculis. *traps*

VI. at ego laqueos iniciam cicadis.

LA. ego ranas captabo.

BA. ego papiliones venabor.

LA. difficile est sectari volantia.

BA. difficile, sed pulchrum; nisi pulchrius esse
ducis sectari lumbricos aut cocleas, quia carent
alis.

LA. equidem malo insidiari piscibus; est mihi
5 hamus elegans.

BA. sed unde parabis escam?

LA. lumbricorum ubique magna est copia.

BA. sed plerique pisces delicatioris sunt palati,
quam ut esca tam vulgari capiantur.

10 LA. novi quoddam insecti genus, quo talibus
insidiari soleo.

BA. tu vide an possis imponere piscibus; ego
ranis facessam negotium.

LA. quomodo? reti?

15 BA. non; sed arcu.

LA. novum piscandi genus.

BA. at non iniucundum. videbis et fateberis.

VI. quid si nos duo micemus digitis?

20 PA. ignavum est ac rusticum lusus genus. ad
focum desidentibus magis convenit quam in campo
se exercentibus.

VI. quid si certemus nucibus?

PA. nuces admodum pueris relinquamus; nos
grandes sumus.

25 VI. et tamen nihil aliud adhuc quam pueri
sumus.

PA. sed quibus decorum est ludere nucibus,
iisdem non indecorum est 'equitare in harundine
longa.'

VI.

A lazy serving-man.

RABINUS. SYRUS.

SCENE I.

RA. heus, heus, ^{rascal}furcifer, iamdudum clamo;
nec tu tamen expergisceris. aut ocius surge aut
ego tibi fuste somnum istum excutiam. non te
pudet in multam lucem stertere? qui frugi sunt
famuli solent curare ut erus surgens reperiat 5
^{master}omnia parata. ut aegre divellitur a nido tepefacto
^{man}cucullus! dum se distendit, dum oscitat, tota abit
hora.

SY. vixdum lucet.

RA. credo, tibi. nam tuis oculis adhuc multa 10
nox est.

SY. quid me iubes facere? ^{brute}

RA. fac ut luceat focus; verre pilleum ac
pallium; exterge ^{shoe}calceos. caligas primum intus
purga, mox foris. accende lucernam. 15

SY. fiet.

RA. atqui move te ocius. iam haec fecisse
oportuit.

SY. moveo.

RA. video; sed nihil promoves. ut incedit 20
testudo! adfer aquam. quid cessas, asine? an-
nus est priusquam accendis lucernam.

Sy. quam imperiosum habeo dominum! vix huius iussis decem expediti famuli fecerint satis.

RA. quid ais, cessator?

Sy. nihil; omnia recte.

5 RA. non ego te audio murmurantem? quid loqueris de imperio?

Sy. precor tibi, ut fias imperator.

RA. et ego tibi, ut fias homo ex ligno. sequere me usque ad templum. mox domum recurrito; 10 lectos componito. fac ut niteat tota domus. si quid sensero praetermissum, vapulabis. *undoubtedly*

Sy. hic sane novi benignitatem tuam.

RA. proinde cave, si sapis.

Sy. at interim de prandio nulla mentio.

15 RA. vah, ut hic mentem habet furcifer! non prandeo domi. itaque sub horam decimam ad me transcurrito, adducturus me eo, ubi sum pransurus.

Sy. tibi quidem prospectum; sed hic interim nihil est quod edam.

20 RA. si non est quod edas, est quod esurias. *to be*

Sy. nemo fit esuriendo satur. *and eat food*

RA. est panis.

Sy. est, sed ater. *gray*

RA. te quidem faenum esse oportet, si pa- 25 bulum detur te dignum. an postulas ut te asinum tantum placentis pascam? si fastidis panem, adde porrum aut, si mavis, caepe. *carrot* *onion*

SCENE II.

RA. est tibi abeundum in forum.

Sy. tam procul?

RA. sex tantum passus abest; tibi pigro sunt
bis mille. consulam autem tuae pigritiae. eadem
legatione multa conficies negotia. primum ibis 5
ad vestiarium, ac thoracem, si iam perfectus est,
ab eo recipies. hīc quaeres Cornelium. is plerum-
que est in Cervo; ibi potitat. rogabis si quid
habeat litterarum ad me, et quo die sit pro-
fecturus. deinde convenies mercatorem panna- 10
rium: rogabis meis verbis, ne quid sollicitus sit
quod pecuniam non miserim ad diem praescrip-
tum; mox numerabitur.

Sy. quando? ad Kalendas Graecas?

RA. rides, ganeo; immo ante Kalendas Mar- 15
tias. in reditu ex bibliopolis disces, si quid
advectum sit novorum librorum e Germania.
cognosce qui sint, et quanti venales. post haec
rogabis Goclenium, ut mihi dignetur esse conviva.

Sy. etiam convivas vocas? non habes domi, 20
unde vel murem pascas.

RA. proinde tu, confectis ceteris, abi ad ma-
cellum, et eme nobis armum ovillum; eum curabis
elegantem coquendum. audin' haec?

Sy. plura quam vellem.

25

RA. at vide ut memineris.

Sy. vix potero dimidium.

RA. etiam hic stas, cessator? iam redisse oportuit.

Sr. quis possit unus tot rebus sufficere? non videor illi sat occupatus, nisi sim et coquus.

SCENE III.

5 RA. profer ocreas; nam equitandum est.

Sr. en adsunt.

RA. probe quidem abs te curatae; totae albent situ. opinor nec extersas nec unctas hoc anno; adeo rigent prae siccitate. exerge uvido panno;
10 mox unge ad ignem diligenter, donec mollescant.

Sr. curabitur.

RA. ubi calcaria?

Sr. adsunt.

RA. verum, sed obducta robigine. ubi frenum
15 et ephippia?

Sr. sunt in promptu.

RA. vide ne quid desit, aut ne quid ruptum, ne quid nobis sit in mora, cum erimus in cursu. propera ad coriarium, et hoc lorum cura sarcendum.
20 reversus inspicere soleas equorum, num qui clavi desint aut vacillent. quam macilenti sunt equi! quotiens pectis illos in anno?

Sr. immo cottidie.

RA. nimirum res ipsa loquitur. ieiunant,
25 opinor, nonnunquam totum triduum.

Sr. minime.

RA. negas tu quidem, sed aliud dicerent equi,

si loqui liceret; quamquam satis loquuntur ipsa macie.

SY. curo sedulo.

RA. cur igitur tu pinguior equis?

SY. quia non pascor faeno. 5

RA. hoc igitur restat; adorna manticam celeriter.

SY. fiet.

VII.

A Cretan Rip Van Winkle.

CHRISTIANUS. PETRUS.

CH. audio te patriam nuper revisisse.

PE. sic est factum. nam diutius iam abfueram. 10
torquebat me amicorum desiderium.

CH. pie fecisti; humanus es qui ista cogites.
ducimur enim omnes admirabili quodam amore
eius regionis, quae nos aluit atque edidit.

nescio qua natale solum dulcedine cunctos 15
ducit, et immemores non sinit esse sui.

dic, quaeso, quonam in loco illic offendisti omnia?

PE. nihil non novum; mutata omnia. vide-
bar mihi in alium venire mundum. vixdum de-
cennium abfueram, et non secus omnia admirabar 20
quam Epimenides, somniatorum princeps, vix tan-
dem experrectus.

CH. quaenam ista est fabula?

16 *A Cretan Rip Van Winkle*

PE. dicam equidem, si vacas.

CH. nihil fuerit iucundius.

PE. sellam igitur mihi poni iube.

CH. recte admones; nam sedens commodius
5 mentieris.

PE. fabulantur historici de Epimenide quodam
Cretensi, qui ambulandi gratia solus urbem egres-
sus, cum, subita pluviae vi compellente, in quandam
speluncam ingressus dormisset, quadraginta septem
10 perpetuos annos somnum continuaret.

CH. quid narras? incredibile dictu. monstri
simile narras.

PE. immo rem narro a gravissimis traditam
auctoribus.

15 CH. audire gestio.

PE. bene cum Epimenide actum est, qui vel
tandem ad se redierit: multi sapientes nunquam
expergiscuntur a suis somniis.

CH. age, facis ut poeta dignum est; sed perge
20 mentiri.

PE. Epimenides igitur somno solutus, e spelun-
ca prodit, circumspicit; mutata videt omnia, silvas,
ripas, flumina, arbores, agros, breviter nihil non
novum. accedit ad urbem, percontatur, manet
25 illic aliquamdiu, neque novit quemquam, neque
a quopiam agnitus est. alius hominum cultus,
nec idem vultus, mutatus sermo, diversi mores.
nec miror hoc Epimenidi post tantum annorum
evenisse, cum mihi idem prope evenerit, qui paucos
30 annos abfuissem.

CH. quid uterque parens? vivuntne?

PE. vivunt ambo et valent, quamvis senio,
morbo, denique bellorum calamitate confecti.

CH. haec est humanae vitae comoedia.

VIII.

The wanderer's return.

PAMPHAGUS. COCLES.

PA. aut parum prospiciunt oculi aut Coclitem 5
veterem convivam meum video.

Co. immo nihil te fallunt oculi tui; vides
sodalem ex animo tuum, nulla cuiquam erat spes
reditus tui, qui tot annos abfueris, ignaris omnibus
quae te terrarum haberet regio. sed unde? dic, 10
quaeso.

PA. ab antipodibus.

Co. immo ab insulis, opinor, fortunatis.

PA. gaudeo quod agnovisti sodalem tuum;
nam verebar ne sic domum redirem quemadmodum 15
rediit Ulysses.

Co. quonam pacto rediit ille?

PA. ne ab uxore quidem agnitus. solus canis
vetulus mota cauda dominum agnovit.

Co. quot annos ille domo abfuerat?

20

PA. viginti.

Co. tu plures abfuisti; nec tamen fefellit me
tua facies. sed quis istud narrat de Ulysse?

PA. Homerus.

Co. ille, ut aiunt, pater est omnium fabularum.
fortasse uxor interim adsciverat virum alium et
idcirco non agnovit Ulysem suum.

5 PA. immo nihil illa fidelius. sed Pallas ad-
diderat Ulyssi senium, ne posset agnoscere.

Co. quomodo tandem agnitus est?

PA. e tuberculo, quod habebat in digito pedis;
id animadvertit nutrix iam admodum anus, dum
10 illi pedes lavat.

Co. et tu miraris, si ego te agnovi ex isto tam
insigni naso?

PA. nihil me poenitet huius nasi.

Co. nec est cur poeniteat, cum tibi sit ad res
15 tam multas utilis.

PA. ad quas?

Co. conducet excitando foculo, si defuerit follis.

PA. belle narras. quid praeterea?

Co. si lumen nocebit scribenti, praebebit um-
20 braculum.

PA. haha! est praeterea quod dicas?

Co. findendis lignis erit cuneus.

PA. probe.

Co. si praeconem agas, sit tuba; si bellicum
25 canas, cornu; si fodias, ligo; si metas, falx; si
naviges, ancora; si pisces, hamus.

PA. o me felicem! nesciebam me circumferre
tam ad multa utilem supellectilem.

Co. sed quis interim terrarum angulus te
30 habuit?

PA. Roma.

Co. at quomodo fieri potuit ut in tanta luce nemo te sciret vivum?

PA. immo nusquam magis latent boni viri; adeo ut saepe clarissima luce neminem videas in 5 frequenti foro.

Co. redis igitur nobis auro onustus.

PA. venatus equidem sum sedulo; at parum favit Fortuna.

Co. quid igitur? redisti nobis nihil aliud quam 10 Pamphagus?

PA. non.

Co. quid igitur?

PA. lupus hians.

IX.

The dinner-party.

AUGUSTINUS. CHRISTIANUS. ERASMUS.

'Beef, mutton, or pork, sir?'

AU. Christiane, utrum bubulas an ovillas carnes 15 mavis?

CH. bubulis quidem magis delector; at ovillas magis salutare arbitror. ita ingenium est hominum, ut perniciosissima quaeque appetant vehementissime.

20

AV. Galli suillas carnes mirum in modum
amant.

CH. Galli amant quae parvo constant.

AV. hac una in re Iudaeus sum; nam nihil
5 aequae odi ac carnes suillas.

CH. nec iniuria; quid enim insalubrius? ego
in hoc non cum Gallis, sed cum Iudaeis sentio.

ER. at ego ovillas pariter amo et suillas, sed
diversa ratione. nam ovillis, quod amo, libenter
10 vescor; suillas prae amore non attingo, ne quid
offendam.

CH. bellus homo es, Erasme, ac festivus. equi-
dem mirari mecum soleo unde tanta in palatis
humanis sit diversitas. nam, ut Horatiano carmine
15 utar,

tres mihi convivae prope dissentire videntur,
poscentes vario multum diversa palato.

ER. quamquam, ut ait Terentius, 'quot homines,
tot sententiae, et suus cuique mos,' tamen nemo
20 me adduxerit ut credam plus ingeniis inesse
varietatis quam palatis. ita vix duos reperias
quos eadem iuvent.

Venison and game.

ER. unde tibi nunc venatio? unde ferina?

CH. Midas, homo omnium qui vivunt libera-
25 lissimus nostrique amantissimus, mihi misit dono:
dono quidem, sed sic ut ego minoris emam saepe-
numero.

ER. quomodo sic?

CH. quia famulis plus dandum quam daretur
in macello vendenti.

ER. quae res cogit hoc facere?

CH. tyrannus omnium violentissimus. 5

ER. quis iste?

CH. mos.

ER. profecto tyrannus iste frequenter iniquis-
simas leges dedit mortalibus.

CH. Midas suo more hunc cervum venatus est. 10
quid tu, qui soleas istius studii esse amantissimus?

AV. equidem, hoc studio plane relicto, iam
praeter litteras nihil venor.

CH. at mihi videntur litterae quovis cervo
fugaciores. 15

AV. duobus tamen potissimum canibus asse-
quimur, admiratione scilicet atque improbitate
laboris. nam et admirari plurimum discendi
ardorem ministrat, et, ut Vergilius scripsit, 'labor
omnia vincit improbus.' 20

CH. amanter admones, Augustine, ut soles:
propterea non desistam, non quiescam, donec
consequar.

A tough goose.

CH. quid? te anserinae carnes delectant?

AV. me quidem non mediocriter iuvant, ut 25
sum minime fastidiosus. at hic anser, nescio quo
pacto, nihil me iuvat; nihil enim in vita vidi

siccus: siccior est pumice. ligneus mihi videtur.
 et mehercule, quantum suspicor, veteranus miles
 immodicis ^{und h} excubiis sese maceravit. aiunt enim
 anserem inter omnia animalia longe esse vigilan-
 5 tissimum. et profecto, nisi coniectura fallor, hic
 anser ex eorum numero est, qui, canibus una cum
 militibus somno sopitis, Romanum olim Capito-
 lium defenderunt.

CH. verisimile dicis; nam ex eo saeculo
 10 relictum arbitror.

X.

Back from the wars.

HANNO. THRASYMACHUS.

HA. unde redis nobis Vulcanus, qui Mercurius
 hinc abieras nobis?

TH. quos Vulcanos aut quos Mercurios mihi
 narras?

15 HA. quia alatus videbare cum abires, nunc
 claudicas. ^{hmp}

TH. sic a bello rediri solet.

HA. quid tibi cum bello, homo quovis cervo
 fugacior?

20 TH. spes praedae reddiderat fortem.

HA. multum igitur refers spoliorum?

TH. immo zonam inanem.

HA. tanto minus gravare sarcina.

TH. atqui sceleribus onustus redeo.

HA. gravis profecto sarcina.

TH. plus illic scelorum et vidi et feci quam
unquam antehac in omni vita. 5

HA. ecquid igitur arridet vita militaris?

TH. nihil neque scelestius neque calamitosius.

HA. quid igitur in mentem venit istis, qui
nummo conducti, nonnulli gratis, currunt ad bellum
non aliter quam ad convivium? 10

TH. ego nihil aliud coniectare possim, quam
illos agi a malis Furiis, seseque totos miseriae de-
vovisse.

HA. ita quidem videtur. nam ad res honestas
vix ullo pretio conduci queant. sed expone nobis, 15
quomodo gestum sit proelium, et utro sese incli-
narit victoria.

TH. tantus erat strepitus, tumultus, cornuum
tonitrua, hinnitus equorum, clamor virorum, ut
non videre possem quid gereretur, immo vix 20
scirem ubi essem ipse.

HA. unde igitur ceteri, qui ex bello veniunt,
sic depingunt singula, quid quisque dixerit aut
gesserit, quasi nusquam non adfuissent otiosi spec-
tatores? 25

TH. ego credo istos mentiri splendide. in
tentorio meo quid gestum sit scio: quid in proelio
prorsus ignoro.

HA. hoc quidem scis, unde tibi venerit claudi-
catio? 30

TH. suspicor aut saxo aut equi calce laesum
genu.

HA. at ego scio.

TH. scis? an tibi narravit aliquis?

5 HA. non; sed divino.

TH. dic igitur.

HA. cum fugeres pavidus, collapsus humi offendisti in silicem. *phoe*

TH. peream, nisi rem acu tetigisti. adeo
10 verisimile est quod divinasti.

HA. abi domum et uxori narra tuas victorias.

TH. illa mihi canet haud suave encomium, qui
nudus redeam.

HA. sed unde restitues quod rapuisti?

15 TH. iam pridem restitui.

HA. cui?

TH. oenopolis et iis qui me vicerunt alca.

HA. satis militariter. par est quod male
partum est peius perire. verum a sacrilegiis,
20 opinor, temperatum est.

TH. immo illic erat sacrum nihil. nec profanis
pepercimus nec fanis.

HA. quo pacto sarcies?

TH. negant oportere sarciri quod in bello com-
25 missum sit. iure fit quod illic fit.

HA. iure belli fortasse.

TH. tenes.

HA. at istud ius 'summa est iniuria.' te
non patriae pietas, sed praedae spes traxit in
30 bellum.

TH. fateor, et arbitror paucos illuc ire sanctiore proposito.

HA. est aliquid insanire cum multis.

TH. contionator e suggestu pronuntiavit bellum esse iustum. 5

HA. sed si iustum est principi, non continuo iustum est tibi.

TH. audiui licere sua cuique arte vivere.

HA. praeclara ars incendere domos, diripere templa, spoliare miseros, occidere innoxios. 10

TH. lanii conducuntur ad mactandum bovem; cur nostra ars reprehenditur, quod conducimur ad mactandos homines?

HA. non eras sollicitus quonam esset migratura anima tua, si contigisset in bello cadere? 15

TH. non admodum. praecipua spes erat in divo Christophoro, cuius imaginem cottidie contemplabar.

HA. in tentoriis?

TH. carbone pinxeramus illum in velo. unde 20 tu mihi obviis, qui mihi animum e sereno nubilum redderes?

HA. felix occursus. bona avis est obviis amicus, qui bene moneat.

TH. nescio an bona; certe parum suavis. 25

XI.

The shipwreck.

ANTONIUS. ADOLPHUS.

PART I.

AN. horrenda narras. est istud navigare?
prohibeat Deus ne mihi quidquam unquam tale
veniat in mentem.

AD. immo quod hactenus commemoravi ludus
5 merus est prae his quae nunc audies.

AN. plus satis malorum audiui; horresco te
memorante, quasi ipse periculo intersim.

AD. immo mihi iucundi sunt acti labores. ea
nocte aliquid accidit, quod magna ex parte spem
10 salutis ademit nauclero. *orig. haec*

AN. quid, obsecro? *orig. haec*

AD. nox erat sublustris, et in summo malo
stabat quidam e nautis circumspiciens si quam
terram videret. huic coepit adsistere sphaera
15 quaedam ignea. id nautis tristissimum omen
est, si quando solitarius ignis est; felix, cum
gemini. hos veteres crediderunt Castorem et
Pollucem.

AN. quid illis cum nautis, quorum alter fuit
20 eques, alter pugil?

AD. sic visum est poetis. nauclerus, qui clavo *orig. haec*

^{metu} assidebat, 'socie,' inquit (nam eo nomine se mutuo compellant nautae), 'videsne quod sodalicium tibi adsit?' 'video,' respondit ille, 'et precor ut sit felix.' mox globus igneus delapsus per funes devolvit sese usque ad naclerum. 5

AN. num ille exanimatus est metu?

AD. nautae assuevere monstris. ibi paulisper commoratus volvit se per ^{altum} margines totius navis; inde per medios foros dilapsus evanuit. sub meridiem magis ac magis crescere tempestas. 10 vidistine unquam Alpes?

AN. vidi.

AD. illi montes ^{montes} verrucae sint, si conferantur cum his undis. quotiens tollebamur in altum, licuisset lunam digito contingere; quotiens de- 15 mittebamur, videbamur dehiscente terra ire in Tartarum.

AN. o insanos, qui se credunt mari!

AD. nautis frustra luctantibus cum tempestate, tandem naclerus totus pallens nos adiit. 20

AN. is pallor praesagit aliquod magnum malum.

AD. 'amici,' inquit, 'desii esse dominus navis meae; vicere venti. reliquum est ut spem nostram collocemus in Deo, et quisque se paret ad extrema. in primis autem exoneranda est navis; sic iubet 25 necessitas. praestat consulere vitae dispendio rerum quam simul cum rebus interire.' persuasit veritas; proiecta sunt in mare plurima vasa plena pretiosis mercibus.

AN. hoc erat vere iacturam facere.

Ad. aderat Italus quidam qui legatum egerat apud regem Scotiae; huic erat scrinium plenum vasis argenteis, anulis, panno, vestimentis sericis.

AN. is nolebat decidere cum mari?

5 Ad. non; sed cupiebat aut perire cum amicis opibus suis aut simul cum illis servari. itaque negabat.

AN. quid nauclerus?

Ad. 'per nos,' inquit, 'liceret tibi cum tuis
10 perire solum; sed aequum non est nos omnes tui scrinii causa periclitari; alioqui te una cum scrinio dabimus in mare praecipitem.'

AN. o orationem vere nauticam!

Ad. sic Italus quoque iacturam fecit. paulo
15 post venti, nihilo mitiores facti nostris muneribus, rumpere funes, disicere vela.

AN. o calamitatem!

Ad. ibi rursus nos adit nauta.

AN. contionaturus?

20 Ad. salutatur; 'amici,' inquit, 'tempus hortatur ut unus quisque Deo se commendet ac morti se paret.' rogatus a quibusdam nauticae rei non imperitis, quot horas se crederet posse tueri navem, negavit se posse polliceri quidquam, sed ultra tres
25 horas non posse.

AN. haec contio durior etiam erat priore.

Ad. haec ubi locutus est, iubet incidi funes omnes ac malum, et simul cum antennis devolvi in mare.

30 AN. cur hoc?

AD. quoniam, sublato aut lacero velo, malus erat oneri, non usui. tota spes erat in clavo.

AN. quid interea ^{in eis regibus} vectores?

AD. ibi vidisses miseram rerum faciem. nonnulli procumbentes in tabulas adorabant mare, 5 quidquid erat olei effundentes in undas, non aliter illi blandientes quam solemus irato principi.

AN. quid aiebant?

AD. 'o clementissimum mare, o generosissimum mare, o ditissimum mare, o formosissimum mare, 10 mitesce, serva.' huius modi multa canebant surdo mari.

AN. ridicula superstitio. quid alii?

AD. plerique vota nuncupabant. aderat Anglus quidam, qui promittebat montes aureos Virgini 15 Valsinghamicae, si vivus attigisset terram. erant qui se promitterent fore Carthusianos. inter omnes nemo tranquillius agebat quam mulier quaedam, cui erat infantulus in sinu.

AN. quid illa?

20

AD. sola nec vociferabatur nec flebat nec pollicebatur: tantum complexa puerum precabatur tacite. interea nauclerus, metuens ne navis solveretur, rudentibus eam cinxit a prora et a puppi.

25

AN. o misera praesidia!

AD. interim exoritur quidam sacerdos senex, annos natus sexaginta, cui nomen erat Adamo. is admonuit ut omnes pararemus nos ad natandum. atque ita stans in medio navis contionatus est 30

nobis. hortatur omnes ut se quisque pararet morti. dum haec aguntur, redit ad nos nauta lacrimabundus. 'paret,' inquit, 'se quisque; nam navis non erit nobis usui ad quartam horae partem.' iam
5 enim locis aliquot convulsa hauriebat mare. paulo post nauta renuntiat nobis se videre procul turrim sacram; hortatur ut divi, quisquis esset eius templi praeses, auxilium imploraremus. procumbunt omnes et orant ignotum divum. interim nauclerus,
10 quantum potest, eo navem dirigit iam laceram, iam undique bibentem undas, ac plane dilapsuram, ni rudentibus fuisset cincta.

AN. dura rerum condicio.

PART II.

AD. eo provecti sumus ut eius loci incolae
15 prospicerent nos periclitantes; ac procurentes catervatim in extremum littus, sublati^{littus} togis et g^{littus}aleris in hastas impositis, nos invitabant ad sese.

AN. exspecto quid evenerit.

AD. iam mare totam navem occuparat, ut
20 nihilo tutiores essemus in nave quam in mari. nautae scapham exonerant aqua ac demittunt in mare. in hanc omnes sese conantur conicere, nautis magno tumultu clamantibus scapham non esse capacem tantae multitudinis; proinde arriperet
25 sibi quisque quod posset ac nataret. res non patiebatur lenta consilia. alius arripit remum,

prole, conf. huc
alius contum, alius tabulam; ac suo quisque praesidio nitentes committunt se fluctibus.

AN. quid interim accidit illi mulieri, quae sola non clamabat?

AD. illa omnium prima pervenit ad littus. 5

AN. quomodo potuit?

AD. imposueramus eam tabulae et sic alligaveramus ut non facile posset decidere; dedimus illi tabellam in manum, qua vice remi uteretur; ac bene precantes exposuimus in fluctus, conto 10 protrudentes, ut abesset a navi, unde erat periculum. illa, laeva tenens infantulum, dextra remigabat.

AN. scapha pervenit incolumis?

AD. nulli prius periit. porro triginta sese in 15 eam coniecerant.

AN. quo malo fato id factum est?

AD. priusquam posset se liberare a magna navi, illius vacillatione submersa est.

AN. o factum male! quid tum? 20

AD. ego, dum aliis consulo, paene perieram.

AN. quo pacto?

AD. quia nihil supererat aptum natationi.

AN. illic *subera* fuissent usui.

AD. in eo rerum discrimine maluissem vile 25 suber quam candelabrum aureum. circumspicienti tandem venit in mentem de ima mali parte. eam quoniam solus eximere non poteram, adscisco socium. huic ambo innixi committimus nos mari, sic ut ego dextrum cornu tenerem, ille laevum. 30

dum sic iactamur, sacerdos ille, contionator nauticus, medium iniecit se in umeros nostros. erat autem ingenti corpore. exclamamus, 'quis ille tertius? is perdet nos omnes.' ille contra
5 placide, 'sitis,' inquit, 'bono animo; sat spatii est; Deus aderit nobis.' dum adhuc iactamur iuxta navem, arbitrio fluctuum huc et illuc se volventem, clavus illis fregit femur eius qui tenebat laevum cornu. sic ille revulsus est; sacerdos, precatus
10 illi 'requiem aeternam,' successit in locum illius, hortans me ut magno animo tuerer cornu meum ac strenue moverem pedes. interim potabamus multum aquae salsae. adeo Neptunus nobis non balneum tantum salsum, sed potionem etiam
15 salsam temperarat; quanquam sacerdos ei rei monstravit remedium.

AN. quid, obsecro?

AD. quotiens unda nobis occurrebat, ille opposuit occipitium ore clauso.

20 AN. strenuum senem mihi narras.

AD. cum iam aliquamdiu sic natantes non nihil promovissemus, sacerdos, quoniam erat mirae altitudinis, 'bono,' inquit, 'es animo; sentio vadum.' ego non ausus tantum sperare felicitatis, 'longius,'
25 inquam, 'absumus a littore quam ut vadum sperandum sit.' 'immo,' inquit, 'sentio pedibus terram.' 'est,' inquam, 'fortasse unum e scriniis, quod huc devolvit mare.' 'immo,' inquit, 'digitis plane sentio terram.' cum adhuc aliquamdiu
30 natassemus, ac rursus sentiret vadum, 'tu fac,'

inquit, 'quod tibi videtur optimum; ego tibi cedo malum totum, et vado me credo.' simulque expectato fluctuum decessu, pedibus secutus est quanto potuit cursu. rursus accedentibus undis, utraque manu complexus utrumque genu, obnitate- 5 batur fluctui, occultans sese sub undis, quemadmodum solent mergi: rursus abeunte fluctu promicabat et currebat. ego, videns hoc illi succedere, sum imitatus. stabant in harena, qui, porrectis inter se longis hastilibus, fulciebant sese 10 adversus impetum undarum, viri robusti et fluctibus assueti, sic ut ultimus hastam porrigeret adnatanti. ea contacta, omnibus in littus se recipientibus, tuto pertrahebatur in siccum. hac ope servati sunt aliquot. 15

AN. quot?

AD. septem; verum ex his duo soluti sunt tepore, admoti igni.

AN. quot eratis in navi?

AD. quinquaginta octo. *ad luvem* 20

AN. o saevum mare! saltem decimis fuisset contentum, quae sufficiunt sacerdotibus. ex tanto numero tam paucos reddidit?

AD. ibi experti sumus incredibilem gentis humanitatem, omnia nobis mira alacritate sup- 25 peditantis, hospitium, ignem, cibum, vestes, viaticum. *procurant*

AN. quae gens erat?

AD. Hollandica. *ad luvem*

AN. ista nihil humanius, quamvis feris natio- 30

nibus cincta sit. non repetes, opinor, posthac
Neptunum.

Ad. non, nisi mihi Deus ademerit sanam
mentem.

5 AN. et ego malim audire tales fabulas quam
experiri.

XII.

The drive to Antwerp, or How to
preserve youth.

EUSEBIUS. PAMPIRUS. POLYGAMUS. GLYCION.

Old cronies.

Eu. quas novas aves hic ego video? nisi
me fallit animus aut parum prospiciunt oculi,
video tres veteres sodales meos consistentes,
10 Pampirum, Polygamum, Glycionem. certe ipsi
sunt.

PA. quid tibi vis cum tuis vitreis oculis?
congregere propius, Eusebi.

Po. salve, multum exoptate Eusebi.

15 GL. bene sit tibi, vir optime.

Eu. salvete vos omnes, pariter mihi carissima
capita. quis casus nos coniunxit? nam nemo
nostrum vidit alium annis, opinor, iam quadraginta.
Mercurius caduceo suo non potuisset melius nos in
20 unum contrahere. quid hic agitis?

PA. sedemus.

Eu. video ; sed qua de causa ?

Po. opperimur currum, qui nos devehat Antverpiam.

Eu. ad mercatum ?

Po. scilicet ; sed spectatores magis quam negotiatores ; quanquam aliis aliud est negotii.

Eu. et nobis eodem est iter. verum quid obstat quominus eatis ?

Po. nondum convenit cum aurigis.

Eu. difficile genus hominum. sed visne illis imponamus ?

Po. liberet, si liceret.

Eu. simulemus nos velle simul abire pedites.

Po. citius credant caneros volaturos quam nos tam grandes pedibus hoc iter confecturos. 15

GL. vultis rectum verumque consilium ?

Po. maxime.

GL. illi potant : id quo faciunt diutius, hoc plus erit periculi ne nos deiciant in lutum.

Po. prima luce venias oportet, si sobrium aurigam vis. 20

GL. quo maturius perveniamus Antverpiam, nobis quattuor solis currum stipulemur. contemnendum censeo tantulum pecuniae. ita sedebimus commodius ac mutuis fabulis suavissime hoc iter 25 faciemus.

Po. recte suadet Glycion.

GL. transegi ; conscendamus. vah, nunc mihi libet vivere, postquam ex tanto intervallo videre contigit mihi carissimos olim sodales. 30

Eu. ac mihi videor repubescere.

Po. quot anni sunt ex quo Lutetiae conviximus?

Eu. arbitror haud pauciores quadraginta duobus.

Pa. tum videbamur omnes aequales.

Eu. ita ferme eramus, aut, si quid erat discriminis, minimum erat.

Pa. at nunc quanta inaequalitas! nam Glycion
10 nihil habet senii, et huius avus videri queat Polygamus.

Eu. profecto sic habet. quid rei in causa?

Pa. quid? aut hic cessavit ac restitit in cursu,
aut ille antevertit.

15 Eu. ohe, non cessant anni, quantumvis cessent homines.

Autobiography of Glycion.

Po. dic bona fide, Glycion, quot annos numeras?

Gl. plures quam aureos.

20 Po. quot tandem?

Gl. sexaginta sex.

Po. sed quibus tandem artibus remoratus es senectutem? nam neque canities adest neque rugosa cutis; vigent oculi, nitet utrinque dentium
25 series, color vividus est.

Gl. dicam artes meas.

Po. dic igitur, quo te contulisti, relicta Lutetia?

GL. recta in patriam. illic commoratus fere annum, dispicere coepi de deligendo vitae genere; quam ego rem non leve momentum habere credo ad felicitatem. circumspiciebam quid cuique 5 succederet, quid secus.

Po. miror tibi tantum fuisse mentis, cum Lutetiae nihil esset te nugacius.

GL. hoc ferebat aetas. at tamen, o bone, non meo Marte rem omnem gessi. 10

Po. mirabar.

GL. priusquam quidquam aggrederer, adii quemdam e civibus natu grandem, longo rerum usu prudentissimum, totiusque civitatis testimonio probatissimum, ac meo quidem iudicio etiam 15 felicissimum.

Eu. sapiebas.

GL. huius usus consilio duxi uxorem.

Po. pulchre dotatam?

GL. dote mediocri. ea res mihi plane cessit ex 20 animi sententia.

Po. quot annos tum eras natus?

GL. viginti ferme duos.

Po. o te felicem!

GL. non totum hoc fortunae debeo, ne quid 25 erres.

Po. quomodo sic?

GL. dicam. alii prius diligunt quam deligant; ego iudicio delegi quam diligerem. cum ea vixi suavissime annos non plures octo. 30

Po. te reliquit orbum?

GL. immo supersunt quadrigae liberorum, filii duo, filiae totidem.

Po. privatusne vivis an magistratu fungeris?

5 GL. est mihi munus publicum. poterant contingere maiora; verum hoc mihi delegi, quod tantum habebat dignitatis, ut me vindicaret a contemptu, ceterum minime molestis negotiis obnoxium. ita nec est quod quisquam obiciat me
10 mihi vivere, et est unde nonnunquam et amicis dem operam. hoc contentus nihil unquam magis ambii. verum sic gessi magistratum, ut illi ex me dignitas accreverit. hoc ego pulchrius duco quam ex muneris splendore dignitatem mutuo sumere.

15 EU. nihil verius.

GL. sic inter cives meos consenui carus omnibus.

EU. istud vero difficillimum est, cum non abs re dictum sit, qui neminem habeat inimicum, eum
20 nec amicum habere quemquam, et felicitatis semper invidiam esse comitem.

GL. insignem felicitatem comitari solet invidia; mediocritas tuta est. et hoc mihi perpetuum
studium fuit, ne quid mei commodi ex aliorum
25 incommodis compararem. si quid aegritudinis obortum est animo, ut multa fert huius modi vita mortalium, protinus eicio ex animo.

Po. at sunt quaedam iniuriae quae vel placidissimo moveant stomachum.

30 GL. nihil ego patior residere in animo meo.

certe nullus est tantus animi dolor quem patiar mecum ire cubitum.

Eu. nihil mirum si tu non senescis, qui tali sis animo.

Gl. atque adeo, ne quid taceam apud amicos, 5 in primis cavi ne quid flagitii committerem, quod vel mihi vel liberis meis probro esse posset. nihil enim molestius animo sibi male conscio. quod si quid culpaè admissum est, non eo cubitum prius quam me Deo reconciliaro. verae tranquillitatis 10 fons est bene convenire cum Deo. nam qui sic vivunt, his non homines magnopere nocere possunt.

Eu. num te cruciat metus mortis?

Gl. nihilo magis quam dies nativitatis. scio 15 moriendum; ista sollicitudo fortasse adimat mihi aliquot vitae dies, certe nihil possit adicere. itaque totam hanc curam Deo committo; ipse nihil aliud curo quam ut bene suaviterque vivam. non potest autem suaviter nisi qui bene. 20

Pa. at ego senescerem taedio, si tot annos degerem in eadem urbe, etiam si Romae contingat vivere.

Gl. habet quidem loci mutatio voluptatis non nihil; longinquae vero peregrinationes, ut pru- 25 dentiam addunt fortasse, ita plurimum habent periculorum. mihi videor tutius totum orbem obire in tabula geographica, neque paulo plus videre in historiis quam si viginti totos annos, ad Ulyssis exemplum, per omnes terras ac maria 30

volitarem. habeo praediolum, quod abest ab urbe non plus quam duo milia passuum. ibi nonnunquam ex urbano fio rusticus; atque ibi recreatus redeo novus hospes in urbem. nec aliter
5 saluto ac salutor quam si redissem ex insulis nuper inventis.

EV. non adiuvas valetudinem medicina?

GL. nihil mihi rei cum medicis. nec incidi venam unquam nec hausi potiones. si quid
10 oboritur lassitudinis, moderatione victus aut rusticatione pello malum.

EV. nihilne tibi cum studiis?

GL. est. nam in his est praecipua vitae delectatio. verum his delecto me, non macero;
15 si quidem vel ad voluptatem studeo vel ad utilitatem vitae, non autem ad ostentationem. cibo sumpto, aut pascor fabulis aut lectorem adhibeo. nec unquam incumbo libris ultra horam; tum surgo et, arrepta testudine, paulisper ambulans
20 in cubiculo vel canto vel repeto mecum quod legi. mox ad librum redeo.

EV. dic mihi bona fide; nullane sentis incommoda senectutis, quae feruntur esse plurima?

GL. somnus aliquanto deterior est, nec perinde
25 tenax memoria. liberavi fidem meam. exposui vobis magicas artes meas, quibus alo iuventutem meam. nunc utinam Pampirus narret nobis suae quoque vitae fabulam, qui satis belle portat aetatem. nam, ni fallor, me duobus aut tribus
30 annis est grandior.

Autobiography of Pampirus 41

PA. dicam equidem, si vobis audire vacat tale somnium.

EU. immo gratissimum fuerit audire.

Autobiography of Pampirus.

PA. cum domum redissem, statim pater senex suadere coepit ut aliquod vitae genus amplecterer, 5 unde non nihil quaestus accederet rei familiari; ac post longam consultationem placuit negotiatio.

PO. miror hoc vitae genus arrisisse potissimum.

PA. eram natura sitiens cognoscendi res novas, 10 varias regiones, urbes, linguas, mores hominum. ad id maxime videbatur idonea negotiatio. quibus ex rebus nascitur et prudentia.

PO. sed misera, quippe quae plerumque magnis malis sit emenda.

PA. sic est. itaque pater numeravit sortem 15 satis amplam, ut bene fortunante Mercurio negotiationem auspicarer. simulque ambiebatur uxor cum amplissima dote, sed ea forma quae vel indotatam commendare poterat. 20

EU. successit?

PA. immo, priusquam redirem domum, periit et sors et usura.

EU. naufragio fortasse.

PA. plane naufragio. nam imegimus in 25 scopulum quavis Malea periculosiorem.

Eu. in quo mari occurrit iste scopulus, aut quod habet nomen?

PA. mare non possum dicere, sed scopulus, plurimorum infamis exitio, Latine dicitur alea; 5 quomodo vos Graeci nominetis nescio.

Eu. o te stultum!

PA. immo stultior pater, qui tantam summam crederet adolescenti.

GL. quid deinde factum est?

10 PA. nihil actum: sed coepi cogitare de suspendio.

GL. adeon' erat pater implacabilis? nam res sarciri potest; et venia datur primum experienti.

PA. verum fortasse narras. sed interim miser 15 excidi ab uxore. nam parentes puellae, simul ac cognoverunt haec auspicia, renuntiarunt affinitatem. et amabam perditissime.

GL. miseret me tui. sed quid interim consilii temptatum est?

20 PA. id quod solet in rebus desperatis. pater abdicabat, perierat res, perierat uxor; undique audiebam gurgēs, nepos, helluo. quid plura? serio mecum deliberabam utrum suspenderem me an conicerem memet in monasterium.

25 Eu. crudele consilium. scio utrum elegeris, mitius mortis genus.

PA. immo quod mihi tunc visum est crudelius; adeo mihi displicebam totus.

GL. atqui complures eo se deiciunt, ut suavius 30 vivant.

PA. collecto viatico, furtim me subduxi procul
a patria.

GL. quo tandem?

PA. in Hiberniam; illic factus sum monachus.

GL. apud Hibernos igitur hibernasti? 5

PA. non; sed duos menses apud hos versatus
navigavi in Scotiam.

GL. quid te offendit apud illos?

PA. nihil nisi quod institutum illud mihi
videbatur mitius quam pro meritis eius qui non 10
uno suspensio dignus esset.

EU. quid in Scotia fecisti?

PA. illic factus sum Carthusianus.

GL. quot menses apud illos egisti Scotos?

PA. propemodum sex. 15

GL. o constantiam!

EU. quid illic offendit?

PA. quia mihi visa est vita segnis ac delicata.
deinde multos illic repperi non admodum sani
cerebri, ob solitudinem, ut arbitror. mihi parum 20
erat cerebri; verebar ne totum periret.

PO. quo deinde devolasti?

PA. in Galliam. illic repperi quosdam totos
pullatos, ex instituto divi Benedicti, qui colore
vestis testantur se lugere in hac vita. hic egi 25
menses undecim.

EU. quid obstitit quominus illic maneres per-
petuo?

PA. quia plus illic repperi caerimoniarum
quam verae pietatis. praeterea audieram esse 30

quosdam his multo sanctiores, quos Bernardus ad severiorem disciplinam revocasset. pulla veste mutata in candidam, apud hos vixi menses decem.

5 Ev. hic quid offendebat?

PA. nihil admodum. nam hos repperi sat commodos sodales. sed iam mihi decretum erat aut non esse monachum aut insigniter esse monachum. tandem fessus inquirendo sic mecum
10 cogitabam: 'ut semel omnem sanctimoniam assequar, petam Terram Sanctam ac redibo domum sanctimonia onustus.'

Po. num eo profectus es?

PA. maxime.

15 Po. unde erat viaticum?

PA. miror istud nunc denique tibi venire in mentem.

GL. quam artem faciebas?

PA. chiromanticam.

20 GL. ubi eam didiceras?

PA. quid refert?

GL. quo praeceptore?

PA. eo qui nihil non docet, ventre. praedicebam praeterita, futura, praesentia.

25 GL. et sciebas?

PA. nihil minus; sed divinabam audacter, idque tuto, videlicet prius accepto pretio.

Po. an ars tam ridicula poterat alere te?

PA. poterat, et quidem cum duobus famulis.
30 tantum est ubique fatuorum et fatuarum. at tamen,

cum Hierosolyma adirem, addideram me in comitatum cuiusdam divitis, qui natus annos septuaginta negabat se aequo animo moriturum, nisi prius adisset Hierosolyma.

Eu. ac domi reliquerat uxorem? 5

PA. atque etiam liberos sex.

Eu. o senem impie pium! atque illinc redisti sanctus?

PA. verumne fatear? aliquanto deterior quam iveram. 10

Eu. sic, ut audio, excussus est religionis amor.

PA. immo magis incanduit. itaque reversus in Italiam addixi me militiae.

Eu. itane religionem venabaris in bello? quo 15 quid esse potest sceleratius?

PA. erat sancta militia.

Eu. fortasse in Turcas.

PA. immo sanctius aliquid, ut tum quidem praedicabant. 20

Eu. quidnam?

PA. Iulius Secundus belligerabat adversus Gallos. porro militiam mihi commendabat etiam multarum rerum experientia.

Eu. multarum, sed malarum. 25

PA. ita post comperi. at tamen hic durius vixi quam in monasteriis.

Eu. quid tum postea?

PA. iam mihi vacillare coepit animus utrum ad negotiationem intermissam redirem an religionem 30

fugientem persequerer. interim venit in mentem
utrumque alteri posse coniungi.

Eu. quid? ut simul esses et negotiator et
monachus?

5 PA. quidni? nihil religiosius ordinibus Men-
dicantium; at tamen nihil similis negotiationi.
volitant per omnes terras ac maria, multa vident,
multa audiunt; penetrant omnes domos plebei-
orum, nobilium, regum.

10 Eu. at non negotiantur.

PA. saepe nobis felicius.

Eu. quod genus ex his delegisti?

PA. omnes formas expertus sum.

Eu. nulla placuit?

15 PA. immo placuissent omnes, si licuisset statim
negotiarı. verum perpendebam mihi diu sudandum
in choro, priusquam crederetur mihi negotiatio.
denique, cum esset nuntiata mors patris, domum
reversus ad veterem negotiationem redii.

20 Eu. dic nobis bona fide, qui nullum vitae
genus non expertus es, quid omnium maxime
probas?

PA. non omnibus omnia congruunt; mihi
nullum magis arridet quam hoc quod secutus
25 sum.

Eu. multa tamen incommoda habet negotiatio.

PA. sic est. sed, quando nullum vitae genus
omnibus caret incommodis, 'hanc Spartam quae
contigit orno.'

Autobiography of Eusebius.

PA. verum nunc Eusebius non gravabitur apud amicos vitae suae scaenam aliquam explicare.

Eu. immo totam fabulam, si videtur; nam habet actus non multos.

GL. erit magnopere gratum. 5

Eu. cum redissem in patriam, annum apud me deliberavi quodnam vitae genus amplecti vellem; simulque me ipsum exploravi, ad quod genus essem idoneus. interim oblatum est sacerdotium satis opimum; accepi. mihi, ut sunt res humanae, 10 exoptandum videbatur. an mediocre felicitatem esse putatis subito velut e caelo dari tot commodas, dignitatem, aedes honestas et bene instructas, annuos redditus satis amplos, sodalicium honorificum, deinde templum ubi, si libeat, vaces religioni? 15

Po. in isto genere vixisti perpetuo?

Eu. perpetuo, nisi quod interim quattuor annos primum egi Patavii.

Po. quam ob rem?

Eu. hos annos ita partiti sum, ut sex menses 20 darem studio medicinae, reliquum tempus theologiae.

Po. cur id?

Eu. quo melius et animum et corpus meum moderarer et amicis consulerem. nam et contionor 25 nonnunquam pro mea sapientia. sic hactenus satis tranquille vixi, contentus unico sacerdotio, nec

praeterea quidquam ambiens, recusaturus etiam si offeratur.

PA. utinam liceret discere quid agant ceteri nostri sodales, quibuscum tum familiariter viximus !

EU. de nonnullis possum commemorare quaedam ; sed video nos non procul abesse Antverpia. quare, si videtur, conveniemus in idem deversorium ; ibi per otium de ceteris conferemus.

The two coachmen.

10 AURIGA A. unde tam miseram sarcinam nactus es, lusce ?

AURIGA B. immo quo tu defers istud onus, ganeo ?

A. debueras istos frigidos senes alicubi effundere
15 in urticetum, ut calescerent.

B. immo tu istum gregem cura ut praecipites alicubi in profundam lamam, ut refrigerentur ; nam calent plus satis.

A. non soleo praecipitare sarcinam meam.

20 B. non ? atqui nuper vidi te sex Carthusianos deiecisse in caenum sic ut pro candidis emergerent nigri ; tu interim, quasi re bene gesta, ridebas.

A. nec iniuria ; dormiebant omnes ac multum ponderis addebant currui meo.

25 B. at mei senes egregie sublevarunt currum meum, per totum iter perpetuo garrientes. nunquam vidi meliores.

A. non soles tamen talibus delectari.

B. sed hi seniculi boni sunt.

A. quomodo scis?

B. quia per eos ter bibi cervisiam insigniter bonam.

5

A. hahahae! sic tibi boni sunt.

XIII.

**Erasmus and his godson,
or The art of knowledge.**

DESIDERIUS ERASMUS. ERASMIUS.

DE. quomodo succedunt tua studia, Erasmi?

ER. Musis, ut apparet, parum faventibus; sed felicius succederent, si quid abs te possem impetrare.

10

DE. nihil non impetrabis, modo sit in rem tuam; dic tantum quid rei sit.

ER. non dubito quin nihil sit artium reconditarum quod te fugiat.

DE. utinam vera praedices!

15

ER. audio artem esse quandam cognitionis, quae hoc praestet, ut homo minimo negotio ediscat omnes disciplinas liberales.

DE. quid audio? vidisti codicem?

ER. vidi, sed vidi tantum, quod non erat doctoris auxilium.

20

DE. quid continebat liber?

ER. varias animantium formas, draconum, leonum, pardorum, variosque circulos, et in his descriptas voces, partim Graecas, partim Latinas, partim Hebraicas, aliasque barbaricarum linguarum.

DE. intra quot dies pollicebatur titulus disciplinarum cognitionem?

ER. intra quattuordecim.

DE. magnifica sane pollicitatio; sed nosti 10 quemquam per istam artem evasisse doctum?

ER. nequaquam.

DE. neque quisquam alius vidit unquam aut visurus est, nisi postquam viderimus aliquem per artem alchemisticam evasisse divitem.

15 ER. equidem optarem artem esse veram.

DE. fortasse quod piget litteras tantis sudoribus emere.

ER. scilicet.

DE. atqui sic visum est superis. opes istas 20 vulgares, aurum, gemmas, argentum, palatia, regnum, nonnunquam largiuntur ignavis et immerentibus; sed quae verae sunt opes ac proprie nostrae sunt, eas voluerunt parari laboribus. nec oportet nobis videri molestum laborem, quo res 25 tanta paratur, cum cernamus plurimos homines per horrenda discrimina, per non aestimandos sudores, eluctari ad res plane viles, si cum eruditione conferantur; nec tamen semper assequuntur quod ambiunt. et habent studiorum 30 labores multum admixtum mellis, si paulum in ea

processeris. iam in te bona ex parte situm est, ut magnam taedii partem amputes.

ER. quonam pacto?

DE. primum, ut animum inducas amare studia; deinde, ut ea mireris. 5

ER. quibus rationibus hoc fiet?

DE. contemplare quam multos ditarint, quam multos ad summam dignitatem auctoritatemque provexerint litterae; simulque tecum considera quantum intersit inter hominem et pecudem. 10

ER. probe mones.

DE. deinde mansuefacias ingenium tuum oportet, ut possit secum consistere atque his delectari, quae utilitatem adferunt potius quam voluptatem. nam quae per se sunt honesta, etiam si initio non 15 nihil habent molestiae, tamen consuetudine dulcescunt. ita fiet ut et minus fatiges praeceptorem et ipse facilius percipias, iuxta dictum Isocrateum aureis litteris in fronte codicis tui pingendum, ‘si es *philomathes*, eris *polymathes*.’ 20

ER. satis adest celeritatis in percipiendo; sed mox effluit quod perceptum est.

DE. itaque pertusum mihi narras dolium.

ER. haud multum erras. sed quid remedii?

DE. explenda est rima, ne perfluat. 25

ER. quibus rebus?

DE. non gypso, sed diligentia. qui voces ediscit non intellecta sententia, mox obliviscitur; nam verba, ut inquit Homerus, ‘alata’ sunt et facile avolant, nisi sententiarum pondere librantur. 30

prima igitur cura sit ut rem penitus intellegas, dein tecum verses ac repetas.

ER. istud quam sit difficile satis intellego.

DE. quisquis enim habet animum adeo volubilem, ut nulli cogitationi possit immorari, nec diu potest audire loquentem nec infigere memoriae quod didicit. plumbo potest aliquid imprimi quod maneat in loco; aquae aut argento vivo, quoniam assidue fluitant, nihil potest imprimi.
10 quod si poteris ingenium tuum mansuefacere, dum assidue versaris inter eruditos, quorum sermones cottidie tam multa proferunt digna cognitu, minimo labore disces quam plurima.

ER. profecto sic est.

15 DE. nam praeter sermones conviviorum, praeter cottidiana colloquia, statim a prandio audies octo lepidissima dicta, ex probatissimis auctoribus selecta, totidem a cena. iam mihi considera quantam haec summam conficiant in singulos
20 menses et annos.

ER. magnificam, si possim meminisse.

DE. ad haec, cum nihil audies nisi bene Latine loquentes, quid obstat quominus intra paucos menses ediscas Latine, cum illiterati pueri Gallicam
25 aut Hispanicam linguam discant exiguo temporis spatio?

ER. sequar tuum consilium experiarque num possit hoc ingenium Musarum iugo mansuescere.

DE. ego aliam artem cognitionis non novi
30 quam curam, amorem, assiduitatem.

NOTES.

A, B, C, etc. refer to the General Notes on Syntax.

I.

John and Silvio, who are day-boys, are on their way to school between 5 and 6 in the morning. The boarders would have been roused at 5 by a loud shout of *surgite*, 'get up!' In the time of Erasmus, morning school went on from 6 to 10. Dinner (*prandium*) was at 10 or 11; supper (*cena*) at 5 or 6; bed-time at 8 or thereabouts. Breakfast (at about 8) was introduced in schools and universities in the Fifteenth Century; but it was long regarded as an 'extra,' to be dispensed with by the more hardy and economical students. It was a very informal meal (consisting of a mug of beer and a crust of bread) called *biberia* or 'drink' (the *bever* of the old English schools).

Page 1.

1. *cur adeo curris?* John, who is running, overtakes Silvio, who is walking.

4. *ante recitatum catalogum*, 'before the calling of the roll.' Participial constructions like this are common in Latin; cf. *ante conditam urbem* 'before the foundation of the city,' *ex civibus amissis dolor* 'grief from the loss of fellow-citizens.'

5. *actum est de pelle mea*, 'it is all up with my skin.'

6. *hac quidem—periculi*, 'on this score at least there is not a bit of danger.' For the partitive genitive see B. 6.

7. *quinta*, *hora* understood, 'five o'clock.' Erasmus uses our reckoning of the hours. In classical Latin *quinta hora* means '11 o'clock,' the hours being reckoned from 6 A.M.

8. *manus—dividit*, a roundabout way of saying:—'it is not yet half-past five.' For *aequis spatiis* see D. 2 (c).

10. *vix habeo fidem*, 'I put little trust.'

12. *campanae*, i.e. the church bell rung at 5 o'clock to arouse the town.

15. *sed est—timeam*, 'but there is something else which causes me even greater fear.' For this use of the subjunctive see F. 5.

16. *reddenda est*. See H. 1.

memoriter generally means 'with good memory,' 'accurately,' rather than simply 'from memory.'

lectio, properly 'reading,' our 'lesson,' the English word being derived from the Latin through the French *leçon*. Cf. 'lesson' in the sense of a 'reading from Scripture.'

17. *vereor ut possim*, 'I have fear as to being able,' i.e. 'I fear I cannot.' We may also have *vereor ne non possim* in this sense.

Page 2.

1. *commune*, emphatic:—'we share the danger you speak of.'

3. *illi*. For this use of the dative see C. 3.

9. *vae nostro corio*, 'woe betide our hide!' See C. 1 (b), and cf. the famous words *vae victis*. The word *corium* strictly denotes the 'hide' of animals. Sometimes it is used comically of the human skin, as tanned by the rod.

vel Orbilio plagosior. Orbilius was the very severe schoolmaster of Horace, who calls him *plagosus Orbilius* (II *Epistles*, i. 70). A minor poet speaks of his cane and more formidable leather scourge. He was an ex-soldier, and did not take up the profession of schoolmaster till he was 50. He was nearly 100 when he died.

13. *nobis—cavendum*. See H. 1.

16. *reddamus—inspiciente*, 'let us repeat the lesson to

one another, while one says it aloud and the other looks at the book.' For the ablative absolute see D. 2 (*h*).

19. *fac praesenti sis animo*, 'take care to show presence of mind.' For this construction cf. *visne illis imponamus?* (35, 10); and contrast *fac ut niteat tota domus* (12, 10). For the ablative of description see D. 2 (*g*).

21. *deponerem—adesset—possit*. See F. 2.

23. *securus animo*. See D. 3 (*d*).

II.

This is a delightful little lecture, well illustrated by the sombre but beautiful picture of the Dutch boy and his master in the National Gallery.—'The Lesson' (ascribed to Jan Vermeer). Erasmus has an equal horror of two extremes of behaviour in the young,—glumness on the one hand and forwardness on the other.

Page 3.

4. *sit*, jussive subjunctive; see F. 1.

7. *cave—alternis tibiis*, 'beware of shifting from one leg to another.'

8. *nec mordebis*. The future indicative with negative is a frequent way of conveying a prohibition in Latin. So we say, 'you will kindly not do this.'

9. *prae se ferat*, lit. 'bear before itself,' i.e. 'display.'

11. *quid si mediter?* 'what if I were to practise?' This is the ordinary meaning of the verb.

20. *attentus—dicat*, 'be on the alert for what he (your superior) says.'

21. *paucis, verbis* understood.

24. *quantum temporis*. See A. 5 and B. 6.

Page 4.

4. *matris*, objective genitive; see B. 4.

7. *si id pace licet tua*. See D. 2 (*f*). Translate:—'if you kindly allow me.'

8. *bene habet*, an impersonal phrase,—‘good!’
11. *sic—ut*, ‘with this qualification that...’ For the consecutive subjunctive see F. 5.
12. *lautius*, ‘a greater dainty (than usual)’; cf. *longius* (19) ‘longer than usual’ or ‘rather long.’
13. *instabatur*, impersonal use of the passive, frequent in Latin. Translate:—‘if you are pressed.’
14. *parce loqui*. See G. 5.
16. *tenuis fortunae sodales*. See B. 5.
17. *neminem deferto*, ‘tell no tales of any one.’
18. *videris*, future perfect, idiomatic here; cf. *nisi adfuero* (1, 4). Translate:—‘if you see.’

III.

A contrast to the last dialogue. Here we have the boys’ point of view, and also a more humorous pedagogue.

Page 5.

1. *iamdudum—invitat*, idiomatic. Translate:—‘has long been inviting.’
- animus*, ‘inclination.’
5. *qui—extorqueat*, denoting purpose; see F. 4.
7. *apte—extorqueat*, ‘yes, *wrench* is a well chosen word.’
8. *clavam*. Hercules was ordinarily represented with a club in ancient art.
13. *hic*, ‘in this respect,’ i.e. in giving holidays.
- idemque*, ‘and also.’
15. *non admodum*, ‘not altogether,’ ‘not quite,’ ironical.
- verecundae frontis*. See B. 5.
- quem—repellat*, consecutive; see F. 5. Translate:—‘not to be repulsed at once by his cruel repartees.’
22. *hominis*, contemptuous,—‘of the fellow.’

Page 6.

1. *magnam initurus gratiam*, ‘confident that you will win great gratitude.’

4. *successerit*, impersonal. Translate:—‘if I do not succeed.’

8. *bene fortunet*—*Mercurius*. Cocles asks for the blessing of Mercury, messenger of the gods and therefore patron of messengers.

9. *salve, praeceptor*. Cocles has now reached the lion’s den.

10. *quid sibi vult nugator?* ‘what does the trifler mean?’ For *sibi vult* see C. 1 (a).

12. *satis iam salveo*, ‘I am well enough already,’ i.e. without your *salve*.

14. *orat te—veniam*. See A. 7.

15. *ludendi*. See H. 2.

16. *nihil aliud quam*, idiomatic,—‘(you do) nothing else than....’

20. *sane—facit*, ‘yes, you grasp a point that tells in your favour.’

lusu opus est. See D. 2 (d).

24. *si quid—cessatum est*, ‘if there has been any slackness hitherto.’ For the impersonal passive cf. *si instabitur* (4, 13).

26. *o sartores!* The master is amused with the boy’s term, ‘it shall be repaired’ or ‘made good,’ and answers:—‘fine cobblers you!’

istud futurum, supply *esse*,—accusative and infinitive after *erit sponsor*—‘will promise.’

28. *capitis mei periculo*, ‘at (lit. *with*) the peril of my head,’ ablative of attendant circumstances; see D. 2 (h). Here *caput* means strictly ‘civil rights,’ ‘position’; cf. our phrase ‘it is as much as my place is worth.’ The pedagogue interprets it literally and answers:—‘nay rather, at the peril of your hide.’

non dubitem, ‘I should not hesitate’; see F. 2.

Page 7.

1. *hic periculum—fidei*, ‘in this matter I will make trial of the quality of your good faith.’

2. *si dederis verba—egeris*, ‘if you cheat me (lit. give me

mere words), in vain will you plead with me hereafter.' Ovid has *curis dare verba*, 'to beguile cares.'

6. *exoravi*. Cocles has now returned to his friends.

7. *lepidum caput*, 'charming fellow.'
amamus te plurimum. See A. 7.

10. *de meo tergo pendendum est*, 'the score must be paid off my back.'

vestro omnium nomine. See B. 1.

13. *cavebitur*. Cf. *instabitur* (4, 13), *cessatum est* (6, 25).

IV.

The boys have been reading in school the Fifth Book of the *Aeneid*; and their conversation is coloured by reminiscences of it.

15. *pransis*. See Introduction to Dialogue I.

18. *utraque—pedibus*. See D. 2 (*h*).

19. *aliud atque aliud*, 'one after another.'

22. *cum periculo*. The *cum* is not necessary in such phrases; cf. 6, 28.

nolim—medicis, 'I should not like to open an account with the doctors.'

Page 8.

1. *hastae innixum salire*, 'pole-jumping'; see G. 1.

3. *si quidem*, 'since'; cf. 40, 15.

6. *caestuum*. Vincent recoils in horror from the recollection of what he has read in Virgil about the ancient boxing-gloves. They were leather thongs tied round the hands of the boxers, sometimes as high as the elbow; and they were often covered with metal studs or loaded with lead, and were hence called 'limb-breakers.'

Cf. *Aeneid*, v. 400 ff.:—'He flung down a pair of gloves of giant weight, with whose hard hide, bound about his wrists, valiant Eryx was wont to come to battle. They stood amazed; so stiff and grim lay the vast seven-fold ox-hide sewed in with lead and iron.'

8. *carcer*. At the starting-place in the Roman Circus Maximus there was a row of vaulted chambers called *carceres* or 'prisons,' each to contain one chariot and horses. At one time there were as many as twelve of these. Their front doors opened on to the Arena. At a given signal they were thrown open simultaneously. Compare the 'starting-gate' of the modern race-course.

10. *qui proponeret*, final, 'to offer'; see F. 4.

20. *cum sit*, causal; see F. 6.

Page 9.

6. *artifex*, 'artist,' 'professional.'

11. *vobis cordi est*. See E. 1 (b).

V.

Paul is a fine sportsman, with a magnificent contempt for the childish suggestions of his companions, which reaches its climax in the taunt that they might just as well ride on a walking-stick.

13. *trahit sua quemque voluptas*, a quotation from Virgil, *Eclogues*, ii. 65.

17. *valeant apri*, 'good-bye to wild boars!'

Page 10.

1. *difficile, sed pulchrum*. He is thinking of a Greek proverb which means:—'Fine things are difficult.'

8. *delicatiore palati*. See B. 5.

13. *facessam negotium*, 'I will cause trouble.'

18. *quid si—micemus digitis*, 'what if we two were to play *morra*?' The phrase *micare digitis* means literally 'to move quickly with the fingers'; cf. *promicabat et currebat* (33, 8) and Ovid's *cor timore micat*.

The game now called *morra* in Italy is here referred to. It is played by two persons. They simultaneously hold up their right hands with some fingers, all, or none extended.

At the same moment each calls out a number which he guesses to be the total of the fingers held up by himself and his opponent. Sometimes in modern Italy the game is used to settle which of two persons is to pay a wine bill. Cicero quotes, as a proverbial expression for extreme honesty, the phrase,—‘one with whom you could play *morra* in the dark.’ In the light, of course, it could be seen at once whether a guess was successful.

22. *quid si certemus nucibus?* Five different games of ‘nuts’ (cf. our ‘marbles’) are described in the *Nux*, a poem formerly attributed to Ovid. In the simplest form of the game the players pitch nuts into a hole in the ground or a narrow-necked jar. In another game four nuts are placed on the ground to form a pyramid. The first player aims with his nut, so as to scatter the pyramid. If he does this, he may win all four nuts by making two cannons, flipping his nut at them on the ground.

23. *nuces—pueris relinquamus.* *nuces relinquere* is a proverb for ‘to put away childish things.’

28. *equitare in harundine longa*, a quotation from Horace, II *Satires*, iii. 248. The passage is thus rendered by Conington:—

To ride a stick, to build a paper house,
Play odd and even, harness mouse and mouse,—
If a grown man professed to find delight
In things like these, you’d call him mad outright.

VI.

The extreme rudeness of the master to the servant strikes us as remarkable, especially when we compare the *Lecture on Manners* delivered to the boy in Dialogue II. Elsewhere Erasmus mentions *famuli* ‘men-servants’ as a chief item in the heavy expenditure necessary for a wandering scholar like himself. Other items are the aid of amanuenses, the cost of *keeping horses*, frequent journeys, social and charitable obligations.

Page 11.

1. *iamdudum clamo*. Note the idiom,—‘I have been shouting a long time.’

3. *tibi—excitiam*. See C. 1 (b).

4. *in multam lucem*, ‘right into broad day-light.’
qui frugi sunt, ‘who are any good,’ lit. ‘who are for fruit’; see C. 6.

10. *tibi—tuis oculis*. Both these datives fall under C. 3.

14. *calceos—caligas*. The *calceus* was a closed leather shoe; the *caliga* a strong heavy sole studded with nails, the upper part consisting of a series of thongs, originally the Roman military boot.

15. *foris*. See E. 1.

Page 12.

2. *expediti*, ‘unencumbered,’ i.e. free from other occupations.

11. *vapulabis*. For the active form with passive meaning cf. *fio*, *exulo*, *veneo*.

12. *hic—novi*, ‘in this I recognise.’

15. *ut hic—furcifer*, ‘how the rascal keeps his mind dwelling on this!’

non prandeo domi. Mark the present. We have the same idiom, —‘I do not dine at home.’ For the locative *domi* see E. 1.

16. *sub horam decimam*, ‘just about ten o’clock.’ *sub* with the accusative, used of time, may mean (1) ‘just before,’ (2) ‘just about,’ (3) ‘just after.’ This passage gives us the approximate time of the early dinner, i.e. 10 or 11 A.M.—the same for adults as for the young. See Introduction to Dialogue I.

18. *tibi quidem prospectum*, ‘yes, you have provided for yourself’; see C. 1 (a).

19. *nihil est quod edam*. See F. 5.

20. *est quod esurias*, ‘there is something to be hungry on.’

21. *esuriendo*. See H. 3.

25. *te asinum tantum*, ‘a great big donkey like you.’

Page 13.

1. *est tibi abeundum*. See H. 1.
3. *sex—passus*. See A. 4. The word *passus* means a Roman 'pace' (or double step) of five feet. Our military 'pace' (= Roman *gradus*) is $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet. *mille passuum* is the Roman mile.
4. *cousulam—pigritia*. See C. 1 (a).
5. *conficies—ibis*, a frequent way of giving an order in Latin; cf. *nec mordebis labrum* (3, 8).
8. *Cervo*. So we have the Stag and the White Hart as the names of inns.
10. *convenies mercatorem*. See A. 1.
14. *ad Kalendas Graecas*, i.e. 'never,'—Kalends, Nones, and Ides being a specially Roman notation.
16. *si quid—librorum*. See B. 6.
18. *quanti*, 'at how much'; see E. 2.
21. *unde—pascas*, 'on which to feed'; see F. 5.
23. *curabis—coquendum*. See H. 1.
24. *audin'*, for *audisne*; so *vin'* for *visne*.

Page 14.

8. *hoc anno*. See D. 3 (e).
10. *donec mollescant*. See F. 4.
19. *lorum cura sarcindum*. Cf. *eum curabis coquendum* (13, 23).
25. *totum triduum*. See A. 5.

Page 15.

6. *restat*, 'remains to be done.'

VII.

EPIMENIDES.

He went into the woods a laughing boy;
 Each flower was in his heart; the happy bird
 Flitting across the morning sun, or heard
 From wayside thicket, was to him a joy....

Then wondrous sleep fell on him; many a year
 His lids were closed. Youth left him and he woke
 A careful noter of men's ways; of clear
 And lofty spirit. Sages, when he spoke,
 Forgot their systems; and the wordly-wise
 Shrunk from the gaze of truth with baffled eyes.

12. *qui ista cogites*, 'in that you entertain these thoughts'; see F. 6.

15. *nescio qua*—*dulcedine*, 'with some strange charm.' This couplet is from Ovid's *Epistles from Pontus*, i. 4. The poet had been banished by Augustus to Tomi on the western shore of the Black Sea.

21. *Epimenides*, a prophet and physician of Crete, whose story is to a great extent legendary. He was said to be the son of the nymph *Balté*, and to have been supplied by the nymphs with constant food, since he was never seen to eat. Some denied the story of his long sleep mentioned below, asserting that he remained all the time a wanderer in the mountains, studying medicinal botany.

In Solon's time he was invited to visit Athens, in order to cure an epidemic; in this he was completely successful. Some think that the name *Epimenides* is a mythical one like *Orpheus*; for another story represents him as coming to Athens again a century or more later. Accordingly it is thought that his miraculous sleep was an invention in order to reconcile the two accounts.

Page 16.

5. *mentieris*. The occurrence of this word in connexion with the story of *Epimenides* is curious. For the quotation of St Paul (*Titus* i. 12) from 'a prophet of their own' to the effect that 'the Cretans are always liars' is usually ascribed to *Epimenides*. Cf. *perge mentiri* (line 19).

7. *ambulandi gratia*. According to one version of the story, he had been sent by his father in search of a sheep.

urbem egressus. See A. 1.

9. *quadraginta septem*. Ancient writers gave 57 years, not 47, as the duration of his slumber.

10. *somnum continuaret*. The story of the Sleeping Beauty will occur to every one as a parallel. Then there is Washington Irving's *Rip Van Winkle*, a Dutch colonist of the state of New York, who meets a strange man in a ravine. Rip helps him to carry a keg, and on the first opportunity takes a drink from it; whereupon he falls into a stupor and sleeps for twenty years. On waking he finds that his wife is dead, his daughter married, his village all changed, and America independent.

11. *incredible dictu*. See D. 3 (d).

monstri simile. See B. 4 and cf. *verisimile* (24, 10).

16. *bene—redierit*, 'Epimenides fared well in that at last he did come to himself.' For *redierit* see F. 6.

21. *somno solutus*. See D. 1 (b).

Page 17.

3. *bellorum calamitate*. See Introduction to Dialogue X.

4. *humanae vitae comoedia*, i.e. human beings are mere helpless puppets on the world's stage.

VIII.

The Wanderer's Return contains several allusions to the return of the great wanderer Ulysses after twenty years of travel, as described in the *Odyssey*. The recognition of Ulysses by a corn on his toe is Erasmus's little joke. In Homer's story he is identified by a scar on his thigh due to a wound received from a wild-boar while hunting, as doubtless Erasmus knew quite well.

5. *aut parum—video*, 'if I am not too short-sighted, I see....'

7. *immo*, corrective, 'no!' So also in line 13.

8. *ex animo tuum*, 'yours from the heart,' 'sincerely yours.'

13. *insulis fortunatis*, 'the islands of the blest,' spoken of by the Greek poets, and placed by them in the ocean in the far west.

16. *redit*, to his island home of Ithaca, off the coast of Epirus.

18. *uxore*, i.e. Penelope.

canis, i.e. Argus. Erasmus omits to notice the pathetic incident of the dog's death immediately after the recognition of his master. This is Homer's description:—'When he saw Odysseus standing by, Argus wagged his tail and dropped both his ears; but nearer to his master he had not strength to draw. But Odysseus looked aside and wiped away a tear that he easily hid from the swineherd Eumaeus... Upon Argus came the fate of black death even in the hour that he beheld Odysseus again, in the twentieth year' (*Odyssey* xvii. 300 ff.).

19. *vetulus*. Mark the fondling force of the diminutive, —'dear old dog' or 'poor old dog.'

Page 18.

5. *nihil illa fidelius*, in spite of the solicitations of many suitors.

Pallas addiderat—*sentum*, to give him the appearance of a beggar. 'Athena touched him with her wand. His fair flesh she withered on his supple limbs, and made waste his yellow hair from off his head, and over all his limbs she cast the skin of a very old man, and dimmed his two eyes, erewhile so fair' (*Odyssey* xiii. 429 ff.).

9. *nutrix*, i.e. Eurycleia.

10. *illi pedes lavat*. See C. 4.

17. *excitando foculo*. Cf. *findendis lignis* (22), and see C. 6 and H. 4.

24. *si praeconem*—*cornu*, 'if you were acting the part of a crier, it would serve as a trumpet; if you were sounding a war-note, it would be a bugle.' The accusatives *praeconem* and *bellicum* are both 'cognate,' representing *praeconis actum* and *bellicum cantum*. See A. 6.

27. *o me felicem!* See A. 1.

29. *terrarum angulus*, a reminiscence of Horace, *Odes*, ii. 6, *ille terrarum mihi praeter omnes angulus ridet*.

Page 19.

2. *in tanta luce*. *lux* not unfrequently denotes 'the public view.' Thus Cicero says:—*in luce atque in oculis civium*. Translate *clarissima luce* below:—'in the broadest daylight.'

6. *foro*. The Forum or Market-place was the central square of ancient Rome.

7. *redis*—*nobis*, 'we see you returning.' *nobis* is 'ethic dative'; see C. 1 (c).

8. *venatus*—*sum sedulo*, i.e. for some snug appointment.

11. *Pamphagus*, a Greek name meaning 'all-devouring'; hence *lupus hians* 'hungry wolf' (line 14).

IX.

This is a thoroughly characteristic piece of Erasmus, with (1) its jokes about food and national peculiarities, (2) its quotations from his favourite Latin poets, Terence, Horace and Virgil, and (3) its allusion to Roman history. The complaint about the necessity of 'tips' to the rich man's servants and the tyranny of custom will strike the reader as very modern.

Page 20.

1. *mirum in modum*. Mark the force of *in* with the accusative,—'to a wonderful extent.'

3. *parvo constant*. See D. 3 (c) and cf. the phrase, *multo sanguine Romanis victoria stetit*, lit. 'the victory stood to the Romans at much blood.'

10. *suillas*—*non attingo*, 'pork I like too much to touch it.' So Cicero has *non loqui prae maerore potuit*, 'he was too sad to speak.'

ne quid offendam, 'for fear of coming to grief at all,' i.e. 'for fear of its disagreeing with me.' For *quid* see A. 6.

14. *ut*—*utar*, 'to quote from a poem of Horace.'

16. *tres mihi convivae*—*palato*, from II *Epistles*, ii. 61, 'I can almost see three guests of mine disagreeing, while they call for quite different fare as their tastes vary.'

18. *quot homines—mos*, quoted from Terence's play, *Phormio*, 454.

19. *suus cuique mos*, 'every man follows his own bent.' See C. 4.

21. *reperias*. See F. 2.

23. *venatio*, primarily 'the chase,' then 'game' generally, then especially 'the flesh of deer,' 'venison,' which word comes from *venatio* through the French *venaison*.

24. *Midas*, a mythical king of Phrygia, proverbial for his great wealth, represented in Greek drama with the ears of a satyr, which were afterwards lengthened into those of an ass,—a nick-name for a millionaire.

25. *nostri amantissimus*. See B. 4.

mihi misit dono. See C. 6.

26. *minoris emam*. See E. 2.

Page 21.

11. *soleas*, generic subjunctive; see F. 5.

16. *duobus—canibus assequimur*. See D. 2 (c).

17. *improbitate*, generally used not simply of 'badness,' but 'want of moderation,' 'relentlessness,' 'untiringness,' sometimes of troublesome animals and insects, e.g. monkeys and flies. See more on *improbis* below.

18. *admirari*, infinitive as subject of sentence; see G. 1.
discendi ardorem. See B. 4.

19. *Vergilius scripsit*, in *Georgic* i. 146.

20. *improbis*, a favourite word of Virgil in the senses of 'excessive,' 'relentless,' 'persistent,' 'enormous.'

Page 22.

7. *Romanum Capitolium*. The Capitoline Hill had two summits, the northern one called the *Arx* or Citadel, and the southern, which was the site of the *Capitolium*, i.e. the temple of Jupiter Optimus Maximus. So Livy, describing the event referred to, says:—*Arx Capitoliumque in ingenti periculo fuit* (v. 47). According to the story, at the time of the Gallia

invasion under Brennus in 387 B.C., Manlius 'the Saviour of the Capitol' was aroused by the cackling of the sacred geese and repulsed a night attack of the enemy.

X.

In Italia frigent studia, fervent bella, 'In Italy wars are rife, learning is in a cold shadow.' This thought saddened a large part of the life of Erasmus. And he also appreciated the disastrous influence of a long period of war on human character, as is shown in this dialogue. Vagabond soldiers were his special horror and the curse of the time. 'The fact which chiefly arrested the attention of Erasmus (during three years in Italy, 1506—9) was that Italian soil was the common ground on which the princes of Europe were prosecuting their ambitions, and that the Pope had unsheathed the sword in pursuit of temporal advantage. Julius II was already an elderly man, but full of martial ardour. Venice seemed to be his ulterior object. Meanwhile, in the autumn of 1506, he had reduced Perugia and Bologna. Erasmus was in Bologna when the Pope entered in November, and the late roses of that strangely mild autumn were strewn in his path by the shouting multitudes, who hailed him as a warrior equal to his Roman namesake of old, the conqueror of Gaul' (Jebb, *Erasmus*, p. 17).

11. unde redis nobis? Cf. 19, 7.

Vulcanus, 'in the guise of Vulcan,' the god of fire, lamed by his fall from heaven; cf. *Paradise Lost*, i. 738 ff.:—

Nor was his name unheard or unadored
In ancient Greece; and in Ausonian land
Men called him Mulciber. And how he fell
From heaven they fabled, thrown by angry Jove
Sheer o'er the crystal battlements: from morn
To noon he fell, from noon to dewy eve,
A summer's day; and with the setting sun
Dropt from the zenith, like a falling star,
On Lemnos, the Aegean isle.

Mercurius, i.e. 'you started active and vigorous like the Messenger of the Gods.'

15. *alatus*. Mercury was represented with wings on his feet in ancient sculpture and painting.

17. *rediri solet*. For the impersonal passive construction cf. *instabitur* (4, 13), *cavebitur* (7, 13).

Page 23.

6. *ecquid—arridet*. For the accusative see A. 6.

9. *nummo conducti*, 'hired at a price'; cf. *pretio conduci* (15), and see D. 3 (c).

The *Condottieri*, or leaders of hired troops (*conducti*), played a very important part in the history of the Italian states of the Middle Ages. Their soldiers, unconnected with the people, among whom they fought, by the ordinary ties of humanity, were a terrible scourge wherever they went; and they were always ready to change sides for higher pay.

gratis, for *gratiis*, ablative plural of *gratia*, 'by favours,' i.e. 'for nothing.'

23. *singula, quid—gesserit*, 'particular things, namely what each individual has said or done.'

24. *quasi nusquam non adfuissent*, 'as if they had been present at every point.'

26. *mentiri splendide*. He is thinking of Horace's striking phrase, *splendide mendax*. Cf. note on 45, 7.

Page 24.

7. *humi*, locative; see E. 1 (a).

9. *peream*, 'may I be hanged'; see F. 1 (b). So Horace says *peream male si non optimum erat* (II *Satires*, i. 6).

nisi rem acu tetigisti. We should say:—'if you haven't hit the right nail on the head.'

12. *qui nudus redeam*, 'seeing that I am returning penniless,'—causal subjunctive; see F. 6.

17. *alea*, instrumental; see D. 2 (a).

27. *tenes*, 'you comprehend (the situation).'

28. *summa est iniuria*. He is adapting the well-known proverb, *summum ius summa iniuria*, i.e. too strict adherence to the letter of the law is the greatest injustice.

29. *patriae pietas*, 'devotion to fatherland'; see B. 4.

Page 25.

4. *bellum esse iustum*. There is a well-known saying of Erasmus:—'When princes purpose to exhaust a common-wealth, they speak of a just war.'

6. *si iustum est principi*. 'It is the people,' says Erasmus elsewhere, 'who build cities, while the madness of princes destroys them.' And again:—'Of all birds the Eagle alone has seemed to wise men the type of royalty, a bird neither beautiful nor musical nor good for food, but murderous, greedy, the curse of all.'

9. *incendere domos—occidere innoxios*. The best commentary on these words is the account given of the sack of Rome in 1527:—'It is impossible to describe, or even to imagine, the misery and horror of the scene which followed. Whatever a city taken by storm can dread from military rage, unrestrained by discipline; whatever excesses the ferocity of the Germans, the avarice of the Spaniards, or the licentiousness of the Italians could commit, these the wretched inhabitants were obliged to suffer. Churches, palaces, and the houses of private persons were plundered without distinction. No age or character or sex was exempt from injury. Nor did these outrages cease, when the first fury of the storm was over. The Imperialists kept possession of Rome several months; and during all that time the insolence and brutality of the soldiers hardly abated' (Robertson, *Charles V.*, Bk iv.).

11. *ad mactandum bovem*, a frequent method of denoting purpose; see H. 5.

16. *non admodum*. Cf. 5, 15.

17. *divo Christophoro*. St Christopher was a Christian martyr of the third century, who is said to have perished in Lycia under the Decian persecution. He was of gigantic stature; and, on becoming a Christian, engaged in the charitable work of carrying pilgrims over a river. One day

a little child requested his aid. It was the Infant Christ. This is explained the name *Christophorus*, 'the Christ-bearer.'

culus imaginem cottidie contemplabar. There was a special reason why a soldier in the field should look at St Christopher's picture every day. There was an old saying:—'*Whenever you gaze on the face of Christopher, on that day you will not die a bad death.*' Representations of St Christopher are very common in Christian art. In many English churches there were colossal figures, wall-paintings, and windows, showing him carrying the Holy Child. The cult of the saint was most popular.

21. *qui—redderes*, 'so as to render,'—consecutive subjunctive; see F. 5.

animum e sereno nubilum, i.e. by showing me the seamy side of a soldier's life, and by hinting that my devotion to St Christopher was not sufficient in the way of religious observance.

23. *avis*, 'omen,' since omens were usually taken from the flight or sounds of birds. So *auspicium* is contracted from *avispicium*.

24. *amicus qui bene moneat*, generic,—'a kind of friend who gives good advice'; see F. 5.

25. *nescio an bona*, 'perhaps good.'

XI.

The Shipwreck furnished Charles Reade with the groundwork of one of the best chapters in *The Cloister and the Hearth* (ch. 57). At the conclusion of that book the novelist tells us how 'some of its best scenes are from Erasmus's medieval pen and illumine the pages where they come.' In this dialogue Erasmus depicts some of the extraordinary superstitions of the age in which he lived; and he gives us two fine characters,—the resolute and businesslike giant, Father Adam, and the calm and fearless lady with her baby boy. These two are admirable contrasts to the weeping skipper and the panic-stricken passengers.

Page 26.

1. *est istud navigare?* 'does a sea voyage answer to your description?' See G. 1.

6. *plus satis malorum*, 'more than enough of troubles.' In colloquial Latin *quam* is sometimes omitted; cf. *calent plus satis* (48, 18).

horresco—intersim, 'I shudder at your narrative just as if I were taking part in the danger myself.' For the dative *periculo* see C. 1 (d).

9. *spem ademit nauclero*. See C. 1 (b).

14. *sphaera quaedam ignea*, called by Italian seamen the *Fire of St Elmo*. In thunderous weather a blue flame may sometimes be seen playing on the masts of ships,—high and isolated points tending to produce a discharge of electricity in a disturbed state of the atmosphere. So here the phenomenon is first seen close to the sailor at the top of the mast.

16. *si quando solitarius ignis est*, as in the present case.

felix cum gemini, 'it is a lucky omen when there are twin lights,'—because this betokened the presence of the 'Great Twin Brethren,' the gods Castor and Pollux, who were the special protectors of sailors. So in ancient art they are sometimes represented with a star on their foreheads. This has nothing to do with the constellation *Gemini*. Cf. Macaulay, *Lays of Ancient Rome* :—

Safe comes the ship to harbour
Through billows and through gales,
If once the Great Twin Brethren
Sit shining on her sails.

Horace too alludes to *St Elmo's Fire* in a beautiful passage:—'Victors renowned, the one as horseman, the other as boxer; whose bright gleam, soon as it shines o'er sailors, makes the stormy surge to flow back from the rocks. Winds fall and clouds fly; and threatening waves at their will sink on the bosom of the deep' (*Odes* i. 12).

19. *quid illis cum nautis*, 'what have Castor and Pollux to do with seamen?' Antony's question is well answered in a recently published book, *The Cult of the Heavenly Twins*, by

Mr Rendel Harris. Castor and Pollux divide between them the work of life, which in primitive times is to a large extent covered by horsemanship and hard-hitting; as we are told here, *alter fuit eques, alter pugil*. Later on, as civilization advances, they become 'the benevolent friends of men, to whom appeal is made in all troubles at home or abroad, in peace or war, on the land or sea.'

Page 27.

9. *inde—evanuit*, 'then it dispersed over the middle of the deck and vanished.' The plural *fori* (lit. 'gangways') is used for 'deck'; cf. Virgil, *Aeneid* vi. 412 (*Charon*) *laxat foros* 'clears the deck.'

sub meridiem. Cf. *sub horam decimam* (12, 16).

10. *crescere tempestas*, historic infinitive; see G. 2.

17. *Tartarum*. Tartarus is the abode of lost souls in Classical mythology.

20. *totus pallens*, 'pale all over.' This captain is as unlike a British skipper as could be. Below he is described as *nauta lacrimabundus* (30, 2). Erasmus probably meant him to be an Italian.

30. *hoc erat vere iacturam facere*, 'this was throwing overboard in real earnest,'—the phrase *iacturam facere* being generally used in a metaphorical sense, 'to make a sacrifice.'

Page 28.

1. *legatum egerat—Scotiae*, 'had played the part of envoy at the Scotch Court.' Cf. *praeconem agas* (18, 24).

9. *per nos*, 'as far as we are concerned.'

13. *o orationem vere nauticam!* 'what truly sailor-like language!' See A. 1.

14. *paulo post—nihilo mitiores*. See D. 2 (c).

16. *rumpere funes, discere vela*, historic infinitive again.

23. *tueri navem*, 'to keep his ship above water.'

Page 29.

1. *malus erat oneri, non usui.* See C. 6.

4. *vidisses miseram rerum faciem*, 'you would have seen a grovelling exhibition (lit. *complexion of things*). For this use of the subjunctive see F. 2.

6. *quidquid erat olei effundentes*, 'pouring out all the oil at their disposal.' Hence our metaphorical phrase, 'to pour oil on troubled waters.' There seems to be no doubt as to the utility of oil in calming a rough sea round about a ship. The difficulty is the large amount of oil necessary. Oil bags may be used with profit on a small scale, e.g. when a boat is lowered in a storm. A story is told of the wonderful effect produced by oil leaking from a whale-boat caught in a violent storm off the Cape of Good Hope. The idea is an old one. The Venerable Bede tells how St Aidan gave a cruse of oil to a young priest starting on a journey, that he might pour it on the waves if caught in a storm.

7. *illi blandientes.* See C. 2 (b).

14. *nuncupabant*, lit. 'were taking by name' (derived from *nomen* and *capio*), i.e. 'were taking on their lips.'

15. *Virgini Valsinghamicae*, 'to Our Lady of Walsingham,' elsewhere called by Erasmus 'Our Lady by the sea.' The shrine of St Mary of Walsingham (a small town in the north of Norfolk) was very rich in gold and precious stones, and contained a very famous image of her. Some beautiful ruins of the old church still remain.

Erasmus made two pilgrimages to Walsingham. On the first occasion he made an offering, not of gold or precious stones, but of a copy of Greek verses, explaining how he asks only for a pure heart, while others bring costly gifts and desire worldly blessings. He hung his manuscript on the wall; and on his second visit, in company with a young Cambridge friend, Robert Aldrich, of King's, afterwards Headmaster of Eton, he was told 'how hard monks and visitors had worked to read his verses and how many eye-glasses had been wiped in vain; some thought the characters were Arabic and some *thought them purely fictitious.*' It was to Our Lady of

Walsingham that Queen Catherine gave thanks after the battle of Flodden.

17. *se promitterent fore Carthusianos*. They promise to become Carthusian monks because of the extremely austere discipline of that order.

The Carthusian order was founded in 1084 by St Bruno, who, disgusted with the world, went, with six companions, to consult Hugh, Bishop of Grenoble, as to the best method of retiring from it. The Bishop led them to a wild spot among the mountains, called Chartreuse, where afterwards rose the famous monastery, *la Grande Chartreuse*; hence the name *Carthusian*. The order at one time possessed more than 170 monasteries, of which 75 were in France. It had also many establishments in England, of which the *Charterhouse* in London was the chief.

18. *agebat*, in neuter sense, 'was behaving.'

21. *nec vociferabatur—tantum complexa puerum*. These words recall two lines from a well-known poem of Tennyson:—

'She nor swooned nor uttered cry.'
'Sweet my child, I live for thee.'

24. *rudentibus—a puppi*, 'braced her with cables both fore and aft.' The English technical term for this operation is 'frapping.' To 'frap' a ship is to pass four or five turns of a large rope round the hull, to support her in a storm (Falconer, *Marine Dictionary*). Cf. the account of St Paul's shipwreck, when 'they used helps, under-girding the ship' (*Acts* xxvi. 17).

It is interesting to note that the Athenians used two kinds of 'girdles' for ships,—(1) 'under-girdles' for ships of all kinds, to be employed under exceptional circumstances, passing under the hull as described above; (2) for men-of-war only, cables attached before they went to sea and running horizontally round the hull from stem to stern, which, shrinking when wetted, helped to tighten the vessel and to relieve the strain from the motion of rowing.

28. *cui nomen Adamo*. See C. 4.

30. *stans in medio navis contionatus est*, a fine picture, well developed in *The Cloister and the Hearth*:—

'A gigantic friar stood on the poop with feet apart, like the Colossus of Rhodes, not so much defying, as ignoring, the peril that surrounded him. He recited verses from the Canticles with loud unwavering voice.... Thus even here two were found who maintained the dignity of our race,—a woman tender yet heroic, and a monk steeled by religion against mortal fears.'

Page 30.

5. *locis aliquot*. See D. 3 (a).

18. *exspecto quid evenerit*, 'I am waiting to hear what happened.'

24. *proinde—nataret*, 'accordingly every one must snatch up for himself what he could and swim.' For the oblique jussive subjunctive see F. 7 (i).

Page 31.

11. *unde erat periculum*, explained by ll. 18, 19.

20. *o factum male*, 'what cruel work!'

21. *dum aliis consulo, paene perieram*, 'while I was taking thought for others, I was nearly a dead man.' For *dum consulo*, the ordinary Latin idiom, cf. *dum sic iactamur, medium iniecit se* (32, 1). The perfect *perii* is frequent in Latin for 'I am a dead man,' 'it is all up with me.'

26. *circumspicienti*, dative of person concerned; see C. 1. Translate:—'as I looked round, at length I remembered the stump of the mast,'—left in its socket when the mast was sawn off.

Page 32.

3. *erat ingenti corpore*. See D. 2 (g). Below we have the other construction,—*erat mirae altitudinis* (22).

10. *requiem aeternam*, the first words of an anthem in the Mass for the Dead, which begins thus:—*requiem aeternam dona eis, Domine*. Hence the term *Requiem*.

11. *ut magno—pedes*, 'to keep hold of my end (of the

piece of mast) with a stout heart and to strike out with my feet resolutely.'

13. *Neptunus*. Notice how fond Erasmus is of combining with his Christian phraseology frequent references to the classical pantheon—(1) because his mind is steeped in Latin literature, (2) for teaching purposes, the *Colloquies* being chiefly designed as a school book.

21. *cum—non nihil promovissemus*, 'when we had made some progress.' This paragraph is represented by a vigorous paraphrase in *The Cloister and the Hearth*:—

'Suddenly the friar said quietly: "I touched the ground." "Impossible, father," said Gerard, "we are more than a hundred yards from shore. Prithee, leave not our faithful mast." "My son," said the friar, "you speak prudently. But know that I have business of holy Church on hand, and may not waste time floating when I can walk. There, I felt it with my toes again; see the benefit of wearing sandals and not shoes. Again; and sandy! Thy stature is less than mine; keep to the mast. I walk." He left the mast accordingly, and extending his powerful arms rushed through the water. Gerard soon followed him. At each overpowering wave the monk stood like a tower, and, closing his mouth, threw his head back to encounter it, and was entirely lost under it awhile; then emerged and ploughed lustily on. At last they came close to the shore; but the suction outward baffled all their attempts to land. Then the natives sent stout fishermen into the sea, holding by long spears in a triple chain; and so dragged them ashore.'

Page 33.

4. *quanto potuit cursu*, 'as fast as he could.'

8. *promicabat*. See note on *micemus digitis* (10, 18).

videns hoc illi succedere. Cf. *circumspiciebam quid cuique succederet* (37, 5).

10. *hastilibus*, 'poles' rather than 'spears' (as in the quotation above).

17. *verum ex his—igni*, 'but, of these, two were laid before a fire, which caused their dissolution.' With *soluti*

tepure, lit. 'melted by heat' cf. Ovid's *cerae igne solutae*. Charles Reade has:—'Him the natives, with excellent intentions, took to a hot fire. So then he too retired from this shifting scene.'

21. *saltem decimis—sacerdotibus*, 'it ought to have been satisfied at least with tithes, which are enough for the clergy.' For this jussive use of *fuisset* see F. 1.

30. *ista nihil humanius*. For they are Erasmus's own people.

Page 34.

5. *malim*. See F. 2.

XII.

A few miles from Antwerp four old friends meet for the first time since their Undergraduate days at Paris University, and drive together to the city. Two of them are characters after Erasmus's own heart, 'lovely and pleasant in their lives':—one a layman, GLYCION (*Mr Sweet*), who holds an honourable public office, and, having a good conscience and literary tastes, leads a most placid existence; the other a clergyman, EUSEBIUS (*Father Godliman*), who has a pleasant living, with a good income, comfortable parsonage, and light duty, and is therewith content. POLYGAMUS (*the much-married*) is sadly aged owing to matrimonial misadventures. The extraordinary career of PAMPIRUS (*Jack of all trades*) enables Erasmus to air his grievances against several professions, especially the monastic. The conversation between the two coachmen, with which the piece ends, will strike the reader as wonderfully modern. It is a 'touch of nature' which 'makes the whole world kin.'

12. *vitreis*, i.e. spectacled.

15. *bene sit tibi*. Cf. *vae nostro corio* (2, 9).

18. *annis—quadraginta*. See D. 3 (e).

19. *caduceo*, the herald's staff or magic wand, with which

Mercury is constantly represented in ancient art. One of Mercury's functions was the guidance of men (especially of travellers), and of their souls after death.

Page 35.

2. *qui nos devehat*, final; see F. 4.
6. *aliis aliud est negotii*, 'we have different pieces of business.'
9. *nondum convenit cum aurigis*, 'we have not yet made a bargain with the coachmen.'
10. *visne illis imponamus?* For this colloquial expression cf. *venias oportet* (20) and *fac praesenti sis animo* (2, 19).
14. *cancros volaturos*. Erasmus, writing to Pope Adrian VI in 1523, says:—'You say, *Come to Rome; write a book against Luther*. Come to Rome? Tell a crab to fly! The crab will say, *Give me wings*. So I say, *Give me back my health and strength*.'
16. *verum*, 'proper,' 'reasonable,' a frequent signification of the word; cf. *nihil verius* (38, 15).
18. *quo—hoc*, 'the longer they do this, the greater danger will there be.' See D. 2 (c).
23. *nobis quattuor solis*, i.e. a carriage all to themselves, not four places in a 'diligence.'

Page 36.

2. *Lutetiae conviximus*, i.e. as students at Paris, which was supreme among the medieval Universities. For the locative *Lutetiae* see E. 1.
10. *huius avus videri queat*, because of his matrimonial troubles.
12. *sic habet*, 'so it is'; cf. *bene habet* (4, 8).

Page 37.

2. *recta*. See D. 3 (b).
5. *circumspiciebam—secus*, 'I was looking round to see how different people succeeded and failed.'

10. *meo Marte*, lit. 'with my own War-god,' i.e. 'by my own efforts,' 'independently.' See D. 2 (e).

20. *ea res—sententia*, 'this business turned out for me entirely according to my wishes.'

25. *ne quid erres*, final, not prohibitive,—'(I say this), to prevent your making any mistake.'

29. *iudicio*, 'with good judgment'; cf. *ratione* 'with good reason.'

Page 38.

9. *ita nec est—operam*, 'accordingly, while there is no reason for any one to taunt me with selfishness, I have resources from which I can on occasion help my friends as well.' For *mihi vivere* see C. 1 (a).

12. *ex me*, 'from my performance of it.'

13. *hoc ego—mutuo sumere*, 'this I consider to be more creditable than to borrow dignity from the distinguished character of one's office.'

15. *nihil verius*. Cf. *rectum verumque consilium* (35, 16).

18. *cum non abs re dictum sit*, 'since it has been appropriately remarked.'

23. *mediocritas tuta est*. He is thinking of Horace's 'Golden Mean,'—*Odes* II. 10, *auream quisquis mediocritatem diligit, tutus....*

28. *quae—moveant*, generic; see F. 5. Translate:—
'There are some wrongs of a kind to excite the wrath even of the most tranquil disposition.'

Page 39.

2. *ire cubitum*. See A. 3.

3. *qui tali sis animo*, 'seeing that you are of such a disposition.' See F. 6.

5. *atque adeo*, 'and further.' Note that *adeo* has the two distinct meanings of (1) 'in addition to this' and (2) 'up to this point.'

7. *liberis meis probro esse*. See C. 6.

nihil—sibi male conscio, 'nothing is more worrying than an uneasy conscience.'

16. *adimat*. See F. 2.
 25. *ut—ita*. Translate:—‘though...yet...’
 29. *viginti totos annos*. Cf. 17, 21.

Page 40.

2. *duo milia passuum*. See note on 13, 3.
 4. *novus hospes*, ‘like a new arrival.’
 8. *nihil mihi rei cum medicis*, ‘I have no dealings whatever with the medical profession.’ For *nihil rei* see B. 6.
 15. *si quidem*. See 8, 3.
 17. *lectorem*, i.e. a servant to read aloud.
 23. *quae feruntur esse plurima*. See G. 4.
 25. *liberavi fidem meam*, ‘I have fulfilled my promise.’
 28. *satis belle portat aetatem*, ‘carries his years prettily enough.’
 29. *duobus aut tribus annis grandior*. See D. 2 (c).

Page 41.

1. *tale somnium*, i.e. such a strange story.
 14. *magnis malis emenda*. See D. 3 (c).
 16. *sortem*, ‘lot,’ ‘share’; hence, as here, ‘fortune’ or ‘capital’; cf. *periit et sors et usura* (22), ‘both principal and interest were gone.’
 17. *bene fortunante Mercurio*, i.e. as god of gain.
 21. *successit*, impersonal; supply *tibi*. Cf. *quid cuique succederet* (37, 5), *videns hoc illi succedere* (33, 8).
 26. *quavis Malea*, ‘than any Malea.’ Cape Malea is on the south east of Laconia, separating the Laconic and Argolic gulfs. The voyage round it was regarded as dangerous. Note the play on words,—*Malea* and *alea* (42, 4). Cf. *profanis—fanis* (24, 21), *diligunt—deligant* (37, 28).

Page 42.

5. *vos Graeci*, ‘you Greek scholars.’ The study of Greek was just coming in, when these friends were at the University of Paris.

7. qui—crederet. See F. 6.
 12. adeon'. Cf. 13, 24.
 res sarciri potest. Cf. *diligentia sarcietur—o sartores* (6, 25).
 18. miseret me tui. See B. 4.
 22. audiebam, 'I heard myself called'; cf. the phrase *male audire* 'to have a bad reputation.'
 quid plura? Supply *dicam*, and translate:—'to cut a long story short.'
 28. adeo mihi displicebam totus, 'so utterly dissatisfied was I with myself'; cf. *naucerus totus pallens* (27, 20) and *totos pullatos* (43, 23).

Page 43.

5. apud Hibernos hibernasti? Cf. *Malea—alea* (above).
 13. Carthusianus. See note on 29, 17.
 19. non admodum sani cerebri, 'of not quite sound brain.' For the irony cf. *non admodum verecundae frontis* (5, 15).
 24. ex instituto divi Benedicti, 'according to the rule of St Benedict.' The two governing principles of the Benedictine rule were labour and obedience.

Benedict, one of the most glorious names in the history of monasticism, was born about 480 A.D., of an old Italian family. He was sent to Rome for his education; but, owing to the social ruin due to successive inroads of barbarians, he resolved to renounce the world while still a boy. Soon he had planted twelve cloisters in the valley of the river Anio and on the adjacent hills. These fraternities were joined by many young nobles from Rome. In 529 Benedict founded at Monte Cassino, on the borders of Samnium and Campania, a house which afterwards became the most celebrated and powerful of all monasteries. The Benedictine order spread far and wide, especially in France and England. 'In every rich valley, by the side of every clear and deep stream, arose a Benedictine abbey'—a centre of Christian civilization.

Page 44.

1. quos Bernardus ad severiorem disciplinam revocasset. The monastic revival here spoken of, i.e. the Cistercian, began in the closing years of the 11th century. It was due originally to Stephen Harding, a Dorsetshire man, educated in the monastery of Sherborne, who planned a distinct foundation of reformed Benedictines, called 'Cistercians' from Citeaux (*Cistercium*), a forest solitude in Champagne, where was the first house of the new order.

Through the exertions of St Bernard of Clairvaux (*Bright Valley*) the order increased so rapidly, that within a century from its foundation it had 800 rich abbeys in different parts of Europe. Bernard himself founded more than 70, drawing multitudes into the monastic life by his persuasive eloquence. It was he too who kindled the enthusiasm of France for the Second Crusade. Amid the severity of his mortifications (the *severior disciplina* here spoken of by Erasmus), Bernard found a constant solace in an ardent love of nature. 'Believe one who has tried,' he writes, 'you will find more in woods than in books. Trees and rocks will teach you what you can never learn from masters.'

3. candidam, the colour of the Cistercian habit.

12. sanctimonia onustus. We say 'in the odour of sanctity.'

18. artem—chiromanticam, 'palmistry.' '*Chiromancy*, or divination of the hand, is, according to the orthodox theory, the determining from certain lines upon the hand the quality of the physical and intellectual powers of the possessor. The whole science is based upon the five principal lines in the hand, and the triangle which they form in the palm. These lines, which have all their particular and appropriate names, are, if we may believe those who have written on the subject, connected with the heart, the brain, and other organs' (Borrow, *Gipsies of Spain*, chap. vii.).

22. quo praeceptore? See D. 2 (*h*).

23. praedicebam praeterita, futura, praesentia. With regard to 'fortune-telling' an old writer on palmistry, quoted

by Borrow, says:—‘As for the other species by which people pretend to divine concerning the affairs of life, either past or to come, dignities, fortunes, children, events, chances, dangers, etc.—such chiromancy is reprobated as a foolish, false, futile, superstitious practice, smelling much of a pact with the devil.’

26. *idque tuto—pretio*, ‘and that safely, namely by taking my fee first.’

Page 45.

1. *Hierosolyma*, neuter plural.

7. *o senem imple pium*, ‘what an impiously pious old gentleman!’ This is a good example of the figure of speech called *oxymoron* (= ‘pointedly foolish’); cf. Horace’s *insaniens sapientia*, Milton’s *numbers numberless*, and Shakespeare’s *beautiful tyrant! fiend angelical! dove-feathered raven! wolfish-ravening lamb!* (*Romeo and Juliet*, ii. 3). Cf. also 23, 26.

9. *verumne fatear?* See F. 1.

15. *itane*, ‘did you really...?’

18. *fortasse in Turcas*. The Turks were now a formidable power in Europe. Later on the Emperor Charles V was at war with them from 1526 to 1532.

20. *praedicabant*. We must supply a subject, viz. ‘the monks,’ i.e. at the bidding of the Pope.

22. *Julius Secundus*, Pope from 1503 till 1513.

belligerabat. He was exceedingly bellicose; see Introduction to Dialogue X. His shrewd and determined expression is very noticeable in Raphael’s portrait of him, now in our National Gallery.

A satire of the time, ascribed by some to Erasmus, represents Julius as boasting thus:—‘You would not say so, had you seen me carried in state at Bologna and at Rome, after the war with Venice or when I beat the French at Ravenna. Those were spectacles! Carriages and horses, troops under arms, generals prancing and galloping, torches flaming, pomp of bishops, glory of cardinals, trophies, spoils, shouts that rent the heavens, trumpets blaring, cannon

thundering, and I carried aloft, the head and author of it all! Scipio and Caesar were nothing by the side of me.'

adversus Gallos. In 1511 was formed the 'Holy League' between Julius II, Ferdinand of Aragon, and Venice, with the object of driving the French out of Italy. The League was afterwards joined by Henry VIII and by the Emperor Maximilian. The French were at first successful; but in 1513 they were defeated by the Swiss at Novara, and withdrew from Italy. Finally the defeat of the French at the 'Battle of the Spurs' forced them to sue for peace.

25. *multarum, sed malarum.* See Introduction to Dialogue X.

Page 46.

5. *ordinibus Mendicantium.* The two chief orders of 'Begging Friars' were founded in the 13th century,—the Franciscans by Francis of Assisi and the Dominicans by Dominic of Osma. These friars to a great extent superseded the parochial clergy in reputation and influence. There were two other less important communities of the same kind,—the Carmelites and the Augustinians or Austin Friars. In the later medieval literature there is no figure on which scorn and indignation are so freely poured as on the Begging Friar.

8. *penetrant omnes domos.* Elsewhere Erasmus writes in the same strain:—'The Franciscans ought to be preaching the Gospel. You find them instead haunting princes' courts and rich men's houses. They demand admission at private houses, to come and go as they please, and the owner dares not refuse. What a slavery is this! The secrets of the household are exposed to all the world. The friars pretend that they have no other means of living. Why should they live at all? What is the use of these mendicant vagabonds? Only a few of them preach the Gospel; and, if they needs must travel, they have houses of their own Order to go to.'

16. *perpendebam—in choro,* 'on weighing well the matter, I saw that I should have to slave in the monastery choir,' i.e. in the performance of a round of services.

28. *hanc Spartam quae contigit orno*, a proverbial expression,—‘I make the best of the province which has fallen to my lot.’ The ordinary form of the proverb is:—*Spartam nactus es: hanc exorna*. The original is in Euripides.

Page 47.

- 2. *scaenam*—*fabulam*—*actus*, all theatrical terms.
- 10. *ut sunt res humanae*, ‘as worldly advantages go.’
- 15. *templum*—*vaces religioni*, ‘a church where, if one is so inclined, one has freedom for the practice of religion.’ This general use of the second person of the subjunctive is a favourite one in Latin.
- 18. *Patavii*. The University of Padua was very celebrated.
- 26. *pro mea sapientia*, ‘to the best of my ability.’

Page 48.

- 4. *tum*, at the University of Paris.
- 9. *per otium*, ‘at leisure.’ For this modal use of the preposition cf. *per ludum* ‘in sport,’ *per iocum* ‘in jest.’
- 18. *plus satis*. See 26, 6.
- 21. *pro candidis*. The Carthusian habit was made of undyed wool.
- 22. *quasi re bene gesta*, ‘as if you had done a fine thing.’
- 23. *nec iniuria*, ‘and quite right too’; see D. 2 (f).

Page 49.

- 2. *seniculi*, ‘dear old gentlemen.’ For the fondling use of the diminutive cf. *canis vetulus* (17, 18).
- 4. *per eos*, ‘thanks to them.’
- 6. *sic tibi boni sunt*. See C. 3.

XIII.

The boy ERASMUS was the son of Erasmus's friend, Johann Froben, the famous printer of Basel. Erasmus was his godfather. His own names, Desiderius Erasmus, which he had adopted in his boyhood before he was much of a scholar, were incorrectly formed. Desiderius is bad Latin and Erasmus bad Greek for his baptismal name Gerard, which means 'beloved.' To his godson he gave the correct form of his own second name,—viz. Erasmus. The boy's full name was Johann Erasmus Froben. He was now six years old, and very forward for his age, as we may judge from this dialogue. The *Colloquies* were dedicated to him in a very beautiful letter.

11. *nihil non—in rem tuam*, 'I will grant every request of yours, provided only it is for your advantage.' For the concessive subjunctive see F. 3.

12. *dic tantum quid rei sit*, 'you have only to tell me what is the matter.' See B. 6.

19. *codicem*, 'the manual' of the art in question. Below the word signifies the 'common-place book' of the boy Erasmus (51, 19).

Page 50.

14. *artem alchemisticam*. The alchemist's art is one of great antiquity. The word *alchemy* is derived from the Arabic article *al* 'the' and a late Greek word *chemeia*, 'pouring' or 'mingling' (hence *chemist*). So Alchemy was the Chemistry of old times, devoting itself mainly to the discovery of the 'philosopher's stone,' which was to effect the transmutation of the baser metals into gold and silver. The most famous of the Alchemists was the mad genius Paracelsus, a contemporary of Erasmus, who hoped to discover a *quintessence* or fifth element, which would prove to be at once the philosopher's stone and the universal medicine which was to be the means of indefinitely prolonging human life.

15. *optarem*, 'I could wish'; see F. 2.

16. *litteras tantis sudoribus emere*. For the thought cf. 21, 16, and for the syntax see D. 3 (c).
 25. *cum cernamus*, causal; see F. 6.

Page 51.

5. *deinde ut ea mireris*. Cf. *admirari plurimum discendi ardorem ministrat* (21, 18).

12. *mansuefacias—oportet*, 'you ought to tame your intellect.' For the syntax see note on 35, 10.

18. *dictum Isocrateum*. Isocrates was a great Athenian orator and teacher of rhetoric. The influence of his school on the development of Greek oratory was extraordinary. When the battle of Chaeronea crushed the last hopes of his country's freedom, he put an end to his life at the age of 98 (B.C. 338). He is the 'old man eloquent' of Milton, *Sonnet x*.

24. *sed quid remedii?* Cf. *quid rei sit* (49, 12).

Page 52.

8. *quod maneat*. See F. 5.

12. *digna cognitu*, 'deserving of study'; see D. 3 (d).

15. *sermones conviviorum*, 'table-talk,' regarded as something more elaborate than *cottidiana colloquia*.

16. *prandio—cena*. See Introduction to Dialogue I. *audies*, i.e. 'I will teach you.'

17. *lepidissima dicta*. This was Erasmus's favourite method of teaching. The first edition of his *Adagia*, published in 1500, contained 800 sayings from Latin and Greek writers. The last edition in his life-time had more than 4000. The book was enlivened by a commentary in Erasmus's best manner. It was a manual of the wit and wisdom of the old world. Some of his notes take the form of little essays on the affairs of the day.

18. *iam mihi considera*, 'now I ask you to reckon.' For the ethic dative see C. 1 (c).

22. *ad haec*, 'besides this.'

bene Latine loquentes, Latin being the language of cultivated Europe.

24. *ediscas Latine*. Supply *loqui*. So Cicero has *scire Latine*.

GENERAL NOTES

ON SOME PARTS OF LATIN SYNTAX.

The references are to the pages and lines of the Text.

A. ACCUSATIVE.

The chief uses of the Accusative are :—

- (1) Accusative of the direct object, after transitive verbs :
 ego ranas captabo. 9, 20.
 alius arripit remum. 30, 26.

Rarely after intransitive verbs ('sense-construction') :

convenies mercatorem. 13, 10.
 urbem egressus. 16, 7.

Sometimes in exclamations, really the object of some verb understood :

o me felicem! 18, 27.

- (2) Accusative as subject of the infinitive. See G. 3.
- (3) Accusative of goal of motion :

perveniamus Antverpiam. 35, 22.
 mox domum recurrito. 12, 9.

Except with the names of towns and small islands, *domum* and *rus*, prepositions (e.g. *ad*, *in*) are required :

reversus in Italiam. 45, 13.
 est abeundum in forum. 13, 1.

The supine in *-um* (really the accusative of a verbal substantive) is an example of action regarded as the 'goal of motion':

eo cubitum. 39, 9.

Cf. the phrase *exequias eo*, 'I go to a funeral.'

- (4) Accusative of extent of space:

sex tantum passus abest. 13, 3.

- (5) Accusative of extent of time:

quot annos abfuerat? 17, 20.

ieiunant totum triduum. 14, 25.

- (6) Accusative of extent of action:

haud multum erras. 51, 24.

quantum suspicor. 22, 2.

ecquid arridet vita militaris? 23, 6.

The cognate accusative (e.g. *magnam pugnam pugnāvimus*) comes under this head; and includes such constructions as:

legatum egerat. 28, 1.

bellicum canis. 18, 24.

- (7) Double accusative:

orat te ludendi veniam. 6, 14.

amamus te plurimum. 7, 7.

B. GENITIVE.

The Genitive denotes connexion of various kinds.

- (1) Genitive of the possessor:

pater omnium fabularum. 18, 2.

eius templi praeses. 30, 7.

A genitive understood in a possessive pronoun sometimes has a genitive agreeing with it:

spopondi vestro omnium nomine. 7, 10.

- (2) Genitive of definition (showing in what a thing consists):

discipulorum grex. 6, 14.

lumbricorum copia. 10, 7.

- (3) Genitive of the subject (corresponding to the subject of a verb):

clamor virorum. 23, 19.

praeceptoris saevitia. 2, 3.

- (4) Genitive of the object (corresponding to the object of a verb):

desiderium matris. 4, 4.

non patriae pietas, sed praedae spes. 24, 29.

discendi ardor. 21, 18.

Sometimes we can only decide from the context whether a genitive is subjective or objective; e.g. *desiderium matris* might mean 'regret felt by a mother.'

Many verbs and adjectives take an objective genitive, e.g. those denoting *skill, remembrance, accusation, fulness, want*, and various kinds of *feelings*.

vide ut horum memineris. 4, 20.

nihil me poenitet huius nasi. 18, 13.

miseret me tui. 42, 18.

nostri amantissimus. 20, 25.

imperitus natandi. 9, 3.

capax tantae multitudinis. 30, 24.

sitiens cognoscendi. 41, 10.

monstri simile. 16, 11.

- (5) Genitive of description:

tenuis fortunae sodales. 4, 16.

audacis frontis est. 5, 21.

erat mirae altitudinis. 32, 22.

- (6) Genitive of the part (or 'partitive genitive'), depending on substantives, adjectives, or pronouns:

nihil est periculi. 1, 6.

neque minus laudis est. 9, 1.

multum refert spoliis. 22, 21.

homo omnium liberalissimus. 20, 24.

quidquid erat olei. 29, 6.

quantum temporis abfui? 3, 24.

O. DATIVE.

The Dative denotes (A) the person or thing concerned,—uses (2) to (5) given below being special examples of (1); (B) tendency or purpose, i.e. (6) below.

(1) Dative of person or thing concerned:

(a) Dative of advantage:

precor *tibi*. 12, 7.
sellam *mihi* poni iube. 16, 3.
praestat consulere *vitae*. 27, 26.
quid *sibi* vult? 6, 10.
bene sit *tibi*! 34, 15.

(b) Dative of disadvantage:

bracchio precatus sum perniciem. 2, 12.
ranis facessam negotium. 10, 13.
vae nostro corio! 2, 9.

After verbs of taking away:

spem ademit nauclero. 26, 10.
tibi somnum excutiam. 11, 3.

(c) Ethic dative (denoting the person interested in a statement), only personal pronouns in lively expressions:

iam *mihi* considera. 52, 18.
unde *tibi* nunc venatio? 20, 23.

(d) After many compound verbs, transitive and intransitive:

laqueos inciam *cicadis*. 9, 19.
imposueramus eam *tabulae*. 31, 7.
addixi me *militiae*. 45, 14.
clavo assidebat. 26, 21.
nautae assuevere *monstris*. 27, 7.
incumbo libris. 40, 18.
periculo intersum. 26, 7.

- (e) After many adjectives, especially those denoting
nearness, likeness, fitness, and their opposites:

nihil similis negotiationi. 46, 6.

nihil aptum natationi. 31, 23.

(2) Dative of remoter object :

- (a) After transitive verbs of *giving, telling, and the like:*

leges dedit mortalibus. 21, 9.

specimen nobis praebe. 3, 23.

uxori narra victorias. 24, 11.

- (b) After intransitive verbs of *sparing, trusting, obeying, and others:*

nec profanis pepercimus. 24, 21.

mihi fide. 1, 12.

metus nocet memoriae. 2, 20.

illi blandientes. 29, 7.

(3) Dative of person judging :

sic visum est superis. 50, 19.

omnis illi culpa capitalis est. 2, 3.

tuis oculis multa nox est. 11, 10.

sic tibi boni sunt. 49, 6.

(4) Dative of the possessor :

est mihi hamus elegans. 10, 4.

nolim mihi rem esse cum medicis. 7, 22.

illi pedes lavat. 18, 10.

suus cuique mos. 20, 19.

To this dative another dative is sometimes joined by attraction :

cui nomen Adamo. 29, 28.

(5) Dative of the agent, used with the gerundive, passive participles, and adjectives in *-bilis* :

est tibi abundum. 13, 1.

iam mihi decretum erat. 44, 7.

This dative is really a dative of 'person concerned,'—the second example not differing practically from *tibi quidem prospectum* (12, 18), 'provision has been made for yourself.'

(6) Dative of tendency or purpose :

(a) *Work contemplated :*

findendis lignis erit cuneus. 18, 22.

(b) *Predicative dative*, denoting that which something serves as or occasions,

(i) sometimes in connexion with dative of 'person concerned,' (ii) sometimes alone :

(i) *liberis meis probro esse potest.* 39, 7.

hoc mihi misit dono. 20, 25.

dono means 'for a gift,' i.e. 'as a gift.'

(ii) *malus erat oneri, non usui.* 29, 1.

qui frugi sunt famuli. 11, 4.

D. ABLATIVE.

The three main uses of the Ablative in Classical Latin—Ablative proper, Instrumental, and Locative—correspond to three Cases which in early Latin were distinct in form also.

(1) Ablative proper (denoting from) :

(a) *Place whence* (including *separation* and *origin*) :

ille domo abfuerat. 17, 20.

non procul absumus Antverpia. 48, 7.

Often with a preposition :

e spelunca prodit. 16, 21.

abfuisti a maternis aedibus. 3, 24.

(b) After verbs and adjectives denoting *want* or *release* :

carent aliis. 10, 2.

somno solutus. 16, 21.

scapham exonerant aqua. 30, 21.

(c) *Comparison or difference from:*

Orbilio plagosior est. 2, 9.

(d) *Agency, regarded as coming from a person,—with preposition a or ab:*

ne ab uxore quidem agnitus. 17, 18.

(2) *Instrumental ablative (denoting by, with), including the 'sociative' uses:*(a) *Ordinary instrumental use:*

rem acu tetigisti. 24, 9.

praecedis tibia canens. 8, 18.

me vicerunt alea. 24, 17.

sentio pedibus terram. 32, 26.

(b) *Cause and Means:*

longo rerum usu prudentissimus. 37, 14.

quibus rationibus hoc fiet? 51, 6.

bellorum calamitate confecti. 17, 3.

consuetudine dulcescunt. 51, 16.

(c) *Measure of difference:*

horam ab hora aequis spatiis dividit. 1, 8.

paulo post venti nihilo mitiores. 28, 15.

duobus aut tribus annis est grandior. 40, 29.

id quo faciunt diutius, hoc plus erit periculi. 35, 18.

(d) *With certain adjectives, reflexive verbs, and opus est:*

hoc contentus. 38, 11.

auro onustus. 19, 7.

magistratu fungeris? 38, 4.

non me utemini legato. 7, 11.

ovillis libenter vescor. 20, 9.

non pascor faeno. 15, 5.

suo praesidio nitentes. 31, 2.

lusu opus est iis. 6, 20.

lit. 'there is work to be done by...,' i.e. 'there is need of...'

N.B. The verbs in the above examples have a reflexive sense,—*fungor* 'I busy myself (with),' *utor* 'I employ myself (with),' *pascor* and *vescor*, 'I feed myself (with),' *nitor* 'I support myself (with).' Hence the use of the instrumental ablative with these words.

(e) *Accompaniment*:

duobus canibus assequimur. 21, 16.

meo Marte rem omnem gessi. 37, 10.

Generally with preposition *cum*:

cupiebat perire cum opibus suis. 28, 5.

(f) *Manner*:

quonam pacto rediit? 17, 17.

eram natura sitiens. 41, 10.

dic mihi bona fide. 40, 22.

Cf. *aequo animo*, 45, 3; *suo more*, 21, 10; *pace tua*, 4, 7; *iudicio*, 37, 29; *iure*, 24, 25; *iniuria*, 20, 6; *natura*, 41, 10; *vice remi*, 31, 9.

(g) *Quality and Description*:

erat ingenti corpore. 32, 3.

fac praesenti sis animo. 2, 19.

(h) (i) *Attendant circumstances*, including

(ii) *Ablative absolute* (so called);

(i) *capitis mei periculo non dubitem esse sponsor*
6, 2

(ii) *quo praeceptore didiceras?* 44, 22.

mota cauda dominum agnovit. 17, 19.

abeunte fluctu promicabat. 33, 7.

sublato aut lacero velo malus erat oneri. 29,

videbamus dehiscente terra ire in Tartarum. 27

N.B. Such a sentence as the following,—*auspicemur a ranarum, utraque tibia, sed iunctis pedibus* (7, 17)—helps understand that the term *ablative absolute* is misleading; *cannot* regard the ablatives in this sentence as *absolute* 'set free' from the structure of the sentence); we

translate 'with both legs, but with feet joined.' So, in the examples given in (ii), the strict translation would be 'with what teacher...', 'with wagging of his tail...', 'with the wave retiring...', and so on.

(3) Locative ablative (denoting *in*, *on*, *at*):

(a) Ordinary locative use:

hoc loco sit carcer. 8, 8.

* *navis locis aliquot convulsa.* 30, 5.

Often with preposition *in*:

stans in medio navis. 29, 30.

(b) Way along which:

recta (via) in patriam. 37, 2.

(c) Price at which:

prudentia magnis malis est emenda. 41, 11.

Galli amant quae parvo constant. 20, 3.

The ablative after *dignus* falls under this head:

non uno suspendio dignus erat. 43, 10.

(d) Part concerned and Respect in which:

securus animo. 2, 23.

natu grandis. 37, 13.

incredibile dictu. 16, 11.

N.B. The supine in *-u* is really the ablative (perhaps sometimes the dative) of a verbal noun; cf. *digna cognitu* (52, 12).

(e) Time at which and in the course of which:

prima luce venias oportet. 35, 20.

ea nocte aliquid accidit. 26, 9.

nemo vidit alium annis quadraginta. 34, 18.

linguam discunt exiguo temporis spatio. 52, 25.

Sometimes with preposition *in*:

nihil in vita vidi siccus. 21, 27.

E. LOCATIVE.

Some examples of an old Locative case survive in Latin, the termination being *-i* in the singular. In the plural the Locative terminations cannot be distinguished from those of the Ablative.

(1) Place at or on which:

- (a) *Romae* contingit vivere. 39, 22.
Lutetiae conviximus. 36, 2.
 quattuor annos egi *Patavii*. 47, 17.
 non prandeo *domi*. 12, 16.
 collapsus *humi*. 24, 7.
 caligas intus *purga*, mox *foris*. 11, 15.

N.B. *Romae* represents *Romai* of old Latin; cf. *Carthagini* 'at Carthage.' With *foris* cf. *Athenis* 'at Athens.'

(b) Metaphorical use:

- vobis cordi* est natatio. 9, 11.
 'You have swimming *at heart*.'

Cf. *anxius animi*, 'anxious *in mind*.'

(2) Price at which:

- cognosce quanti* sint venales. 13, 18.
 Cf. the similar use of *magni*, *parvi*, *plurimi*, *minimi*, *nihili*.

N.B. The genitives *pluris* and *minoris* are used (by false analogy) to denote *price*:

- minoris* emam. 20, 26.

F. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The chief uses of the Subjunctive are:—

(1) Jussive Subjunctive, i.e. in (a) commands, (b) wishes, (c) prohibitions:

- (a) *paret se quisque*. 30, 3.
eat qui volet. 5, 17.

- (b) *bene sit tibi, vir optime.* 34, 15.
fortunet legationem Mercurius. 6, 8.

- (c) *ne abieris.* 3, 22.
ne vagetur animus. 3, 19.

The Jussive Subjunctive is sometimes used of events no longer possible, the tense being imperfect or pluperfect.

- utinam adesset Aeneas.* 8, 10.
mare decimis fuisset contentum. 33, 21.

When used in questions, the Jussive Subjunctive is sometimes called 'Deliberative.'

- verumne fatear?* 45, 9.

- (2) **Potential Subjunctive**, used of events which *might happen* or *might have happened*, sometimes called 'Subjunctive of imagination.'

- nolim mihi rem esse cum medicis.* 7, 22.
non dubitem esse sponsor. 6, 28.
vix duos reperias. 20, 21.
optarem artem esse veram. 50, 15.
plura quam vellem. 13, 25.
vidisses miseram rerum faciem. 29, 4.

The Subjunctive of conditional statement belongs here. [Some think that in the examples just quoted there is a suppressed condition: e.g. *vidisses* might mean 'you would have seen, if you had been there.']

- non-recusem, si tu praecedas.* 8, 17.
deponerem pavorem, si non adesset periculum. 2, 21.
placuissest omnes, si licuisset negotiari. 46, 15.

- (3) **Concessive Subjunctive:**

- nihil non impetrabis, modo sit in rem tuam.* 49, 11.
non cessant anni, quantumvis cessent homines. 36, 15.
ista gente nihil humanius, quamvis feris nationibus cincta sit. 33, 30.

(4) Final Subjunctive, i.e. denoting *purpose*:

- eo se deiciunt, ut suavius vivant. 42, 29.
 mittendus orator, qui veniam extorqueat. 5, 5.
 dedimus illi tabellam, qua uteretur. 31, 9.
 (studebam) quo melius animum moderarer. 47, 24.
 quid obstat, quominus eatis? 35, 8.
 explenda est rima, ne perfluat. 51, 25.
 metuit, ne navis solveretur. 29, 23.

Often in clauses introduced by conjunctions meaning 'until,' when the notion of *expectancy* (and therefore *purpose*) is present:

- non quiescam, donec consequar. 21, 22.
 priusquam quidquam aggrederer, adii quemdam. 37, 12.

(5) Consecutive Subjunctive, i.e. denoting *consequence*. The 'generic' use of the Subjunctive (i.e. denoting *kind* or *class*) comes under this head.

- eo propecti sumus, ut incolae prospicerent nos. 30, 14.
 erant qui promitterent. 29, 17.
 bona avis est obvius amicus, qui bene moneat. 25, 23.
 plumbo potest aliquid imprimi quod maneat. 52, 7.
 nihil est quod edam. 12, 19.
 est aliud, unde magis timeam. 1, 15.

(6) Causal Subjunctive:

- nec mirum, cum sit solstitium aestivum. 8, 20.
 humanus es, qui ista cogites. 15, 12.
 misera, quippe quae magnis malis sit emenda. 41, 14.

The *temporal* use of the Subjunctive (i.e. 'historic *cum*' with imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive) is often hardly distinguishable from the *causal* use, from which it is developed.

- cum fugeres pavidus, offendisti in silicem. 24, 7.
 cum non nihil promovissemus, inquit... 32, 21.
 cum esset nuntiata mors patris, redii. 46, 18.

(7) Subjunctive in dependent statements:

- (i) in dependent 'jussive' clauses, i.e. containing (a) *commands*, (b) *wishes*, (c) *prohibitions* :

(a) tempus hortatur, ut unus quisque morti se *paret*.
28, 21.

(dixit): proinde *arriperet* sibi quisque quod posset.
30, 24.

(b) precor tibi, ut *fias* imperator. 12, 7.

(c) moneo te, ne *sis* loquax. 3, 18.

(ii) in dependent questions :

considera, quantum *intersit* inter hominem et pecudem.
51, 10.

expone nobis, quomodo *gestum sit* proelium. 23, 16.

rogatus, quot horas se *crederet* posse tueri navem. 28, 23.

me ipsum exploravi, ad quod genus *essem* idoneus. 47, 8.

(iii) in subordinate clauses of *oratio obliqua* or virtual
oratio obliqua :

audio artem esse cognitionis, quae hoc *praestet*. 49, 16.

fabulantur de Epimenide, qui somnum *continuaret*. 16, 6.

promittebat montes aureos, si *attigisset* terram. 29, 15.

rogabis, ne sollicitus sit quod pecuniam non *miserim*.
13, 12.

G. INFINITIVE.

The chief uses of the Infinitive are:—

(1) Infinitive as subject :

admirari ardorem ministrat. 21, 18.

praestat *natare*. 8, 21.

libetne *certare* saltu? 7, 14.

gratissimum fuerit *audire*. 41, 3.

est aliquid *insanire* cum multis. 25, 3.

(2) Infinitive as predicate, i.e. Historic Infinitive, often used
in rapid, graphic descriptions :

magis ac magis *crescere* tempestas. 27, 10.

venti *rumpere* funes, *disicere* vela. 28, 16.

- (3) **Accusative and Infinitive**, used with verbs of *saying, thinking, perceiving*, and the like :
- pronuntiavit bellum esse iustum.* 25, 4.
testantur se lugere. 43, 25.
audio te patriam revisisse. 15, 9.
credo istos mentiri. 23, 26.
oblitus est se fuisse puerum. 5, 11.
simulemus nos velle abire pedites. 35, 13.
venit in mentem utrumque alteri posse coniungi. 46, 1.
- (4) **Nominative and Infinitive**, used with the passives of verbs of *saying, thinking, perceiving*, and the like :
- incommoda feruntur esse plurima.* 40, 23.
(ego) videbar in alium venire mundum. 15, 19.
- (5) **Infinitive as object of verbs of possibility, wishing, attempting, compelling**, and many others :
- nec diu potest audire.* 52, 5.
cupis eam revisere? 4, 6.
ego carere malo. 5, 17.
perge mentiri. 16, 20.
quae res cogit hoc facere? 21, 4.
quid me iubes facere? 11, 12.
desii esse dominus. 27, 22.
non gravabitur explicare. 47, 1.
parce loqui. 4, 14.

H. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

- (1) The Gerund and Gerundive are often used to denote that something *ought or is to be done* :
- equitandum est.* 14, 5.
de meo tergo pendendum est. 7, 10.
reddenda est hesternae lectio. 1, 16.
mittendus orator quispiam. 5, 5.
non aestimandi sudores. 50, 26.
artem narras haudquaquam aspernandam. 8, 30.
hoc lorum cura sarcendum. 14, 19.

N.B. The agent, when expressed, is usually in the dative :

nobis potius cavendum. 2, 13.

est *tibi* abundum in forum. 13, 1.

- (2) The **Genitive** of the Gerund often depends on a substantive or adjective :

novum *piscandi* genus. 10, 16.

ludendi venia. 5, 9.

ludendi avidior. 5, 10.

imperitus *natandi*. 9, 3.

- (3) The **Ablative** of the Gerund is often used to denote manner or cause :

nemo fit *esuriendo* satur. 12, 21.

fessus *inquirendo*. 44, 9.

- (4) The **Dative** of the Gerund and Gerundive is sometimes used with verbs, adjectives, and substantives, to denote *fitness*, *purpose*, and the like :

conducet *excitando* foculo. 18, 17.

findendis lignis erit cuneus. 18, 22.

- (5) The Gerund and Gerundive are often used with **prepositions** :

dispicere coepi *de deligendo* vitae genere. 37, 3.

Especially with *ad* to express purpose :

dies invitat *ad ludendum*. 5, 1.

paremus nos *ad natandum*. 29, 29.

conducimur *ad mactandos homines*. 25, 12.



VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl.	ablative.	n.	neuter.
acc.	accusative.	neg.	negative.
adj.	adjective.	part.	participle.
adv.	adverb.	pass.	passive.
comp.	comparative.	pf.	perfect.
conj.	conjunction.	pl.	plural.
def.	defective.	prep.	preposition.
f.	feminine.	pron.	pronoun.
gen.	genitive.	sing.	singular.
impers.	impersonal.	v.	verb.
indecl.	indeclinable.	v. a.	verb active.
interj.	interjection.	v. d.	verb deponent.
irrreg.	irregular.	v. n.	verb neuter.
m.	masculine.	1, 2, 3, 4	1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th conjugation.

The quantity of long vowels is marked except in syllables where they are also long by position.

- a, ab, and abs, prep. with abl.** *from, by, after.*
abdicō, 1 v.a. *disown, renounce.*
abeō, 4 v.n. *abivī or abii, abitum, go away.*
absque, prep. with abl. *apart from, away from, without.*
absum, v.n. *abfui or āfui, be absent, be distant.*
ac, conj. *and, as.*
accēdō, 3 v.n. *accessī, accessum, approach, be added to.*
accendō, 3 v.a. *accendī, accensum, kindle, light.*
accidō, 3 v.n. *accidi, happen.*
accipiō, 3 v.a. *accēpi, acceptum, receive.*
accrescō, 3 v.n. *accrēvi, accretum, increase, be added to.*
acriter, adv. *keenly, eagerly.*
actus, ūs, m. *act (of a drama).*
acus, ūs, f. *needle.*
ad, prep. with acc. *to, at, towards, till, according to, with a view to; ad haec, in addition to this.*
addicō, 3 v.a. *assign, give over to.*
addō, 3 v.a. *addidī, additum, add, attach.*
adducō, 3 v.a. *escort, induce.*
adeō, 4 v.n. *adivi or adii, go to, approach.*
adeō, adv. *so far, so much, to such an extent, further, also.*
adferō, v. irreg. *attulī, adlātum, bring to.*
adhibeō, 2 v.a. *apply, employ.*
adhūc, adv. *hitherto, as yet, still.*

- adiaciō**, 3 v.a. *adiēcī*, adiectum, *add.*
adimō, 3 v.a. *adēmī*, *ademp-*
tum, take away.
adiuvō, 1 v.a. *adiūvī*, *adiūtum*,
help.
admirābilis, e, *wonderful.*
admirātiō, ōnis, f. *wonder.*
admiror, 1 v.d. *wonder at*,
admire.
admisceō, 2 v.a. *admiscui*,
admixtum, *mix with.*
admittō, 3 v.a. *admit*, *commit.*
admodum, adv. *quite, very*,
altogether; nōn admodum,
not quite, not at all.
admoneō, 2 v.a. *remind*, *warn*,
advise.
admoveō, 2 v.a. *move to.*
adnatō, 1 v.n. *swim to.*
adornō, 1 v.a. *equip*, *pack up.*
adōrō, 1 v.a. *worship*, *adore.*
adsciō, 3 v.a. *adsciui*, *ad-*
scitum, *take to oneself.*
adsistō, 3 v.n. *adstiti*, *stand*
by, *take a stand.*
adsum, v.n. *adfi*, *be present*,
be here, *aid.*
adulescens, entis, m. *young*
man, *youth.*
advehō, 3 v.a. *advexi*, *ad-*
vectum, *carry to.*
adversus, prep. with acc.
facing, *against.*
aedēs, is, f. *temple*; pl. *house.*
aegrē, adv. *painfully*, *with*
difficulty, *hardly.*
aegritūdō, inis, f. *sickness*,
melancholy.
aequalis, e, *equal in age*, *con-*
temporary.
aequē, adv. *equally.*
aequus, a, um, *level*, *equal*,
favourable, *calm*, *fair.*
aestimō, 1 v.a. *estimate*,
reckon.
aestivus, a, um, *of summer.*
aestus, ūs, m. *heat*, *tide.*
aetās, ātis, f. *age*, *time of life.*
aeternus, a, um, *eternal.*
affinitās, ātis, f. *marriage-*
connexion.
ager, agrī, m. *field*, *farm*,
estate, *territory.*
aggredior, 3 v.d. *aggressor*,
approach, *attack.*
agnoscō, 3 v.a. *agnōvi*, *agni-*
tum, *acknowledge*, *recog-*
nise.
agō, 3 v.a. and n. *ēgi*, *actum*,
lead, *drive*, *do*, *act*, *plead*,
pass time, *live*; *agō grātiās*,
give thanks; imper. *age*,
come now! *actum est*, *it is*
all over.
āiō, v. def. *say*, *speak.*
āla, ae, f. *wing.*
alacritās, ātis, f. *eagerness*,
cheerfulness.
ālātus, a, um, *winged.*
albeō, 2 v.n. *be white.*
alchēmisticus, a, um, *of the*
alchemist.
alea, ae, f. *dice*, *gambling.*
alicubi, adv. *somewhere.*
aliēnus, a, um, *another's*,
foreign, *strange.*
aliōqui, adv. *otherwise.*
aliquamdiū, adv. *for a while.*
aliquandō, adv. *at some time*
or other, *sometimes.*
aliquantum, ī, n. *some a-*
mount.
aliquis, a, id, *some one*, *any*
one.
aliquot, indecl. *some*, *several.*
aliter, adv. *otherwise.*
alius, a, ud, *other*, *another*,
different; *alius...alius*, *one*
...another.
alligō, 1 v.a. *fasten to.*
alloquor, 3 v.d. *speak to.*
alō, 3 v.a. *alui*, *feed*, *nourish*,
cherish, *maintain.*

- alter, era, erum, one...other,
 the one, the other (of two).
 alternus, a, um, alternate.
 altitūdō, inis, f. height, depth.
 altus, a, um, high, tall, deep;
 subst. altum, i, n. height,
 depth.
 amans, antis, loving, affec-
 tionate.
 amanter, adv. lovingly, kindly.
 ambiō, 4 v.a. go round, can-
 vass, court, strive for.
 ambō, ae, ō, both.
 ambulō, 1 v.n. walk.
 amicus, a, um, loving, friendly,
 dear; subst. amicus, i, m.
 friend.
 amō, 1 v.a. love.
 amor, ōris, m. love.
 amplexor, 3 v.d. amplexus,
 embrace.
 amplius, a, um, ample, large.
 amputō, 1 v.a. prune, curtail.
 an, conj. whether, or.
 ancora, ae, f. anchor.
 angulus, i, m. corner, nook.
 anima, ae, f. breath, life, soul.
 animadvertō, 3 v.a. attend to,
 observe.
 animal, ālis, n. animal.
 animans, antis, living; subst.
 living creature.
 animus, i, m. mind, intellect,
 courage, heart, inclination.
 annus, i, m. year.
 annuus, a, um, of a year's
 duration, annual.
 anser, eris, m. goose.
 anserinus, a, um, of goose.
 ante, prep. with acc. and adv.
 before.
 antehāc, adv. before this.
 antenna, ae, f. sail-yard.
 antepōnō, 3 v.a. set before,
 prefer.
 antevertō, 3 v.n. take first
 place.
 antipodēs, um, m. pl. anti-
 podes.
 ānulus, i, m. finger-ring.
 anus, ūs, f. old woman.
 aper, apri, m. wild boar.
 aperīō, 4 v.a. aperui, apertum,
 open, uncover.
 appāreō, 2 v.n. appear, be
 visible.
 appetō, 3 v.a. strive after,
 desire.
 aptē, adv. fitly, suitably.
 aptus, a, um, fit, suitable.
 apud, prep. with acc. at, with,
 among, in.
 aqua, ae, f. water.
 arbitrium, ii, n. decision, con-
 trol, bidding.
 arbitror, 1 v.d. think.
 arbor, oris, f. tree.
 arcus, ūs, m. bow.
 ardor, ōris, m. heat, zeal.
 argenteus, a, um, of silver.
 argentum, i, n. silver; argen-
 tum vivum, quicksilver.
 armus, i, m. shoulder.
 arrideō, 2 v.n. arrisi, arrisum,
 smile at, please.
 arripīō, 3 v.a. arripui, arrep-
 tum, snatch up, seize.
 ars, artis, f. art, device, method,
 trade.
 artifex, ficis, m. and f. artist.
 asinus, i, m. ass.
 aspernor, 1 v.d. disdain, reject.
 assequor, 3 v.d. follow up,
 reach, attain.
 assidō, 3 v.n. assēdī, assessum,
 take a seat, sit by.
 assiduō, adv. continually.
 assiduitās, ātis, f. persistence,
 devoted attention.
 assiduus, a, um, continual,
 persistent.
 assuescō, 3 v.a. and n. as-
 suēvi, assuētum, accustom,
 accustom oneself.

- at, conj. *but*.
 âter, tra, trum, *black*.
 atque, conj. *and, as*.
 atqui, conj. *but, and yet*.
 attentus, a, um, *alert, attentive*.
 attingō, 3 v.a. attigī, *touch*.
 auctor, ōris, m. *author, adviser, authority*.
 auctoritās, ātis, f. *authority, influence, decision*.
 audacter, adv. *boldly, rashly*.
 audax, ācis, *bold, rash*.
 audeō, 2 v.a. and n. ausus, *dare, venture*.
 audiō, 4 v.a. *hear, listen; in pass. sense, be called*.
 aureus, a, um, *of gold, golden; subst. aureus (nummus), gold coin*.
 auriga, ae, m. *driver, coachman*.
 aurum, i, n. *gold*.
 auspiciū, ii, n. *augury, omen, beginning*.
 auspicor, 1 v.d. *take omens, begin*.
 aut, conj. *either, or*.
 autem, conj. *but*.
 auxilium, ii, n. *help*.
 avidus, a, um, *greedy, eager*.
 avis, is, f. *bird, omen*.
 âvolō, 1 v.n. *fly away*.
 avus, i, m. *grandfather*.
 balneum, i, n. *bath*.
 barbaricus, a, um, *foreign, barbarian*.
 bellē, adv. *prettilly, nicely, well*.
 bellicus, a, um, *warlike*.
 belligerō, 1 v.a. *wage war*.
 bellum, i, n. *war*.
 bellus, a, um, *pretty, nice, charming*.
 bene, adv. *well*.
 benignitās, ātis, f. *benevolence, liberality*.
 bibliopōla, ae, m. *bookseller*.
 bibo, 3 v.a. bibi, *drink, take in*.
 bis, adv. *twice*.
 blandior, 4 v.d. *coax, flatter*.
 bonus, a, um, *good*.
 bōs, bovis, m. and f. *ox, cow*.
 brachium, ii, n. *arm*.
 brevis, e, *short*.
 breviter, adv. *shortly, in short*.
 būbulus, a, um, *of oxen, of beef*.
 cadō, 3 v.n. cecidi, cāsum, *fall, be killed*.
 cādūceus, i, m. *herald's staff, wand*.
 caelum, i, n. *heaven, sky*.
 caenum, i, n. *mud*.
 caepe, only nom. and acc., n. *onion*.
 caerimōnia, ae, f. *ceremony*.
 caestus, ūs, m. *boxing-glove*.
 calamitās, ātis, f. *disaster*.
 calamitōsus, a, um, *disastrous*.
 calcar, āris, n. *spur*.
 calceus, i, m. *shoe*.
 caleō, 2 v.n. *be warm*.
 calescō, 3 v.n. *grow warm*.
 caliga, ae, f. *boot*.
 calleō, 2 v.a. *be skilled in, know*.
 calx, calcis, f. *heel, kick*.
 campāna, ae, f. *bell*.
 campus, i, m. *plain, field, playing field*.
 cancer, cri, m. *crab*.
 candēlābrum, i, n. *candlestick*.
 candidus, a, um, *white, bright*.
 canis, is, m. and f. *dog*.
 cānitēs, no gen., f. *white hair, old age*.
 canō, 3 v.a. cecini, cantum, *sing, play, sound*.
 cantō, 1 v.a. *sing, play*.
 capax, ācis, *containing, capable, fit*.

capiō, 3 v.a. cēpī, captum, *take, seize, catch.*

capitālis, e, *capital, deadly.*

captō, 1 v.a. *chase, catch.*

caput, itis, n. *head, person, position, fellow.*

carbō, ōnis, m. *charcoal.*

carcer, eris, m. *prison, starting-gate (on race-course).*

careō, 2 v.n. *be without, refrain from, want.*

carmen, inis, n. *song, poem.*

carō, carnis, f. *flesh, meat; pl. carnēs, pieces of meat.*

cārus, a, um, *dear.*

cassēs, ium, m. pl. *hunting-nets.*

cāsus, ūs, m. *fall, chance, accident.*

catalogus, ī, m. *school-roll.*

catervātim, adv. *in crowds.*

cauda, ae, f. *tail.*

causa, ae, f. *cause, reason.*

caveō, 2 v.a. cāvī, cautum, *take heed, beware.*

cēdō, 3 v.a. and n. cessī, cessum, *yield, withdraw, turn out.*

celeritās, ātis, f. *speed.*

celeriter, adv. *quickly.*

cēna, ae, f. *supper.*

censeō, 2 v.a. *express an opinion, vote, decide.*

cerebrum, ī, n. *brain.*

cernō, 3 v.a. *discern, see.*

certāmen, inis, n. *contest.*

certātor, ōris, m. *competitor.*

certē, adv. *really, surely, anyhow.*

certō, 1 v.n. *strive, compete.*

cervisia, ae, f. *beer.*

cervus, ī, m. *stag.*

cessātor, ōris, m. *idler, loafer.*

cessō, 1 v.n. *loiter, be slack.*

cēterum, adv. *but, on the other hand.*

cēterus, a, um, *the remainder, the rest.*

chīromanticus, a, um, *of palmistry.*

chorus, ī, m. *choir.*

cibus, ī, m. *food.*

cicāda, ae, f. *grasshopper.*

cingō, 3 v.a. cinxī, cinctum, *surround, brace.*

circulus, ī, m. *circle.*

circumferō, v. irreg. *carry about.*

circumspiciō, 3 v.a. *look round.*

cito, adv. *quickly; comp.*

citius, *more quickly.*

civilitās, ātis, f. *politeness.*

civis, is, m. *citizen.*

civitas, ātis, f. *state, community.*

clāmō, 1 v.a. *call, shout.*

clāmor, ōris, m. *shout, noise.*

clārē, adv. *clearly, distinctly.*

clārus, a, um, *clear, renowned.*

clāva, ae, f. *cudgel, club.*

clāvus, ī, m. *nail, rudder.*

claudicātiō, ōnis, f. *lameness.*

claudicō, 1 v.n. *limp.*

claudō, 3 v.a. clausī, clausum, *shut, close.*

clēmens, entis, *calm, gentle.*

coclea, ae, f. *snail.*

cōdex, icis, m. *book, manuscript, note-book, manual.*

coepl, v. def. *begin.*

cōgitātiō, ōnis, f. *thought, reflection.*

cōgitō, 1 v.a. *think, imagine.*

cognitiō, ōnis, f. *knowledge.*

cognoscō, 3 v.a. cognōvī, cognitum, *examine, investigate; pf. know.*

cōgō, 3 v.a. cōēgī, coactum, *collect, compel.*

collābor, 3 v.d. collapsus, *fall in ruins, collapse, sink.*

colligō, 3 v.a. collēgī, collectum, *collect.*

- collocō**, 1 v.a. *place*.
colloquium, ii, n. *conversation*.
colō, 3 v.a. *colui*, cultum, *cultivate, worship*.
color, ōris, m. *colour*.
comes, itis, m. and f. *companion*.
cōmis, e, *courteous*.
comitātus, ūs, m. *company, retinue*.
comitor, 1 v.d. *accompany*.
commemorō, 1 v.a. *relate*.
commendō, 1 v.a. *recommend, entrust*.
committō, 3 v.a. *commit, entrust, act, perpetrate*.
commodē, adv. *suitably, comfortably*.
commodum, i, n. *advantage, profit*.
commodus, a, um, *suitable, useful*.
commoror, 1 v.d. *stay, sojourn*.
communis, e, *common, shared*.
cōmoedia, ae, f. *comedy*.
comparō, 1 v.a. *get together, prepare, get*.
compellō, 1 v.a. *address*.
compellō, 3 v.a. *compuli*, compulsum, *compel*.
comperiō, 4 v.a. *comperi*, compertum, *find out*.
complector, 3 v.d. *complexus*, embrace, *hold*.
complūrēs, a or ia, *several, many*.
compōnō, 3 v.a. *compose, arrange, make, draw up*.
condiciō, ōnis, f. *condition*.
condūcō, 3 v.a. and n. *bring together, hire, be of use*.
conferō, v. irreg. *contuli*, collātum, *bring together, compare, converse, impute, betake*.
conficiō, 3 v.a. *confēcī*, confectum, *finish, wear out, destroy, make up*.
congregior, 3 v.d. *congressus*, meet, *come near*.
congruō, 3 v.n. *agree, suit*.
coniciō, 3 v.a. *coniecī*, coniectum, *throw together, throw*.
coniectō, 1 v.a. *guess*.
coniectūra, ae, f. *conjecture, guess*.
coniungō, 3 v.a. *bring together*.
cōnor, 1 v.d. *attempt*.
conscendō, 3 v.n. *ascend, get up*.
conscius, a, um, *conscious, feeling guilty*.
consenesco, 3 v.n. *consenui*, grow old. *grow old*.
consequor, 3 v.d. *follow up, attain*.
considerō, 1 v.a. *consider*.
considō, 3 v.n. *considi*, consessum, *sit together*.
consilium, ii, n. *advice, purpose, design*.
consistō, 3 v.n. *be consistent*.
constantia, ae, f. *consistency*.
constituō, 3 v.a. *appoint*.
constō, 1 v.n. *agree, cost; impers. constat, it is agreed*.
consuescō, 3 v.a. and n. *consuevi*, accustom, *be accustomed*.
consuetūdō, inis, f. *custom, habit*.
consulō, 3 v.a. *consului*, consultum, *consult, deliberate, take thought*.
consultātiō, ōnis, f. *deliberation*.
contemno, 3 v.a. *contempsi*, contemptum, *despise*.
contemplor, 1 v.d. *look at, study*.
contemptus, ūs, m. *contempt*.
contentus, a, um, *content*.
contineō, 2 v.a. *contain*.
contingō, 3 v.a. *contigi*, con-

tactum, touch, reach, happen, fall to one's lot.

continuō, adv. forthwith, therefore.

continuō, 1 v.a. continue.

contio, ōnis, f. speech, address.

contionātor, ōris, m. speaker, preacher.

contionor, 1 v.d. harangue, preach.

contrā, prep. with acc. against; adv. on the other hand.

contrahō, 3 v.a. draw together.

contus, ī, m. pole, boat-hook.

convellō, 3 v.a. convelli, convulsum, tear in pieces, shatter.

conveniō, 4 v.a. and n. come together, meet, call on, agree, be agreed, suit.

conviva, ae, m. boon-companion, guest.

convivium, ii, n. banquet, party.

convivō, 3 v.n. live together.

cōpia, ae, f. plenty, opportunity, service.

coquō, 3 v.a. coxi, coctum, cook, roast.

coquus, ī, m. cook.

cor, cordis, n. heart; locative cordi, at heart.

coriārius, ii, m. saddler.

corium, ii, n. skin, hide.

cornū, ūs, n. horn, bugle, end, side.

corōnō, 1 v.a. crown, wreath.

corpus, oris, n. body.

cottidiānus, a, um, daily, ordinary.

cottidiē, adv. every day.

crēdō, 3 v.a. and n. crēdidi, crēditum, entrust, trust, believe.

crescō, 3 v.n. crēvi, increase.

crūdēlis, e, cruel.

cubiculum, ī, n. bedchamber.

cubō, 1 v.n. cubui, cubitum, lie down.

cucullus, ī, m. cuckoo.

culpa, ae, f. sin, blame.

cultus, ūs, m. culture, dress, style.

cum, prep. with abl. with.

cum, conj. when, since.

cunctus, a, um, all together.

cuneus, ī, m. wedge.

cuniculus, ī, m. rabbit.

cupiō, 3 v.a. desire.

cūr, adv. why?

cūra, ae, f. care.

cūrō, 1 v.a. care for, take care of.

currō, 3 v.n. cucurri, cursum, run.

currus, ūs, m. chariot, carriage, coach.

cursus, ūs, m. running, course.

cutis, is, f. skin.

dē, prep. with abl. down from, from, concerning.

dēbeō, 2 v.a. owe, be bound, ought.

decem, indecl. ten.

decennium, ii, n. period of ten years.

deceō, 2 v.a. become, besit.

dēcernō, 3 v.a. dēcrēvi, dēcrētum, decide.

dēcessus, ūs, m. departure, ebbing.

dēcidō, 3 v.a. dēcidi, dēcisum, settle matters, compromise.

dēcidō, 3 v.n. dēcidi, fall down, fall off.

decimus, a, um, tenth; subst. decimae, f. pl. tenth parts, tithes.

decōrus, a, um, becoming, proper.

dēfendō, 3 v.a. defend.

dēferō, v. irreg. dētuli, dēlā-

- tum, carry down, bring down, report, tell tales.
 dēgō, 3 v.a. spend, pass time.
 dēhiscō, 3 v.n. yawn.
 dēiciō, 3 v.a. dēicēi, dēiectum, throw down, bring down.
 dein and deinde, adv. then, next.
 dēlābor, 3 v.n. dēlapsus, glide down.
 dēlectātio, ōnis, f. delight.
 dēlectō, 1 v.a. charm, delight.
 dēlībērō, 1 v.a. deliberate.
 dēlicātus, a, um, charming, luxurious, dainty.
 dēligō, 3 v.a. dēlēgi, dēlectum, choose.
 dēmīttō, 3 v.a. send down, drop down, lower.
 dēnique, adv. lastly.
 dens, dentis, m. tooth.
 dēpingō, 3 v.a. depict, represent.
 dēpōnō, 3 v.a. lay aside.
 describō, 3 v.a. write down, map out, describe.
 dēsīderium, ii, n. regret, want, longing.
 dēsīdō, 3 v.n. sit down, idle.
 dēsīgnō, 1 v.a. mark out.
 dēsīnō, 3 v.a. and n. dēsīi, dēsītum, cease.
 dēsīstō, 3 v.n. leave off.
 despērātus, a, um, desperate.
 despērō, 1 v.n. despair.
 despīciō, 3 v.a. despexi, despectum, look down on, despise.
 dēsūm, v.n. be wanting.
 dēterior, us, meaner, worse.
 deus, i, m. god.
 dēvehō, 3 v.a. carry down.
 dēversōrium, ii, n. inn.
 dēvolvō, 1 v.a. fly down.
 dēvolvō, 3 v.a. roll down.
 dēvoveō, 2 v.a. dēvōvī, dēvōtum, devote.
 dexter, tra, trum, on the right; subst. dextra, ae, f. right hand.
 dicō, 3 v.a. dixi, dictum, say, call.
 dictum, i, n. word, saying, maxim, joke.
 dies, ei, m. and f. in sing., m. in pl. day.
 difficilis, e, difficult, awkward, surly.
 digitus, i, m. finger, toe.
 dignitās, tātis, f. dignity, honour.
 dignor, 1 v.d. think right, deign.
 dignus, a, um, worthy.
 dilābor, 3 v.d. dilapsus, disperse, break up.
 diligenter, adv. carefully.
 diligentia, ae, f. diligence, care.
 diligō, 3 v.a. dilexi, dilectum, love.
 dimidius, a, um, half.
 dimittō, 3 v.a. dismiss.
 dirīgō, 3 v.a. direxi, directum, direct, steer.
 diripiō, 3 v.a. diripuī, direptum, plunder.
 disciplīna, ae, f. study, education, discipline.
 discipulus, i, m. scholar, pupil.
 discō, 3 v.a. didici, learn.
 discrimen, inis, n. danger, crisis, difference.
 disiciō, 3 v.a. disieci, disiectum, throw asunder, tear in pieces.
 dispendium, ii, n. expense, loss.
 dispīciō, 3 v.a. dispexi, dispectum, discern, consider carefully.
 displiceō, 2 v.n. displease, dissatisfy.
 dissentiō, 4 v.n. dissensi, dissensum, disagree, quarrel.

distendō, 3 v.a. *stretch out*.
ditissimus, a, um, *most rich*,
superl. of dives.

dītō, 1 v.a. *enrich*.

diū, adv. *for a long time*;
 comp. **diūtius**, *longer*.

divellō, 3 v.a. *divelli*, *divul-*
sum, *tear apart*.

diversitas, ātis, f. *difference*.

diversus, a, um, *different*.

dives, itis, *rich*.

dividō, 3 v.a. *divisi*, *divisum*,
divide.

divinō, 1 v.a. *guess*, *prophesy*,
divine.

divus, ī, m. *divine being*,
saint.

dō, 1 v.a. *dedi*, *datum*, *give*,
offer, *send*, *cause*.

doceō, 2 v.a. *docui*, *doctum*,
teach, *prove*.

doctor, ōris, m. *teacher*.

doctus, a, um, *learned*.

dolūm, ī, n. *jar*.

dolor, ōris, m. *pain*, *grief*.

dominus, ī, m. *master*, *lord*;
 voc. *domine*, *sir*.

domus, ūs, f. *house*, *home*;
 locative, *domī*, *at home*.

dōnec, conj. *until*.

dōnum, ī, n. *gift*.

dormiō, 4 v.n. *sleep*.

dōs, dōtis, f. *dowry*.

dōtātus, a, um, *provided with*
dowry.

dracō, ōnis, m. *serpent*, *dra-*
gon.

dubitō, 1 v.n. *doubt*, *hesitate*.

dūcō, 3 v.a. *duxi*, *ductum*,
lead, *guide*, *attract*, *marry*,
consider.

dulcēdō, inis, f. *sweetness*.

dulcescō, 3 v.n. *grow sweet*.

dum, conj. *while*, *until*.

duo, ae, o, *two*.

dūrē, adv. *hardly*.

dūrus, a, um, *hard*, *cruel*.

ē and **ex**, prep. with abl. *out*
of, *from*, *according to*, *after*.
ecquis, n. *equid*, pron. interr.
is there any one?

ēdiscō, 3 v.a. *learn thoroughly*.

ēdō, 3 v.a. *ēdidi*, *ēditum*, *pro-*
duce.

edō, v. irreg. *esse*, *ēdi*, *ēsum*,
eat.

effluō, 3 v.n. *flow out*.

effundō, 3 v.a. *pour out*, *upset*.

ego, mei, *I*; **egomet**, *I myself*;
mēcum, *by myself*.

ēgredior, 3 v. d. *egressus*, *walk*
out.

ēgregiē, adv. *excellently*.

ēiciō, 3 v.a. *ēieci*, *ēiectum*,
cast out.

ēlegans, antis, *nice*, *choice*.

ēleganter, adv. *nicely*, *taste-*
fully.

elementum, ī, n. *element*.

ēligō, 3 v.a. *ēlēgi*, *ēlectum*,
pick out.

ēluctor, 1 v. d. *struggle out*.

ēmergō, 3 v.n. *ēmersi*, *emer-*
sum, *rise out*.

emō, 3 v.a. *ēmī*, *emptum*, *buy*.

ēn, interj. *lo!* *behold!*

ēnatō, 1 v.n. *swim out*.

encōmium, īi, n. *eulogy*.

enim, conj. *for*.

eō, 4 v.n. *ivī* or *ii*, *itum*, *go*.

eō, adv. *thither*.

eōdem, adv. *in the same direc-*
tion.

ephippium, īi, n. *horse-cloth*.

eques, itis, m. *horseman*.

equidem, adv. *for my part*,
indeed.

equitō, 1 v.n. *ride*.

equus, ī, m. *horse*.

ergā, prep. with acc. *towards*.

errō, 1 v.n. *wander*, *err*, *be*
wrong.

ēruditiō, ōnis, f. *learning*.

ērudītus, a, um, *learned*.

- erus, i, m. *master*.
 esca, ae, f. *bait*.
 ěsuriō, 4 v.a. and n. *be hungry*.
 et, adv. and conj. *both, and, also, even*.
 etiam, adv. and conj. *also, even, really, still*.
 ěvādō, 3 v.n. *go out, turn out*.
 ěvānesco, 3 v.n. *ěvānui, vanish*.
 ěveniō, 4 v.n. *happen*.
 ex. See ě.
 exanimō, 1 v.a. *terrify, wear out, kill*.
 excidō, 3 v.n. excidī, *fall out, lose*.
 excitō, 1 v.a. *stir up, revive, wake*.
 exclāmō, 1 v.a. *call out*.
 excubiae, ārum, f. pl. *watch, sentry-duty*.
 excutiō, 3 v.a. excussī, excussum, *shake off*.
 exemplum, i, n. *example, model*.
 exerceō, 2 v.a. *exercise, train*.
 exiguus, a, um, *small*.
 eximō, 3 v.a. exēmī, exemptum, *take out*.
 exitium, ii, n. *destruction*.
 exonerō, 1 v.a. *unload, empty*.
 exoptō, 1 v.a. *desire earnestly*.
 exōrātor, ōris, m. *successful envoy*.
 exorior, 4 v.d. exortus, *rise up*.
 exōrō, 1 v.a. *plead successfully*.
 expeditus, a, um, *unencumbered*.
 expergiscor, 3 v.d. experrectus, *be awakened*.
 experientia, ae, f. *experience*.
 experior, 4 v.d. expertus, *try, test*.
 explēō, 2 v.a. explēvī, explētum, *fill up*.
 explicō, 1 v.a. explicāvī or explicuī, explicitum, *unfold, explain*.
 explōrō, 1 v.a. *examine*.
 expōnō, 3 v.a. *put out, explain*.
 expectō, 1 v.a. *wait for, expect*.
 exergeō, 2 v.a. extersī, extersum, *clean out*.
 extorqueō, 2 v.a. extorsī, extortum, *wrest away*.
 extrēmus, a, um, *last, utmost; extrēmum littus, edge of shore*.
 fābula, ae, f. *story, drama*.
 fābulor, 1 v.d. *tell a story*.
 facessō, 3 v.a. *cause*.
 faciēs, ēi, f. *face, appearance*.
 facile, adv. *easily*.
 facilis, e, *easy, ready*.
 faciō, 3 v.a. fēcī, factum, *make, do, practise*.
 faenum, i, n. *hay*.
 fallō, 3 v.a. fefellī, falsum, *deceive, escape notice*.
 falx, falcis, f. *sickle*.
 familiāris, e, *domestic*.
 familiāriter, adv. *in a friendly way*.
 famulus, i, m. *servant*.
 fānum, i, n. *temple, church*.
 fastidiō, 4 v.a. *disdain, dislike*.
 fastidiōsus, a, um, *squeamish, dainty*.
 fateor, 2 v.d. fassus, *confess*.
 fatigō, 1 v.a. *weary*.
 fātum, i, n. *fate*.
 fatuus, a, um, *silly*.
 faveō, 2 v.n. fāvī, fautum, *favour*.
 fēlicitās, tātis, f. *good fortune*.
 fēliciter, adv. *fortunately; comp. fēlicius*.
 fēlix, icis, *lucky, happy*.
 femur, oris, n. *thigh*.

ferō, adv. commonly, nearly,
about.

ferīna, ae, f. game.

fermō, adv. commonly, nearly,
about.

ferō, v. irreg. tuli, lātum,
bear, bring, prompt, report,
say.

ferus, a, um, wild, savage.

fessus, a, um, weary.

festivus, a, um, jovial, jolly,
witty.

fidēlis, e, faithful, loyal.

fidēs, ei, f. faith, belief, pro-
mise.

fidō, 3 v.n. fīsus, trust.

fīlia, ae, f. daughter.

fīlius, ii, m. son.

fīdō, 3 v.a. fīdī, fīssum,
cleave.

fīō, v. irreg. factus, become,
be made.

fīgītum, ii, n. outrage, sin.

fīō, 2 v.a. fīvī, fīctum, weep.

fluctus, ūs, m. wave.

fluitō, 1 v.n. float about.

flūmen, inis, n. river.

foculus, i, m. stove.

focus, i, m. hearth, fire.

fodiō, 3 v.a. fōdī, fossum, dig.

foliis, is, m. bellows.

fons, fontis, m. fountain.

foris, old locative, out of doors,
outside.

forma, ae, f. shape, beauty.

formōsus, a, um, beautiful.

fortis, e, strong, brave.

fortiter, adv. bravely.

fortūna, ae, f. fortune, station.

fortūnātus, a, um, fortunate,
blest.

fortūnō, 1 v.a. prosper, bless.

forum, i, n. forum, market-
place.

forus, i, m. gangway; pl. deck.

frangō, 3 v.a. frēgī, fractum,
break.

frēnum, i, n. bridle, bit.

frequens, entis, frequent,
crowded.

frequenter, adv. frequently,
numerously.

frigidus, a, um, cold, frigid.

frons, frontis, f. forehead, ex-
pression, front.

frūgī, dat. of frux, lit. for
fruit, i.e. useful, honest.

frustrā, adv. in vain.

fugax, ācis, fleeing, fleet,
elusive.

fugīō, 3 v.a. fūgī, flee, escape.

fulciō, 4 v.a. fulsī, fultum,
support.

fungor, 3 v.d. functus, per-
form.

fūnis, is, m. rope.

furcifer, eri, m. yoke-bearer,
hang-dog, rascal.

furtim, adv. by stealth.

fustis, is, m. club, cudgel.

futūrus, a, um, future.

galērus, i, m. cap.

gāneō, ōnis, m. glutton.

garrīō, 4 v.a. chatter.

geminus, a, um, twin, double.

gemma, ae, f. jewel.

generōsus, a, um, well-born,
noble, magnanimous.

gens, gentis, f. race, nation.

genū, ūs, n. knee.

genus, eris, n. birth, family,
kind, type; genus vitae,
profession.

geōgraphicus, a, um, geo-
graphical.

gerō, 3 v.a. gessī, gestum,
bear, carry on, wage, hold,
manage.

gestiō, 4 v.n. desire eagerly.

globus, i, m. mass, ball.

glōria, ae, f. glory.

grandis, e, great, large, grown-
up, old.

- grātia**, ae, *favour, kindness, gratitude*; abl. **grātiā**, *for the sake of* (with gen.); pl. *thanks*; abl. contr. used adverbially, **grātis**, *for nothing*.
grātus, a, um, *pleasant, welcome*.
gravis, e, *heavy, serious, trust-worthy*.
gravō, 1 v.a. *burden*; pass. **gravor**, *be burdened, object, take amiss*.
gregātim, adv. *in flocks, in a body*.
grex, gregis, m. *flock, herd, company*.
gurgēs, itis, m. *whirlpool, spendthrift*.
gypsum, ī, n. *plaster, cement*.
habēna, ae, f. *rein*.
habeō, 2 v.a. *have, involve, hold, consider*; phrases, **bene habet**, *it is well, good!* **sic habet**, *so it is*.
habitus, ūs, m. *bearing, mien*.
hactenus, adv. *thus far, hitherto*.
haesitō, 1 v.n. *hesitate*.
haha and **hahahae**, interj. *ha! ha!*
hāmus, ī, m. *hook*.
harēna, ae, f. *sand*.
harundō, inis, f. *reed, cane*.
hasta, ae, f. *spear, pole*.
hastile, is, n. *javelin, pole*.
haudquāquam, adv. *by no means*.
hauriō, 4 v.a. **hausi**, **haustum**, *drain, drink, let in*.
helluō, ōnis, m. *glutton, squanderer*.
hem, interj. *indeed! well! yes!*
hesternus, a, um, *of yesterday*.
heus, interj. *ho! holla!*
hibernō, 1 v.n. *winter*.
hic or **hic**, **haec**, **hoc**, demonstr. pron. *this*.
hic, adv. *here, hereupon, herein, in this respect*.
hilaris, e, *cheerful, bright*.
hinc, adv. *hence*.
hinnitus, ūs, m. *neighing*.
hiō, 1 v.n. *gape*.
historia, ae, f. *history*.
historicus, ī, m. *historian*.
homō, inis, m. *man, human being, fellow*.
honestus, a, um, *honourable, respectable*.
honōrificus, a, um, *honourable*.
honōs, ōris, m. *honour, esteem, respect*.
hōra, ae, f. *hour*.
hōrologium, īi, n. *clock*.
horrendus, a, um, *dreadful, terrific*.
horrescō, 3 v.n. **horruī**, **shudder**.
hortor, 1 v.d. *exhort*.
hospes, itis, m. *host, guest, visitor*.
hospitium, īi, n. *hospitality, lodging*.
hūc, adv. *hither*.
hūmānitas, ātis, f. *humanity, refinement*.
hūmānus, a, um, *human, humane*.
humus, ī, f. *ground*; locative, **humī**, *on the ground*.
ibi, adv. *there, then*.
idcirco, adv. *therefore*.
Idem, **eadem**, **idem**, *the same, he also*.
ideō, adv. *therefore*.
idōneus, a, um, *fit*.
igitur, conj. *therefore, then*.
ignārus, a, um, *ignorant*.
ignāvus, a, um, *lazy, cowardly*.

igneus, a, um, *fiery*.
 ignis, is, m. *fire*.
 ignōrō, 1 v.a. *be ignorant*.
 ignōtus, a, um, *unknown*.
 Illic, adv. *on the spot*.
 ille, illa, illud, *he, that*.
 illic, adv. *there*.
 illido, 3 v.a. illisi, illisum, *strike against*.
 illinc, adv. *thence, from there*.
 illiterātus, a, um, *unlettered*.
 illūc, adv. *thither*.
 imāgō, inis, f. *picture, likeness*.
 imitor, 1 v.d. *imitate*.
 immemor, oris, *unmindful*.
 immerens, entis, *undeserving*.
 immō, adv. *in truth, yes, nay more, no*.
 immodicus, a, um, *excessive*.
 immoror, 1 v.d. *dwell on*.
 imperātor, ōris, m. *commander, emperor*.
 imperiōsus, a, um, *imperious, arbitrary*.
 imperitus, a, um, *unskilled*.
 imperium, ii, n. *command, empire*.
 impetrō, 1 v.a. *gain by entreaty, obtain*.
 impetus, ūs, m. *onset, attack*.
 impiē, adv. *impiously, unnaturally*.
 impingō, 3 v.a. impēgī, impactum, *dash against*.
 implācābilis, e, *implacable*.
 implōrō, 1 v.a. *entreat*.
 impōnō, 3 v.a. *place upon, impose on, take in*.
 imprecor, 1 v.d. *curse*.
 imprimō, 3 v.a. impressī, impressum, *imprint*.
 improbitās, ātis, f. *wickedness, persistence, restlessness*.
 improbus, a, um, *wicked, persistent, restless*.
 impudens, entis, *shameless, impudent*.

Imus, a, um, *lowest*.
 in, prep. with acc. *into, against, for, till, tending to; with abl. in*.
 inaequālitās, ātis, f. *inequality*.
 inānis, e, *empty, foolish*.
 incandescō, 3 v.n. incandui, *glow, burn*.
 incēdō, 3 v.n. *move, stalk, move slowly*.
 incendō, 3 v.a. *kindle, burn*.
 incidō, 3 v.n. incidi, *fall into*.
 incidō, 3 v.a. incidi, incisum, *cut, cut through*.
 inclinō, 1 v.a. and n. *turn, incline*.
 incola, ae, m. and f. *inhabitant*.
 incolumis, e, *unharmful, safe*.
 incommodum, i, n. *inconvenience, trouble*.
 incredibilis, e, *incredible*.
 incumbō, 3 v.n. incubui, *lean over, attend to*.
 inde, adv. *thence, then*.
 indecōrus, a, um, *unbecoming*.
 indōtātus, a, um, *portionless*.
 inducō, 3 v.a. *bring on, induce*.
 ineō, 4 v.a. *enter, gain*.
 ineptē, adv. *foolishly*.
 infāmis, e, *notorious*.
 infantulus, i, m. *little baby*.
 infigō, 3 v.a. *fix in*.
 ingenium, ii, n. *nature, character, intellect, ability*.
 ingens, entis, *great*.
 ingenuus, a, um, *well-born, well-bred*.
 ingredior, 3 v.d. ingressus, *enter*.
 iniciō, 3 v.a. iniēcī, iniectum, *throw on*.
 inimicus, a, um, *unfriendly, hostile*.
 iniquus, a, um, *unfair*.
 initium, ii, n. *beginning*.
 inīcundus, a, um, *unpleasant*.

- iniūria**, ae, f. *injustice, wrong; nec iniūriā, and quite right too.*
innitor, 3 v.d. *innixus, lean on.*
innoxius, a, um, *innocent.*
inquam, v. def. *inquā, say.*
inquiētus, a, um, *restless, fidgety.*
inquirō, 3 v.a. *search into, enquire.*
insalūbris, e, *unwholesome.*
insāniō, 4 v.n. *be mad.*
insānus, a, um, *mad.*
insectum, i, n. *insect.*
insidior, 1 v.d. *lie in wait for.*
insidiōsus, a, um, *treacherous.*
insignis, e, *remarkable, eminent.*
insigniter, adv. *remarkably.*
inspiciō, 3 v.a. *inspexi, inspectum, look at, examine.*
institutum, i, n. *ordinance, rule of life.*
instō, 1 v.n. *institi, press on, urge.*
instruō, 3 v.a. *instruxi, instructum, furnish.*
insula, ae, f. *island.*
insum, v.n. *be in.*
intelligō, 3 v.a. *intellexi, intellectum, understand.*
intentus, a, um, *intent, fixed.*
inter, prep. with acc. *among, between.*
intereā, adv. *meanwhile.*
intero, 4 v.n. *perish.*
interim, adv. *meanwhile.*
intermittō, 3 v.a. *suspend, neglect.*
intersum, v.n. *take part; impers. interest, there is a difference, it concerns.*
intervallum, i, n. *interval.*
intrā, prep. with acc. *within.*
intus, adv. *inside.*
inveniō, 4 v.a. *find, win.*
invidia, ae, f. *jealousy, ill-will.*
invitō, 1 v.a. *invite.*
ipse, a, um, *self, himself.*
irātus, a, um, *angry.*
is, ea, id, *that, he.*
iste, a, ud, *that, this, that of yours, that by you.*
ita, adv. *so, thus, accordingly.*
itaque, adv. *therefore, accordingly.*
iter, itineris, n. *journey, way.*
iaciō, 3 v.a. *iēci, iactum, throw.*
iactō, 1 v.a. *throw, toss, boast.*
iactūra, ae, f. *throwing overboard, sacrifice.*
iam, adv. *now, already, by this time.*
iamdūdum, adv. *long since.*
iampridem, adv. *long since.*
iēiunō, 1 v.n. *fast, starve.*
iubeō, 2 v.a. *iussi, iussum, order.*
iūcundus, a, um, *pleasant.*
iudicium, ii, n. *judgment, decision.*
iugum, i, n. *yoke.*
iungō, 3 v.a. *iunxi, iunctum, join.*
iūs, iūris, n. *right, justice; abl. iūre, rightly.*
iussum, i, n. *command.*
iustus, a, um, *just.*
iuventūs, ūtis, f. *youth.*
iuvō, 1 v.a. *iūvi, iūtum, help, please.*
iuxtā, prep. with acc. *next to, according to.*
kalendae, ārum, f. pl. *kalends, first day of month.*
labor, ōris, m. *work, toil.*
labōrō, 1 v.n. *work, toil.*
labrum, i, n. *lip.*
lacer, era, erum, *torn, rent, damaged.*

lacrimābundus, a, um, *weeping*.

laedō, 3 v.a. laesi, laesum, *hurt*.

laevus, a, um, *left*; subst. laeva, ae, f. *left hand*.

lāma, ae, f. *slough*.

lanius, i, m. *butcher*.

lappa, ae, f. *burr* (a plant).

laqueus, i, m. *snare*.

largior, 4 v.d. *bestow*.

lassitūdō, inis, f. *weariness*.

lateō, 2 v.n. *be concealed*.

laus, laudis, f. *praise*.

lavō, 1 v.a. lāvī, lautum or lōtum, *wash*; hence lautus, a, um, *elegant, sumptuous*.

laxō, 1 v.a. *slacken*.

lectiō, ōnis, f. *reading, lesson*.

lector, ōris, m. *reader*.

lectus, i, m. *bed*.

lēgātīō, ōnis, f. *embassy, mission*.

lēgātus, i, m. *envoy*.

legō, 3 v.a. lēgī, lectum, *read*.

lentus, a, um, *slow*.

leo, ōnis, m. *lion*.

lepidus, a, um, *charming, fine, witty*.

lepus, oris, m. *hare*.

levis, e, *light, slight*.

libenter, adv. *willingly*.

liber, bri, m. *book*.

liberālis, e, *liberal, generous, refined, dignified*.

liberī, ōrum, m. pl. *children*.

liberō, 1 v.a. *make free, discharge*.

libet, 2 v. impers. *it pleases*.

librō, 1 v.a. *balance, steady*.

licet, 2 v. impers. *it is allowed*.

lignus, a, um, *wooden*.

lignum, i, n. *log, wood*.

ligō, ōnis, m. *hoe, spade*.

lingua, ae, f. *tongue, language*.

littera, ae, f. *letter of alpha-*

bet; pl. *letter, epistle, letters, literature*.

locus, i, m. *place, position, state*.

longē, adv. *far*; comp. longius, *farther*.

longinquus, a, um, *distant*.

longus, a, um, *long*.

loquax, ācis, *talkative*.

loquor, 3 v.d. locūtus, *talk, speak, say*.

lōrum, i, n. *strap*.

lūceō, 2 v.n. *be light, shine*.

lucerna, ae, f. *lamp*.

luctor, 1 v.d. *wrestle, struggle*.

lūdō, 3 v.n. lūsī, lāsūm, *play*.

lūdus, i, m. *play, game, school*.

lūgeō, 2 v.n. luxī, *mourn*.

lumbicus, i, m. *worm*.

lūmen, inis, n. *light*.

lūna, ae, f. *moon*.

lupus, i, m. *wolf*.

luscus, a, um, *one-eyed*.

lūsus, ūs, *play, sport*.

lutum, i, n. *mud*.

lux, lūcis, f. *light*.

macellum, i, n. *meat-market*.

mācerō, 1 v.a. *soak, distress, wear out*.

māciēs (no gen.), f. *leanness*.

macilentus, a, um, *lean*.

mactō, 1 v.a. *slaughter*.

magicus, a, um, *magic*.

magis, adv. *more, rather*.

magistrātus, ūs, m. *magistrate, public office*.

magnificus, a, um, *splendid*.

magnopere, adv. *greatly*.

magnus, a, um, *great*.

māior, māius, *greater*.

male, adv. *badly*.

mālō, v. irreg. mālui, *prefer*.

malum, i, n. *evil, harm*.

malus, a, um, *bad*.

mālus, i, m. *mast*.

- maneō, 2 v.a. and n. *manſi*,
 mansum, remain, wait for.
 mansuefaciō, 3 v.a. *tame*.
 mansuescō, 3 v.n. *grow tame*.
 mantica, ae, f. *bag*.
 manus, ūs, f. *hand*.
 mare, is, n. *sea*.
 margō, inis, m. *edge*.
 māter, tris, f. *mother*.
 māternus, a, um, *of a mother*.
 mātūrē, adv. *in good time*,
 early.
 maximē, adv. *exceedingly*,
 especially, certainly.
 maximus, a, um, *very great*,
 greatest.
 medicīna, ae, f. *medicine*.
 medicus, i, m. *physician*,
 doctor.
 mediocris, e, *moderate, or-*
 ordinary.
 mediocritās, ātis, f. *medio-*
 crity, the mean.
 mediocriter, adv. *moderately*.
 meditor, 1 v.d. *practise*.
 medius, a, um, *middle*; subst.
 medium, i, n. *middle*.
 mōhercule, interj. *by Her-*
 cules, indeed.
 mel, mellis, n. *honey, sweet-*
 ness.
 melior, us, *better*.
 melius, adv. *better*.
 meminī, v. def. *remember*.
 memoria, ae, f. *memory*.
 memoriter, adv. *by heart*,
 accurately.
 mens, mentis, f. *mind*.
 mensa, ae, f. *table*.
 mensis, is, m. *month*.
 mentiō, ōnis, f. *mention*.
 mentior, 4 v.d. *tell lies*.
 mercātor, ōris, m. *merchant*.
 mercātus, ūs, m. *trading*.
 mergus, i, m. *diver (kind of*
 water-fowl).
 meridiēs (nogen.), m. *mid-day*.
 meritum, i, n. *service*.
 merus, a, um, *unmixed, bare*,
 mere.
 merx, mercis, f. *merchandise*;
 pl. *wares*.
 mēta, ae, f. *winning-post*.
 metō, 3 v.a. *messui, messum*,
 mow, reap.
 metus, ūs, m. *fear*.
 meus, mea, meum, *my*.
 micō, 1 v.n. *micui, move*
 quickly, shine.
 migrō, 1 v.n. *depart*.
 miles, itis, m. *soldier*.
 militāris, e, *military*.
 militāriter, adv. *soldierlike*.
 militia, ae, f. *military service*.
 mille, pl. *milia, a thousand*.
 minimē, adv. *least, in the*
 least, no!
 minor, us, *smaller, less*.
 minimus, a, um, *smallest*,
 least.
 ministrō, 1 v.a. *supply*.
 minus, adv. *less*.
 miror, 1 v.d. *wonder, admire*.
 mirus, a, um, *wonderful*.
 miser, era, erum, *wretched*.
 miseret, 2 v. *impers. it dis-*
 tresses, it excites pity.
 miseria, ae, f. *wretchedness*.
 mītescō, 3 v.n. *become gentle*.
 mītis, e, *gentle*.
 mittō, 3 v.a. *misi, missum*,
 send.
 moderātiō, ōnis, f. *moderation*,
 self-control.
 moderātus, a, um, *moderate*,
 well-regulated.
 moderor, 1 v.d. *control*.
 modestē, adv. *in subdued tone*.
 modestus, a, um, *sober, re-*
 served, subdued.
 modo, adv. *only, just, just*
 now; conj. provided that.
 modus, i, m. *manner*.
 molestia, ae, f. *annoyance*.

- molestus**, a, um, *annoying, worrying.*
mollescō, 3 v.n. *become soft.*
mōmentum, ī, n. *weight, influence.*
monachus, ī, m. *monk.*
monasterium, ii, n. *monastery.*
moneō, 2 v.a. *advise, warn.*
mons, montis, m. *mountain.*
monstrō, 1 v.a. *show.*
monstrum, ī, n. *portent, prodigy.*
mora, ae, f. *delay.*
morbus, ī, m. *disease.*
mordeō, 2 v.a. *momordī, morsum, bite.*
morior, 3 v.d. *mortuus, die.*
mors, mortis, f. *death.*
mortālis, e, *mortal.*
mōs, mōris, m. *custom, bent, caprice; pl. manners, habits, character.*
moveō, 2 v.a. *mōvī, mōtum, move, wag.*
mox, adv. *soon, presently, next, afterwards.*
mulier, eris, f. *woman.*
multitūdō, inis, f. *multitude.*
multus, a, um, *much; pl. many; subst. multum, ī, n. much; phrases, multa lux, high day, multa nox, dead of night.*
mundus, ī, m. *world, universe.*
mūnus, eris, n. *office, gift, offering.*
murmurō, 1 v.n. *murmur.*
mūrus, ī, m. *wall.*
mūs, mūris, m. and f. *mouse.*
mūtātiō, ōnis, f. *change.*
mūtō, 1 v.a. *change.*
mūtūō, adv. *by borrowing, mutually.*
mūtūus, a, um, *mutual.*
nam, conj. *for.*
nanciscor, 3 v.d. *nactus, light upon, obtain.*
narrō, 1 v.a. *tell, relate.*
nascor, 3 v.d. *nātus, be born.*
nātālis, e, *of birth.*
natātiō, ōnis, f. *swimming.*
nātiō, ōnis, f. *tribe, people.*
nātīvitās, ātis, f. *birth.*
natō, 1 v.n. *swim.*
nātus, -ūs, m. *birth, only used in abl. sing.*
nauclērus, ī, m. *sea-captain, skipper.*
naufragium, ii, n. *shipwreck.*
nauta, ae, m. *sailor, seaman.*
nauticus, a, um, *naval.*
nāvigō, 1 v.n. *sail.*
nāvis, is, f. *ship.*
nē, conj. *lest, that not, not; nē...quidem, not even.*
ne, enclitic mark of *interrogation, whether.*
nec and neque, conj. *neither, nor, not either.*
necessitās, ātis, f. *necessity.*
negō, 1 v.a. *deny, refuse.*
negōtiātiō, ōnis, f. *business.*
negōtiātor, ōris, m. *business man.*
negōtiōr, 1 v.d. *carry on business.*
negōtium, ii, n. *business, trouble.*
nēmō (pl. and abl. and gen. sing. borrowed from *nullus*), *no one.*
nepōs, ōtis, m. *grandson, prodigal.*
nēquāquam, adv. *by no means.*
nēquiquam, adv. *in vain.*
nesciō, 4 v.a. *be ignorant; nesciō quis, I know not who, some one.*
neu, conj. *and not, and lest.*
nī, conj. *if not, unless.*
nīdus, ī, m. *nest.*
niger, gra, grum, *black.*

- nihil and *nīl*, indecl. n. *nothing*; *nōn nihil*, *something*;
nihil nōn, *anything*.
nihilum, *ī*, n. *nothing*.
nīmīrum, adv. *doubtless*.
nisi, conj. *if not, unless*.
niteō, 2 v.n. *shine, look bright, look spruce*.
nitor, 3 v.d. *nixus* and *nīsus*, *lean, depend, strive*.
nōbillis, e, *famous, noble*; subst. *nobleman*.
noceō, 2 v.n. *hurt*.
nōlō, v. irreg. *nōlūi*, be *unwilling*.
nōmen, *inis*, n. *name*.
nōminō, 1 v.a. *mention, call*.
nōn, adv. *not, no!*
nondum, adv. *not yet*.
nonne, interr. adv. *not?*
nonnullus, a, um, *some*.
nonnunquam, adv. *sometimes*.
noscō, 3 v.a. *come to know, discern*; pf. *nōvī*, *know*.
noster, *stra*, *strum*, *our*.
novus, a, um, *new, fresh, strange*.
nox, *noctis*, f. *night*.
nūbilus, a, um, *cloudy, gloomy*.
nūdus, a, um, *naked, destitute*.
nūgātor, *ōris*, m. *trifler*.
nūgax, *ācis*, *trifling, frivolous*.
nullus, a, um, *not any, none*.
num, interr. adv. *then? now? whether?*
numerō, 1 v.a. *count out, pay*.
numerus, *ī*, m. *number*.
nummus, *ī*, m. *coin, money*.
nunc, adv. *now*.
nuncupō, 1 v.a. *call by name, vow*.
nunquam, adv. *never*.
nuntiō, 1 v.a. *announce*.
nūper, adv. *lately*.
nusquam, adv. *nowhere*.
nūtrix, *icis*, f. *nurse*.
nux, *nucis*, f. *nut*.
ō, interj. *oh!*
ob, prep. with acc., *on account of*.
obducō, 3 v.a. *draw over, cover*.
obeō, 4 v.a. *obivī* or *obiī*, *go over, traverse, die*.
obicīō, 3 v.a. *obicī*, *obiectum*, *throw against, expose, taunt*.
obliviscor, 3 v.d. *oblitus*, *forget*.
obnitor, 3 v.d. *obnixus*, *battle against*.
obnoxius, a, um, *subservient, at the mercy of*.
oborior, 4 v.d. *obortus*, *rise up*.
obsecrō, 1 v.a. *entreat*.
obstō, 1 v.n. *obstiti*, *oppose, prevent*.
obvius, a, um, *in the way, meeting*.
occāsus, *ūs*, m. *setting*.
occidō, 3 v.a. *occidī*, *occisum*, *kill*.
occipitium, *īi*, n. *back of the head*.
occulō, 3 v.a. *occului*, *occul-tum*, *conceal*.
occultō, 1 v.a. *conceal*.
occupō, 1 v.a. *seize, attack, fill, occupy*.
occurrō, 3 v.n. *meet, present oneself, occur*.
occursus, *ūs*, m. *meeting*.
ocius, adv. *more quickly*.
ocrea, *ae*, f. *gaiter*.
octō, indecl. *eight*.
oculus, *ī*, m. *eye*.
odī, v. def. *hate*.
oenopōla, *ae*, m. *wine-mer-chant*.
offendō, 3 v.a. *strike against, light upon, find, stumble, come to grief, offend*.
offerō, v. irreg. *obtuli*, *oblātum*, *offer*.
ohē, interj. *oh! enough! stop!*

- oleum, i, n. oil.
 ōlim, adv. once on a time, formerly, long ago.
 omnis, e, all, every.
 onus, eris, n. load, burden.
 onustus, a, um, laden.
 opem, opis (no nom. or dat. sing.), aid, help; pl. opēs, power, resources, wealth, goods.
 opera, ae, f. work, effort, service, attention.
 oplmus, a, um, fat, rich.
 opinor, 1 v.d. think, deem.
 oportet, 2 v. impers. it behoves, it is becoming.
 opperor, 4 v.d. oppertus, wait for.
 oppōnō, 3 v.a. put in the way.
 optimus, a, um, best.
 optō, 1 v. a. desire.
 opus, eris, n. work, business, need, want.
 ōrātiō, ōnis, f. speech, language.
 ōrātor, ōris, m. pleader, envoy, speaker.
 orbis, is, m. circle, earth, world.
 orbus, a, um, childless.
 ordō, inis, m. row, rank, order.
 ornō, 1 v.a. furnish, adorn, make the best of.
 ōrō, 1 v.a. plead, pray, beg.
 ōs, ōris, n. mouth, face.
 oscitō, 1 v.n. yawn.
 ostentātiō, ōnis, f. display, pomp.
 ostentō, 1 v.a. show, parade.
 ōtiōsus, a, um, at leisure.
 ōtium, ii, n. leisure.
 ovillus, a, um, of sheep, of mutton.
 pābulum, i, n. food, fodder.
 pactum, i, n. manner, means.
 paene, adv. nearly, almost.
 paenitet, 2 v. impers. it repents, it grieves.
 palātium, ii, n. palace.
 palātum, i, n. palate, taste.
 pallēō, 2 v.n. be pale, turn pale.
 pallium, ii, n. cloak.
 pallor, ōris, m. paleness.
 pānis, is, m. bread.
 pannārius, a, um, of cloth.
 pannus, i, cloth.
 pāpillō, ōnis, m. butterfly.
 pār, paris, equal, suitable, right.
 parcō, 3 v.a. pepercī, spare, refrain from.
 parcus, a, um, sparing, thrifty.
 pardus, i, m. panther.
 parens, entis, m. and f. parent.
 pariō, 3 v.a. peperī, partum, bring forth, gain.
 pariter, adv. equally.
 parō, 1 v.a. prepare, procure, gain.
 pars, partis, f. part, side.
 partim, adv. partly; esp. substantively, some, others.
 partior, 4 v.d. share, divide.
 parum, adv. and indecl. subst. too little, little.
 parvus, a, um, small, little.
 pascō, 3 v.a. pāvī, pastum, feed; pass. feed oneself.
 passus, ūs, m. pace, double-step (= 5 feet).
 pater, tris, m. father.
 patior, 3 v.d. passus, suffer, endure, allow.
 patria, ae, f. fatherland, country.
 paucī, ae, a, few; n. abl. paucis (verbis), in a few words.
 paulisper, adv. for a little while.
 paulum, i, n. a little.

- pavidus**, a, um, *panic-stricken, nervous.*
pavor, ōris, *dread, nervousness.*
pax, pācis, f. *peace, grace, favour.*
peccō, 1 v.a. *sin.*
pectō, 3 v.a. pexī, pexum, *comb.*
pecūnia, ae, f. *money.*
pecus, udīs, f. *animal, beast, sheep.*
pedes, itis, m. *one that goes on foot.*
pēior, us, *worse.*
pellis, is, f. *skin.*
pellō, 3 v.a. pepulī, pulsum, *drive, expel.*
pendō, 3 v.a. pependī, pen-sum, *weigh, pay.*
penetrō, 1 v.a. *penetrate.*
penitus, adv. *far within, thoroughly.*
per, prep. with acc. *through, by means of, during; per sē, of himself.*
percipio, 3 v.a. percēpī, perceptum, *grasp, perceive.*
percontor, 1 v.d. *question, enquire.*
perditē, adv. *desperately.*
perdō, 3 v.a. perdidī, perditum, *lose, ruin.*
peregrinātiō, ōnis, f. *travel, pilgrimage.*
pereō, 4 v.n. periī, *be lost, perish.*
perficiō, 3 v.a. perfēcī, perfectum, *perform, finish.*
perfluō, 3 v.n. *flow through, leak.*
pergō, 3 v.n. perrexī, perrec-tum, *go on, proceed.*
periclitor, 1 v.d. *run into danger.*
periculosus, a, um, *dangerous.*
periculum, ī, n. *danger, trial.*
perinde, adv. *equally, in like manner.*
peritus, a, um, *skilled.*
perniciēs, ēī, f. *ruin.*
perniciōsus, a, um, *ruinous.*
perpendō, 3 v.a. *weigh carefully.*
perpetuō, adv. *continuously.*
perpetuus, a, um, *unbroken, continuous.*
persequor, 3 v.d. *follow up, pursue.*
persuādēō, 2 v.a. persuāsi, persuāsum, *convince; persuade.*
pertrahō, 3 v.a. *draw along, drag safe.*
pertundō, 3 v.a. pertundi, pertūsum, *perforate.*
pervenio, 4 v.a. *come safe.*
pēs, pedis, m. *foot.*
petō, 3 v.a. petivī and petiī, petitum, *seek, ask.*
philomathēs (Greek word), *fond of learning.*
piē, adv. *dutifully, religiously.*
pietās, ātis, f. *devotion, piety.*
piger, gra, grum, *slow, lazy.*
piget, 2 v. impers. *it irks, it disgusts.*
pigritia, ae, f. *laziness.*
pilleus, ī, m. *cap, hat.*
pingō, 3 v.a. pinxi, pictum, *paint, draw.*
pinguis, e, *fat.*
piscis, is, m. *fish.*
piscor, 1 v.d. *fish.*
pīus, a, um, *dutiful, affectionate, pious.*
placenta, ae, f. *cake.*
placeō, 2 v.n. *please, satisfy; impers. placet, it is agreed.*
placidē, adv. *calmly.*
placidus, a, um, *calm.*
plāgōsus, a, um, *fond of whipping.*

plānē, adv. *clearly, entirely, quite.*

plēbēius, a, um, *plebeian, of the common people.*

plēnus, a, um, *full.*

plērique, plēraque, plēraque, most.

plērumque, adv. *generally.*

plumbum, i, n. *lead.*

plūrimus, a, um, *very much; pl. very many, most.*

plūs, plūris, n. in sing. *more; pl. plūrēs, plūra, more.*

pluvia, ae, f. *rain, shower.*

poēta, ae, m. *poet.*

polliceor, 2 v.d. *promise.*

pollicitātiō, ōnis, f. *promise.*

polymathēs (Greek word), *very learned.*

pondus, eris, n. *weight.*

pōnō, 3 v.a. *posuī, positum, place.*

porrigō, 3 v.a. *porrexī, porrectum, stretch out.*

porrō, adv. *onward, far, more-over.*

porrum, i, n. *leek.*

portō, 1 v.a. *bear, carry.*

poscō, 3 v.a. *poposci, beg, demand.*

possum, v. irreg. *potuī, be able, have power.*

post, prep. with acc. *after; adv. afterwards.*

posthāc, adv. *after this, hence-forth.*

postquam, conj. *after that.*

postulō, 1 v.a. *ask, demand.*

pōtiō, ōnis, f. *draught, dose, drug.*

potissimum, adv. *especially, above all.*

pōtiō, 1 v.a. *drink frequently.*

potius, adv. *rather.*

pōtō, 1 v.a. *drink.*

prae, prep. with abl. *before, in front of, because of, com-*

pared with; prae sē ferō, display.

praebeō, 2 v.a. *offer, show, give.*

praecedō, 3 v.n. *go before.*

praeceps, praecipitis, head-long, *hurried, forward.*

praeceptor, ōris, m. *teacher.*

praecipio, 3 v.a. *praecēpi, praecēptum, teach.*

praecipitō, 1 v.a. *throw down, hurry.*

praecipuus, a, um, *chief, special.*

praecelārus, a, um, *distinguished, famous.*

praeco, ōnis, m. *crier.*

praeda, ae, f. *booty.*

praedicō, 1 v.a. *proclaim, preach.*

praedicō, 3 v.a. *prophecy.*

praediolum, i, n. *small estate.*

praemium, i, n. *reward, prize.*

praesāgiō, 4 v.a. *forbode, presage.*

praescribō, 3 v.a. *prescribe, fix.*

praesens, entis, *present, ready.*

praesens, illis, n. and f. *guardian, patron.*

praesidium, ii, n. *protection, support.*

praestō, 1 v.a. *praestiti, surpass, guarantee; impers. praestat, it is better.*

praeter, prep. with acc. *besides, except.*

praeterea, adv. *besides.*

praetereō, 4 v.a. *go by, pass.*

praeteritus, a, um, *past.*

praeternittō, 3 v.a. *neglect.*

prandeō, 2 v.n. *prandi and pransus sum, dine.*

prandium, ii, n. *early dinner.*

precor, 1 v.d. *pray.*

pretiosus, a, um, *costly.*

pretium, ii, n. *price, pay.*

prīmō, adv. *at first, first.*
prīum, adv. *at first, first, for the first time.*
prīmus, a, um, *first; in prīmīs, in particular, chiefly, first of all; prīma lux, daybreak.*
princeps, cipis, *first, chief; as subst. leader, sovereign, monarch.*
prior, us, *former, previous.*
prīus, adv. *before, sooner.*
prīusquam, conj. *before that.*
prīvātus, a, um, *private, unofficial.*
prō, prep. with abl. *in front of, for, on behalf of, in proportion to, instead of.*
prōbē, adv. *rightly, well, bravo!*
prōbō, 1 v.a. *approve; probātus, tested, choice.*
probrum, i, n. *disgrace, reproach.*
prōcēdō, 3 v.n. *proceed, progress.*
procul, adv. *far off.*
prōcumbō, 3 v.n. *fall prostrate.*
prōcurrō, 3 v.n. *run forward.*
prōdeō, 4 v.n. *prōdī, prōditum, go forth.*
proellum, i, n. *battle.*
profānus, a, um, *profane, not sacred.*
profectō, adv. *indeed, certainly.*
prōferō, v. irreg. *prōtulī, prōlātum, produce, utter.*
proficiscor, 3 v.d. *profectus, set out.*
profundus, a, um, *deep.*
prohibeō, 2 v.a. *hinder, prevent.*
prōiciō, 3 v.a. *prōiēcī, prōiectum, fling away.*
proinde, adv. *therefore, accordingly.*

prōmicō, 1 v.n. *prōmicui, dart forward.*
prōmittō, 3 v.a. *promise.*
prōmoveō, 2 v.a. *move forward, advance.*
promptus, ūs, m. *readiness; only in phrase in promptū, in readiness.*
prōnuntiō, 1 v.a. *announce.*
prope, adv. *near, nearly; comp. propius, nearer.*
prōpellō, 3 v.a. *prōpuli, prōpulsum, drive forward.*
propemodum, adv. *near the mark.*
properē, adv. *hastily.*
properō, 1 v.a. *hasten.*
prōpōnō, 3 v.a. *put forward, offer.*
prōpositum, i, n. *design, purpose.*
propriē, adv. *peculiarly, especially.*
propterea, adv. *therefore.*
prōra, ae, f. *prow.*
prorsus, adv. *entirely, absolutely.*
prospectus, ūs, m. *look-out, view.*
prospiciō, 3 v.a. *prospexī, prospectum, look out, see before one, arrange.*
prōtinus, adv. *forthwith.*
prōtrūdō, 3 v.a. *thrust forward.*
prōvehō, 3 v.a. *carry forward, advance.*
proverbium, ī, n. *proverb.*
prūdēns, entis, *wise, prudent.*
prūdentē, adv. *wisely, sensibly.*
prūdentia, ae, f. *wisdom, prudence.*
pūblicus, a, um, *of the state, public.*
pudet, 2 v. impers. *it shames.*
puella, ae, f. *girl.*

puer, eri, m. boy, babe.

pugil, ilis, m. boxer.

pugnō, 1 v.n. fight.

pulcher, chra, chrum, beautifully, fine.

pulchrē, adv. beautifully, splendidly.

pullātus, a, um, clad in black.

pullus, a, um, dusky, black.

pūmex, icis, m. pumice-stone.

punctum, i, n. point.

puppis, is, f. stern.

purgō, 1 v.a. clean.

putō, 1 v.a. and n. think.

quā, adv. where.

quadrāgintā, indecl. forty.

quadrigae, ārum, f. pl. four-in-hand.

quaerō, 3 v.a. quaesivī, quaesitum, seek, enquire, ask for.

quaesō, 3 v. def. beg, pray.

quaestus, ūs, m. profit, business.

quam, adv. how, as, than.

quamquam, conj. although, and yet.

quamvis, conj. although.

quandō, interr. adv. when? conj. when, since; si quandō, if ever.

quantus, a, um, how great? as great as.

quantumvis, adv. however much.

quārē, adv. wherefore.

quartus, a, um, fourth.

quasi, adv. as if.

quattuor, indecl. four.

quattuordecim, indecl. fourteen.

que, enclitic conj. both, and.

quemadmodum, adv. how? just as.

queō, v. irreg. quivī, be able.

quercus, ūs, f. oak.

qui, quae, quod, who.

quia, conj. because.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever.

quid, adv. interr. why?

quidam, quaedam, quoddam, a certain one, somebody.

quidem, adv. indeed, at least, yes!

quidnī, adv. interr. why not?

quiescō, 3 v.n. quievī, quietum, rest.

quinam, quoenam, quidnam, who pray?

quīnquāgintā, indecl. fifty.

quintus, a, um, fifth.

quippe, conj. by all means, indeed, for; quippe qui (with subj.), inasmuch as he....

quis or qui, qua or quae, quid or quod, pron. interr. who?

quispiam, quaeiam, quodpiam, any one.

quisquam, n. quidquam, any one.

quisque, quaeque, quidque, each.

quisquis, n. quidquid, whoever.

quivīs, quaevis, quidvis, any you please.

quō, adv. whither; conj. in order that.

quod, conj. because; quod si, but if.

quōminus, conj. that...not.

quōmodo, adv. how?

quōnam, adv. whither pray?

quoniam, conj. since.

quoque, conj. also, too.

quot, indecl. how many? as many as.

quotiens, adv. how often? as often as.

rāna, ae, f. frog.

rapiō, 3 v.a. rapui, raptum, seize, hurry away, plunder.

- rārō, adv. *seldom*.
 ratiō, ōnis, f. *account, method, way, plan, reason*.
 recipiō, 3 v.a. recēpi, receptum, *receive, betake*.
 recitō, 1 v.a. *read aloud, repeat aloud*.
 reconciliō, 1 v.a. *reconcile*.
 reconditus, a, um, *hidden, abstruse*.
 recreō, 1 v.a. *restore, recruit*.
 rectē, adv. *rightly*.
 rectus, a, um, *straight, up-right, right*.
 recurō, 3 v.n. recurri, recursum, *run back, return*.
 recusō, 1 v.a. *refuse*.
 reddō, 3 v.a. reddidi, redditum, *give back, give up, render, repeat*.
 redō, 4 v.n. redii, reditum, *return*.
 reditus, ūs, m. *return, revenue*.
 referō, v. irreg. rettuli, relatum, *bring back, repeat, relate*.
 refert, v. impers. *it is important*.
 refrigerō, 1 v.a. *make cool*.
 regiō, ōnis, f. *region, country*.
 regnum, i, n. *kingdom, monarchy, rule*.
 religiō, ōnis, f. *scruple, devoutness, religion*.
 religiōsus, a, um, *scrupulous, religious*.
 relinquo, 3 v.a. reliqui, relictum, *leave, leave behind*.
 reliquus, a, um, *left, remaining*.
 remedium, ii, n. *remedy*.
 rēmigō, 1 v.n. *row*.
 remoror, 1 v.d. *hinder, delay*.
 rēmus, i, m. *oar*.
 renuntiō, 1 v.a. *report, renounce*.
 repellō, 3 v.a. reppuli, repulsum, *repulse*.
 reperio, 4 v.a. repperi, reperitum, *find, discover*.
 repetō, 3 v.a. *seek again, resume, go over again*.
 reprehendō, 3 v.a. *seize, check, reprove*.
 repūlescō, 3 v.n. *grow young again*.
 requiēs, ētis, f. *rest*.
 rēs, rei, f. *thing, matter, business, property, advantage, reality*.
 resido, 3 v.n. resēdi, *sit down, settle down*.
 resistō, 3 v.n. restiti, *stop, resist*.
 respondeō, 2 v.a. respondi, responsum, *answer*.
 restitui, 3 v.a. *restore*.
 restō, 1 v.n. *remain*.
 rēte, is, n. *net*.
 revellō, 3 v.a. revelli, revulsum, *pluck off, tear away*.
 revertō, 3 v.a. reverti, reversum, *turn back; pass. revertor, return*.
 revisō, 3 v.a. *see again, revisit*.
 revocō, 1 v.a. *call back*.
 rex, rēgis, m. *king*.
 rideō, 2 v.n. risi, risum, *laugh*.
 ridiculus, a, um, *laughable*.
 rigeō, 2 v.n. *be stiff*.
 rima, ae, f. *crack, chink*.
 ripa, ae, f. *bank*.
 rōbigō, inis, f. *rust, mildew, mould*.
 rōbustus, a, um, *strong, lusty*.
 rogō, 1 v.a. *ask*.
 rudens, entis, m. *rope*.
 rūgōsus, a, um, *wrinkled*.
 rumpō, 3 v.a. rūpi, ruptum, *break, burst*.
 rursus, adv. *again*.
 rusticatiō, ōnis, f. *country life*.

rusticus, a, um, *rustic, rural.*

sacer, cra, crum, *sacred, holy.*

sacerdōs, ōtis, m. *priest.*

sacerdōtium, ii, n. *priesthood.*

sacrilegium, ii, n. *sacrilege.*

saeculum, i, n. *age, century.*

saepe, adv. *often.*

saepenumerō, adv. *oftentimes.*

saevitia, ae, f. *barbarity, cruelty.*

saevus, a, um, *barbarous, cruel.*

salū, 4 v.n. salui, saltum, jump.

salsus, a, um, *salt.*

saltem, adv. *at least.*

saltus, ūs, *jumping, jump.*

salūs, ūtis, f. *health, safety.*

salūtāris, e, *wholesome, beneficial.*

salūtō, 1 v.a. greet, salute, take leave of.

salvē, 2 v.n. be well, be in good health; imper. salvē, hail!

sanctimōnia, ae, f. *holiness.*

sanctus, a, um, *sacred, holy.*

sānē, adv. *certainly, indeed, yes.*

sānus, a, um, *sound, healthy.*

sapiens, entis, *wise.*

sapientia, ae, f. *wisdom.*

sapiō, 3 v.n. have taste, be wise.

sarcina, ae, f. *bundle, baggage.*

sarciō, 4 v.a. sarsi, sartum, patch, mend, make good.

sartor, ōris, m. *mender.*

satiētās, ātis, f. *satiety, disgust, weariness.*

satis and sat, indecl. n. subst. and adv. *enough, sufficient, sufficiently, quite.*

satur, ura, urum, *full, sated.*

saxum, i, n. *rock, stone.*

scaena, ae, f. *scene.*

scapha, ae, f. *boat.*

scelerātus, a, um, *wicked, infamous.*

scelestus, a, um, *wicked, infamous.*

scelus, eris, n. *crime, sin.*

scilicet, adv. *of course, forsooth, namely.*

sciō, 4 v.a. *know.*

scōpulus, i, m. *rock.*

scribō, 3 v.a. scripsi, scriptum, write.

scrinium, ii, n. *case, chest.*

sē and sēsē, sui, reflexive pron. *himself, themselves.*

sector, i v.d. chase, hunt.

secundus, a, um, *second.*

sēcūrus, a, um, *free from care, untroubled.*

secus, adv. *otherwise.*

sed, conj. *but.*

sedeō, 2 v.n. sēdī, sessum, sit.

sēdulō, adv. *carefully, zealously.*

segnis, e, *slow, lazy.*

segniter, adv. *slowly, lazily.*

sēlectus, a, um, *selected, choice.*

sella, ae, f. *seat, chair.*

semel, adv. *once, once for all.*

semper, adv. *always.*

senectūs, tūtis, f. *old age.*

senescō, 3 v.n. senui, grow old.

senex, senis, *old; subst. old man.*

seniculus, i, m. *little old man, dear old gentleman.*

senium, ii, n. *old age, decline.*

sensus, ūs, m. *feeling, habit of mind, sense.*

sententia, ae, f. *opinion, thought, wish.*

sentiō, 4 v.a. sensi, sensum, feel, see.

septem, indecl. *seven.*

septuāgintā, indecl. *seventy.*

sequor, 3 v.d. secutus, follow.

- serēnus, a, um, *clear, calm.*
 sēricus, a, um, *of silk.*
 seriēs (no gen.), f. *row, series.*
 sēriō, adv. *seriously.*
 sermō, ōnis, m. *conversation, discourse.*
 servō, 1 v.a. *save, preserve.*
 sevērus, a, um, *strict, austere.*
 sex, indecl. *six.*
 sexāgintā, indecl. *sixty.*
 si, conj. *if; si quidem, since.*
 sic, adv. *so, thus.*
 siccitās, ātis, f. *dryness.*
 siccus, a, um, *dry*; subst. *siccum, ī, n. dry ground.*
 sicine, interr. adv. *in this way?*
 silex, icis, m. *flint, stone.*
 silva, ae, f. *wood, forest.*
 similis, e, *like.*
 simplex, icis, *simple.*
 simul, adv. *at the same time, together*; simul ac, *as soon as.*
 simulō, 1 v.a. *pretend.*
 sine, prep. with abl. *without.*
 singuli, ae, a, pl. *individuals, one each, single.*
 sinō, 3 v.a. sivi, situm, *allow.*
 sinus, ūs, m. *bosom.*
 sitiens, entis, *thirsting.*
 situs, ūs, m. *rust, mould.*
 situs, a, um (pl. part. of sinō), *placed*; situm est, *it depends.*
 sōberius, a, um, *sober, temperate.*
 socius, ii, m. *comrade, mate.*
 sodālicium, ii, n. *companion-ship.*
 sodālis, is, m. *comrade, crony.*
 sōl, sōlis, m. *sun.*
 solācium, ii, n. *comfort, consolation.*
 solea, ae, f. *sole, shoe.*
 soleō, 2 v.n. solitus, *be wont, be accustomed.*
 solitārius, a, um, *solitary, isolated.*
 solitūdō, inis, f. *solitude.*
 sollicitus, a, um, *troubled, worried.*
 solstitium, ii, n. *solstice.*
 solum, ī, n. *soil, ground.*
 sōlus, a, um, *alone, lonely.*
 solvō, 3 v.a. solvi, solūtum, *loosen, breakup, release, melt.*
 somniātor, ōris, m. *dreamer.*
 somnium, ii, n. *dream.*
 somnus, ī, m. *sleep.*
 sōpiō, 4 v.a. *lull, make unconscious.*
 sors, sortis, f. *lot, share, capital.*
 spatium, ii, n. *space, room.*
 specimen, inis, n. *example.*
 spectātor, ōris, m. *spectator.*
 spēlunca, ae, f. *cave.*
 spērō, 1 v.a. and n. *hope, expect.*
 spēs, ei, f. *hope.*
 sphaera, ae, f. *globe, ball.*
 splendidō, adv. *magnificently.*
 splendor, ōris, m. *honour, dignity.*
 spolia, ōrum, n. pl. *spoils, booty.*
 spoliō, 1 v.a. *plunder, rob.*
 spondeō, 2 v.a. sponendi, *sponsum, promise, give security.*
 sponsor, ōris, m. *surety.*
 stadium, ii, n. *race-course.*
 statim, adv. *straightway, immediately.*
 status, ūs, m. *position, posture, condition.*
 stertō, 3 v.n. *snore.*
 stipulor, 1 v.d. *bargain, engage.*
 stō, 1 v.n. steti, statum, *stand.*
 stomachus, ī, *temper, displeasure.*
 strēnuš, adv. *vigorously.*
 strēnuus, a, um, *active, vigorous.*

streptus, ūs, m. *clatter, din.*
 studeō, 2 v.a. *pursue, desire, study.*

studium, ii, n. *eagerness, study, pursuit.*

stultus, a, um, *foolish.*

suādeō, 2 v.a. suāsī, suāsum, *urge, persuade.*

suāvis, e, *sweet, pleasant.*

suāviter, adv. *pleasantly; comp. suavius.*

sub, prep. with acc. *under, about, just before, just after; with abl. under.*

subducō, 3 v.a. *withdraw.*

sūber, eris, n. *cork.*

subitō, adv. *suddenly.*

subitus, a, um, *sudden.*

sublevō, 1 v.a. *support, lighten.*

sublustris, e, *dull, overcast.*

submergō, 3 v.a. submersī, submersum, *submerge.*

succēdō, 3 v.n. *come next, succeed, prosper; impers. succēdit, it prospers.*

sūdō, 1 v.n. *sweat, toil.*

sūdor, ōris, m. *sweat, toil.*

sufficiō, 3 v.n. suffeci, *suffectum, suffice, satisfy, be equal to.*

suggestus, ūs, m. *platform, pulpit.*

suillus, a, um, *of swine, of pork.*

sum, v.n. fui, *be, exist.*

summa, ae, f. *chief thing, sum, amount.*

summus, a, um, *highest; summus mālus, top of mast.*

sūmō, 3 v.a. sumpsī, sump-tum, *take.*

supellex, supellectilis, f. *furniture.*

superī, ōrum, m. pl. *gods above.*

superstitiō, ōnis, f. *superstition.*

supersum, v.n. *be left, remain.*

suppeditō, 1 v.a. *supply.*

surdus, a, um, *deaf.*

surgō, 3 v.n. surrexī, sur-rectum, *rise, get up.*

suspendium, ii, n. *hanging.*

suspendō, 3 v.a. *hang.*

suspīcor, 1 v.d. *suspect, surmise.*

suus, a, um, *his own.*

tabella, ae, f. *tablet, little plank.*

tabula, ae, f. *plank, chart, map; pl. deck.*

taceō, 2 v.n. *be silent.*

tacitē, adv. *silently.*

taedium, ii, n. *weariness, disgust.*

tālis, e, *such, of such kind.*

tam, adv. *so, so much.*

tamen, adv. *yet, however.*

tandem, adv. *at length; in questions, pray, I beg.*

tangō, 3 v.a. tetigī, tactum, *touch, affect.*

tantulus, a, um, *so little; subst. tantulum, i, n. so little.*

tantum, adv. *so much, only.*

tantus, a, um, *so great; subst.*

tantum, i, n. *so much.*

temperō, v.a. and n. *abstain, mix, temper.*

tempestās, ātis, f. *storm.*

templum, i, n. *temple, church.*

temptō, 1 v.a. *try, attempt.*

tempus, oris, n. *time, crisis.*

tenax, ācis, *holding fast, retentive.*

teneō, 2 v.a. *hold, grasp, understand.*

tentōrium, ii, n. *tent.*

tenuis, e, *thin, slender, slight, poor.*

tepefaciō, 3 v.a. *make warm.*

tepor, ōris, m. *warmth.*

ter, adv. *thrice.*

- tergum, *i*, *n.* back.
terra, *ae*, *f.* earth, land; *pl.* world.
terrestris, *e*, *of the earth, on land.*
tertius, *a*, *um*, *third.*
testimōnium, *ii*, *n.* evidence.
testor, *1 v.d.* bear witness.
testūdō, *inis*, *f.* tortoise, lyre.
theologia, *ae*, *f.* theology.
thōrax, *ācis*, *m.* doublet.
tibia, *ae*, *f.* shin, leg, flute.
timeō, *2 v.a.* fear.
titulus, *i*, *m.* inscription, title-page, advertisement.
toga, *ae*, *f.* gown, cloak.
tollō, *3 v.a.* sustulī, sublātum, *raise, take away, destroy.*
tonitrus, *ūs*, *m.* thunder; *pl.* tonitrūs, *m.* or tonitrua, *n.*
torqueō, *2 v.a.* torsi, tortum, *twist, torture.*
torvus, *a*, *um*, *stern, grim.*
tot, *indecl.* so many.
totidem, *indecl.* just as many.
tōtus, *a*, *um*, *whole, entire.*
trādō, *3 v.a.* tradidī, traditum, *handover, surrender, entrust.*
trahō, *3 v.a.* traxi, tractum, *drag, draw, attract.*
tranquillē, *adv.* calmly.
tranquillitās, *ātis*, *f.* calm, tranquillity.
transcurrō, *3 v.a.* run across.
transigō, *3 v.a.* transēgi, transactum, *settle, agree.*
trēs, tria, *three.*
triduum, *i*, *n.* three days.
trigintā, *indecl.* thirty.
tristis, *e*, *mournful, gloomy, glum.*
tū, *tui*, *you, thou*; *plur.* vōs, vestrum or vestri, *you, ye*; tūmet, *you yourself.*
tuba, *ae*, *f.* trumpet.
tūberculum, *i*, *n.* small lump, corn.
tueor, *2 v.d.* gaze at, protect, preserve.
tum and tunc, *adv.* then, at that time.
tumultus, *ūs*, *m.* tumult, commotion.
turris, *is*, *f.* tower.
tūtō, *adv.* in safety.
tūtus, *a*, *um*, *safe.*
tuus, *a*, *um*, *your, thine.*
tyrannus, *i*, *m.* tyrant, despot.
ubi, *adv.* where, when.
ubique, *adv.* anywhere, everywhere.
ullus, *a*, *um*, *any.*
ultimus, *a*, *um*, *last, extreme.*
ultrā, *prep.* with *acc.* beyond.
umbrāculum, *i*, *n.* shade.
umerus, *i*, *m.* shoulder.
unā, *adv.* together.
unda, *ae*, *f.* wave.
unde, *adv.* whence, from which.
undecim, *indecl.* eleven.
undique, *adv.* on all sides.
ungō, *3 v.a.* unxi, unctum, *anoint, oil.*
unicus, *a*, *um*, *only, single, unique.*
unquam, *adv.* ever.
ūnus, *a*, *um*, *one, alone.*
urbānus, *a*, *um*, *of the city*; subst. urbānus, *i*, *m.* townsman.
urbs, urbis, *f.* city.
ursus, *i*, *m.* bear.
urticōstūm, *i*, *n.* bed of nettles.
usque, *adv.* right on, all the way to.
ūsūra, *ae*, *f.* interest.
ūsus, *ūs*, *m.* use, advantage, experience.
ut, *conj.* in order that, so that, when, as, how.
uter, tra, trum, *which of two.*
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each of two, either, both.*

ūtīlis, e, *useful*.

ūtīlītās, ātis, *usefulness*.

utinam, interj. *would that!*

ūtor, 3 v.d. ūsus, *use, enjoy*.

utrimque, adv. *on both sides*.

utrō, adv. *in which of two directions*.

utrum, adv. *whether*.

ūvidus, a, um, *wet, damp*.

uxor, ōris, f. *wife*.

vacillātiō, ōnis, f. *reeling, swaying, lurching*.

vacillō, 1 v.n. *sway, waver, shift, be loose*.

vacō, 1 v.n. *be without, be free, have leisure*; impers. *vacat, there is leisure*.

vadum, ī, n. *shallow-place, bottom*.

vae, interj. *alas! woe!*

vagor, 1 v.d. *wander*.

vāh, interj. *ah! oh! good!*

valeō, 2 v.n. *be strong, be able, succeed, fare well*.

valētūdō, inis, f. *health*.

vāpulō, 1 v.n. *be whipped*.

varietās, ātis, f. *difference*.

varius, a, um, *various, changeable*.

vās, vāsis, n. *vessel, package*; pl. vāsa, ōrum.

vector, ōris, m. *passenger*.

vehementer, adv. *violently, vigorously, extremely*.

vel, conj. and adv. *either, or, even*.

vēlum, ī, n. *sail, canvas*.

velut, adv. *even as, just as*.

vēna, ae, f. *vein*.

vēnābulum, ī, n. *hunting-spear*.

vēnālis, e, *for sale*.

vēnātiō, ōnis, f. *hunting, venison*.

vendō, 3 v.a. vendidi, venditum, *sell*.

venia, ae, f. *pardon, leave, permission*.

veniō, 4 v.n. vēni, ventum, *come*.

vēnor, 1 v.d. *hunt*.

venter, tris, m. *belly, appetite*.

ventus, ī, *wind*.

verbera, erum, n. pl. *stripes, flogging* (sing. abl. only, verbere).

verbum, ī, n. *word, phrase*; verba dō, *give mere words, i.e. cheat*.

vērō, adv. *truly*.

verēcundia, ae, f. *modesty*.

verēcundus, a, um, *modest*.

vereor, 2 v.d. *respect, fear*.

vērīsimilis, e, *like the truth, probable*.

vērītās, ātis, f. *truth, reality*.

vērō, adv. *in truth, indeed, but*.

verrō, 3 v.a. *brush*.

verrūca, ae, f. *wart*.

versō, 1 v.a. *turn over, think over*; dep. versor, *move, be engaged, live*.

vertō, 3 v.a. verti, versum, *turn, change*.

vērum, adv. *true, certainly, yes, but*.

vērus, a, um, *true, genuine, proper*; subst. vērum, ī, n. *truth*.

vescor, 3 v.d. *feed, eat*.

vester, tra, trum, *your*.

vestiārius, ī, m. *tailor*.

vestimentum, ī, n. *garment*.

vestis, is, f. *clothing*.

veterānus, ī, m. *old soldier*.

vetulus, a, um, *little old, dear old*.

vetus, eris, *ancient, old, aged*.

via, ae, f. *way, road*.

viāticum, ī, n. *provision for journey, journey-money*.

- vicem (no nom.), *f. change*;
 vice, abl. *instead of*.
 victor, ōris, m. *conqueror*.
 victōria, ae, *f. victory*.
 victus, ūs, m. *mode of life*.
 vidēlicet, adv. *of course*,
 namely.
 videō, 2 v.a. vīdī, vīsum, *see*;
 pass. *seem*; impers. vidē-
 tur, *it seems good*.
 vigeō, 2 v.n. *be fresh, thrive*.
 vigilans, antis, *watchful, wake-*
 ful.
 vīginti, indecl. *twenty*.
 vigor, ōris, m. *vigour, liveli-*
 ness.
 villis, e, *cheap, paltry*.
 vinoō, 3 v.a. vici, victum,
 conquer, beat.
 vindicō, 1 v.a. *claim, free*.
 violentus, a, um, *violent*,
 headstrong.
 vir, viri, *man, husband*.
 virgō, inis, *f. virgin*.
 vis, acc. vim, abl. vī, *f.*
 strength, force; pl. vīrēs,
 ium, *strength*.
 vīta, ae, *f. life*.
 vitreus, a, um, *of glass*.
 vīvidus, a, um, *lively, fresh*.
 vīvō, 3 v.n. vixī, victum, *live*,
 enjoy life.
 vīvus, a, um, *living, alive*.
 vix, adv. *hardly, scarcely*.
 vixdum, adv. *scarcely yet*.
 vōciferor, 1 v.d. *cry out*.
 vocō, 1 v.a. *call, summon*,
 invite.
 volitō, 1 v.n. *flit about*.
 volō, 1 v.n. *fly*.
 volō, v. irreg. volui, *wish*.
 volūbilis, e, *voluble, restless*.
 voluptās, ātis, *f. pleasure*.
 volvō, 3 v.a. volvi, volūtum,
 roll.
 vōtum, ī, n. *vow, prayer*.
 vox, vōcis, *f. voice, word*,
 saying.
 vulgāris, e, *common, ordinary*.
 vulpēs, is, *f. fox*.
 vultus, ūs, m. *countenance*,
 look, expression.
 zōna, ae, *f. girdle, purse*.

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

The references are to pages.

- Adāmus, *Adam*, 29.
 Aenēās, *Aeneas*, 8.
 Alpēs, *Alps*, 27.
 Anglus, *Englishman*.
 Antverpia, *Antwerp*, 35, 48.
 Benedictus, *Benedict*, 43.
 Bernardus, *Bernard*, 44.
 Capitōlium, *Capitol*, 22.
 Carthusiānus, *Carthusian monk*, 29, 48.
 Castor, *Castor*, 26.
 Cervus, *Stag* (sign of an inn), 13.
 Christophorus, *Christopher*, 25.
 Cornēlius, *Cornelius*, 2, 13.
 Crētensis, *of Crete, Cretan*, 16.
 Epimenidēs, *Epimenides*, 15, 16.
 Fortūna, *Fortune*, 19.
 Furiae, *Furies*, 23.
 Gallia, *Gaul, France*, 43.
 Gallicus, *French*, 52.
 Gallus, *Frenchman*, 52.
 Germānia, *Germany*, 13.
 Goclenius, *Goclen*, 13.
 Graecus, *of Greece, Greek*, 13, 42, 50.
 Hebrāicus, *Hebrew*, 50.
 Herculēs, *Hercules*, 5.
 Hibernia, *Ireland*, 43.
 Hibernus, *Irishman*, 43.
 Hierosolyma, *Jerusalem*, 45.
 Hispānicus, *Spanish*, 52.
 Hollandicus, *of Holland, Dutch*, 33.
 Homērus, *Homer*, 18, 51.
 Horātiānus, *of Horace, Horatian*, 20.
 Isocratēs, *of Isocrates*, 51.
 Italia, *Italy*, 45.
 Italus or Italus, *Italian*, 28.
 Iūdaeus, *Jew*, 20.
 Iūlius Secundus, *Julius the Second*, 45.
 Latīnō, *in Latin*, 42, 52.
 Latīnus, *Latin*, 50.
 Lutētia, *Paris*, 36, 37.
 Malea, *Cape Malea*, 41.
 Mars, *Mars*, 37.
 Martius, *of March*, 15.

136 *Index of Proper Names*

- Mendicantēs, Begging Friars,** 46.
Mercurius, Mercury, 6, 22, 34, 41.
Midas, Midas, 20, 21.
Mūsae, the Muses, 49, 52.
Neptūnus, Neptune, 32, 34.
Orbilius, Orbilius, 2.
Pallas, Pallas (Athene), 18.
Patavium, Padua, 47.
Pollux, Pollux, 26.
Rōma, Rome, 19, 39.
Rōmānus, of Rome, Roman, 22.
Scōtia, Scotland, 28, 43.
Scōtus, Scotsman, 43.
Sparta, Sparta, 46.
Tartarus, Tartarus, 27.
Terentius, Terence, 20.
Terra Sancta, Holy Land, 44.
Turca, Turk, 45.
Ulyssēs, Ulysses, 17, 18, 39.
Vergilius, Virgil, 8, 21.
Virgō Valsinghamica, Our Lady of Walsingham, 29.
Vulcānus, Vulcan, 22.



THE PITT PRESS SERIES
AND THE
CAMBRIDGE SERIES FOR SCHOOLS
AND TRAINING COLLEGES.

Volumes of the latter series are marked by a dagger †.

COMPLETE LIST.

GREEK.

<i>Author</i>	<i>Work</i>	<i>Editor</i>	<i>Price</i>
Aeschylus	Prometheus Vincetus	Rackham	2/6
Aristophanes	Aves—Plutus—Ranae	Green	3/6 each
"	Vespae	Graves	3/6
"	Acharnians	"	3/-
"	Nubes	"	3/6
Demosthenes	Olynthiacs	Glover	2/6
Euripides	Heracleidae	Pearson	3/6
"	Hercules Furens	Gray & Hutchinson	2/-
"	Hippolytus	Hadley	2/-
"	Iphigeneia in Aulis	Headlam	2/6
"	Medea	"	2/6
"	Hecuba	Hadley	2/6
"	Helena	Pearson	3/6
"	Alcestis	Hadley	2/6
"	Orestes	Wedd	4/6
Herodotus	Book IV	Shuckburgh	4/-
"	" V	"	3/-
"	" VI, VIII, IX	"	4/- each
"	" VIII 1—90, IX 1—89	"	2/6 each
Homer	Odyssey IX, X	Edwards	2/6 each
"	" XXI	"	2/-
"	" XI	Nairn	2/-
"	Iliad VI, XXII, XXIII, XXIV	Edwards	2/- each
"	Iliad IX, X	Lawson	2/6
Lucian	Somnium, Charon, etc.	Heitland	3/6
"	Menippus and Timon	Mackie	3/6
Plato	Apologia Socratis	Adam	3/6
"	Crito	"	2/6
"	Euthyphro	"	2/6
"	Protagoras	J. & A. M. Adam	4/-

THE PITT PRESS SERIES, ETC.

GREEK *continued.*

<i>Author</i>	<i>Work</i>	<i>Editor</i>	<i>Price</i>
Plutarch	Demosthenes	Holden	4/6
"	Gracchi	"	6/-
"	Nicias	"	5/-
"	Sulla	"	6/-
"	Timoleon	"	6/-
Sophocles	Oedipus Tyrannus	Jebb	4/-
Thucydides	Book III	Spratt	5/-
"	Book VI	"	6/-
"	Book VII	Holden	5/-
Xenophon	Agesilaus	Hailstone	2/6
"	Anabasis I, II	Pretor	4/-
"	" I, III, IV, V	"	2/- each
"	" II, VI, VII	"	2/6 each
† "	" I, II, III, IV, V, VI	Edwards	1/6 each
	<i>(With complete Vocabularies)</i>		
"	Hellenics I, II	"	3/6
"	Cyropaedia I	Shuckburgh	2/6
"	" II	"	2/-
"	" III, IV, V	Holden	5/-
"	" VI, VII, VIII	"	5/-
"	Memorabilia I	Edwards	2/6
"	" II	"	2/6

LATIN.

Bede	Eccl. History III, IV	Lumby	7/6
Caesar	De Bello Gallico		
	Com. I, III, VI, VIII	Peskett	1/6 each
"	" II-III, and VII	"	2/- each
"	" I-III	"	3/-
"	" IV-V	"	1/6
† "	" I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII	Shuckburgh	1/6 each
	<i>(With complete Vocabularies)</i>		
"	De Bello Civili. Com. I	Peskett	3/-
"	" " Com. III	"	2/6
Cicero	Actio Prima in C. Verrem	Cowie	1/6
"	De Amicitia	Reid	3/6
"	De Senectute	"	3/6
"	De Officiis. Bk III	Holden	2/-
"	Pro Lege Manilia	Nicol	1/6
"	Div. in Q. Caec. et Actio		
	Prima in C. Verrem	Heitland & Cowie	3/-
"	Ep. ad Atticum. Lib. II	Pretor	3/-
"	Orations against Catiline	Nicol	2/6
† "	In Catilinam I	Flather	1/6
	<i>(With Vocabulary)</i>		
"	Philippica Secunda	Peskett	3/6
"	Pro Archia Poeta	Reid	2/-
"	" Balbo	"	1/6

THE PITT PRESS SERIES, ETC.

LATIN *continued.*

<i>Author</i>	<i>Work</i>	<i>Editor</i>	<i>Price</i>
Cicero	Pro Milone	Reid	2/6
"	" Murena	Heitland	3/-
"	" Plancio	Holden	4/-
"	" Sulla	Reid	3/6
"	Somnium Scipionis	Pearman	2/-
Cornelius Nepos	Four parts	Shuckburgh	1/6 each
Erasmus	Colloquia Latina	G. M. Edwards	1/6
Horace	Epistles. Bk I	Shuckburgh	2/6
"	Odes and Epodes	Gow	5/-
"	Odes. Books I, III	"	2/- each
"	" Books II, IV; Epodes	"	1/6 each
"	Satires. Book I	"	2/-
Juvenal	Satires	Duff	5/-
Livy	Book I	H. J. Edwards	<i>In the Press</i>
"	" II	Conway	2/6
"	" IV, IX, XXVII	Stephenson	2/6 each
"	" VI	Marshall	2/6
"	" V	Whibley	2/6
"	" XXI, XXII	Dimsdale	2/6 each
" (adapted from)	Story of the Kings of Rome	G. M. Edwards	1/6
" "	Horatius and other Stories	"	1/6
Lucan	Pharsalia. Bk I	Heitland & Haskins	1/6
"	De Bello Civili. Bk VII	Postgate	2/-
Lucretius	Book III	Duff	2/-
"	" V	"	2/-
Ovid	Fasti. Book VI	Sidgwick	1/6
"	Metamorphoses, Bk I	Dowdall	1/6
"	" Bk VIII	Summers	1/6
†	Selections from the Tristia (With Vocabulary)	Simpson	1/6
† Phaedrus	Fables. Bks I and II (With Vocabulary)	Flather	1/6
Plautus	Epidicus	Gray	3/-
"	Stichus	Fennell	2/6
"	Trinummus	Gray	3/6
Pliny	Letters. Book VI	Duff	2/6
Quintus Curtius	Alexander in India	Heitland & Raven	3/6
Sallust	Catiline	Summers	2/-
"	Jugurtha	"	2/6
Tacitus	Agricola and Germania	Stephenson	3/-
"	Hist. Bk I	Davies	2/6
"	" Bk III	Summers	2/6
Terence	Hautontimorumenos	Gray	3/-
Vergil	Aeneid I to XII	Sidgwick	1/6 each
†	" I, II, V, VI, IX, XI, XII (With complete Vocabulary)	"	1/6 each
"	Bucolics	"	"
"	Georgics I, II, and Complete Works.	"	"
"	"	"	"
"	"	"	"

THE PITT PRESS SERIES, ETC.

FRENCH.

*The Volumes marked * contain Vocabulary.*

<i>Author</i>	<i>Work</i>	<i>Editor</i>	<i>Price</i>
About	Le Roi des Montagnes	Ropes	2/-
*Biart	Quand j'étais petit, Pts I, II	Boielle	2/- each
Boileau	L'Art Poétique	Nichol Smith	2/6
Cornelle	La Suite du Menteur	Masson	2/-
"	Polyeucte	Braunholtz	2/-
"	Le Cid	Eve	2/-
De Bonnechose	Lazare Hoche	Colbeck	2/-
"	Bertrand du Guesclin	Leathes	2/-
"	" Part II	"	1/6
Delavigne	Louis XI	Eve	2/-
"	Les Enfants d'Edouard	"	2/-
De Lamartine	Jeanne d'Arc	Clapin & Ropes	1/6
De Vigny	La Canne de Junc	Eve	1/6
*Dumas	La Fortune de D'Artagnan	Ropes	2/-
*Enault	Le Chien du Capitaine	Verrall	2/-
Erckmann-Chatrian	La Guerre	Clapin	3/-
"	Waterloo	Ropes	3/-
"	Le Blocus	"	3/-
"	Madame Thérèse	"	3/-
"	Histoire d'un Conscrit	"	3/-
Gantier	Voyage en Italie (Selections)	Payen Payne	3/-
Guizot	Discours sur l'Histoire de la Révolution d'Angleterre	Eve	2/6
Hugo	Les Burgraves	"	2/6
"	Selected Poems	"	2/-
*Malot	Remi et ses Amis	Verrall	2/-
"	Remi en Angleterre	"	2/-
Merimée	Colomba (<i>Abridged</i>)	Ropes	2/-
Michelet	Louis XI & Charles the Bold	"	2/6
Molière	Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme	Clapin	1/6
"	L'École des Femmes	Saintsbury	2/6
"	Les Précieuses ridicules	Braunholtz	2/-
"	" (<i>Abridged Edition</i>)	"	1/-
"	Le Misanthrope	"	2/6
"	L'Avare	"	2/6
*Perrault	Fairy Tales	Rippmann	1/6
Piron	La Métromanie	Masson	2/-
Ponsard	Charlotte Corday	Ropes	2/-
Racine	Les Plaideurs	Braunholtz	2/-
"	" (<i>Abridged Edition</i>)	"	1/-
"	Athalie	Eve	2/-
Saintine	Picciola	Ropes	2/-
Sandeau	Mdlle de la Seiglière	"	2/-
Scribe & Legouvé	Bataille de Dames	Bull	2/-
Scribe	Le Verre d'Eau	Colbeck	2/-
Sédaine	Le Philosophe sans le savoir	Bull	2/-
Souvestre	Un Philosophe sous les Toits	Eve	2/-
"	Le Serf & Le Chevrier de Lorraine	Ropes	2/-

THE PITT PRESS SERIES, ETC.

GERMAN *continued.*

<i>Author</i>	<i>Work</i>	<i>Editor</i>	<i>Price</i>
Schiller	Geschichte des dreissigjäh- rigen Kriegs. Book III.	Breul	3/-
"	Maria Stuart	"	3/6
"	Wallenstein I. (Lager and Piccolomini)	"	3/6
"	Wallenstein II. (Tod)	"	3/6
Sybel	Prinz Eugen von Savoyen	Quiggin	2/6
Uhland	Ernst, Herzog von Schwaben	Wolstenholme	3/6
	German Dactylic Poetry	Wagner	3/-

SPANISH.

Le Sage & Isla	Los Ladrones de Asturias	Kirkpatrick	3/-
Galdós	Trafalgar	"	4/-

ENGLISH.

	Historical Ballads	Sidgwick	1/6
Bacon	History of the Reign of King Henry VII	Lumby	3/-
"	Essays	West	3/6 & 5/-
"	New Atlantis	G. C. M. Smith	1/6
Burke	American Speeches	Innes	3/-
Cowley	Essays	Lumby	4/-
Defoe	Robinson Crusoe, Part I	Masterman	2/-
Earle	Microcosmography	West	3/- & 4/-
Goldsmith	Traveller and Deserted Village	Murison	1/6
Gray	Poems	Tovey	4/- & 5/-
† "	Ode on the Spring and The Bard	"	8d.
† "	Ode on the Spring and The Elegy	"	8d.
Kingsley	The Heroes	E. A. Gardner	1/6
Lamb	Tales from Shakespeare. 2 Series	Flather	1/6 each
Macaulay	Lord Clive	Innes	1/6
"	Warren Hastings	"	1/6
"	William Pitt and Earl of Chatham	"	2/6
† "	John Bunyan	"	1/-
† "	John Milton	Flather	1/6
"	Lays and other Poems	"	1/6
Mayor	A Sketch of Ancient Philosophy from Thales to Cicero		3/6
"	Handbook of English Metre		2/-
More	History of King Richard III	Lumby	3/6
"	Utopia	"	3/6
Milton	Arcades	Verity	1/6
"	Ode on the Nativity, L'Alle- gro, Il Penseroso & Lycidas	"	2/6
† "	Comus & Lycidas	"	2/-
"	Samson Agonistes	"	2/6
"	Sonnets	"	1/6
"	Paradise Lost, six parts	"	2/- each
Pope	Essay on Criticism	West	2/-

THE PITT PRESS SERIES, ETC.

MATHEMATICS *continued.*

<i>Author</i>	<i>Work</i>	<i>Editor</i>	<i>Price</i>
Hobson & Jessop	Elementary Plane Trigonometry		4/6
Loney	Elements of Statics and Dynamics		7/6
	Part I. Elements of Statics		4/6
	" II. Elements of Dynamics		3/6
"	Elements of Hydrostatics		4/6
"	Solutions to Examples, Hydrostatics		5/-
"	Solutions of Examples, Statics and Dynamics		7/6
"	Mechanics and Hydrostatics		4/6
†Sanderson	Geometry for Young Beginners		1/4
Smith, C.	Arithmetic for Schools, with or without answers		3/6
"	Part I. Chapters I—VIII. Elementary, with or without answers		2/-
"	Part II. Chapters IX—XX, with or without answers		2/-
Hale, G.	Key to Smith's Arithmetic		7/6

EDUCATIONAL SCIENCE.

†Blidder & Baddeley	Domestic Economy		4/6
†Eosanquet	{ The Education of the Young from the <i>Republic</i> of Plato }		2/6
†Burnet	Aristotle on Education		2/6
Comenius	Life and Educational Works	S. S. Laurie	3/6
Farrar	General Aims of the Teacher	} 1 vol.	1/6
Poole	Form Management		
†Hope & Browne	A Manual of School Hygiene		3/6
Locke	Thoughts on Education	R. H. Quick	3/6
†MacCunn	The Making of Character		2/6
Milton	Tractate on Education	O. Browning	2/-
Thring	Theory and Practice of Teaching		4/6
<hr/>			
†Shuckburgh	A Short History of the Greeks		4/6
†Woodward	A Short History of the Expansion of the British Empire (1500—1902)		4/-
† "	An Outline History of the British Empire (1500—1902)		1/6 net

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE,

C. F. CLAY, MANAGER.

London: FETTER LANE, E.C.

Glasgow: 50, WELLINGTON STREET.

83 1 35572 53 005 BA Bx 6149





Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 020 043 456

78.8
65ce
001

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES
STANFORD AUXILIARY LIBRARY
STANFORD, CALIFORNIA 94305-6004
(415) 723-9201

All books may be recalled after 7 days

DATE DUE

280 DEC 10 1997

JAN 6 1998



Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 020 043 454

78.8
65ce
201

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES
STANFORD AUXILIARY LIBRARY
STANFORD, CALIFORNIA 94305-6004
(415) 723-9201

All books may be recalled after 7 days

DATE DUE

280 DEC 10 1997

JAN 26 1998

